Automation PC 620 with 945GME N270 CPU board

User's Manual

Version: **1.05 (December 2010)**

Model number: **MAAPC620A-ENG**

All information contained in this manual is current as of its creation/publication. We reserve the right to change the contents of this manual without warning. The information contained herein is believed to be accurate as of the date of publication; however, Bernecker + Rainer Industrie-Elektronik Ges.m.b.H. makes no warranty, expressed or implied, with regards to the products or the documentation contained within this book. In addition, Bernecker + Rainer Industrie-Elektronik Ges.m.b.H. shall not be liable in the event of incidental or consequential damages in connection with or resulting from the furnishing, performance, or use of these products. The software names, hardware names, and trademarks used in this manual are registered by the respective companies.

Chapter 1: General information

Chapter 2: Technical data

Chapter 3: Commissioning

Chapter 4: Software

Chapter 5: Standards and certifications

Chapter 6: Accessories

Chapter 7: Maintenance / Servicing

Appendix A

Figure index

Table index

Model number index

Index

Chapter 1: General information 21

1. Manual history 21
2. Safety guidelines 22
   2.1 Intended use 22
   2.2 Protection against electrostatic discharges 22
      2.2.1 Packaging 22
      2.2.2 Guidelines for proper ESD handling 22
   2.3 Policy and procedures 23
   2.4 Transport and storage 23
   2.5 Installation 24
   2.6 Operation 24
      2.6.1 Protection against touching electrical parts 24
      2.6.2 Environmental conditions - dust, humidity, aggressive gases 24
      2.6.3 Programs, viruses and dangerous programs 25
   2.7 Environmentally-friendly disposal 25
      2.7.1 Separation of materials 25
3. Organization of safety notices 26
4. Guidelines 26
5. Model numbers 27
   5.1 System units 27
   5.2 X945 CPU boards 28
   5.3 Heat sink 28
   5.4 Main memory 28
   5.5 Drives 28
   5.6 Interface options 29
   5.7 Fan kits 29
   5.8 AP Link cards 30
   5.9 Accessories 30
      5.9.1 Supply voltage connectors 30
      5.9.2 X2X and CAN plugs 30
      5.9.3 Batteries 30
      5.9.4 CompactFlash cards 30
      5.9.5 USB flash drives 31
      5.9.6 Cables 31
      5.9.7 UPS module + accessories 33
      5.9.8 PCI Ethernet cards 33
      5.9.9 Miscellaneous 33
   5.10 Software 35
6. Typical topologies 36
   6.1 APC620 embedded for central control and visualization 36
   6.2 APC620 as visualization device 37

Chapter 2: Technical data 39

1. Introduction 39
   1.1 Features 40
   1.2 Structure / configuration APC620 with 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slots 41

1.2.1 Selection guide - Basic system 42
1.2.2 Selection guide - Optional components 43
1.3 Structure / configuration APC620 embedded 45
2. Entire device 46
2.1 APC620, 1 PCI slot variant 46
2.1.1 Interfaces 46
2.1.2 Technical data 48
2.1.3 Dimensions 50
2.2 APC620, 2 PCI slot variant 51
2.2.1 Interfaces 51
2.2.2 Technical data 53
2.2.3 Dimensions 55
2.3 APC620, 3 PCI slot variant 56
2.3.1 Interfaces 56
2.3.2 Technical data 58
2.3.3 Dimensions 60
2.4 APC620, 5 PCI slot variant 61
2.4.1 Interfaces 61
2.4.2 Technical data 63
2.4.3 Dimensions 65
2.5 APC620 embedded variant 66
2.5.1 Interfaces 66
2.5.2 Technical data 68
2.5.3 Dimensions 71
2.6 Ambient temperatures for systems with an X945 CPU board 72
2.6.1 Maximum ambient temperature 73
2.6.2 Minimum ambient temperature 74
2.6.3 How do you determine the maximum ambient temperature? 74
2.6.4 Temperature monitoring 75
2.7 Power management APC620 system unit with 1 PCI slot 76
2.7.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision >= I0 76
2.7.2 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX01-00 revision >= I0 77
2.7.3 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision < I0 78
2.7.4 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX01-00 revision < I0 79
2.8 Power management APC620 system units with 2 PCI slots 80
2.8.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX02-00 revision >= H0 and 5PC600.SX02-01 revision >= K0) 80
2.8.2 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-00 revision >= H0 81
2.8.3 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-01 revision >= K0 82
2.8.4 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX02-00 revision < H0 and 5PC600.SX02-01 revision < K0 83
2.8.5 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-00 revision < H0 84
2.8.6 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-01 revision < K0 85
2.9 Power management APC620 system unit with 3 PCI slots 86
2.9.1 5PC600.SF03-00 supply voltage 86
2.9.2 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SF03-00 87
2.10 Power management APC620 system units with 5 PCI slots 88

2.10.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX05-00 (revision >= H0) and 5PC600.SX05-01 (revision >= H0) 88
2.10.2 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-00 (revision >= H0) 90
2.10.3 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01 (revision >= H0) 91
2.10.4 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX05-00 (revision < H0) and 5PC600.SX05-01 (revision <= H0) 92
2.10.5 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-05 revision < H0 94
2.10.6 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01 revision < H0 96
2.11 Power management for the APC620 embedded system unit 97
2.11.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SE00-00, 5PC600.SE00-01 and 5PC600.SE00-02 . 97
2.12 Humidity specifications 98
2.13 Device interfaces 99
2.13.1 Serial interfaces COM1 101
2.13.2 Serial interfaces COM2 102
2.13.3 X2X (only APC620 embedded) 103
2.13.4 CAN (only APC620 embedded) 103
2.13.5 CAN node number (only APC620 embedded) 104
2.13.6 CAN terminating switch / LED (only APC620 embedded) 104
2.13.7 Status LEDs CAN / X2X (only APC620 embedded) 105
2.13.8 POWERLINK (only APC620 embedded) 105
2.13.9 POWERLINK station number (only APC620 embedded) 107
2.13.10 Ethernet connection ETH (only APC620 embedded) 107
2.13.11 Ethernet connection ETH1 108
2.13.12 Ethernet connection ETH2 110
2.13.13 USB port 111
2.13.14 USB connection (only APC620 embedded) 112
2.13.15 +24 VDC supply voltage 113
2.13.16 Monitor / Panel connection 116
2.13.17 MIC, Line IN and Line OUT ports 122
2.13.18 Add-on interface slot 123
2.13.19 Add-on UPS module slot 124
2.13.20 AP Link slot 125
2.13.21 PCI slots 125
2.13.22 Status LEDs 128
2.13.23 Status LEDs Power, CF, Link (only APC620 embedded) 129
2.13.24 CompactFlash slot (CF1) 130
2.13.25 Hard disk / CompactFlash slot (HDD/CF2) 131
2.13.26 CompactFlash slots (only APC620 embedded) 133
2.13.27 Power button 134
2.13.28 Reset button 134
2.13.29 PS/2 keyboard/mouse 135
2.13.30 Battery 136
2.13.31 Hardware security key 138
2.13.32 Slide-in slot 1 drive slot 139
2.13.33 Slide-in slot 2 drive slot 140
2.14 Serial number sticker 140

2.15 Block diagram 143
2.15.1 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX01-00 143
2.15.2 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-00 144
2.15.3 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-01 145
2.15.4 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SF03-00 146
2.15.5 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-00 147
2.15.6 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01 148
2.15.7 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SE00-00 149
2.15.8 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SE00-01 150
2.15.9 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SE00-02 151
3. Individual components 152
3.1 System units 152
3.1.1 APC620 with 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slots 152
3.1.2 APC620 embedded variations 154
3.2 X945 CPU board 156
3.3 Heat sink 158
3.4 Main memory 159
3.4.1 Technical data 159
3.5 Drives 160
3.5.1 Add-on hard disk 40 GB 24x7 ET - 5AC600.HDDI-05 160
3.5.2 Add-on hard disk 80 GB 24x7 ET - 5AC600.HDDI-06 163
3.5.3 Add-on CompactFlash slot - 5AC600.CFSI-00 166
3.5.4 Slide-in USB FDD - 5AC600.FDDS-00 167
3.6 RAID system 170
3.6.1 PCI SATA RAID 2 x 160 GB 24x7 ET - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03 171
3.6.2 Replacement SATA HDD 160 GB - 5ACPCI.RAIC-04 176
3.7 Interface options 179
3.7.1 Add-on CAN interface - 5AC600.CANI-00 179
3.7.2 Add-on RS232/422/485 interface - 5AC600.485I-00 183
3.8 Fan kit 187
3.8.1 Fan kit 1 PCI - 5PC600.FA01-00 187
3.8.2 Fan kit 2 PCI - 5PC600.FA02-00 188
3.8.3 Fan kit 3 PCI - 5PC600.FA03-00 190
3.8.4 Fan kit 5 PCI - 5PC600.FA05-00 191
3.9 AP Link cards 193
3.9.1 AP Link SDL transmitter - 5AC600.SDL0-00 193

Chapter 3: Commissioning 199

1. Installation 199
1.1 Important mounting information 199
1.2 Drilling templates 200
1.3 Mounting orientation 203
1.3.1 Standard mounting 203
1.3.2 Optional mounting orientations 205
2. Cable connections 209
2.1 Ethernet cable lengths for ETH1 209

3. Grounding concept 210
4. Connection examples 211
4.1 Selecting the display units 212
4.2 One Automation Panel 900 via DVI (onboard) 213
4.2.1 Basic system requirements 213
4.2.2 Link modules 214
4.2.3 Cables 214
4.2.4 Possible Automation Panel units, resolutions und segment lengths 214
4.2.5 BIOS settings 215
4.2.6 Windows graphics driver settings 215
4.2.7 Windows touch screen driver settings 215
4.3 An Automation Panel 900 via SDL (onboard) 216
4.3.1 Basic system requirements 216
4.3.2 Link modules 216
4.3.3 Cables 217
4.3.4 BIOS settings 219
4.3.5 Windows graphics driver settings 219
4.3.6 Windows touch screen driver settings 219
4.4 An Automation Panel 800 via SDL (onboard) 220
4.4.1 Basic system requirements 220
4.4.2 Cables 221
4.4.3 BIOS settings 222
4.4.4 Windows graphics driver settings 222
4.4.5 Windows touch screen driver settings 222
4.5 An AP900 and an AP800 via SDL (onboard) 223
4.5.1 Basic system requirements 223
4.5.2 Cables 224
4.5.3 BIOS settings 225
4.5.4 Windows graphics driver settings 225
4.5.5 Windows touch screen driver settings 225
4.6 Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (onboard) 226
4.6.1 Basic system requirements 226
4.6.2 Link modules 227
4.6.3 Cables 227
4.6.4 BIOS settings 229
4.6.5 Windows graphics driver settings 229
4.6.6 Windows touch screen driver settings 230
4.7 One Automation Panel 900 unit via SDL (AP Link) 231
4.7.1 Basic system requirements 231
4.7.2 Link modules 232
4.7.3 Cables 232
4.7.4 BIOS settings 234
4.7.5 Windows graphics driver settings 234
4.7.6 Windows touch screen driver settings 234
4.8 Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) 235
4.8.1 Basic system requirements 235
4.8.2 Link modules 236

4.8.3 Cables 236
4.8.4 BIOS settings 238
4.8.5 Windows graphics driver settings 238
4.8.6 Windows touch screen driver settings 239
4.9 Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard) 240
4.9.1 Basic system requirements 241
4.9.2 Link modules 241
4.9.3 Cables 241
4.9.4 BIOS settings 244
4.9.5 Windows graphics driver settings 244
4.9.6 Windows touch screen driver settings 244
4.10 Three AP900 units and one AP800 via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard) 245
4.10.1 Basic system requirements 246
4.10.2 Link modules 246
4.10.3 Cables 246
4.10.4 BIOS settings 248
4.10.5 Windows graphics driver settings 248
4.10.6 Windows touch screen driver settings 248
4.11 Internal numbering of extension units in AP800 devices 249
5. Configuration of a SATA RAID array 250
5.1 Create RAID Set 251
5.1.1 Create RAID Set - striped 252
5.1.2 Create RAID Set - Mirrored 253
5.2 Delete RAID set 254
5.3 Rebuild Mirrored Set 255
5.4 Resolve Conflicts 256
5.5 Low Level Format 257
6. Connection of USB peripheral devices 258
6.1 Local on the APC620 258
6.2 Remote connection to Automation Panel 900 via DVI 259
6.3 Remote connection to Automation Panel 800/900 via SDL 260
7. Known problems / issues 261

Chapter 4: Software 263

1. BIOS options 263
1.1 General information 263
1.2 BIOS setup and boot procedure 263
1.2.1 BIOS setup keys 264
1.3 Main 266
1.4 Advanced 267
1.4.1 ACPI configuration 269
1.4.2 PCI configuration 271
1.4.3 Graphics configuration 275
1.4.4 CPU configuration 277
1.4.5 Chipset configuration 279
1.4.6 I/O interface configuration 280

1.4.7 Clock configuration 282
1.4.8 IDE Configuration 283
1.4.9 USB configuration 289
1.4.10 Keyboard/mouse configuration 291
1.4.11 Remote access configuration 292
1.4.12 CPU board monitor 294
1.4.13 Baseboard/panel features 295
1.5 Boot 301
1.6 Security 303
1.6.1 Hard disk security user password 305
1.6.2 Hard disk security master password 306
1.7 Power 307
1.8 Exit 309
1.9 BIOS default settings 310
1.9.1 Main 311
1.9.2 Advanced 311
1.9.3 Boot 318
1.9.4 Security 319
1.9.5 Power 319
1.10 BIOS Error signals (beep codes) 321
1.10.1 BIOS X945 321
1.11 Distribution of resources 322
1.11.1 RAM address assignment 322
1.11.2 DMA channel assignment 322
1.11.3 I/O address assignment 323
1.11.4 Interrupt assignments in PCI mode 324
1.11.5 Interrupt assignments in APIC mode 325
1.11.6 Inter-IC (I²C) bus 327
1.11.7 System Management (SM) bus 327
2. Upgrade information 328
2.1 BIOS upgrade 328
2.1.1 Requirements 328
2.1.2 What information do I need? 328
2.1.3 Upgrade BIOS for X945 331
2.1.4 Windows XP Embedded and BIOS upgrade 332
2.2 Upgrading the firmware 333
2.2.1 Procedure 333
2.2.2 Possible upgrade problems and version dependencies 335
2.3 Creating an MS-DOS boot diskette in Windows XP 337
2.4 Creating a bootable USB flash drive for B&R upgrade files 339
2.4.1 Requirements 339
2.4.2 Procedure 339
2.4.3 Where do I get MS-DOS? 340
2.5 Creating a bootable CompactFlash card for B&R upgrade files 341
2.5.1 Requirements 341
2.5.2 Procedure 341
2.5.3 Where do I get MS-DOS? 342

2.6 Upgrade problems ... 342
3. Location of the DIP switch in APC620 system units ... 343
4. Automation PC 620 with Automation Runtime ... 344
4.1 General information ... 344
4.2 Support for Automation PC 620 embedded ... 344
4.2.1 AR010 ... 344
4.2.2 AR106 ... 344
4.3 Support for the Automation PC 620 with 5PC600.X945-00 CPU board ... 344
4.3.1 AR010 ... 344
4.3.2 AR106 ... 344
4.4 Selection of devices ... 345
4.5 Visual Components graphic engine support ... 345
5. Automation PC 620 with MS-DOS ... 346
5.1 Known problems ... 346
6. Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional ... 348
6.1 Installation ... 348
6.1.1 FAQ ... 349
6.2 Graphics drivers ... 350
6.2.1 Installing the graphics driver for X945 CPU boards ... 351
6.2.2 Graphics settings for Extended Desktop ... 352
6.2.3 Graphics settings for Dual Display Clone ... 354
6.3 Touch screen driver ... 356
6.3.1 Installation for Extended Desktop ... 356
6.3.2 Installation for Dual Display Clone ... 358
6.3.3 FAQ ... 360
6.4 Audio driver ... 360
6.4.1 Installation ... 360
6.5 Network driver ... 361
6.5.1 Installation ETH1 ... 361
6.5.2 Installation ETH2 ... 361
6.6 Automation PC 620 embedded ... 361
7. Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Embedded ... 362
7.1 General information ... 362
7.2 Features with FP2007 (Feature Pack 2007) ... 362
7.3 Installation ... 363
7.4 Graphics drivers ... 363
7.5 Touch screen driver ... 363
7.6 Audio driver ... 364
7.6.1 After a BIOS upgrade ... 364
7.7 Network driver ... 364
7.8 FAQ ... 364
7.8.1 Why does the B&R device restart when shutdown? ... 364
8. Automation PC 620 with Windows CE ... 365
8.1 General information ... 365
8.2 Windows CE 6.0 features ... 365
8.3 Requirements ... 366
8.4 Installation ... 366

8.4.1 B&R Embedded OS Installer 366
9. Automation Device Interface (ADI) driver - Control Center 367
9.1 Installation 369
9.2 SDL equalizer setting 369
9.3 UPS configuration 370
9.3.1 Configuration of UPS operation for the B&R APC620 UPS 371
9.3.2 Display status values for UPS 371
9.3.3 Change UPS battery settings 372
9.3.4 Update UPS battery settings 373
9.3.5 Save UPS battery settings 374
9.3.6 Configure UPS system settings 375
9.3.7 Configuring the "UL compliant operation" 375
9.3.8 Change additional UPS settings 376
9.3.9 Procedure following power failure 378

Chapter 5: Standards and certifications 379

1. Applicable European guidelines 379
2. Overview of standards 379
3. Requirements for emissions 381
3.1 Network related emissions 382
3.2 Emissions / Electromagnetic emissions 383
4. Requirements for immunity to disturbances 384
4.1 Electrostatic discharge (ESD) 385
4.2 High-frequency electromagnetic fields (HF field) 385
4.3 High-speed transient electrical disturbances (Burst) 386
4.4 Surge voltages (Surge) 386
4.5 Conducted disturbances 386
4.6 Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies 387
4.7 Voltage dips, fluctuations and short-term interruptions 388
4.8 Damped oscillations 388
5. Mechanical conditions 389
5.1 Vibration during operation 389
5.2 Vibration during transport (packaged) 390
5.3 Shock during operation 390
5.4 Shock during transport (packaged) 390
5.5 Toppling 390
5.6 Free fall (packaged) 391
6. Climate conditions 392
6.1 Worst case during operation 392
6.2 Dry heat 392
6.3 Dry cold 392
6.4 Large temperature fluctuations 393
6.5 Temperature fluctuations in operation 393
6.6 Humid heat, cyclical 393
6.7 Humid heat, constant (storage) 393
7. Safety 394

7.1 Ground resistance 395
7.2 Insulation resistance 395
7.3 High voltage 396
7.4 Residual voltage 396
7.5 Leakage current 396
7.6 Overload 397
7.7 Defective component 397
7.8 Voltage range 397
8. Other tests 398
8.1 Protection 398
8.2 Degree of pollution 398
9. SDL flex cable - test description 399
9.1 Torsion 399
9.1.1 Test structure 399
9.1.2 Test conditions 399
9.1.3 Individual tests 399
9.2 Cable drag chain 400
9.2.1 Test structure 400
9.2.2 Test conditions 400
9.2.3 Individual tests: 400
10. International certifications 401

Chapter 6: Accessories 403

1. Overview 403
2. Supply voltage connector (TB103 3-pin) 407
2.1 General information 407
2.2 Order data 407
2.3 Technical data 407
3. X2X and CAN plugs (4-pin) 409
3.1 General information 409
3.2 Order data 409
3.3 Technical data 409
4. Replacement CMOS batteries 410
4.1 Order data 410
4.2 Technical data 410
5. Interface covers 5AC600.ICOV-00 411
5.1 Order data 411
5.2 Contents of delivery 411
6. DVI - monitor adapter 5AC900.1000-00 412
6.1 Order data 412
7. CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04 413
7.1 General information 413
7.2 Order data 413
7.3 Technical data 414
7.3.1 Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage 416
7.4 Dimensions 416

7.5 Benchmark ... 417
8. CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03 ... 418
8.1 General information ... 418
8.2 Order data ... 418
8.3 Technical data ... 419
8.3.1 Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage ... 420
8.4 Dimensions ... 421
9. USB Media Drive - 5MD900.USB2-01 ... 422
9.1 Features ... 422
9.2 Technical data ... 423
9.3 Dimensions ... 425
9.4 Dimensions with front cover ... 426
9.5 Contents of delivery ... 426
9.6 Interfaces ... 426
9.7 Installation ... 427
9.7.1 Mounting orientation ... 427
9.8 Front cover 5A5003.03 for the USB Media Drive ... 427
9.8.1 Technical data ... 427
9.8.2 Dimensions ... 428
9.8.3 Installation ... 428
10. USB Flash Drive 5MMUSB.2048-00 ... 429
10.1 General information ... 429
10.2 Order data ... 429
10.3 Technical data ... 429
10.3.1 Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage ... 431
10.4 Creating a bootable USB flash drive ... 432
10.4.1 5.4.1 Requirements ... 432
10.4.2 Procedure ... 432
11. HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD 5SWHMI.0000-00 ... 433
12. Cables ... 436
12.1 APC620 internal supply cable 5CAMSC.0001-00 ... 436
12.1.1 Order data ... 436
12.1.2 Technical data ... 436
12.2 DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00 ... 437
12.2.1 Order data ... 437
12.2.2 Technical data ... 438
12.2.3 Cable specifications ... 440
12.3 SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00 ... 440
12.3.1 Order data ... 441
12.3.2 Technical data ... 442
12.3.3 Cable specifications ... 444
12.4 SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01 ... 445
12.4.1 Order data ... 445
12.4.2 Technical data ... 446
12.4.3 Cable specifications ... 448
12.5 SDL flex cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 ... 449
12.5.1 Order data ... 449

12.5.2 Technical data ... 450
12.5.3 Cable specifications ... 453
12.6 SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13 ... 454
12.6.1 Order data ... 454
12.6.2 Technical data ... 455
12.6.3 Cable connection ... 457
12.6.4 Cable specifications ... 459
12.7 RS232 cable 9A0014.xx ... 460
12.7.1 Order data ... 460
12.7.2 Technical data ... 460
12.7.3 Cable specifications ... 461
12.8 USB cable 5CAUSB.00xx-00 ... 462
12.8.1 Order data ... 462
12.8.2 Technical data ... 462
12.8.3 Cable specifications ... 463
13. Uninterruptible power supply ... 464
13.1 Features ... 465
13.2 Requirements ... 465
13.3 Individual components ... 467
13.3.1 Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00 ... 467
13.3.2 Battery unit 5AC600.UPSB-00 ... 469
13.3.3 UPS connection cable ... 473
14. External UPS ... 474
14.1 General information ... 474
14.2 Order data ... 475
15. PCI Ethernet cards ... 476
15.1 PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH1-01 ... 476
15.1.1 Technical data ... 476
15.1.2 Driver support ... 477
15.1.3 Dimensions ... 477
15.2 PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH3-01 ... 478
15.2.1 Technical data ... 478
15.2.2 Driver support ... 479
15.2.3 Dimensions ... 479
16. Replacement fan filter ... 480
17. SRAM module - 5AC600.SRAM-00 ... 481
17.1 Technical data ... 481
17.2 Driver support ... 482
17.3 Installation ... 483
18. Power Supplies ... 484
18.1 Model numbers and brief technical overview ... 485
18.1.1 Single-phase power supplies ... 485
18.1.2 Three-phase power supplies ... 485

Chapter 7: Maintenance / Servicing ... 487

1. Changing the battery ... 487

1.1 Battery status evaluation 488
1.2 Procedure 488
2. Fan kit installation and replacement 490
2.1 Procedure for APC620 with 1 PCI slots 490
2.2 Procedure for APC620 with 2 PCI slots 493
2.3 Procedure for APC620 with 3 PCI slots 496
2.4 Procedure for APC620 with 5 PCI slots 500
3. Slide-in drive - installation and exchange 505
3.1 Installation procedure 505
3.2 Exchange procedure 506
4. Installation of the UPS module 508
4.1 Automation PC 620 without add-on interface module 508
4.1.1 APC620, 1 PCI slot 508
4.1.2 APC620, 2 PCI slot 511
4.1.3 APC620, 5 PCI slot 514
4.2 Automation PC 620 with add-on interface module 517
4.2.1 APC620, 1 PCI slot 517
4.2.2 APC620, 2 PCI slot 519
4.2.3 APC620, 5 PCI slot 522
5. Mounting the side cover 525
5.1 APC620 with 1 PCI slot 525
5.2 APC620 with 2 PCI slot 526
5.3 APC620 with 3 PCI slot 527
5.4 APC620 with 5 PCI slot 528
6. Exchanging a PCI SATA RAID hard disk 529
7. Replacing the front cover 531
7.1 Variation A - Front cover screwed-in 531
7.2 Variation B - Front cover attached without screws 533

Appendix A 535
1. Temperature sensor locations 535
2. Connection of an external device to the main board 536
3. Maintenance Controller Extended (MTCX) 537
3.1 SDL timing 538
3.2 Temperature monitoring - Fan control 540
4. B&R Key Editor information 541
5. B&R Automation Device Interface (ADI) development kit 543
6. Glossary 545

Chapter 1 • General information

Information:

B&R does its best to keep the printed versions of its user's manuals as current as possible. However, any newer versions of the User's Manual can always be downloaded in electronic form (pdf) from the B&R homepage www.br-automation.com.

1. Manual history

Version	Date	Change
1.00	Oct 7, .2009	- First version
1.05	Dec 10, 2009	- Information in section 7 "Known problems / issues" on page 261 expanded. - Section 12 "Cables" on page 436 corrected. - 16 GB B&R CompactFlash 5CFCRD.016G-04 added. - Section 1 "Temperature sensor locations" on page 535 corrected.

Table 1: Manual history

2. Safety guidelines

2.1 Intended use

Programmable logic controllers (PLCs), operating and monitoring devices (industrial PCs, Power Panels, Mobile Panels, etc.), and B&R uninterruptible power supplies have been designed, developed, and manufactured for conventional use in industry. They were not designed, developed, and manufactured for any use involving serious risks or hazards that could lead to death, injury, serious physical damage, or loss of any kind without the implementation of exceptionally stringent safety precautions. In particular, such risks and hazards include the use of these devices to monitor nuclear reactions in nuclear power plants, as well as flight control systems, flight safety, the control of mass transit systems, medical life support systems and the control of weapons systems.

2.2 Protection against electrostatic discharges

Electrical components that are vulnerable to electrostatic discharge (ESD) must be handled accordingly.

2.2.1 Packaging

- Electrical components with housing
  … do not require special ESD packaging, but must be handled properly
  (see "Electrical components with housing").
- Electrical components without housing
  … must be protected by ESD-suitable packaging.

2.2.2 Guidelines for proper ESD handling

Electrical components with housing

- Do not touch the connector contacts on connected cables.
- Do not touch the contact tips on the circuit boards.

Electrical components without housing

The following is valid in addition to "Electrical components with housing"

- Any persons handling electrical components or devices that will be installed in the electrical components must be grounded.
- Components can only be touched on the small sides or on the front plate.
- Components should always be stored in a suitable medium (ESD packaging, conductive foam, etc.).
  Metallic surfaces are not suitable storage surfaces!

- Electrostatic discharges should be avoided on the components (e.g. through charged plastics).
- A minimum distance of 10 cm must be kept from monitors and TV sets.
- Measurement devices and equipment must be grounded.
- Measurement probes on potential-free measurement devices must be discharged on sufficiently grounded surfaces before taking measurements.

Individual components

- ESD protective measures for individual components are thoroughly integrated at B&R (conductive floors, footwear, arm bands, etc.).

The increased ESD protective measures for individual components are not necessary for our customers for handling B&R products.

2.3 Policy and procedures

Electronic devices are generally not failsafe. In the event of a failure on the programmable control system, operating or monitoring device, or uninterruptible power supply, the user is responsible for ensuring that other devices that may be connected, e.g. motors, are in a secure state.

Both when using programmable logic controllers and when using operating and monitoring devices as control systems in conjunction with a soft PLC (e.g. B&R Automation Runtime or comparable products) or a slot PLC (e.g. B&R LS251 or comparable products), the safety precautions applying to industrial control systems (e.g. the provision of safety devices such as emergency stop circuits, etc.) must be observed in accordance with applicable national and international regulations. The same applies for all other devices connected to the system, such as drives.

All tasks such as installation, commissioning, and maintenance are only permitted to be carried out by qualified personnel. Qualified personnel are persons who are familiar with the transport, mounting, installation, commissioning, and operation of the product and who have the appropriate qualifications (e.g. IEC 60364). National accident prevention guidelines must be followed.
The safety guidelines, connection descriptions (rating plate and documentation) and limit values listed in the technical data must be read carefully and must be observed before installation and commissioning.

2.4 Transport and storage

During transport and storage, devices must be protected from excessive stress (mechanical load, temperature, humidity, aggressive atmospheres, etc.).

2.5 Installation

- Installation must take place according to the documentation, using suitable equipment and tools.
- Devices must be installed without voltage applied and by qualified personnel.
- General safety regulations and nationally applicable accident prevention guidelines must be observed.
- Electrical installation must be carried out according to the relevant guidelines (e.g. line cross section, fuse, protective ground connection).

2.6 Operation

2.6.1 Protection against touching electrical parts

To operate programmable logic controllers, operating and monitoring devices, and uninterruptible power supplies, certain components must carry dangerous voltage levels of over 42 VDC. A life-threatening electrical shock could occur if you come into contact with these parts. This could result in death, severe injury or material damage.

Before turning on the programmable logic controller, the operating and monitoring devices and the uninterruptible power supply, ensure that the housing is properly grounded (PE rail). The ground connection must be established when testing the operating and monitoring devices or the uninterruptible power supply, even when operating them for only a short time.

Before turning the device on, make sure that all parts with voltage applied are securely covered. During operation, all covers must remain closed.

2.6.2 Environmental conditions - dust, humidity, aggressive gases

Use of operating and monitoring devices (e.g. industrial PCs, power panels, mobile panels, etc.) and uninterruptible power supplies in very dusty environments should be avoided. Dust collection on the devices influences their function and, especially in systems with active cooling (fans), sufficient cooling cannot be guaranteed.

The presence of aggressive gases in the environment can also lead to malfunctions. When combined with high temperature and humidity, aggressive gases - e.g. with sulfur, nitrogen and chlorine components - start chemical processes that can damage electronic components very quickly. Signs of the presence of aggressive gases are blackened copper surfaces and cable ends on existing installations.

For operation in dusty or humid conditions, correctly installed (cutout installation) operating and monitoring devices such as Automation Panel or Power Panel are protected on the front side. The rear side of all devices must be protected from dust and humidity and must be cleaned at suitable intervals.

2.6.3 Programs, viruses and dangerous programs

The system is subject to potential danger each time data is exchanged or software is installed from a data medium (e.g. diskette, CD-ROM, USB flash drive, etc.), a network connection, or the Internet. The user is responsible for assessing these dangers, implementing preventative measures such as virus protection programs, firewalls, etc. and obtaining software from reliable sources.

2.7 Environmentally-friendly disposal

All B&R programmable controllers, operating and monitoring devices, and uninterruptible power supplies are designed to inflict as little harm on the environment as possible.

2.7.1 Separation of materials

It is necessary to separate different materials so the device can undergo an environmentally-friendly recycling process.

Component	Disposal
Programmable logic controllers Operating and monitoring devices Uninterruptible power supply Cables	Electronics recycling
Cardboard box / paper packaging	Paper / cardboard recycling
Plastic packaging	Plastic recycling

Table 2: Environmentally-friendly separation of materials

Disposal must comply with the respective legal regulations.

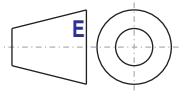
3. Organization of safety notices

The safety notices in this manual are organized as follows:

Safety notice	Description
Danger!	Disregarding the safety regulations and guidelines can be life-threatening.
Caution!	Disregarding the safety regulations and guidelines can result in severe injury or major damage to material.
Warning!	Disregarding the safety regulations and guidelines can result in injury or damage to material.
Information:	Important information for preventing errors.

Table 3: Organization of safety notices

4. Guidelines



European dimension standards apply to all dimensions (e.g. dimension diagrams, etc.).

5. Model numbers

5.1 System units

Model number	Short description	Note
5PC600.SX01-00	**System 1 PCI** APC620 system unit 1 half size PCI slot, connection for 2 x RS232, 2 x USB 2.0, Short Display Link, 2 x ETH 10/100, AC97 sound, PS/2 keyboard/mouse; UPS module[1] ; 24 VDC (order 0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp terminals separately).	See page 46
5PC600.SX02-00	**System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot** APC620 system unit 2 half size PCI slots, 1 drive slot, 1 slot for Automation Panel link transmitter; connections for 2 x RS232, 2 x USB 2.0, Short Display Link, 2 x ETH 10/100, AC97 sound, PS/2 keyboard/mouse, UPS module[2] ; 24 VDC (order 0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp terminals separately).	See page 51
5PC600.SX02-01	**System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot** APC620 system unit 2 half size PCI slots, 1 drive slot; connections for 2 x RS232, 2 x USB 2.0, Short Display Link, 2 x ETH 10/100, AC97 sound, PS/2 keyboard/mouse, UPS module[1] ; 24 VDC (0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp sold separately).	See page 51
5PC600.SF03-00	**System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive, 1 AP Link slot** APC620 system unit, 3 full-size PCI slots; 1 slot for Automation Panel link transmitter; 1 drive slot; Smart Display Link / DVI / monitor, connections for 2 x RS232, 2 x USB 2.0, 2 x ETH 10/100, AC97 sound, PS/2 keyboard/mouse; 24 VDC (0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp sold separately).	See page 56
5PC600.SX05-00	**System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot** APC620 system unit 5 half size PCI slots, 2 drive slot; 1 slot for Automation Panel Link Transmitter; connections for 2 x RS232, 2 x USB 2.0, Short Display Link, 2 x ETH 10/100, AC97 sound, PS/2 keyboard/mouse, UPS module[3] ; 24 VDC (0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp sold separately).	See page 61
5PC600.SX05-01	**System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots** APC620 system unit 5 half size PCI slots, 2 drive slots; connections for 2 x RS232, 2 x USB 2.0, Short Display Link, 2 x ETH 10/100, AC97 sound, PS/2 keyboard/mouse, UPS module[3] ; 24 VDC (0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp sold separately).	See page 61
5PC600.SE00-00	**APC620e System SDL EPL X2X CAN 512kB** APC620 embedded system unit, connections for 2x RS232, 4x USB 2.0, Smart Display Link, 1x ETH 10/100, 1x POWERLINK, 1x CAN, 1x X2X, UPS module, 512kB SRAM; (0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp sold separately).	See page 66
5PC600.SE00-01	**APC620e System CRT EPL X2X CAN 512KB** APC620 embedded system unit, connections for 2x RS232, 4x USB 2.0, CRT, 1x ETH 10/100, 1x POWERLINK, 1x CAN, 1x X2X, UPS module, 512kB SRAM; (0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp sold separately).	See page 66
5PC600.SE00-02	**APC620e System SDL EPL X2X CAN 1MB** APC620 embedded system unit, connections for 2x RS232, 4x USB 2.0, Smart Display Link, 1x ETH 10/100, 1x POWERLINK, 1x CAN, 1x X2X, UPS module, 1MB SRAM; (0TB103.9 screw clamp or 0TB103.91 cage clamp sold separately).	See page 66

Table 4: Model numbers - System units

1) Slot only available on system units with revision H0 or later.
2) Slot only available on system units with revision G0 or later.
3) Slot only available on system units with revision F0 or later.

5.2 X945 CPU boards

Model number	Short description	Note
5PC600.X945-00	**X945 CPU board** CPU board Intel Atom, 1600 MHz, 533 MHz FSB, 512 KB L2 cache; chipset 945GME; 1 socket for an SO-DIMM DDR2 RAM module.	See page 156

Table 5: Model numbers - X945 CPU boards

5.3 Heat sink

Model number	Short description	Note
5AC600.HS01-03	**APC620 heat sink X945 12.8 mm** For APC620 system units with X945 CPU boards.	See page 158
5AC600.HS02-03	**APC620f heat sink X945 12.8 mm** For APC620 full-size system units with X945 CPU boards.	See page 158
5AC600.HS03-02	**APC620e heat sink X945 12.8 mm** For APC620 embedded system units with X945 CPU boards.	See page 158

Table 6: Model numbers - Heat sinks

5.4 Main memory

Model number	Short description	Note
5MMDDR.0512-01	**SO-DIMM DDR2 512MB PC2-5300**	See page 159
5MMDDR.1024-01	**SO-DIMM DDR2 1024MB PC2-5300**	See page 159
5MMDDR.2048-01	**SO-DIMM DDR2 2048MB PC2-5300**	See page 159

Table 7: Model numbers - Main memory

5.5 Drives

Model number	Short description	Note
5AC600.HDDI-05	**Add-on hard disk 40 GB, 24x7, ET** 40 GB hard disk (add-on); Suitable for 24 hour operation (24x7) as well as for operation in the extended temperature range (ET). For installation in an APC620 or PPC700.	See page 160
5AC600.HDDI-06	**Add-on hard disk 80 GB, 24x7, ET** 80 GB hard disk (add-on); Suitable for 24 hour operation (24x7) as well as for operation in the extended temperature range (ET). For installation in an APC620 or PPC700.	See page 163
5AC600.CFSI-00	**Add-on CompactFlash slot** CompactFlash slot (add-on); for installation in an APC620 or PPC700.	See page 166
5AC600.FDDS-00	**Slide-in USB floppy disk drive** FDD drive (slide-in); for operation in a slide-in drive slot in an APC620 or PPC700 system.	See page 167
5ACPCI.RAIC-03	**PCI SATA RAID system 2 x 160 GB 24x7, ET** PCI Raid controller + 2 x 160 GB SATA hard disk; Suitable for 24 hour operation (24x7) as well as for operation in the extended temperature range (ET). Requires a free PCI slot.	See page 171

Table 8: Model numbers - Drives

Model number	Short description	Note
5ACPCI.RAIC-04	**Replacement SATA-HDD 160 GB** 1 piece Hard disk 160 GB SATA, replacement part for 5ACPCI.RAIC-03	See page 176

Table 8: Model numbers - Drives (cont.)

5.6 Interface options

Model number	Short description	Note
5AC600.CANI-00	**Add-on CAN interface** CAN interface for installation in an APC620 or PPC700.	See page 179
5AC600.485I-00	**Add-on RS232/422/485 interface** Add-on RS232/422/485 interface for installation in an APC620 and PPC700.	See page 183

Table 9: Model numbers - Interfaces

5.7 Fan kits

Model number	Short description	Note
5PC600.FA01-00	**Fan kit 1PCI** APC620 fan kit, for system units with 1 PCI slot.	See page 187
5PC600.FA02-00	**Fan kit 2PCI** APC620 fan kit + filter clasp for system units with 2 PCI slots.	See page 188
5PC600.FA03-00	**Fan kit 3PCI** APC620 fan kit + filter clasp for system units with 3 PCI slots.	See page 190
5PC600.FA05-00	**Fan kit 5PCI** APC620 fan kit + filter clasp for system units with 5 PCI slots.	See page 191

Table 10: Model numbers - Fan kits

5.8 AP Link cards

Model number	Short description	Note
5AC600.SDL0-00	**AP Link SDL transmitter** APC620 Smart Display Link Transmitter, to connect an Automation Panel via SDL to an APC620.	See page 193

Table 11: Model numbers - AP Link graphics adapter

5.9 Accessories

5.9.1 Supply voltage connectors

Model number	Short description	Note
0TB103.9	**Plug 24V 5.08 3-pin screw clamps** 24 VDC 3-pin connector, female. Screw clamp, 3.31mm²; protected against vibration by the screw flange.	See page 407
0TB103.91	**Plug 24V 5.08 3-pin cage clamps** 24 VDC 3-pin connector, female. cage clamps, 3.31mm²; protected against vibration by the screw flange.	See page 407

Table 12: Model numbers - Supply voltage connectors

5.9.2 X2X and CAN plugs

Model number	Short description	Note
0TB704.9	**Terminal block, 4-pin,** Screw clamp, 1.5 mm²	See page 409
0TB704.91	**Terminal block, 4-pin,** Cage clamps, 2.5 mm²	See page 409

Table 13: Model numbers - X2X and CAN plug

5.9.3 Batteries

Model number	Short description	Note
0AC201.91	**Lithium batteries, 4 pcs**. Lithium batteries, 4 pcs., 3 V / 950 mAh, button cell	See page 410
4A0006.00-000	**Lithium battery (1x)** Lithium batteries, 1 pcs., 3 V / 950 mAh, button cell	See page 410

Table 14: Model numbers - Batteries

5.9.4 CompactFlash cards

Model number	Short description	Note
5CFCRD.0512-04	**CompactFlash 512 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 512 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 413

Table 15: Model numbers - CompactFlash cards

Model number	Short description	Note
5CFCRD.1024-04	**CompactFlash 1024 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 1024 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 413
5CFCRD.2048-04	**CompactFlash 2048 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 2048 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 413
5CFCRD.4096-04	**CompactFlash 4096 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 4096 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 413
5CFCRD.8192-04	**CompactFlash 8192 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 8192 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 413
5CFCRD.0064-03	**CompactFlash 64 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 64 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418
5CFCRD.0128-03	**CompactFlash 128 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 128 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418
5CFCRD.0256-03	**CompactFlash 256 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 256 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418
5CFCRD.0512-03	**CompactFlash 512 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 512 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418
5CFCRD.1024-03	**CompactFlash 1024 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 1024 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418
5CFCRD.2048-03	**CompactFlash 2048 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 2048 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418
5CFCRD.4096-03	**CompactFlash 4096 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 4096 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418
5CFCRD.8192-03	**CompactFlash 8192 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 8192 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	See page 418

Table 15: Model numbers - CompactFlash cards (cont.)

5.9.5 USB flash drives

Model number	Short description	Note
5MMUSB.2048-00	**USB flash drive 2 GB SanDisk** USB 2.0 flash drive 2 GB	See page 429

Table 16: Model numbers - USB flash drives

5.9.6 Cables

Model number	Description	Note
5CADVI.0018-00	**DVI-D cable 1.8 m** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 1.8 m	See page 437
5CADVI.0050-00	**DVI-D cable 5 m** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 5 m	See page 437
5CADVI.0100-00	**DVI-D cable 10 m** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 10 m	See page 437
5CAMSC.0001-00	**APC620 internal supply cable**	See page 436

Table 17: Model numbers - Cables

Model number	Description	Note
5CASDL.0018-00	**SDL cable 1.8 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 1.8 m	See page 440
5CASDL.0018-01	**SDL cable 1.8 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 1.8 m	See page 445
5CASDL.0018-03	**1.8 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 1.8 m	See page 449
5CASDL.0050-00	**SDL cable 5 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 5 m	See page 440
5CASDL.0050-01	**SDL cable 5 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 5 m	See page 445
5CASDL.0050-03	**5 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 5 m	See page 449
5CASDL.0100-00	**SDL cable 10 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 10 m	See page 440
5CASDL.0100-01	**SDL cable 10 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 10 m	See page 445
5CASDL.0100-03	**10 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 10 m	See page 449
5CASDL.0150-00	**SDL cable 15 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 15 m	See page 440
5CASDL.0150-01	**SDL cable 15 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 15 m	See page 445
5CASDL.0150-03	**15 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 15 m	See page 449
5CASDL.0200-00	**SDL cable 20 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 20 m	See page 440
5CASDL.0200-03	**20 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 20 m	See page 449
5CASDL.0250-00	**SDL cable 25 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 25 m	See page 440
5CASDL.0250-03	**25 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 25 m	See page 449
5CASDL.0300-00	**SDL cable 30 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 30 m	See page 440
5CASDL.0300-03	**30 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 30 m	See page 449
5CASDL.0300-13	**30 m SDL flex cable with extender** SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 30 m	See page 454
5CASDL.0400-13	**40 m SDL flex cable with extender** SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 40 m	See page 454
5CAUSB.0018-00	**USB 2.0 cable, A/m:B/m 1.8 m** USB 2.0 connection cable; plug type A - type B; length 1.8 m	See page 462
5CAUSB.0050-00	**USB 2.0 cable, A/m:B/m 5 m** USB 2.0 connection cable; plug type A - type B; length 5 m	See page 462
9A0014.02	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 1.8 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 1.8 m.	See page 460

Table 17: Model numbers - Cables (cont.)

Model number	Description	Note
9A0014.05	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 5 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 5 m.	See page 460
9A0014.10	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 10 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 10 m.	See page 460

Table 17: Model numbers - Cables (cont.)

5.9.7 UPS module + accessories

Model number	Short description	Note
5AC600.UPSI-00	**Add-on UPS module** UPS module for APC620 / APC810 system units 5PC600.SX01-00 (Rev. H0 and up), 5PC600.SX02-00 (Rev. G0 and up), 5PC600.SX02-01 (Rev. H0 and up), 5PC600.SX05-00 (Rev. F0 and up), 5PC600.SX05-01 (Rev. F0), 5PC600.SF03-00 (Rev. A0 and up), 5PC600.SE00-00 (Rev. A0), 5PC600.SE00-01 (Rev. A0 and up), 5PC600.SE00-02 (Rev. A0 and up), 5PC810.SX*. Order cable (5CAUPS.0005-00 or 5CAUPS.0030-00) and battery unit (5AC600.UPSB-00) separately.	See page 467
5AC600.UPSB-00	**Battery unit 5 Ah** UPS battery unit for the add-on UPS module	See page 469
5CAUPS.0005-00	**APC620 UPS cable 0.5 m** Connection cable between add-on UPS module and UPS battery unit, length 0.5 meters	See page 473
5CAUPS.0030-00	**APC620 UPS cable 3 m** Connection cable between add-on UPS module and UPS battery unit, length 3 meters	See page 473

Table 18: Model numbers - UPS module + accessories

5.9.8 PCI Ethernet cards

Model number	Short description	Note
5ACPCI.ETH1-01	**PCI Ethernet card 10/100** half size PCI Ethernet card, 1 Ethernet connection	See page 476
5ACPCI.ETH3-01	**PCI Ethernet card 10/100 3port** half size PCI Ethernet card, 3 Ethernet connections	See page 478

Table 19: Model numbers - PCI Ethernet cards

5.9.9 Miscellaneous

Model number	Short description	Note
5A5003.03	**Front cover** Front cover for the USB 2.0 Media Drive 5MD900.USB2-00.	See page 427
5AC600.ICOV-00	**Interface covers** Interface covers for APC620 and PPC700 devices; 5 pieces	See page 411
5AC900.1000-00	**Adapter DVI-A/m to CRT DB15HD/f** Adapter DVI (plug) to CRT (socket), for connecting a standard monitor to a DVI-I interface.	See page 412
5AC600.SRAM-00	**APC620/PPC700 SRAM module 512kB** SRAM module for APC620 and PPC700 512 KB.	See page 481

Table 20: Model numbers - Other items

Model number	Short description	Note
5MD900.USB2-01	**USB 2.0 drive DVD-RW/CD-RW FDD CF USB** USB 2.0 drive combination, consists of DVD-R/RW/DVD+R/RW/CD-RW, FDD, CompactFlash slot (type II), USB connection (type A front, type B back); 24 V DC.	See page 422
5AC600.FA01-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system unit with 1 PCI Slot (5PC600.SX01-00).	See page 480
5AC600.FA02-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system unit with 2 PCI slot (5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX02-01).	See page 480
5AC600.FA03-00	**APC620f replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system unit with 3 PCI Slots (5PC600.SF03-00).	See page 480
5AC600.FA05-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system units with 5 PCI slot (5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX02-01).	See page 480
0PS102.0	**Power supply, 1-phase, 2.1 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 2.1 A, input 100-240 VAC, wide range, DIN rail installation	See page 484
0PS104.0	**Power supply, 1-phase, 4.2 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 4.2 A, input 115/230 VAC, auto select, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS105.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 5 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 5 A, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS105.2	**Power supply, 1-phase, 5 A, redundant** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 5 A, redundant through parallel operation, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS110.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 10 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 10 A, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS110.2	**Power supply, 1-phase, 10 A, redundant** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 10 A, redundant through parallel operation, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS120.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 20 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 20 A, input 115/230 VAC, auto select, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS305.1	**Power supply, 3-phase, 5 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3-phase, 5 A, input 400..500 VAC (3 phases), wide range, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS310.1	**Power supply, 3-phase, 10 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3-phase, 10 A, input 400..500 VAC (3 phases), wide range, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS320.1	**Power supply, 3-phase, 20 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3-phase, 20 A, input 400..500 VAC (3 phases), wide range, DIN rail mounting	See page 484
0PS340.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 40 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3 phase, 40 A, input 115/230 VAC, auto select, DIN rail mounting	See page 484

Table 20: Model numbers - Other items (cont.)

5.10 Software

Model number	Short description	Note
5SWHMI.0000-00	**HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD** Contains drivers, utilities, software upgrades and user's manuals for B&R panel system products (see B&R homepage – Industrial PCs, Visualization and Operation).	See page 433
9S0000.01-010	**OEM MS-DOS 6.22 German (disk)** OEM MS-DOS 6.22 German disks Only delivered with a new PC.	See page 346
9S0000.01-020	**OEM MS-DOS 6.22 English (disk)** OEM MS-DOS 6.22 English disks Only delivered with a new PC.	See page 346
5SWWXP.0600-GER	**WinXP Professional with SP3, CD German** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 3, CD, German. Only available with a new device.	See page 348
5SWWXP.0600-ENG	**WinXP Professional with SP3, CD English** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 3, CD, English. Only available with a new device.	See page 348
5SWWXP.0600-MUL	**WinXP Professional with SP3, CD, Multi-language** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 3, CD, multi-language. Only available with a new device.	See page 348
5SWWXP.0500-GER	**WinXP Professional with SP2c, CD German** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2c, CD, German. Only available with a new device.	See page 348
5SWWXP.0500-ENG	**WinXP Professional with SP2c, CD English** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2c, CD, English. Only available with a new device.	See page 348
5SWWXP.0500-MUL	**WinXP Professional with SP2c, CD English** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2c, CD, multi-language. Only available with a new device.	See page 348
5SWWXP.0430-ENG	**WinXPe FP2007 APC620 945GME XTX** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Embedded Feature Pack 2007, English; for APC620 with CPU board 5PC600.X945-00; order CompactFlash separately (at least 512 MB).	See page 362
5SWWCE.0830-ENG	**WinCE6.0 Pro APC620 945GME XTX** Microsoft OEM Windows CE 6.0 Professional, English; for APC620 with CPU board 5PC600.X945-00; order CompactFlash separately (at least 128 MB).	See page 365

Table 21: Model numbers - Software

6. Typical topologies

6.1 APC620 embedded for central control and visualization

The control program runs on the APC620 embedded. The visualization project is integrated with Visual Components. A display unit is connected to the PC. The PC is networked via Ethernet TCP/IP; additional Power Panel-based operator terminals can also be connected via Ethernet. Communication to I/O systems with axes is handled via fieldbus systems (CAN bus, POWERLINK).

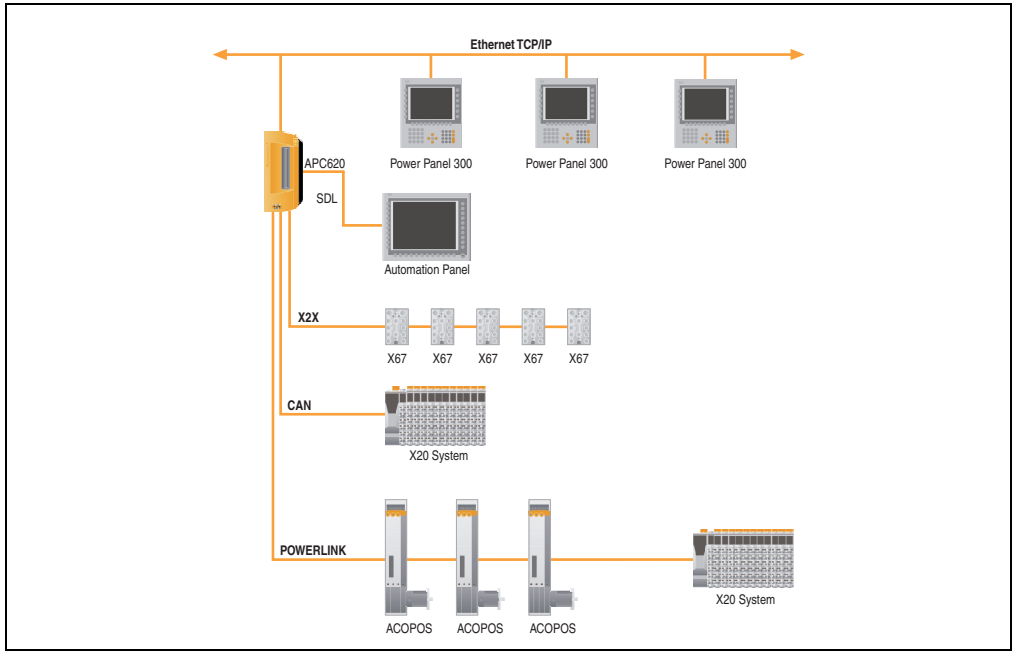


Figure 1: APC620 embedded for central control and visualization

6.2 APC620 as visualization device

The visualization runs on the APC620 as a SCADA application. Two display units are connected to the PC either locally or remotely. The control tasks interact with one or more underlying PLC stations where I/O systems and drives are connected locally or remotely over fieldbus systems. Additional SCADA stations can be networked via Ethernet TCP/IP.

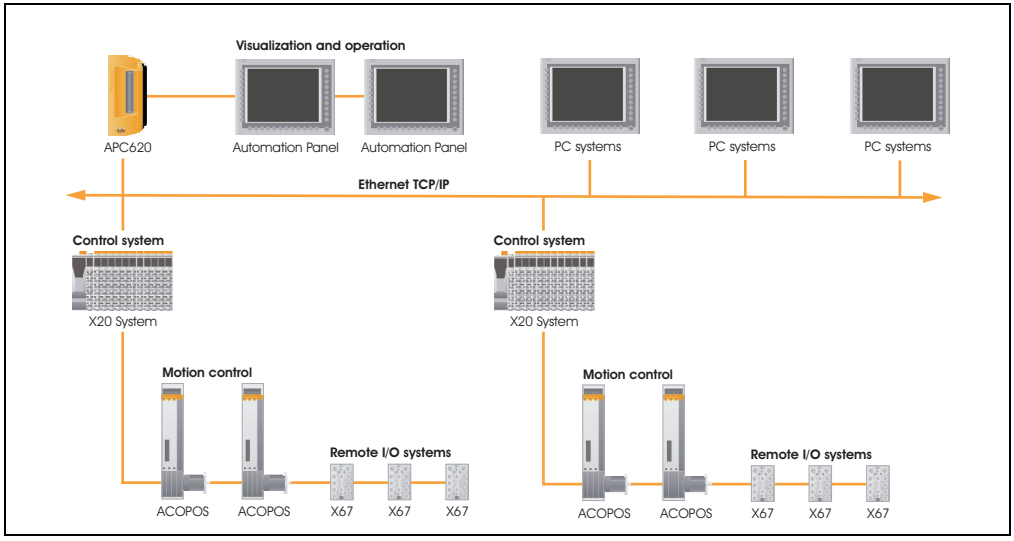


Figure 2: APC620 as visualization device

Chapter 2 • Technical data

1. Introduction

With its structure, its many slots and well thought-out placement of interfaces and drives, the APC620 provides optimal adaptability and ergonomics. The APC620 saves space in the switching cabinet. Drive inserts (HDD, USB floppy) and up to two CompactFlash slots are hidden behind a cover on the front of the device.
The APC620 embedded additionally unites the fieldbus interfaces POWERLINK, CAN and X2X in a compact housing.

Figure 3: Automation PC 620 system overview

The APC620 with an Intel® Atom™ processor and Intel® 945GME chipset is available for applications with low processing demands. These processors, developed specially for mobile computing, offer many advantages for industrial applications as well. They combine high computing capacity with low power consumption. The chipset contains an integrated graphic solution which provides optimal use of memory for the system and graphics.

1.1 Features

- Intel® Atom™ N270 1.6 GHz processor
- CompactFlash slot (type I)
- Half-size / full-size PCI slots (PCI standard 2.2, 32-bit, PCI bus speed 33 MHz)
- AC97 sound
- USB 2.0
- 24 VDC supply voltage
- 2x Ethernet 10/100 MBit interfaces
- 2x RS232 Interface, modem compatible
- PS/2 keyboard/mouse (combined)
- CAN interface option
- Fieldbus interfaces[1)] (POWERLINK, CAN and X2X)
- RS232/422/485 interface option
- Fan-free operation[2)]
- BIOS
- Real-time clock, (RTC) battery-buffered
- Up to 2 GB main memory
- Connection of various display devices to the "Monitor/Panel" video output (supports RGB, DVI, and SDL - Smart Display Link - signals)
- Optional installation of add-on UPS APC620 module[3)]
- Optional SRAM module[4)] battery backed

1) Only on APC620 embedded system units.

2) Dependent on the device configuration and the ambient temperature.

3) Installation depends on the revision of the system unit: 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision H0, 5PC600.SX02-00 starting with revision G0,
5PC600.SX02-01 starting with revision H0, 5PC600.SX05-00 starting with revision F0, 5PC600.SX05-01 starting with revision F0.

4) Installation depends on the revision of the system unit: 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision I0, 5PC600.SX02-00 starting with revision H0,
5PC600.SX02-01 starting with revision K0, 5PC600.SX05-00 starting with revision H0, 5PC600.SX05-01 starting with revision H0.

1.2 Structure / configuration APC620 with 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slots

The APC620 system can be assembled to meet individual requirements and operational conditions.

The following components are absolutely essential for operation:

- System unit
- CPU board
- Heat sink
- Main memory
- Drive (mass memory such as CompactFlash card or hard disk) for the operating system
- Software

1.2.1 Selection guide - Basic system

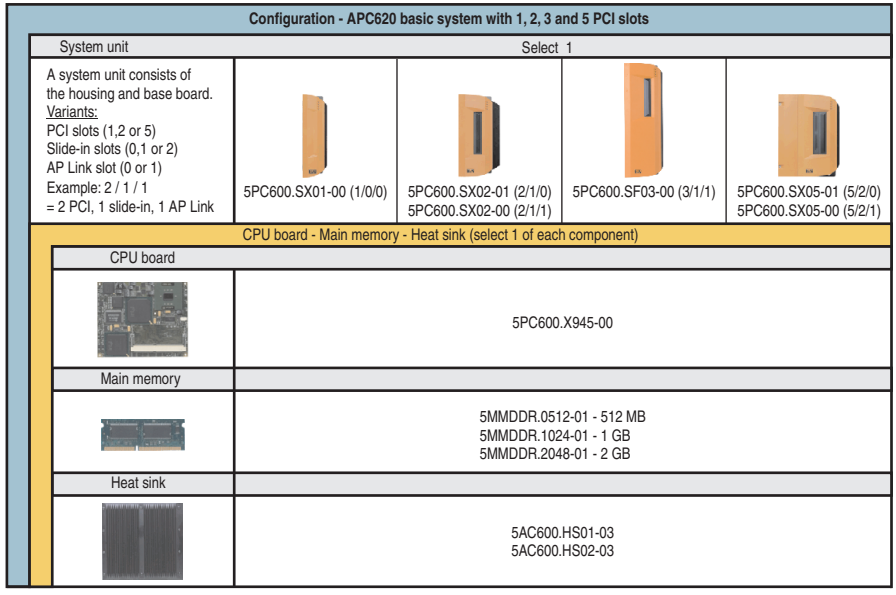


Figure 4: Selection guide - APC620 basic system with 1, 2, 3, and 5 PCI slots

1.2.2 Selection guide - Optional components

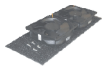
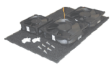
Configuration - Optional				
System unit				
The system unit consists of the housing and base board. Variants: PCI slots (1,2, 3 or 5) Slide-in slots (0,1 or 2) AP Link slots (0 or 1) Example: 2 / 1 / 1 = 2 PCI, 1 slide-in, 1 AP Link	 5PC600.SX01-00 (1/0/0)	 5PC600.SX02-01 (2/1/0) 5PC600.SX02-00 (2/1/1)	 5PC600.SF03-00 (3/1/1)	 5PC600.SX05-01 (5/2/0) 5PC600.SX05-00 (5/2/1)
Fan kit (select 1)				
A fan kit may be required for some system configurations	 5PC600.FA01-00	 5PC600.FA02-00	 5PC600.FA03-00	 5PC600.FA05-00
Add-on drive	**Select 1**			
	5AC600.HDDI-05 (40 GB HDD - 24x7 operation and extended temp. range) 5AC600.HDDI-06 (80 GB HDD - 24x7 operation and extended temperature range) 5AC600.CFSI-00 (CompactFlash slot)			
Slide-in drives	not possible	Select max. 1		Select max. 2
		5AC600.FDDS-00 (USB Floppy)		
AP Link insert cards	not possible	Select 1		
for a second graphics line		5AC600.SDL0-00 Only possible when using a 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 board.		
RAID system	**Select 1**			
	5ACPCI.RAIC-03 (occupies 1 PCI slot) 5ACPCI.RAIC-04 - replacement hard disk for 5ACPCI.RACI-03			
Optional interface	**Select 1**			
	5AC600.CANI-00 (CAN) 5AC600.485I-00 (combined RS232/RS422/RS485)			
UPS module	**Select 1**			
	5AC600.UPSI-00 (Add-on UPS modul) Can only be installed starting with the following system unit revisions: 5PC600.SX01-00 Rev. H0, 5PC600.SX02 Rev. G0, 5PC600.SX02-01 Rev. H0, 5PC600.SX05-00 Rev. F0, 5PC600.SX05-01 Rev. F0			
SRAM module	**Select 1**			
	5AC600.SRAM-00 (Add-On SRAM Modul 512kB) Can only be installed starting with the following system unit revisions: 5PC600.SX01-00 Rev. I0, 5PC600.SX02 Rev. H0, 5PC600.SX02-01 Rev. K0, 5PC600.SX05-00 Rev. H0, 5PC600.SX05-01 Rev. H0			
Supply voltage plugs	**Select 1**			
	0TB103.9 (screw clamp) 0TB103.91 (cage clamp)			

Figure 5: Selection guide - APC620 optional components with 1, 2, 3, and 5 PCI slots

Information:

- Depending on the system unit, a compatible fan kit can be installed in the APC620. Required for certain system configurations and ambient temperatures (see also section 2.6 "Ambient temperatures for systems with an X945 CPU board" on page 72)
- Select optional drive(s) (add-on / slide-in), based on the system unit. One add-on drive can be installed in each system unit. Slide-in drives (1 or 2) are only available in certain system units.
- AP Link cards create a second graphics line (possibility of extended desktop or display clone operation) on the APC620. Only possible with system units 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00, 5PC600.SF03-00 and with an X945 CPU board.
- An optional interface adds an additional connection possibility.
- Depending on the revision of the system unit (see graphic), an optional integrated UPS add-on module can be installed.
- Depending on the revision of the system unit (see graphic), an optional integrated SRAM module (battery backed) can be installed.
- The appropriate power supply plugs ensure simple connection to the power supply.

1.3 Structure / configuration APC620 embedded

The following components are absolutely essential for operation: System unit, CPU board, main memory and heat sink.

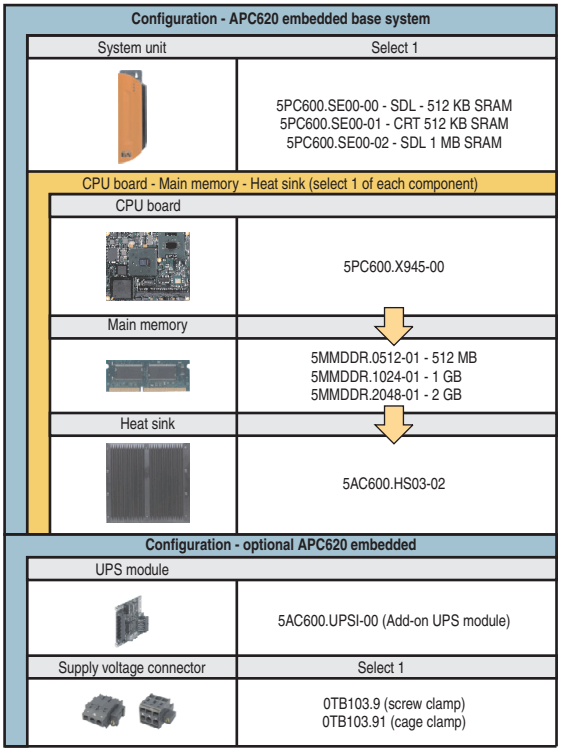


Figure 6: Selection guide - Basic system and optional components APC620 embedded

Explanation:

1) Select a system unit.
2) Select a CPU board.
3) Select main memory and heat sink (selection 1 each).
4) Select optional components.

2. Entire device

2.1 APC620, 1 PCI slot variant

2.1.1 Interfaces

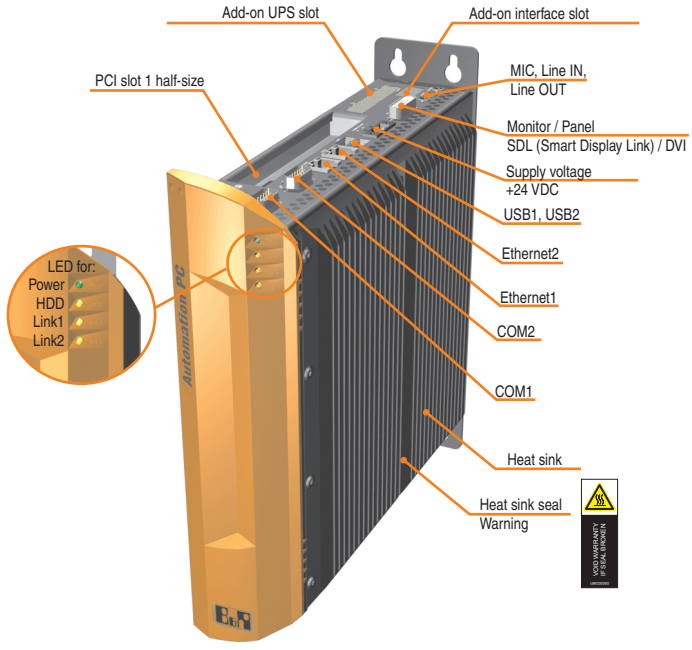


Figure 7: Interface overview - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant (top)

Warning!

Do not remove the mounting screws from the heat sink, as it is connected to the processor and chipset by a thermal coupling. Should this connection be broken, the APC620 must be sent for repair. Removal of the mounting screws, which can be determined by a broken seal, voids all warranty.

During operation, surface temperatures of the heat sink may reach 70°C (warning "hot surface").

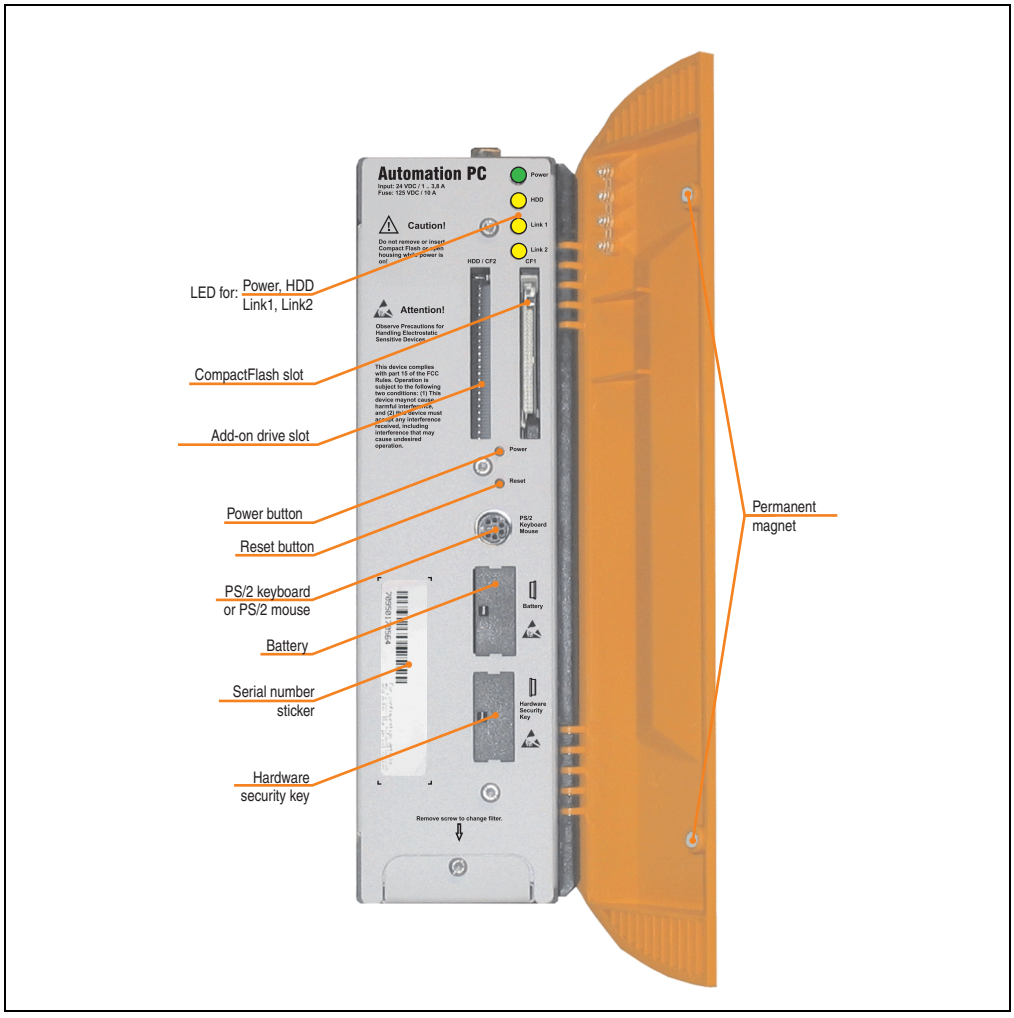


Figure 8: Interface overview - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant (front)

Information:

The orange front doors contain two permanent magnets. Contact between a data carrier that saves data magnetically (hard disk, diskette, the magnetic strip of a credit card, etc.) and a magnet can cause loss of data.

2.1.2 Technical data

Features	APC620, 1 PCI slot variant
Boot loader / Operating system	BIOS / see the chapter 4 "Software" on page 263
Processor Cooling Method	Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board Passive via heat sink and optionally supported with an active fan kit
Main memory	Max. 2 GB
Graphics Controller	 Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Power failure logic Controller Buffer time	 MTCX[1] (see also page 537) 10 ms, dependent on the system unit revision, TBD
Real-time clock Battery-buffered Accuracy	 Yes Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Battery Type Removable Lifespan	See also page 136 Renata 950 mAh Yes, accessible behind the orange cover 4 years [2) 3)]
Ethernet Controller Amount	 See also page 108 or page 110 2
CAN bus	optional with add-on interface option (5AC600.CANI-00)
CompactFlash Type Amount	See also page 130 or page 131 Type I 1 (max. 4 using optional components)
Serial interface Amount Type UART Transfer rate Connection	See also page 101 or page 102 2 RS232, modem-capable, not electrically isolated 16550 compatible, 16 byte FIFO Max. 115 kBaud 9-pin DSUB
USB interface Type Amount Transfer rate Connection Current load	See also section "USB port" on page 111 USB 2.0 2 Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), full speed (12 MBit/s), to high speed (480 Mbit/s) Type A Max. 500 mA per connection
Reset button	Yes, accessible behind the orange cover
LEDs	4 directed outwards via fiber optic lines, see also section "Status LEDs" on page 128
PCI slots half-size full-size	See also section "PCI slots" on page 125 1 -
Add-on UPS internal slot	Yes 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision H0 See also section "Add-on UPS module slot" on page 124
SRAM internal slot options	Yes 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision I0

Table 22: Technical data - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant

Electrical characteristics	APC620, 1 PCI slot variant
Power supply	
Rated voltage	24 VDC ±25%
Rated current	3.8 A
Starting current	Typ. 7 A, max. 40 A for < 300 µs
Power consumption	Component-dependent, see section 2.7 "Power management APC620 system unit with 1 PCI slot"
Mechanical characteristics	
Housing[4)]	
Material	Galvanized plate, plastic
Paint	Light gray (similar to Pantone 427CV), dark gray (similar to Pantone 432CV)
Front cover	Colored orange plastic (similar to Pantone 144CV)
Outer dimensions	See the section "Dimensions" on page 50.
Weight	Approx. 3.4 kg (component-dependent)
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature	
Operation	Component-dependent, see the section about ambient temperature on page 72
Storage	-20 to +60°C
Transport	-20 to +60°C
Relative humidity	
Operation	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Storage	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Transport	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Vibration[5)]	
Operation (continuous)	2 - 9 Hz: 1.75 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 0.5 g
Operation (occasional)	2 - 9 Hz: 3.5 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 1 g
Storage	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Transport	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Shock[5)]	
Operation	15 g, 11 ms
Storage	30 g, 15 ms
Transport	30 g, 15 ms
Protection type	IP20
Altitude	
Operation	Max. 3000 m[6)] (component-dependent)
Electromagnetic compatibility	
Emissions	
Network-related emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55022 A
Emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55011 class A, EN 55022 class A, EN 61131-2, 47 CFR Part 15
Immunity	
Electrostatic discharge (ESD)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-frequency electromagnetic fields	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-speed transient disturbances (Burst)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Surges	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Conducted values	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Voltage dips, interruptions	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Damped vibration	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024

Table 22: Technical data - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant (cont.)

1) Maintenance controller extended.

2) at 50°C, 8.5 µA of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%.
3) If an SRAM module (Mod.Nr. 5AC600.SRAM-00) is installed, the buffer duration is 2 1/2 years.
4) Depending on the process or batch, there may be visible deviations in the color and surface structure.
5) Maximum values, as long as no other individual component specify any other.
6) Derating the maximum ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

2.1.3 Dimensions

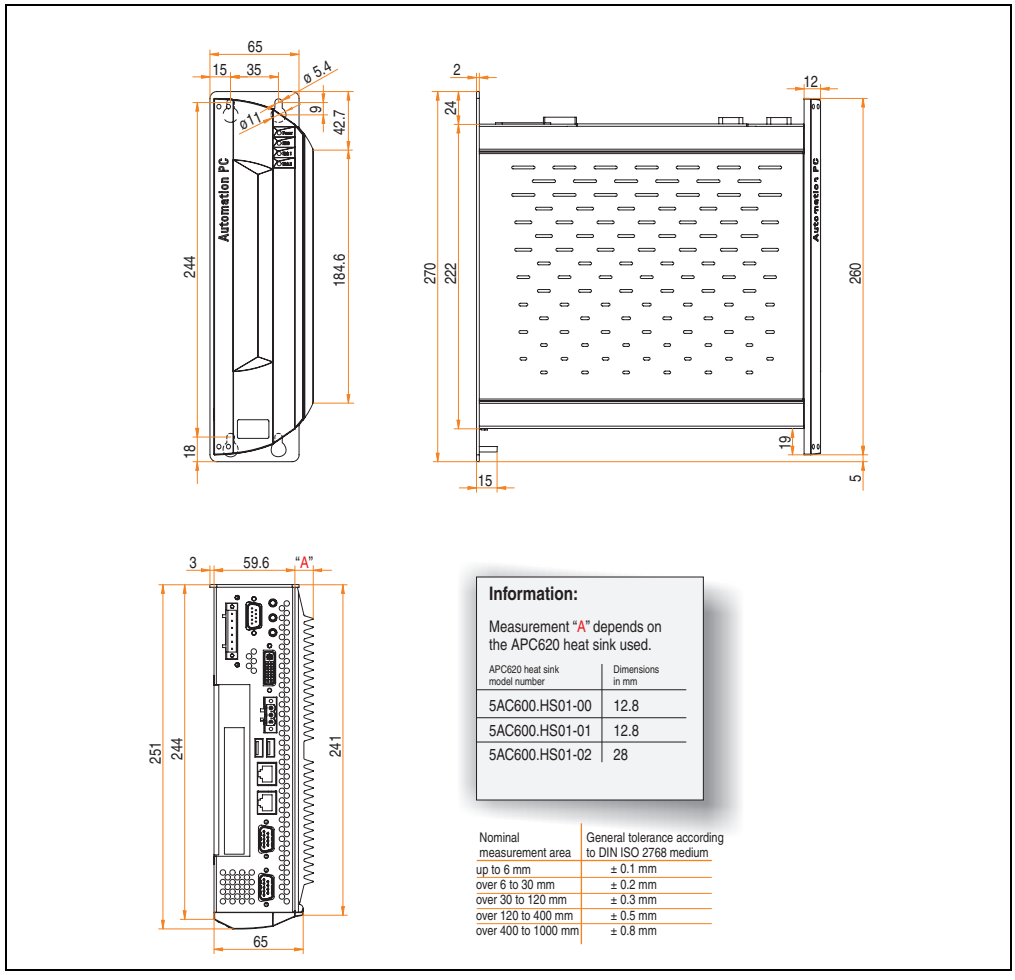
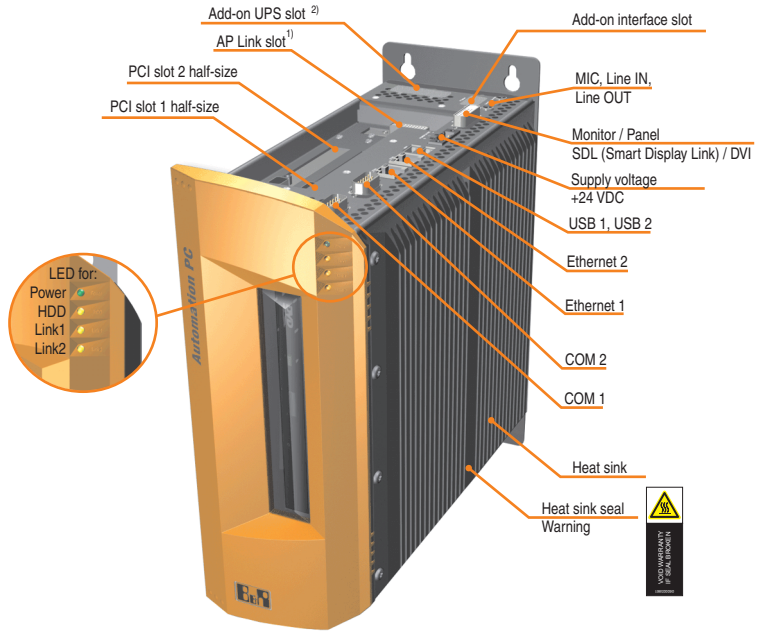


Figure 9: Dimensions - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant

2.2 APC620, 2 PCI slot variant

2.2.1 Interfaces



1) Can only be used with system unit 5PC600.SX02-00
2) Slot is standard starting with 5PC600.SX02-00, Rev. G0 and 5PC600.SX02-01 Rev. H0

Figure 10: Interface overview - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant (top)

Warning!

Do not remove mounting screws from the heat sink, as it is connected to the processor and chipset by a thermal coupling. Should this connection be broken, the APC620 must be sent for repair. Removal of the mounting screws, which can be determined by a broken seal, voids all warranty.

During operation, surface temperatures of the heat sink may reach 70°C (warning "hot surface").

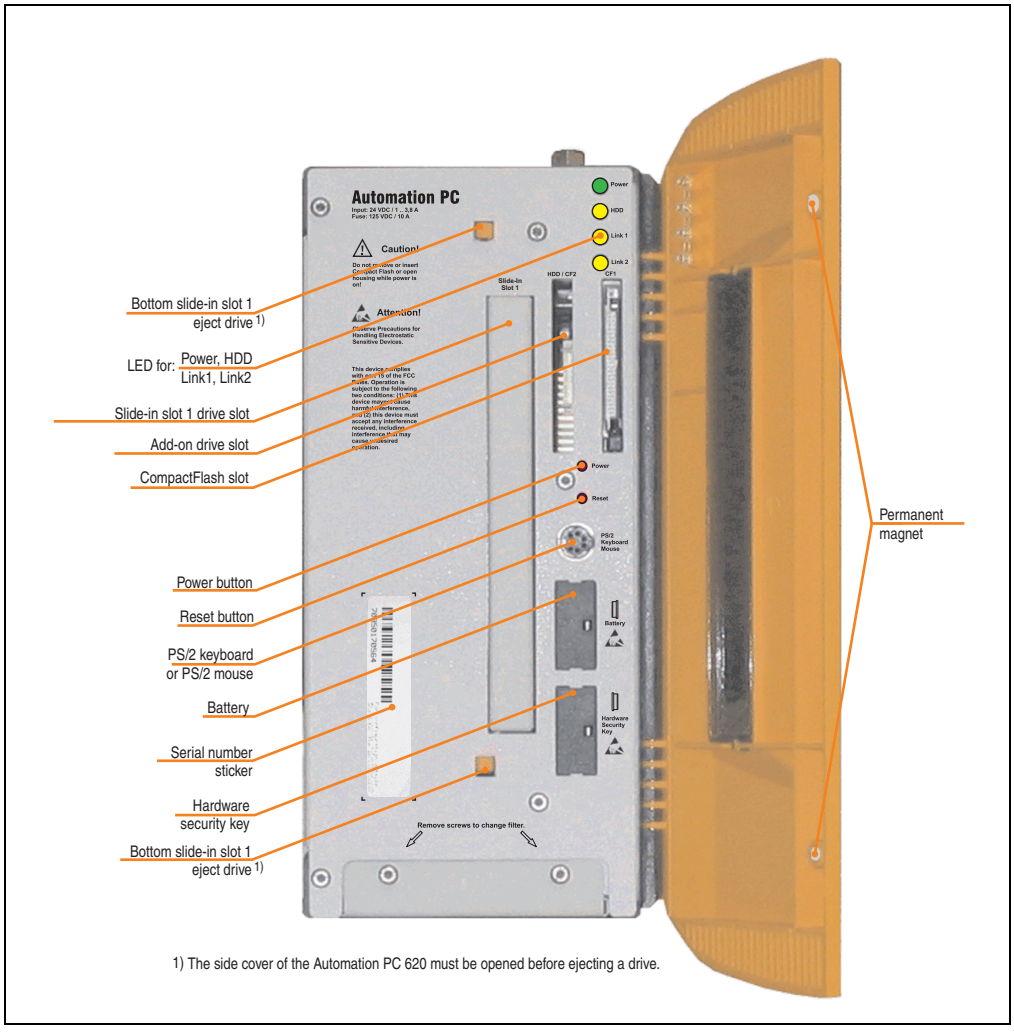


Figure 11: Interface overview - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant (front)

Information:

The orange front doors contain two permanent magnets. Contact between a data carrier that saves data magnetically (hard disk, diskette, the magnetic strip of a credit card, etc.) and a magnet can cause loss of data.

2.2.2 Technical data

Features	APC620, 2 PCI slot variant
Boot loader / Operating system	BIOS / see the chapter 4 "Software" on page 263
Processor Cooling Method	Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board Passive via heat sink and optionally supported with an active fan kit
Main memory	Max. 2 GB
Graphics Controller	 Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Power failure logic Controller Buffer time	 MTCX[1] (see also page 537) 10 ms, dependent on the system unit revision, TBD
Real-time clock Battery-buffered Accuracy	 Yes Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Battery Type Removable Lifespan	See also page 136 Renata 950 mAh Yes, accessible behind the orange cover 4 years [2] [3]
Ethernet Controller Amount	 See also page 108 or page 110 2
CAN bus	Optional with add-on interface (5AC600.CANI-00)
CompactFlash Type Amount	See also page 130 or page 131 Type I 2 (max. 4 using optional components)
Serial interface Amount Type UART Transfer rate Connection	See also page 101 or page 102 2 RS232, modem-capable, not electrically isolated 16550 compatible, 16 byte FIFO Max. 115 kBaud 9-pin DSUB
USB interface Type Amount Transfer rate Connection Current load	See also section "USB port" on page 111 USB 2.0 2 Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), full speed (12 MBit/s), to high speed (480 Mbit/s) Type A Max. 500 mA per connection
Reset button	Yes, accessible behind the orange cover
LEDs	4 directed outwards via fiber optic lines, see also section "Status LEDs" on page 128
PCI slots half-size full-size	See also section "PCI slots" on page 125 2 -
Add-on UPS internal slot	Yes 5PC600.SX02-00 starting with revision G0, 5PC600.SX02-01 starting with revision H0 present See also section "Add-on UPS module slot" on page 124
SRAM internal slot options	Yes 5PC600.SX02-00 starting with revision H0, 5PC600.SX02-01 starting with revision K0 present

Table 23: Technical data - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant

Electrical characteristics	APC620, 2 PCI slot variant
Power supply	
Rated voltage	24 VDC ±25%
Rated current	3.8 A
Starting current	Typ. 7 A, max. 40 A for < 300 µs
Power consumption	Component-dependent, see section 2.7 "Power management APC620 system unit with 1 PCI slot"
Mechanical characteristics	
Housing[4)]	
Material	Galvanized plate, plastic
Paint	Light gray (similar to Pantone 427CV), dark gray (similar to Pantone 432CV)
Front cover	Colored orange plastic (similar to Pantone 144CV)
Outer dimensions	See the section "Dimensions" on page 55.
Weight	Approx. 4.5 kg (component-dependent)
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature	
Operation	Component-dependent, see the section about ambient temperature on page 72
Storage	-20 to +60°C
Transport	-20 to +60°C
Relative humidity	
Operation	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Storage	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Transport	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Vibration[5)]	
Operation (continuous)	2 - 9 Hz: 1.75 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 0.5 g
Operation (occasional)	2 - 9 Hz: 3.5 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 1 g
Storage	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Transport	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Shock[5)]	
Operation	15 g, 11 ms
Storage	30 g, 15 ms
Transport	30 g, 15 ms
Protection type	IP20
Altitude	
Operation	Max. 3000 m[6)] (component-dependent)
Electromagnetic compatibility	
Emissions	
Network-related emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55022 A
Emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55011 class A, EN 55022 class A, EN 61131-2, 47 CFR Part 15
Immunity	
Electrostatic discharge (ESD)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-frequency electromagnetic fields	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-speed transient disturbances (Burst)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Surges	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Conducted values	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Voltage dips, interruptions	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Damped vibration	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024

Table 23: Technical data - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant (cont.)

1) Maintenance controller extended.

2) at 50°C, 8.5 µA of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%.
3) If an SRAM module (Mod.Nr. 5AC600.SRAM-00) is installed, the buffer duration is 2 1/2 years.
4) Depending on the process or batch, there may be visible deviations in the color and surface structure.
5) Maximum values, as long as no other individual component specify any other.
6) Derating the maximum ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

2.2.3 Dimensions

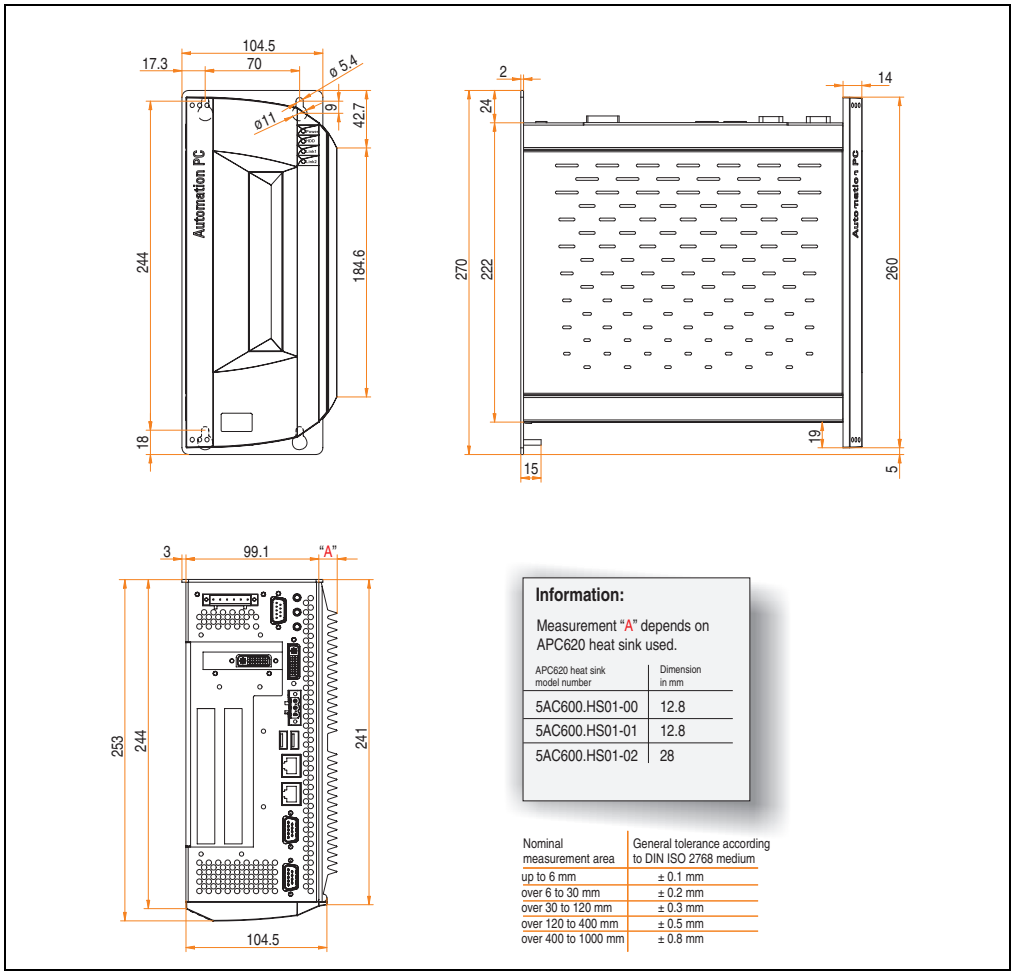


Figure 12: Dimensions - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant

2.3 APC620, 3 PCI slot variant

2.3.1 Interfaces

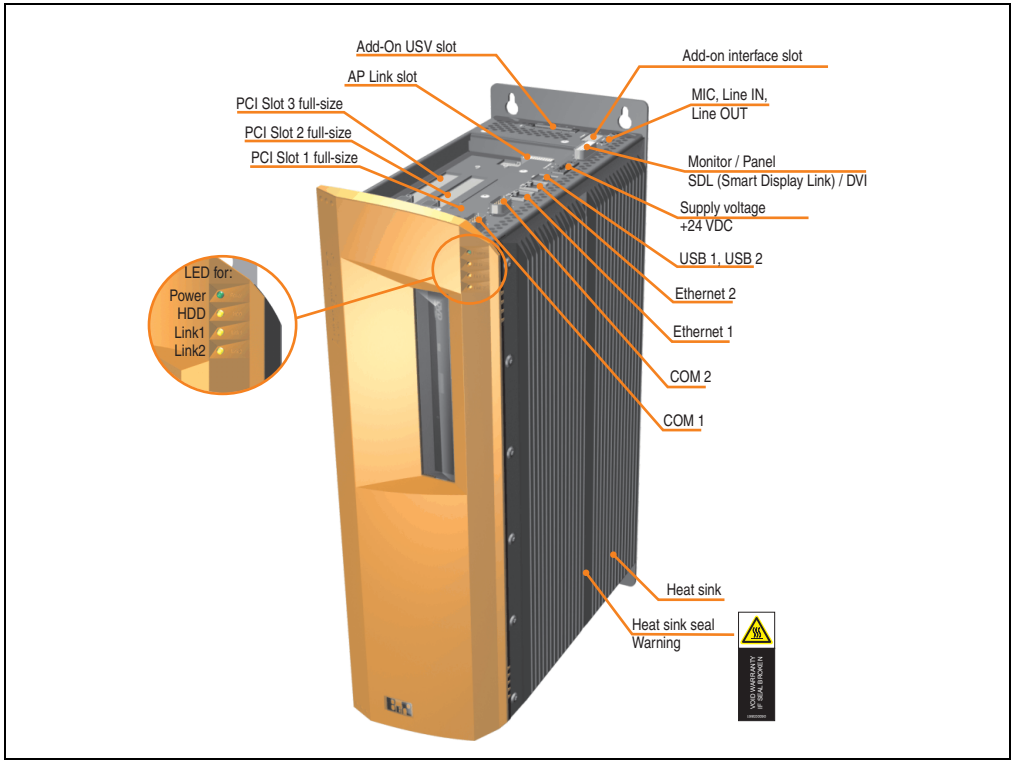
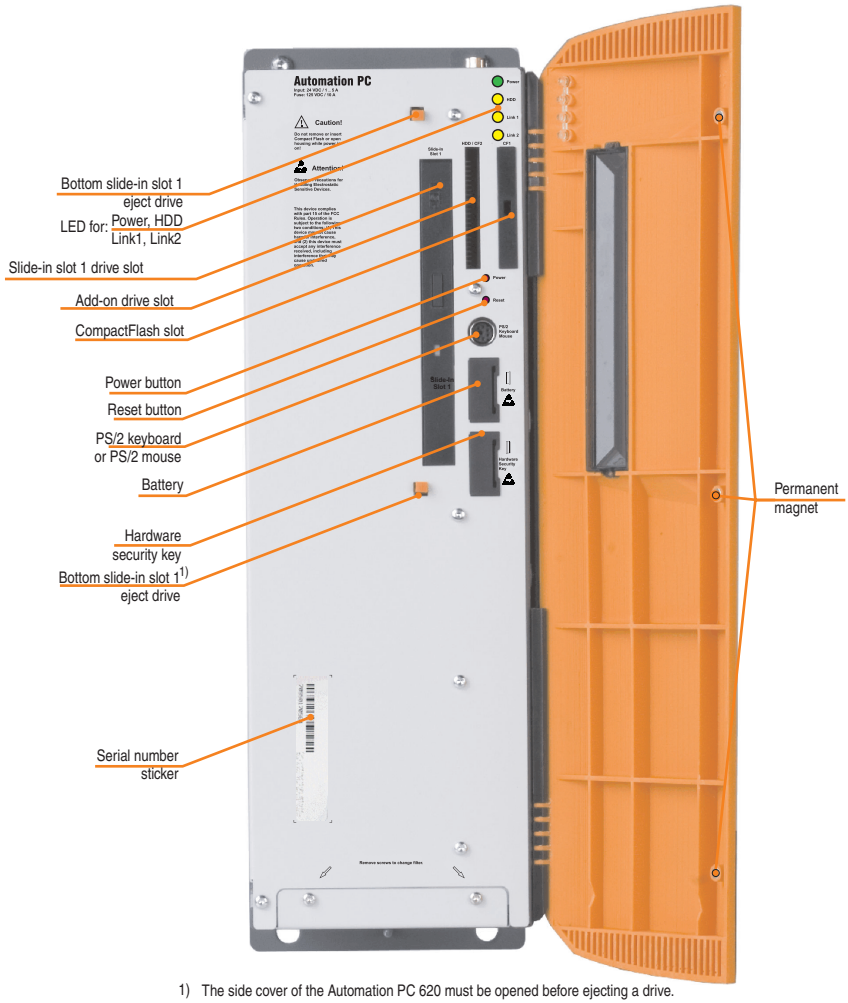


Figure 13: Interface overview - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant (top)

Warning!

Do not remove mounting screws from the heat sink, as it is connected to the processor and chipset by a thermal coupling. Should this connection be broken, the APC620 must be sent for repair. Removal of the mounting screws, which can be determined by a broken seal, voids all warranty.

During operation, surface temperatures of the heat sink may reach 70°C (warning "hot surface").



1) The side cover of the Automation PC 620 must be opened before ejecting a drive.

Figure 14: Interface overview - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant (front)

Information:

The orange front doors contain three permanent magnets. Contact between a data carrier that saves data magnetically (hard disk, diskette, the magnetic strip of a credit card, etc.) and a magnet can cause loss of data.

2.3.2 Technical data

Features	APC620, 3 PCI slot variant
Boot loader / Operating system	BIOS / see the chapter 4 "Software" on page 263
Processor Cooling Method	Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board Passive via heat sink and optionally supported with an active fan kit
Main memory	Max. 2 GB
Graphics Controller	 Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Power failure logic Controller Buffer time	 MTCX[1] (see also page 537) 10 ms, dependent on the system unit revision, TBD
Real-time clock Battery-buffered Accuracy	 Yes Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Battery Type Removable Lifespan	See also page 136 Renata 950 mAh Yes, accessible behind the orange cover 4 years [2) 3)]
Ethernet Controller Amount	 See also page 108 or page 110 2
CAN bus	Optional with add-on interface (5AC600.CANI-00)
CompactFlash Type Amount	See also page 130 or page 131 Type I 2 (max. 4 using optional components)
Serial interface Amount Type UART Transfer rate Connection	See also page 101 or page 102 2 RS232, modem-capable, not electrically isolated 16550 compatible, 16 byte FIFO Max. 115 kBaud 9-pin DSUB
USB interface Type Amount Transfer rate Connection Current load	See also section "USB port" on page 111 USB 2.0 2 Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), full speed (12 MBit/s), to high speed (480 Mbit/s) Type A Max. 500 mA per connection
Reset button	Yes, accessible behind the orange cover
LEDs	4 directed outwards via fiber optic lines, see also section "Status LEDs" on page 128
PCI slots half-size full-size	See also section "PCI slots" on page 125 - 3
Add-on UPS internal slot	Yes See also section "Add-on UPS module slot" on page 124
SRAM internal slot options	Yes

Table 24: Technical data - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant

Electrical characteristics	APC620, 3 PCI slot variant
Power supply	
Rated voltage	24 VDC ±25%
Rated current	5 A
Starting current	Typ. 10 A, max. 40 A for < 300 µs
Power consumption	Component-dependent, see section 2.9 "Power management APC620 system unit with 3 PCI slots"
Mechanical characteristics	
Housing[4)]	
Material	Galvanized plate, plastic
Paint	Light gray (similar to Pantone 427CV), dark gray (similar to Pantone 432CV)
Front cover	Colored orange plastic (similar to Pantone 144CV)
Outer dimensions	See the section "Dimensions" on page 60.
Weight	Approx. 4.5 kg (component-dependent)
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature	
Operation	Component-dependent, see the section about ambient temperature on page 72
Storage	-20 to +60°C
Transport	-20 to +60°C
Relative humidity	
Operation	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Storage	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Transport	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Vibration[5)]	
Operation (continuous)	2 - 9 Hz: 1.75 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 0.5 g
Operation (occasional)	2 - 9 Hz: 3.5 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 1 g
Storage	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Transport	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Shock[5)]	
Operation	15 g, 11 ms
Storage	30 g, 15 ms
Transport	30 g, 15 ms
Protection type	IP20
Altitude	
Operation	Max. 3000 m[6)] (component-dependent)
Electromagnetic compatibility	
Emissions	
Network-related emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55022 A
Emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55011 class A, EN 55022 class A, EN 61131-2, 47 CFR Part 15
Immunity	
Electrostatic discharge (ESD)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-frequency electromagnetic fields	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-speed transient disturbances (Burst)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Surges	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Conducted values	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Voltage dips, interruptions	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Damped vibration	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024

Table 24: Technical data - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant (cont.)

1) Maintenance controller extended.

2) at 50°C, 8.5 µA of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%.
3) If an SRAM module (Mod.Nr. 5AC600.SRAM-00) is installed, the buffer duration is 2 1/2 years.
4) Depending on the process or batch, there may be visible deviations in the color and surface structure.
5) Maximum values, as long as no other individual component specifies any other.
6) Derating the maximum ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

2.3.3 Dimensions

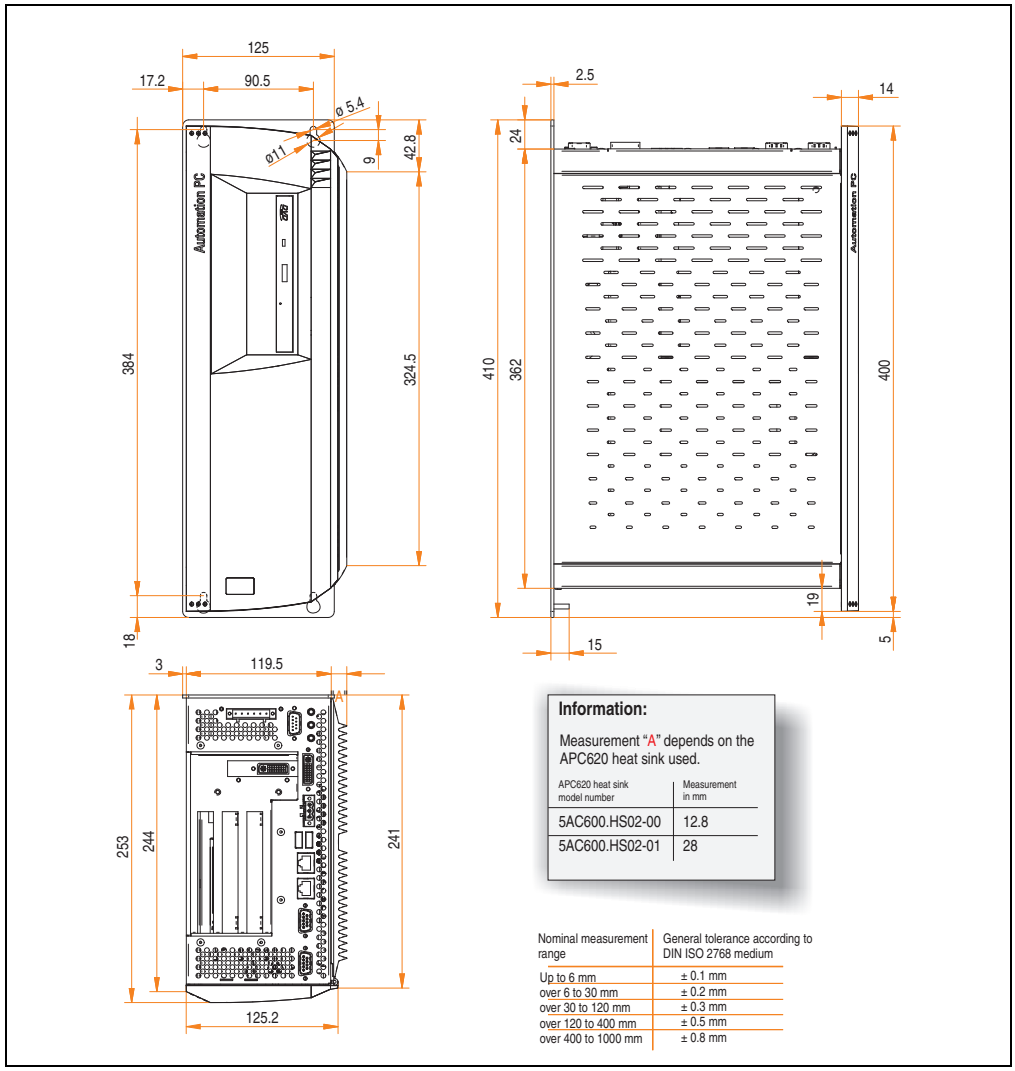
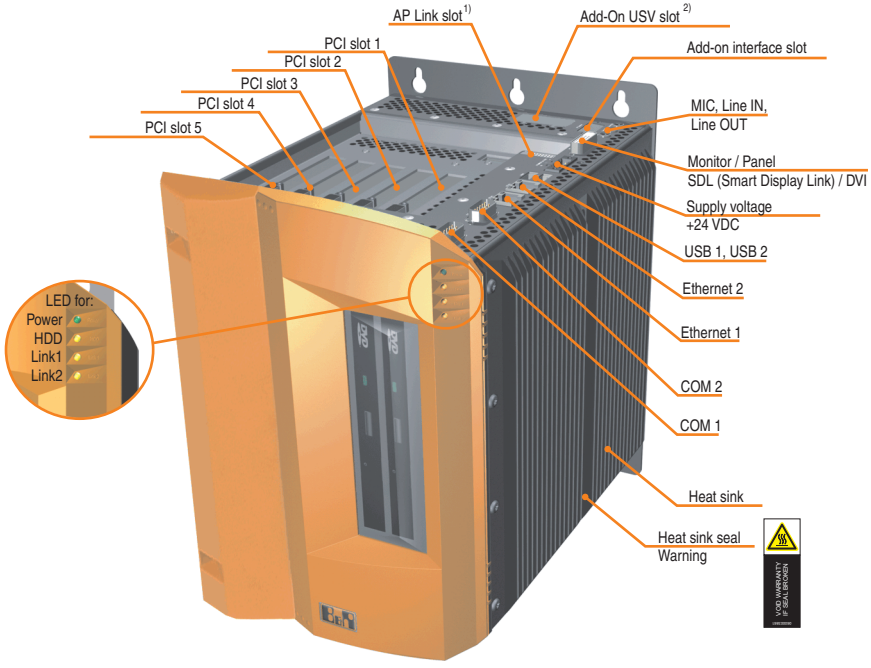


Figure 15: Dimensions - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant

2.4 APC620, 5 PCI slot variant

2.4.1 Interfaces



1) Can only be used with a 5PC600.SX05-00 system unit.
2) Slot standard on 5PC600.SX05-00 starting with Rev. F0 and on 5PC600.SX05-01 starting with Rev. F0 .

Figure 16: Interface overview - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant (top)

Warning!

Do not remove the mounting screws from the heat sink, as it is connected to the processor and chipset by a thermal coupling. Should this connection be broken, the APC620 must be sent for repair. Removal of the mounting screws, which can be determined by a broken seal, voids all warranty.

During operation, surface temperatures of the heat sink may reach 70°C (warning "hot surface").

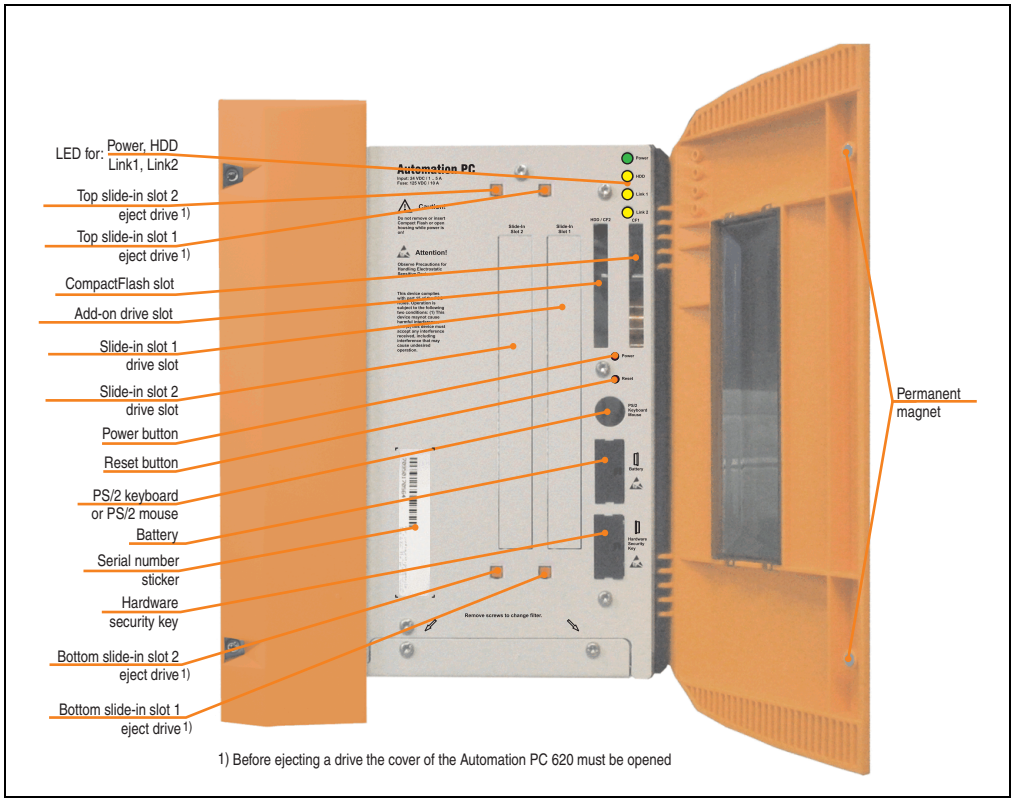


Figure 17: Interface overview - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant (front)

Information:

The orange front doors contain two permanent magnets. Contact between a data carrier that saves data magnetically (hard disk, diskette, the magnetic strip of a credit card, etc.) and a magnet can cause loss of data.

2.4.2 Technical data

Features	APC620, 5 PCI slot variant
Boot loader / Operating system	BIOS / see the chapter 4 "Software" on page 263
Processor Cooling Method	Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board Passive via heat sink and optionally supported with an active fan kit
Main memory	Max. 2 GB
Graphics Controller	 Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Power failure logic Controller Buffer time	 MTCX[1] (see also page 537) 10 ms, dependent on the system unit revision, TBD
Real-time clock Battery-buffered Accuracy	 Yes Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Battery Type Removable Lifespan	See also page 136 Renata 950 mAh Yes, accessible behind the orange cover 4 years [2) 3)]
Ethernet Controller Amount	 See also page 108 or page 110 2
CAN bus	Optional with add-on interface (5AC600.CANI-00)
CompactFlash Type Amount	See also page 130 or page 131 Type I 2 (max. 4 using optional components)
Serial interface Amount Type UART Transfer rate Connection	See also page 101 or page 102 2 RS232, modem-capable, not electrically isolated 16550 compatible, 16 byte FIFO Max. 115 kBaud 9-pin DSUB
USB interface Type Amount Transfer rate Connection Current load	See also section "USB port" on page 111 USB 2.0 2 Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), full speed (12 MBit/s), to high speed (480 Mbit/s) Type A Max. 500 mA per connection
Reset button	Yes, accessible behind the orange cover
LEDs	4 directed outwards via fiber optic lines, see also section "Status LEDs" on page 128
PCI slots half-size full-size	See also section "PCI slots" on page 125 5 -
Add-on UPS internal slot	Yes 5PC600.SX05-00 starting with revision F0, 5PC600.SX05-01 starting with revision F0 present See also section "Add-on UPS module slot" on page 124
SRAM internal slot options	Yes 5PC600.SX05-00 starting with revision H0, 5PC600.SX05-01 starting with revision H0 present

Table 25: Technical data - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant

Electrical characteristics	APC620, 5 PCI slot variant
Power supply	
Rated voltage	24 VDC ±25%
Rated current	5 A
Starting current	Typ. 10 A, max. 40 A for < 300 µs
Power consumption	Component-dependent, see section 2.10 "Power management APC620 system units with 5 PCI slots"
Mechanical characteristics	
Housing[4)]	
Material	Galvanized plate, plastic
Paint	Light gray (similar to Pantone 427CV), dark gray (similar to Pantone 432CV)
Front cover	Colored orange plastic (similar to Pantone 144CV)
Outer dimensions	See the section "Dimensions" on page 65.
Weight	Approx. 5.7 kg (component-dependent)
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature	
Operation	Component-dependent, see the section about ambient temperature on page 72
Storage	-20 to +60°C
Transport	-20 to +60°C
Relative humidity	
Operation	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Storage	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Transport	Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Vibration[5)]	
Operation (continuous)	2 - 9 Hz: 1.75 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 0.5 g
Operation (occasional)	2 - 9 Hz: 3.5 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 1 g
Storage	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Transport	2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Shock[5)]	
Operation	15 g, 11 ms
Storage	30 g, 15 ms
Transport	30 g, 15 ms
Protection type	IP20
Altitude	
Operation	Max. 3000 m[6)] (component-dependent)
Electromagnetic compatibility	
Emissions	
Network-related emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55022 A
Emissions	EN 61000-6-4, EN 55011 class A, EN 55022 class A, EN 61131-2, 47 CFR Part 15
Immunity	
Electrostatic discharge (ESD)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-frequency electromagnetic fields	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-speed transient disturbances (Burst)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Surges	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Conducted values	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Voltage dips, interruptions	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Damped vibration	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024

Table 25: Technical data - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant (cont.)

1) Maintenance controller extended.

2) at 50°C, 8.5 µA of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%.
3) If an SRAM module (Mod.Nr. 5AC600.SRAM-00) is installed, the buffer duration is 2 1/2 years.
4) Depending on the process or batch, there may be visible deviations in the color and surface structure.
5) Maximum values, as long as no other individual component specify any other.
6) Derating the maximum ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

2.4.3 Dimensions

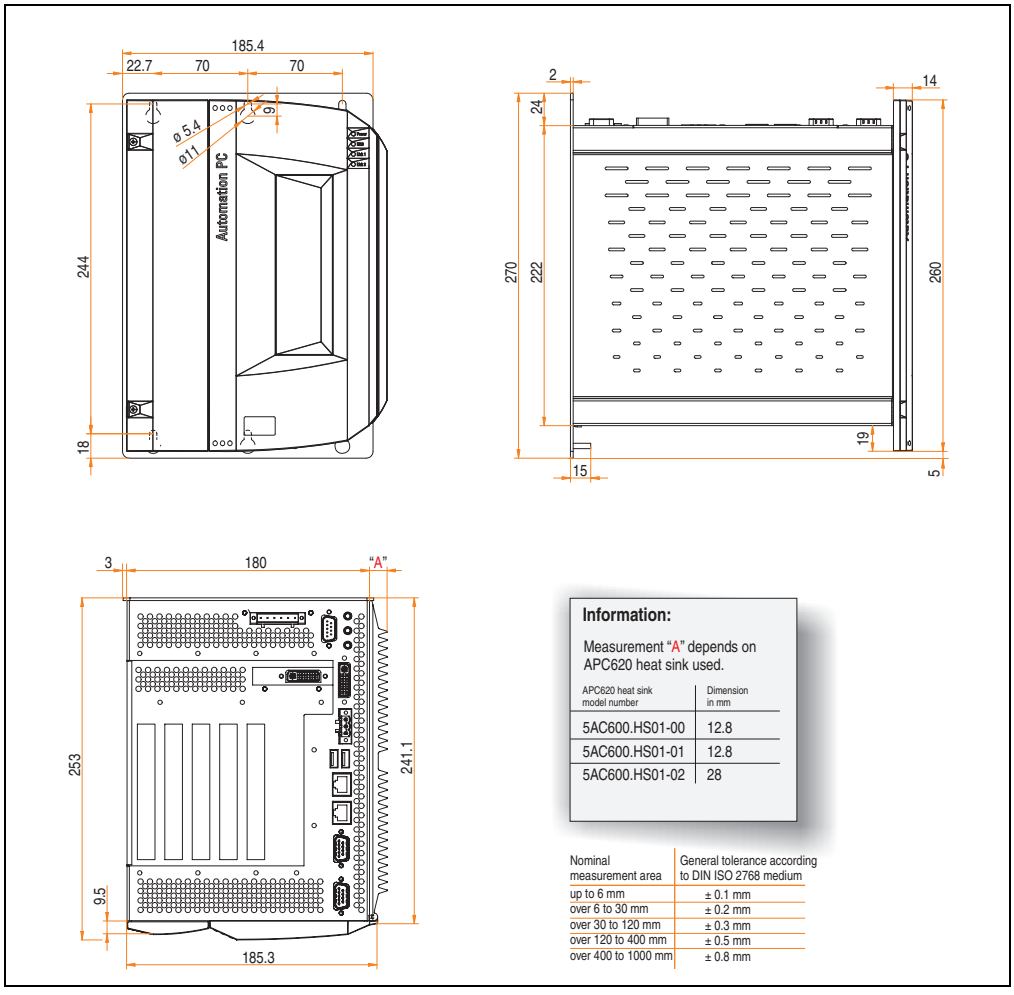


Figure 18: Dimensions - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant

2.5 APC620 embedded variant

2.5.1 Interfaces

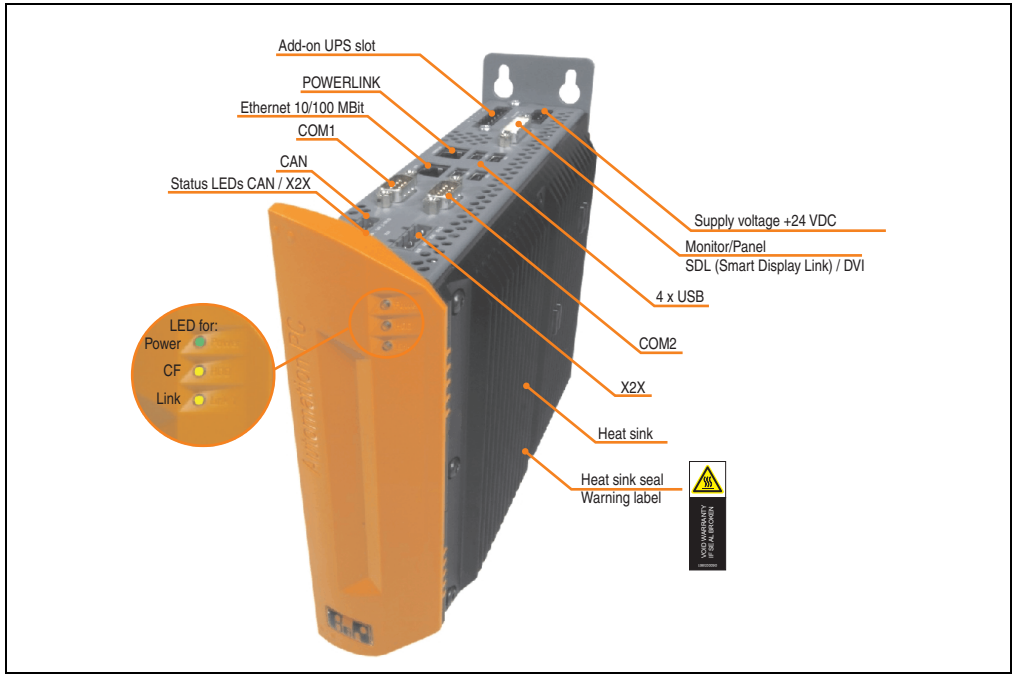


Figure 19: APC620 embedded variant interface overview - top side

Warning!

Do not remove the mounting screws from the heat sink, as it is connected to the processor and chipset by a thermal coupling. Should this connection be broken, the APC620 embedded must be sent for repair. Removal of the mounting screws, which can be determined by a broken seal, voids all warranty.

During operation, surface temperatures of the heat sink may reach 70°C (warning "hot surface").

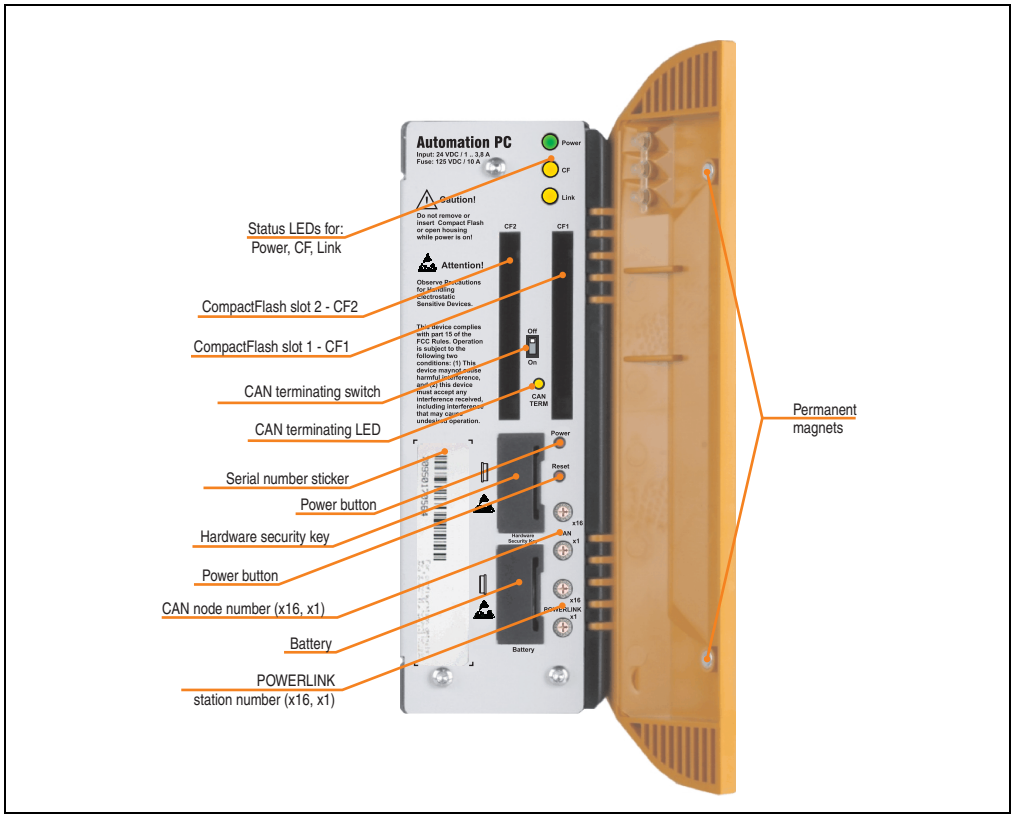


Figure 20: APC620 embedded variant interface overview - front side

Information:

The orange front doors contain two permanent magnets. Contact between a data carrier that saves data magnetically (hard disk, diskette, the magnetic strip of a credit card, etc.) and a magnet can cause loss of data.

2.5.2 Technical data

Features	APC620 embedded variant
Boot loader / Operating system	BIOS / see the chapter 4 "Software" on page 263
Processor Cooling Method	Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board Passive via heat sink
Main memory	Max. 2 GB
Graphics Controller	 Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Power failure logic Controller Buffer time	 MTCX[1] (see also page 537) 10 ms, dependent on the system unit revision, TBD
Real-time clock Battery-buffered Accuracy	 Yes Component-dependent, see technical data for the CPU board
Battery Type Removable Lifespan	See also page 136 Renata 950 mAh Yes, accessible behind the orange cover 2 1/2 years[2]
Ethernet Controller Amount	Yes See also page 107 1
POWERLINK Amount Station number switches	Yes, also see page 105 1 2 pcs.
X2X Link Amount Status LED	Yes, also see page 103 1 Yes, see page 105
CAN bus Amount Transfer rate Node switch Terminating resistor Status LED	See also page 103 1 Max. 500 kBit/s Yes Yes, can be activated using a switch Yes, see page 105
CompactFlash Type Amount	See also page 133 Type I 2
Serial interface Amount Type UART Transfer rate Connection	See also page 101 or page 102 2 RS232, modem-capable, not electrically isolated 16550-compatible, 16-byte FIFO Max. 115 kBaud 9-pin DSUB
USB interface Type Amount Transfer rate Connection Current load	See also page 112 USB 2.0 4 Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), full speed (12 MBit/s), to high speed (480 Mbit/s) Type A Max. 500 mA or 1 A per connection
Reset button	Yes, accessible behind the orange cover

Table 26: Technical data - APC620 embedded variant

Features	APC620 embedded variant
LEDs	3 directed outwards via fiber optic lines, see also section "Status LEDs Power, CF, Link (only APC620 embedded)" on page 129
Add-on UPS slot	Yes
Electrical characteristics	
Power supply Rated voltage Rated current Starting current Power consumption	 24 VDC ± 25% 3.8 A Typ. 7 A, max. 40 A for < 300 µs Component-dependent, see section 2.11 "Power management for the APC620 embedded system unit"
Mechanical characteristics	
Housing[3)] Material Paint Front cover	 Galvanized plate, plastic Light gray (similar to Pantone 427CV), dark gray (similar to Pantone 432CV) Colored orange plastic (similar to Pantone 144CV)
Outer dimensions	See the section "Dimensions" on page 71.
Weight	Approx. 1.4 kg (component-dependent)
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature Operation Storage Transport	 Component-dependent, see the section about ambient temperature on page 72 -20 to +60°C -20 to +60°C
Relative humidity Operation Storage Transport	 Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98 Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98 Component-dependent, see section "Humidity specifications" on page 98
Vibration[4)] Operation (continuous) Operation (occasional) Storage Transport	 2 - 9 Hz: 1.75 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 0.5 g 2 - 9 Hz: 3.5 mm amplitude / 9 - 200 Hz: 1 g 2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g 2 - 8 Hz: 7.5 mm amplitude / 8 - 200 Hz: 2 g / 200 - 500 Hz: 4 g
Shock[5)] Operation Storage Transport	 15 g, 11 ms 30 g, 15 ms 30 g, 15 ms
Protection type	IP20
Altitude Operation	 Max. 3000 m[5)] (component-dependent)
Electromagnetic compatibility	
Emissions Network-related emissions Emissions	 EN 61000-6-4, EN 55022 A EN 61000-6-4, EN 55011 class A, EN 55022 class A, EN 61131-2, 47 CFR Part 15

Table 26: Technical data - APC620 embedded variant (cont.)

Electromagnetic compatibility	APC620 embedded variant
Immunity	
Electrostatic discharge (ESD)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-frequency electromagnetic fields	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
High-speed transient disturbances (Burst)	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Surges	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Conducted values	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Voltage dips, interruptions	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024
Damped vibration	EN 61000-6-2, EN 61131-2, EN 55024

Table 26: Technical data - APC620 embedded variant (cont.)

1) Maintenance controller extended.

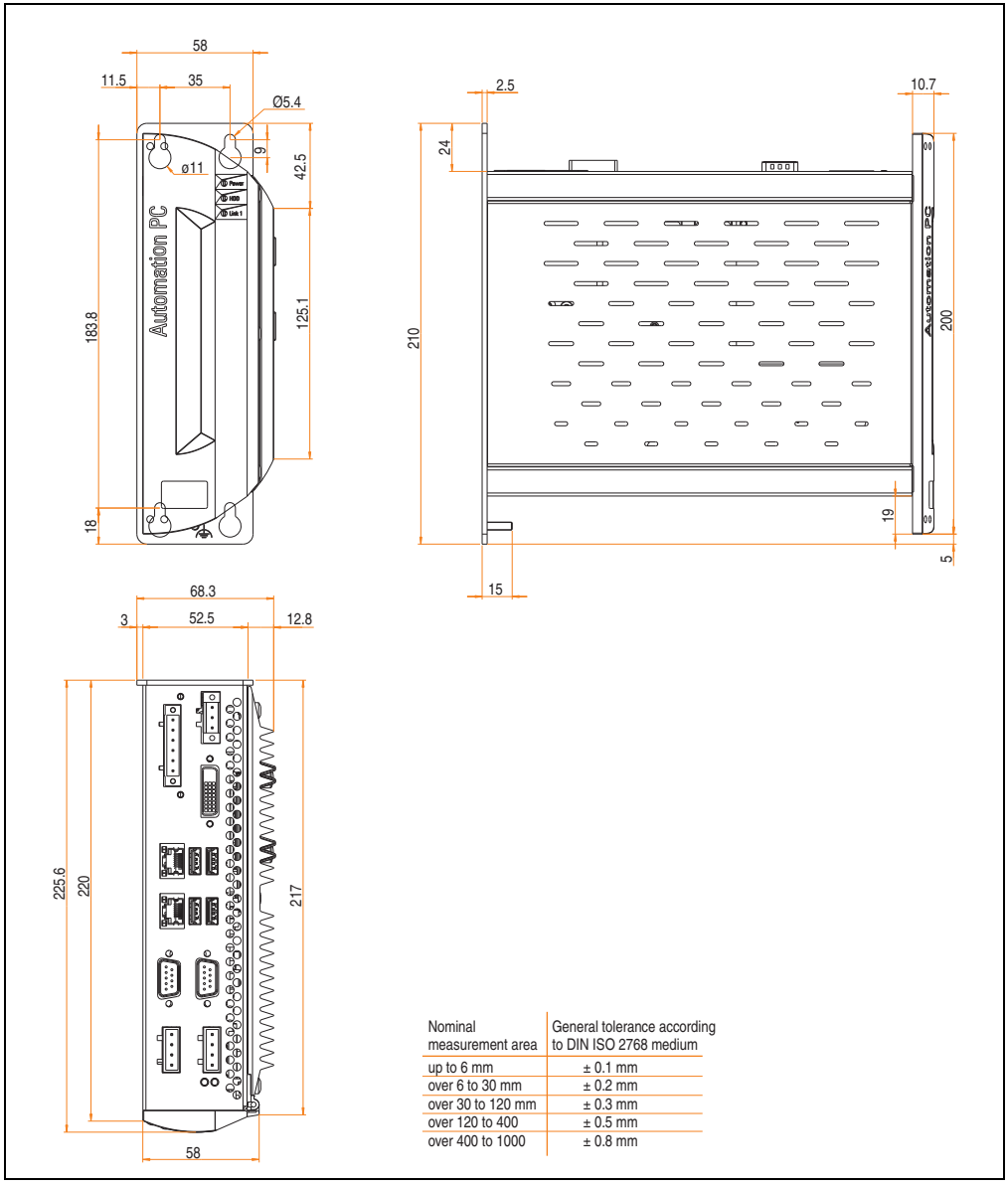
2) at 50°C, 8.5 µA of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%.

3) Depending on the process or batch, there may be visible deviations in the color and surface structure.

4) Maximum values, as long as no other individual component specifies any other.

5) Derating the maximum ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

2.5.3 Dimensions



Nominal measurement area	General tolerance according to DIN ISO 2768 medium
up to 6 mm	± 0.1 mm
over 6 to 30 mm	± 0.2 mm
over 30 to 120 mm	± 0.3 mm
over 120 to 400	± 0.5 mm
over 400 to 1000	± 0.8 mm

Figure 21: APC620 embedded variant - dimensions

2.6 Ambient temperatures for systems with an X945 CPU board

It is possible to combine CPU boards with various other components, such as drives, main memory, additional insert cards, etc. dependent on system unit and fan kit. The various configurations result in varying maximum possible ambient temperatures, which can be seen in the following graphic (see the figure, 2.6 "Ambient temperatures for systems with an X945 CPU board" on page 72).

Information:

The maximum specified ambient temperatures were determined under worst-case conditions.

Experience has shown that higher ambient temperatures can be reached under typical conditions, e.g. using Microsoft Windows. The testing and evaluation is to be done on-site by the user (temperatures can be read in BIOS or using the B&R Control Center, see the chapter 4 "Software" on page 263).

Worst-case conditions for systems with an X945 CPU board

- Thermal Analysis Tool V1.4 from Intel for simulating 100% processor load.
- BurnIn testing tool (BurnIn V4.0 Pro from Passmark Software) to simulate a 100% load on the interface via loop-back adapters (serial interfaces, add-on and slide-in drives, USB interfaces, audio outputs).
- Maximum system extension and power consumption.

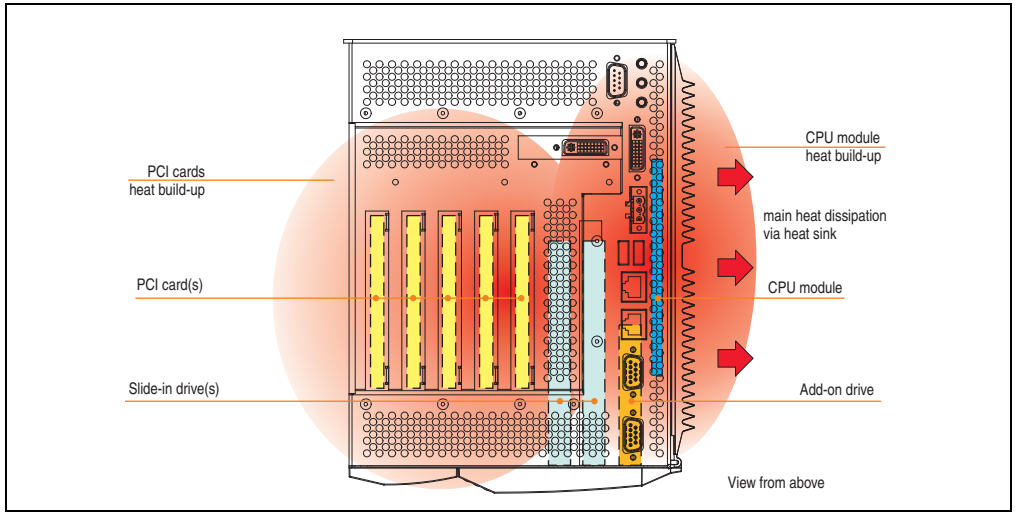


Figure 22: Example of worst-case conditions for temperature measurement

2.6.1 Maximum ambient temperature

All temperatures in °C
at 500 m above sea level.

Derating of the maximum
ambient temperature typically 1°C
per 1000 m after 500 m above sea level.

③	What can still be operated at maximum ambient temperature and what limits are there?	① Without fan kit N270 5PC600.X945-00	① With fan kit N270 5PC600.X945-00	Temperature limits	Sensor(s) in these locations
	② Maximum ambient temperature	50	55		
Add-on drive	On-Board CompactFlash [1]	✓	✓	80	I/O
	5AC600.CFSI-00 [1]	✓	✓	80	
	5AC600.HDDI-00 (24-hour / standard)	-/30	30/40	45/55	
	5AC600.HDDI-05	✓	✓	80	
	5AC600.HDDI-06	✓	✓	80	
Slide-in drive	5AC600.FDDS-00	40	45	50	Slide-in drive 1 and 2
Main memory	5MMDDR.0512-01	✓	✓	-	
	5MMDDR.1024-01	✓	✓	-	
	5MMDDR.2048-01	✓	✓	-	
System units	5PC600.SX01-00	✓	✓	95	Power supply
	5PC600.SX02-00 / -01	✓	✓	95	
	5PC600.SF03-00	✓	✓	95	
	5PC600.SX05-00 / -01	✓	✓	95	
Additional insert cards Interfaces / AP Link	5AC600.CANI-00	✓	✓	-	
	5AC600.485I-00	✓	✓	-	
	5AC600.SDL0-00	✓	✓	-	
	5ACPCI.RAIC-03 (24-hour / standard) [1]	✓	✓	-	

1) 24 house operation = 732 POH (Power On Hours) per month, standard operation = 250 POH or 333 POH (Power On Hours) per month.

Figure 23: Ambient temperatures for systems with an X945 CPU board

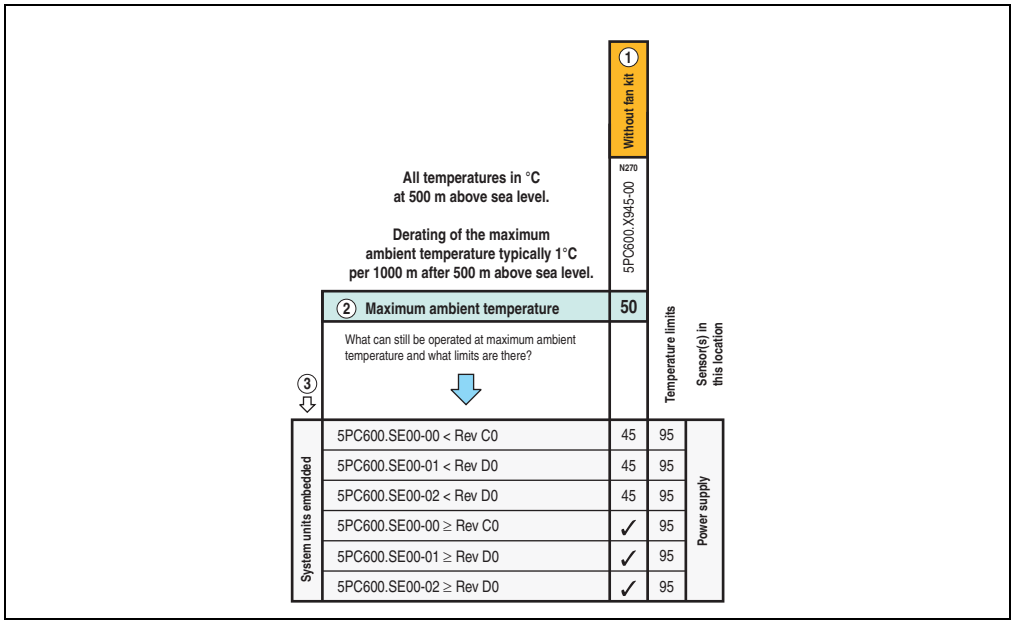


Figure 24: Ambient temperatures for embedded systems with an X945 CPU board

2.6.2 Minimum ambient temperature

For systems containing one of the following components, the minimum ambient temperature is +5°C: 5AC600.FDDS-00.
If none of these components are used, then the minimum ambient temperature is 0°C.

2.6.3 How do you determine the maximum ambient temperature?

1) Selection of the CPU board (use **with** or **without** fan kit).

2) The "maximum ambient temperature" line shows the maximum ambient temperature for the entire system when using this CPU board.

Information:

Maximum temperature data is for operation at 500 meters. Derating the maximum ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

3) Incorporating additional drives (add-on, slide-in), main memory, additional insert cards, etc. can change the temperature limits of an APC620 system.

If there is a "✓" (checkmark) next to the component, it can be used at the maximum ambient temperature of the whole system without problems.

If there is a specific temperature, for example "35", next to the component, then the ambient temperature of the whole APC620 system cannot exceed this temperature.

Special case - RAID hard disks

For these hard disks, the limits will depend on whether the system is intended for 24-hour[1)] or standard[1)] operation.

Example 1: A temperature limit of "30/35" means
30°C for 24-hour operation and 35°C for standard operation.

Example 2: A temperature limit of "-/25" means
not intended for 24-hour operation and 25°C for standard operation.

Information:

It is generally recommended to use a fan kit when using RAID hard disks (5ACPCI.RAIC-03).

2.6.4 Temperature monitoring

The APC620 has temperature sensors in various places (I/O, power supply, slide-in drive 1, slide-in drive 2). The locations of the temperature sensors can be found in figure "Temperature sensor locations" on page 535. The value listed in the table represents the defined maximum temperature for this measurement point[2)] . An alarm is not triggered when this temperature is exceeded. The temperatures[2)] can be read in BIOS (menu item "Advanced" - Baseboard/panel features - Baseboard monitor) or in Microsoft Windows XP/Embedded, using the B&R Control Center.
Additionally, the hard disks for APC620 systems available from B&R are equipped with S.M.A.R.T, or Self Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology. This makes it possible to read various parameters, for example the temperature, using software (e.g. HDD thermometer - freeware) in Microsoft Windows XP/Embedded.

1) 24-hour operation = 732 POH (Power On Hours) per month, standard operation = 250 POH or 333 POH (Power On Hours) per month.
2) The measured temperature is a guideline for the immediate ambient temperature, but can be influenced by neighboring components.

2.7 Power management APC620 system unit with 1 PCI slot

2.7.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision >= I0

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 supply voltage for 5PC600.SX01-00 system units starting with revision ≥ I0.

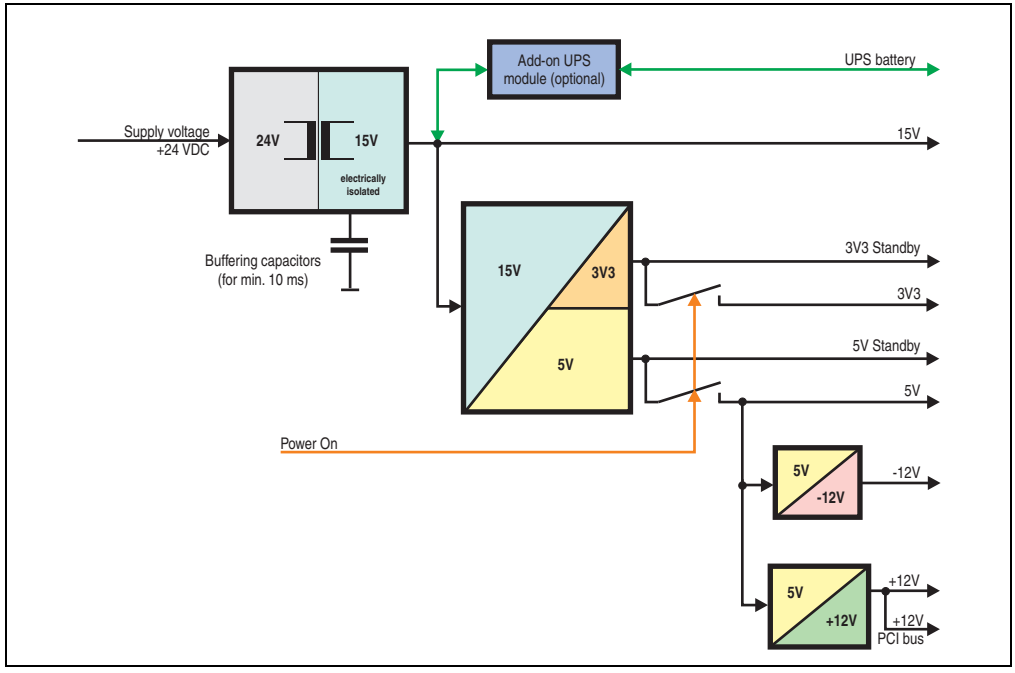


Figure 25: Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision >= I0

Explanation:

The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 V feed four further DC/DC converters, which generate the remaining voltages.

After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3 and 5 V are placed on the bus. Two additional DC/DC converters at the 5 V output generate
-12 V and -12 V, which is then applied to the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.7.2 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX01-00 revision >= I0

Information:	5PC600.SX01-00	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	N270 5PC600.X945-00	Enter values in this column ⇩
Total power supply (maximum)		**70**
Total power supply — Add-on UPS module, optional	7,5	
Maximum possible at 5V		**70**
5V — CPU board, fixed device	16	
5V — Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on, slide-in)	1	
5V — Hard Disk, optional (add-on, slide-in)	4	
5V — External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
5V — USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
5V — Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
5V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
5V — External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
Devices 5V ∑		
Maximum possible at +12V		**12**
+12V — Fan kit, optional	2.5	
+12V — External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
+12V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit) [1]		
Devices +12V ∑		
Maximum possible at -12V		**1.2**
-12V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) [1]		
Devices -12V ∑		
Devices total 5V ∑		
Maximum possible at 3V3		**23**
3V3 — System unit, fixed device	4	
3V3 — Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
3V3 — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
Devices 3V3 ∑		
Devices total ∑		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.7.3 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision < I0

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 supply voltage for 5PC600.SX01-00 system units starting with revision < I0.

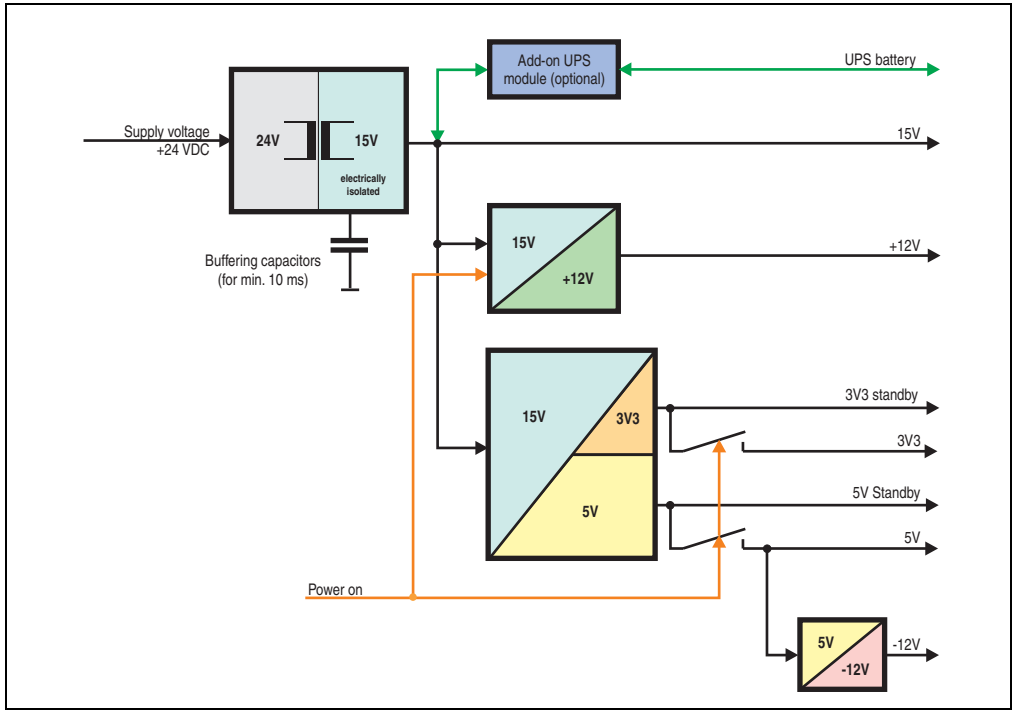


Figure 26: Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision < I0

Explanation:

The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 volts feed two further DC/DC converters. One generates +12 V, and the other 3V3 and 5V standby.

After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3, 5 V, +12 V are placed on the bus. At the 5 V output, yet another DC/DC converter generates -12 V, and places these on the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.7.4 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX01-00 revision < I0

Information:	5PC600.SX01-00	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	N270 5PC600.X945-00	Enter values in this column ⇩
Total power supply (maximum)		**70**
Total power supply — Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V — **Maximum possible at 5V**		**55**
5V — CPU board, fixed device	16	
5V — Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on, slide-in)	1	
5V — Hard disk, optional (add-on, slide-in)	4	
5V — External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
5V — USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
5V — Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
5V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
5V — External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
5V — **Devices 5V** Σ		
-12V — **Maximum possible at -12V**		**1.2**
-12V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) [1]		
Devices -12V Σ		
Devices total 5V Σ		
3V3 — **Maximum possible at 3V3**		**23**
3V3 — System unit, fixed device	4	
3V3 — Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
3V3 — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
Devices 3V3 Σ		
+12V — **Maximum possible at +12V**		**12**
+12V — Fan kit, optional	2.5	
+12V — External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
+12V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit) [1]		
Devices +12V Σ		
Devices total Σ		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.8 Power management APC620 system units with 2 PCI slots

2.8.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX02-00 revision >= H0 and 5PC600.SX02-01 revision >= K0)

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 supply voltage for system units 5PC600.SX02-00 (revision ≥ H0 and higher), 5PC600.SX02-01 (revision ≥ K0 and higher).

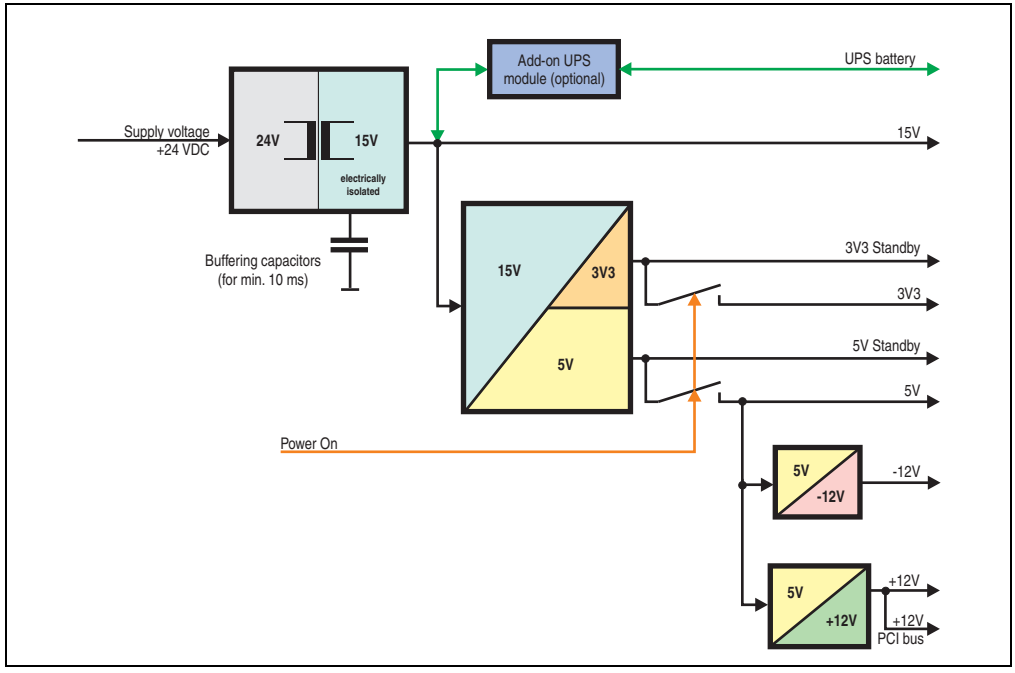


Figure 27: Supply voltage for the 2 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version)

Explanation:

The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 V feed four further DC/DC converters, which generate the remaining voltages.

After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3 and 5 V are placed on the bus. Two additional DC/DC converters at the 5 V output generate
-12 V and -12 V, which is then applied to the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.8.2 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-00 revision >= H0

Information:	5PC600.SX02-00	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	N270 5PC600.X945-00	Enter values in this column ⇩
Total power supply (maximum)		**70**
Total power supply — Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V — **Maximum possible at 5V**		**70**
CPU board, fixed device	16	
Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on, slide-in)	1	
Hard disk, optional (add-on, slide-in)	4	
Per drive, optional (slide-in CD,DVD CD-RW)	4	
External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) 1)		
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
Devices 5V Σ		
+12V — **Maximum possible at +12V**		**12**
Fan kit, optional	2.5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit) 1)		
Devices +12V Σ		
-12V — **Maximum possible at -12V**		**1.2**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) 1)		
Devices -12V Σ		
Devices total 5V Σ		
3V3 — **Maximum possible at 3V3**		**23**
System unit, fixed device	4	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) 1)		
Devices 3V3 Σ		
Devices total Σ		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.8.3 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-01 revision >= K0

Information:	5PC600.SX02-01	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	N270 5PC600.X945-00	Enter values in this column ⇩
Total power supply (maximum)		**70**
Total power supply — Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V — **Maximum possible at 5V**		**70**
5V — CPU board, fixed device	16	
5V — Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on, slide-in)	1	
5V — Hard disk, optional (add-on, slide-in)	4	
5V — Per drive, optional (slide-in CD, DVD, CD-RW)	4	
5V — External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
5V — USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
5V — Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
5V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1)]		
5V — External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
5V — **Devices 5V** Σ		
-12V — **Maximum possible at -12V**		**1.2**
-12V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit)[1)]		
-12V — **Devices -12V** Σ		
Devices total 5V Σ		
3V3 — **Maximum possible at 3V3**		**23**
3V3 — System unit, fixed device	4	
3V3 — Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
3V3 — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1)]		
3V3 — **Devices 3V§** Σ		
+12V — **Maximum possible at +12V**		**12**
+12V — Fan kit, optional	2.5	
+12V — External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
+12V — PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit) [1)]		
+12V — **Devices +12V** Σ		
Devices total Σ		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.8.4 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX02-00 revision < H0 and 5PC600.SX02-01 revision < K0

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 supply voltage for system units 5PC600.SX02-00 (revision < H0 and higher), 5PC600.SX02-01 (revision < K0 and higher).

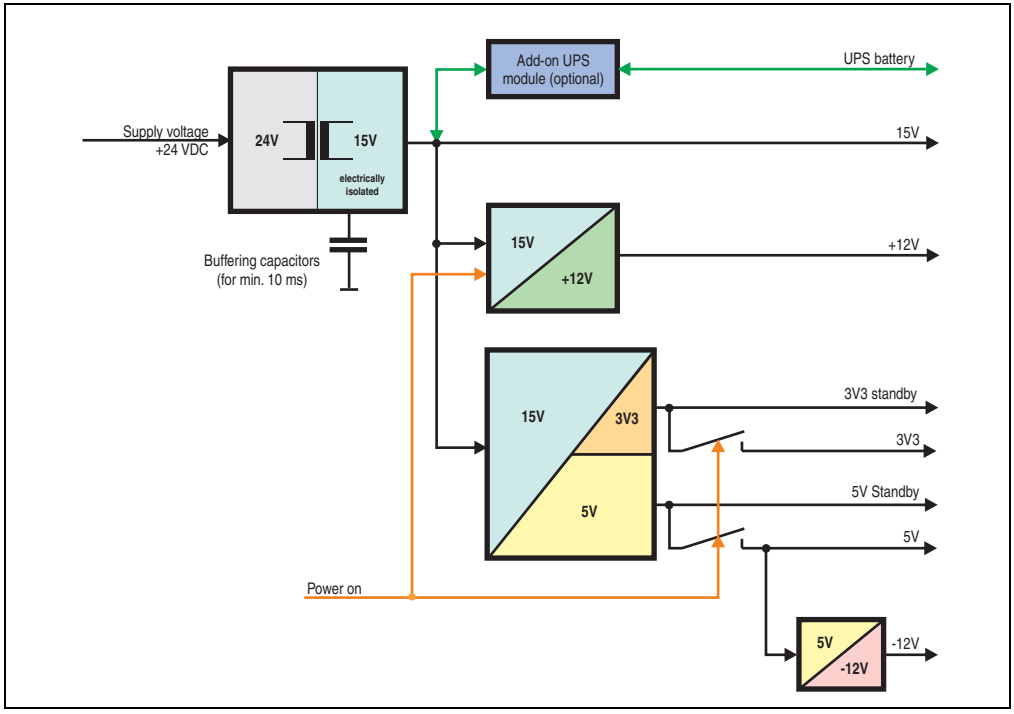


Figure 28: Supply voltage for the 2 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version)

Explanation:

The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 volts feed two further DC/DC converters. One generates +12 V, and the other 3V3 and 5V standby.

After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3, 5 V, +12 V are placed on the bus. At the 5 V output, yet another DC/DC converter generates -12 V, and places these on the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.8.5 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-00 revision < H0

Information:	5PC600.SX02-00 N270 5PC600.X945-00	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.		Enter values in this column ⇩
Total power supply (maximum)		**70**
Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V		**55**
CPU board, fixed device	16	
Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on, slide-in)	1	
Hard disk, optional (add-on, slide-in)	4	
Per drive, optional (slide-in CD, DVD, CD-RW)	4	
External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) 1)		
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
Devices 5V ∑		
-12V **Maximum possible at -12V**		**1.2**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit)1)		
Devices -12V ∑		
Devices total 5V ∑		
3V3 **Maximum possible at 3V3**		**23**
System unit, fixed device	4	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) 1)		
Devices 3V3 ∑		
+12V **Maximum possible at +12V**		**12**
Fan kit, optional	2.5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit)1)		
Devices +12V ∑		
Devices total ∑		

Total power supply

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.8.6 Power calculation with 5PC600.SX02-01 revision < K0

Information:	5PC600.SX02-01	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	5PC600.X945-00 N270	Enter values in this column
Total power supply (maximum)		**70**
Total power supply – Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V – **Maximum possible at 5V**		**55**
5V – CPU board, fixed device	16	
5V – Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on, slide-in)	1	
5V – Hard disk, optional (add-on, slide-in)	4	
5V – Per drive, optional (slide-in CD, DVD, CD-RW)	4	
5V – External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
5V – USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
5V – Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
5V – PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1)]		
5V – External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
5V – **Devices 5V** Σ		
-12V – **Maximum possible at -12V**		**1.2**
-12V – PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) [1)]		
-12V – **Devices -12V** Σ		
Devices total 5V Σ		
3V3 – **Maximum possible at 3V3**		**23**
3V3 – System unit, fixed device	4	
3V3 – Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
3V3 – PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1)]		
3V3 – **Devices 3V3** Σ		
+12V – **Maximum possible at +12V**		**12**
+12V – Fan kit, optional	2.5	
+12V – External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
+12V – PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit) [1)]		
+12V – **Devices +12V** Σ		
Devices total Σ		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.9 Power management APC620 system unit with 3 PCI slots

2.9.1 5PC600.SF03-00 supply voltage

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 supply voltage for system units 5PC600.SF03-00.

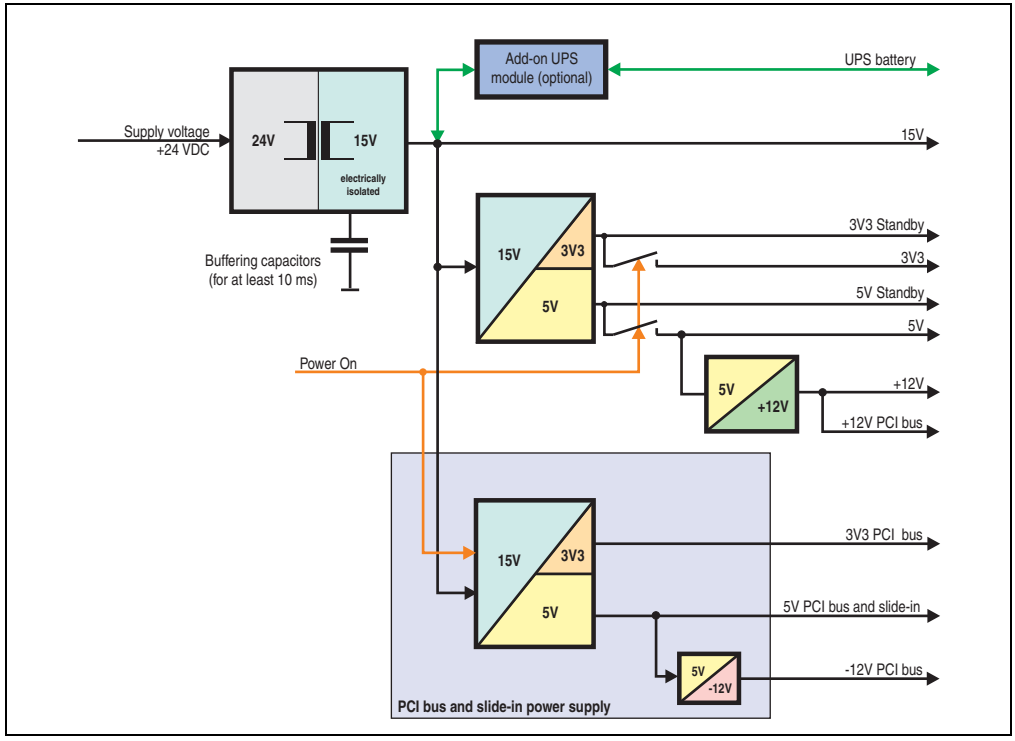


Figure 29: Supply voltage block diagram 3 PCI slots

Explanation:

Systems with 3 PCI slots have an additional power supply for the PCI buses and the slide-in drive. The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 volts feed two further DC/DC converters. One generates 5 V for an additional DC/DC converter, which produces +12 V and +12V PCI bus voltage. The other DC/DC converter produces 3V3 and 5V standby.
After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3, 5 V, +12 V are placed on the bus. At the 5 V output, yet another DC/DC converter generates -12 V, and places these on the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.9.2 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SF03-00

Information:	5PC600.SF03-00	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	5PC600.X945-00 N270	Enter values in this column
Total power supply (maximum)		**110**
Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
Total power supply / 5V — Maximum possible at 5V		**70**
CPU board, fixed device	16	
Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on)	1	
Hard disk, optional (add-on)	4	
External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
Total power supply / 5V / +12V — Maximum possible at +12V		**24**
Fan kit, optional	2.5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional [1] (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit)		
Devices total 5V ∑		
Total power supply / 3V3 — Maximum possible at 3V3		**23**
System unit, fixed device	4	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
Devices ∑		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply rating (maximum)		**50**
PCI bus and slide-in power supply / 5V — Maximum possible at 5V PCI bus and slide-in		**50**
Pro CompactFlash, optional (slide-in)	1	
Pro Hard Disk, optional (slide-in)	4	
Pro Laufwerk, optional (slide-in - CD/DVD)	4	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply / 5V / -12V — Maximum possible at -12V PCI bus and slide-in		**1.2**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) [1]		
Devices -12V ∑		
Devices total 5V ∑		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply / 3V3 — Maximum possible at 3V3 PCI bus and slide-in		**23**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
Devices 3V3 ∑		
PCI bus and slide-in total ∑		
Devices total ∑		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.10 Power management APC620 system units with 5 PCI slots

2.10.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX05-00 (revision >= H0) and 5PC600.SX05-01 (revision >= H0)

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 supply voltage for system units 5PC600.SX05-00 (Revision ≥ H0), 5PC600.SX05-01 (Revision ≥ H0).

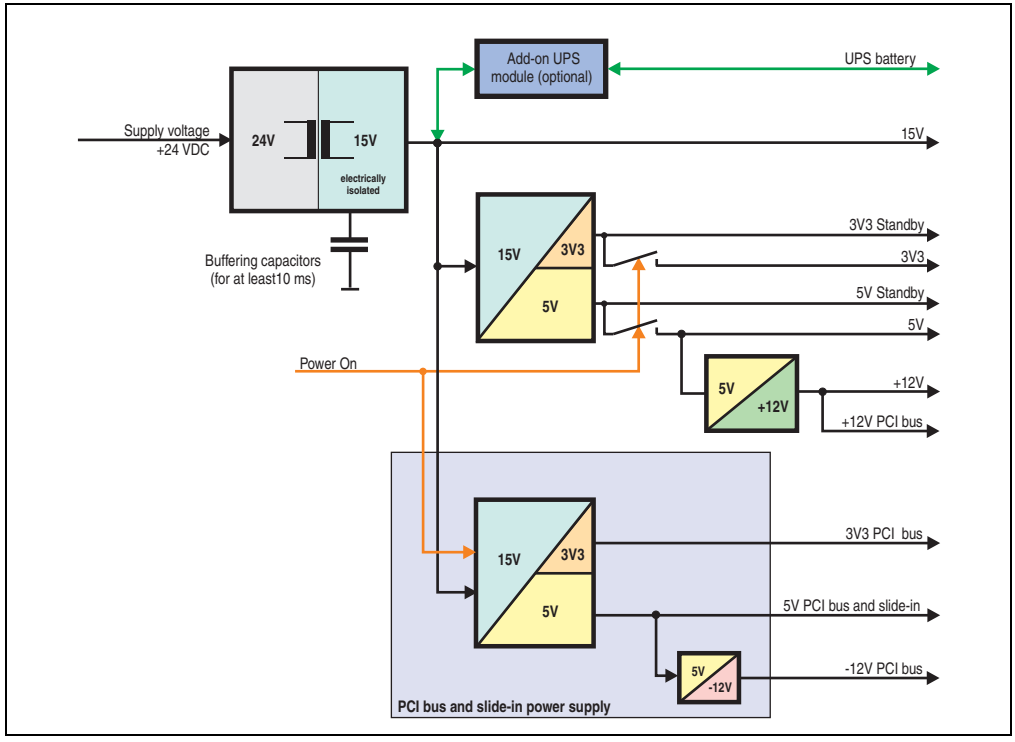


Figure 30: Supply voltage for the 5 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version)

Explanation:

Systems with 5 PCI slots have an additional power supply for the PCI buses and the slide-in drive. The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 volts feed two further DC/DC converters. One generates 5 V for an additional DC/DC converter, which produces +12 V and +12V PCI bus voltage. The other DC/DC converter produces 3V3 and 5V standby.
After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3, 5 V, +12 V are placed on the bus. At the 5 V output, yet another DC/DC converter generates -12 V, and places these on the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.10.2 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-00 (revision >= H0)

Information:	5PC600.SX05-00	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	N270 5PC600.X945-00	Enter values in this column
Total power supply (maximum)		**110**
Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V — Maximum possible at 5V		**70**
CPU board, fixed device	16	
Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on)	1	
Hard disk, optional (add-on)	4	
External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
Schnittstellenoption (Add-On Interface), optional	0.5	
Grafikadapter (AP Link), optional	5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
+12V — Maximum possible at +12V		**24**
Fan kit, optional	2.5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional [1] (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit)		
Devices total 5V Σ		
3V3 — Maximum possible at 3V3		**23**
System unit, fixed device	4	
Grafikadapter (AP Link), optional	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
Devices 3V3 Σ		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply rating (maximum)		**50**
5V — Maximum possible at 5V PCI bus and slide-in		**50**
Per CompactFlash, optional (slide-in)	1	
Per hard disk, optional (slide-in)	4	
Per drive, optional (slide-in - CD/DVD)	4	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional [1] (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit)		
Devices 5V Σ		
-12V — Maximum possible at -12V PCI bus		**1.2**
PCI card manufacturer limit,optional [1] (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit)		
Devices -12V Σ		
Devices total +5V Σ		
3V3 — Maximum possible at 3V3 PCI bus		**23**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional [1] (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit)		
Devices 3V3 Σ		
PCI bus and slide-in total Σ		
Devices total Σ		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.10.3 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01 (revision >= H0)

Information:	5PC600.SX05-01	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	N270 5PC600.X945-00	Enter values in this column
Total power supply (maximum)		110
Total power supply: Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
Total power supply: 5V: **Maximum possible at 5V**		70
5V: CPU board, fixed device	16	
5V: Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on)	1	
5V: Hard disk, optional (add-on)	4	
5V: Externe Tastatur PS/2, optional	1	
5V: USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
5V: Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
5V: External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
5V: +12V: **Maximum possible at +12V**		24
5V: +12V: Fan kit, optional	2.5	
5V: +12V: External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
5V: +12V: PCI card manufacturer limit, optional [1] (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit)		
5V: +12V: **Devices total 5V** Σ		
Total power supply: 3V3: **Maximum possible at 3V3**		23
3V3: System unit, fixed device	4	
3V3: Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
3V3: **Devices 3V3** Σ		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply rating (maximum)		50
PCI bus and slide-in power supply: 5V: **Maximum possible at 5V PCI bus and slide-in**		50
5V: Per CompactFlash, optional (slide-in)	1	
5V: Per hard disk, optional (slide-in)	4	
5V: Per drive, optional (slide-in - CD/DVD)	4	
5V: PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
5V: -12V: **Maximum possible at -12V PCI bus and slide-in**		1.2
5V: -12V: PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) [1]		
5V: -12V: **Devices -12V** Σ		
5V: **Devices total 5V** Σ		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply: 3V3: **Maximum possible at 3V3 PCI bus and slide-in**		23
3V3: PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
3V3: **Devices 3V3** Σ		
PCI bus and slide-in total Σ		
Devices total Σ		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.10.4 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX05-00 (revision < H0) and 5PC600.SX05-01 (revision <= H0)

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 supply voltage for system units 5PC600.SX05-00 (Revision < H0), 5PC600.SX05-01 (Revision < H0).

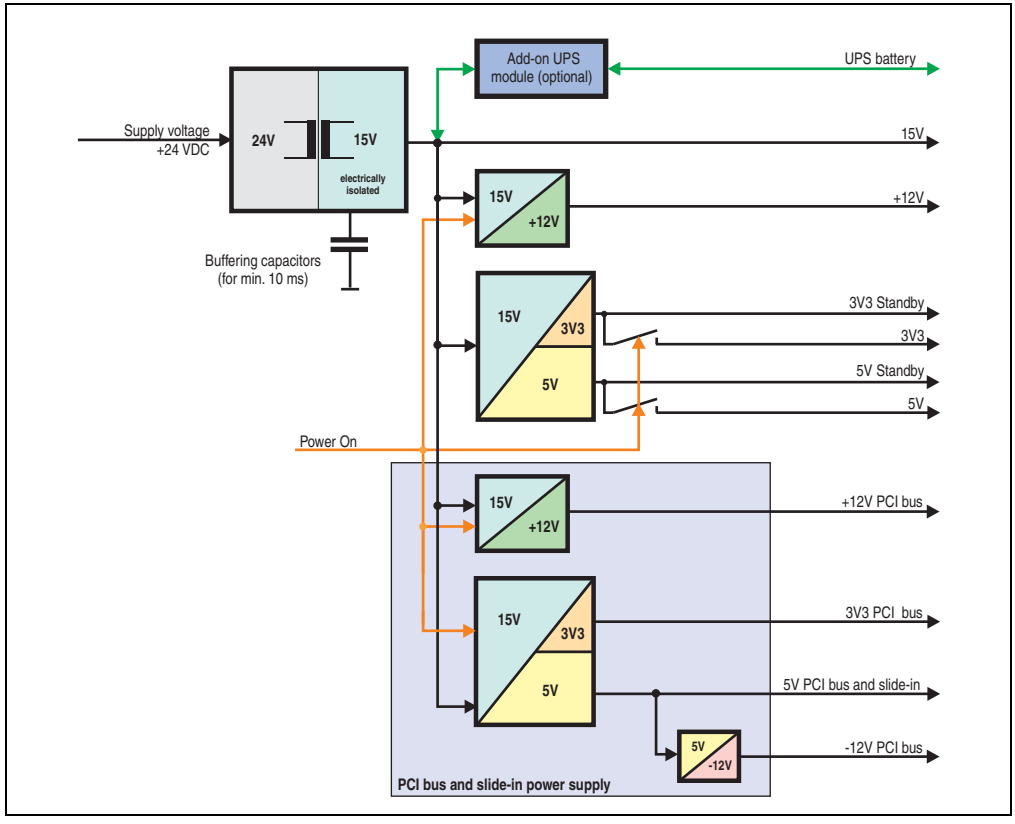


Figure 31: Supply voltage block diagram 5 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version)

Explanation:

Systems with 5 PCI slots have two additional power supplies for the PCI bus and the slide-in drives. The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 V feed four further DC/DC converters. Two generate +12 V, and the others generate 3V3 and 5V standby. After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3, 5 V, +12 V are placed on the bus. At the 5 V output, yet another DC/DC converter generates -12 V , and places these on the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.10.5 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-05 revision < H0

Information:	5PC600.SX05-00	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	5PC600.X945-00 N270	Enter values in this column
Total power supply (maximum)		**110**
Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V — **Maximum possible at 5V**		**55**
CPU board, fixed device	16	
Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on)	1	
Hard disk, optional (add-on)	4	
External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
Devices 5V ∑		
3V3 — **Maximum possible at 3V3**		**23**
System unit, fixed device	4	
Graphics adapter (AP Link), optional	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
Devices 3V3 ∑		
+12V — **Maximum possible at +12V**		**12**
Fan kit, optional	2.5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
Devices +12V ∑		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply rating (maximum)		**50**
5V — **Maximum possible at 5V PCI bus and slide-in**		**50**
Per CompactFlash, optional (slide-in)	1	
Per hard disk, optional (slide-in)	4	
Per drive, optional (slide-in - CD/DVD)	4	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) 1)		
-12V — **Maximum possible at -12V PCI bus and slide-in**		**1.2**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) 1)		
Devices total 5V ∑		
3V3 — **Maximum possible at 3V3 PCI bus and slide-in**		**23**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) 1)		
Devices 3V3 ∑		
+12V — **Maximum possible at +12V PCI bus and slide-in**		**12**
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit) 1)		
Devices +12V ∑		
PCI bus and slide-in total ∑		
Devices total ∑		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.10.6 Power calculation with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01 revision < H0

Information:	5PC600.SX05-01	This system
All entries in watts The values for the **suppliers** are maximum values. The values for the **devices** are average maximum values, but not peak values.	5PC600.X945-00 N270	Enter values in this column
Total power supply (maximum)		110
Add-on UPS module, optional	7.5	
5V		55
CPU board, fixed device	16	
Per CompactFlash, optional (add-on)	1	
Hard disk, optional (add-on)	4	
External keyboard PS/2, optional	1	
USB peripheral, optional (max. 2.5 watts per USB1 and USB2 connection)	5	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	5	
Devices 5V Σ		
3V3 Maximum possible at 3V3		23
System unit, fixed device	4	
Interface option (add-on interface), optional	0.25	
Devices 3V3 Σ		
+12V Maximum possible at +12V		12
Fan kit, optional	2.5	
External device, optional (via BaseBoard)	10	
Devices +12V Σ		
PCI bus and slide-in power supply rating (maximum)		50
5V Maximum possible at 5V PCI bus and slide-in		50
Per CompactFlash, optional (slide-in)	1	
Per hard disk, optional (slide-in)	4	
Per drive, optional (slide-in - CD/DVD)	4	
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
-12V Maximum possible at -12V PCI bus and slide-in		1.2
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 1.2 watts with and without fan kit) [1]		
Devices total 5V Σ		
3V3 Maximum possible at 3V3 PCI bus and slide-in		23
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 17 watts with fan kit) [1]		
Devices 3V3 Σ		
+12V Maximum possible at +12V PCI bus and slide-in		12
PCI card manufacturer limit, optional (max. 3 watts without fan kit, max. 12 watts with fan kit) [1]		
Devices +12V Σ		
PCI bus and slide-in total Σ		
Devices total Σ		

1) The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot (= sum of power consumption for each voltage area) may not exceed the limits stated for operation with or without a fan kit.

See section "Starting current" on page 114 for starting current values.

2.11 Power management for the APC620 embedded system unit

2.11.1 Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SE00-00, 5PC600.SE00-01 and 5PC600.SE00-02

The following block diagram presents the simplified structure of the APC620 embedded supply voltage for system units 5PC600.SE00-00, 5PC600.SE00-01 and 5PC600.SE00-02.

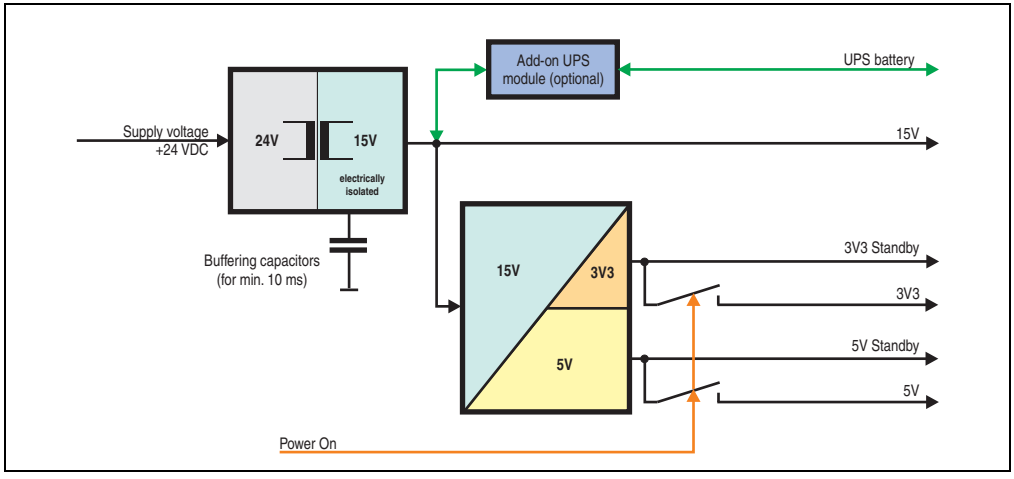


Figure 32: Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SE00-00, 5PC600.SE00-01 and 5PC600.SE00-02

Explanation:

The supply voltage is converted to 15 V with a DC/DC converter. These electrically isolated 15 V feed four further DC/DC converters, which generate the remaining voltages.

After the system is turned on (e.g. using the power button), the voltages 3V3 and 5 V are placed on the bus.

The optional APC620 add-on UPS and battery unit is supplied with 15 V and provides an uninterrupted power supply from the 15 V bus during power failures.

2.12 Humidity specifications

The following table displays the minimum and maximum humidity for the individual components that are relevant for the humidity limitations of the entire device. The lowest and highest common values are always used when establishing these limits.

Component		Operation	Storage / Transport
X945 CPU board		10 - 90	5 - 95
System units (all models)		5- 90	5 - 95
Main memory for CPU board		10 - 90	5 - 95
Add-on drives	5AC600.HDDI-05 (ET, 24x7)	5 - 90	5 - 95
	5AC600.HDDI-06 (ET, 24x7)	5 - 90	5 - 95
Slide-in drive	5AC600.FDDS-00	20 - 80	5 - 90
Additional insert cards Interfaces AP Link	5AC600.CANI-00	5 - 90	5 - 95
	5AC600.485I-00	5 - 90	5 - 95
	5AC600.SDL0-00	5 - 90	5 - 95
	5ACPCI.RAIC-02 (24 hours/default)	5 - 90	5 - 95
	5ACPCI.RAIC-03 (24 hours/default)	8 - 90	5 - 95
	5ACPCI.RAIC-04 (24 hours/default)	8 - 90	5 - 95
Accessories	CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04	85	85
	CompactFlash cards - 5CFCRD.xxxx-03	8 - 95	8 - 95
	Flash drive 5MMUSB.2048-00	10 - 90	5 - 90
	USB Media Drive 5MD900.USB2-01	20 - 80	5 - 90

Table 27: Overview of humidity specifications for individual components

The listed specifications correspond to the humidity at an ambient temperature of 30°C. More detailed information about the specific temperature-dependent humidity values can be found in the technical data for the individual components.

2.13 Device interfaces

The following two graphics show the general and optional device interfaces on an APC620 complete device with 5 PCI slots or an APC620 embedded device.

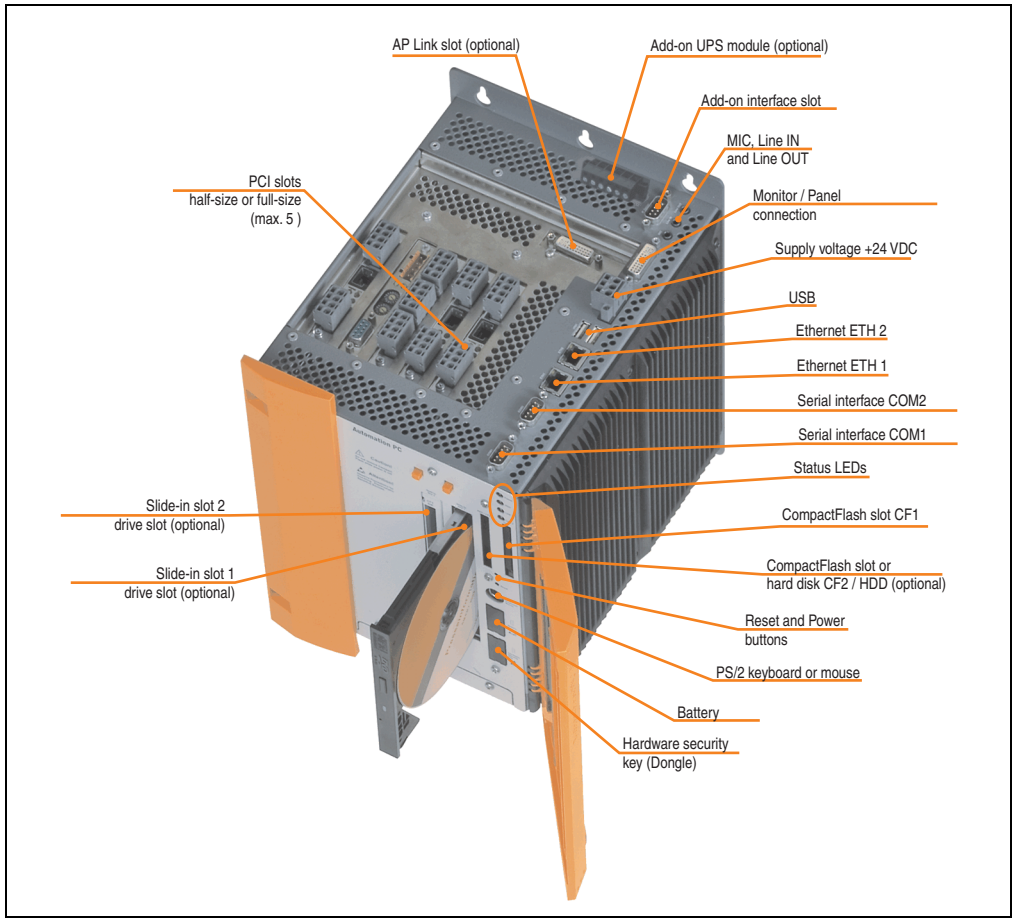


Figure 33: General device interfaces example - APC620 with 5 PCI slots

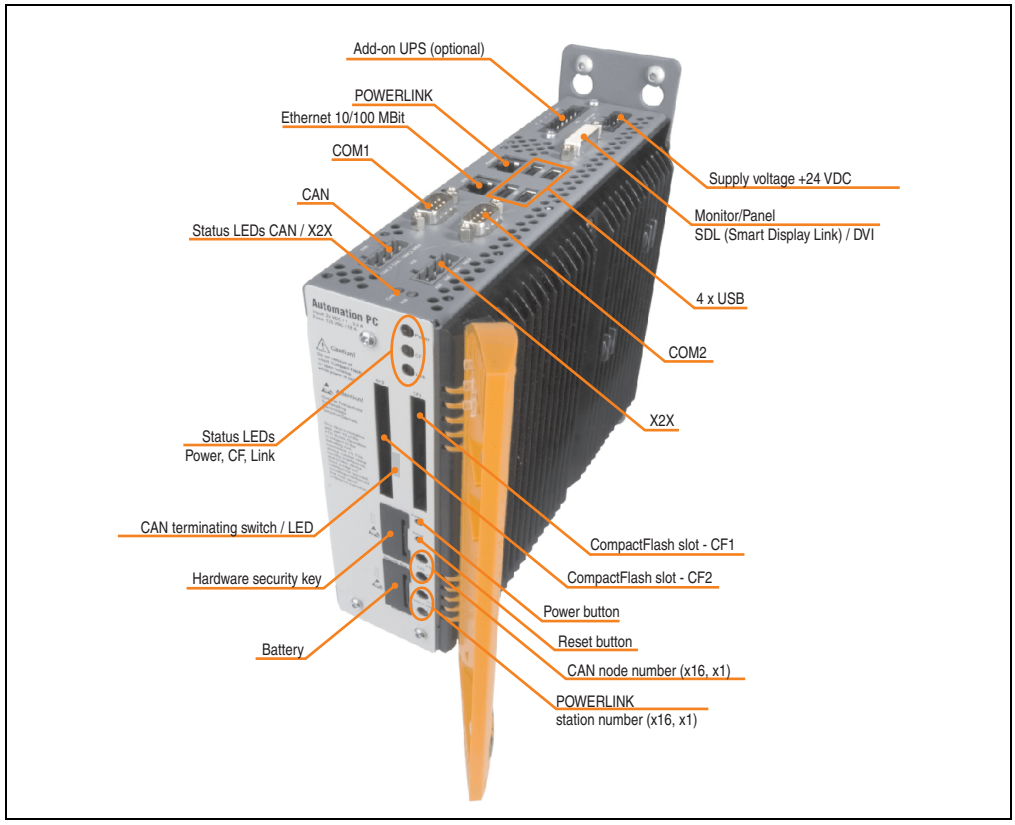


Figure 34: General device interfaces example - APC620 embedded

Each individual device interface is explained in greater detail on the following pages.

2.13.1 Serial interfaces COM1

Serial interfaces COM1[1)]		
Type	RS232, modem-capable, not electrically isolated	9-pin DSUB male
UART	16550-compatible, 16-byte FIFO	
Transfer rate	Max. 115 kBaud	
Cable length	Max. 15 meters	
Pin	**Assignment**	
1	DCD	
2	RXD	
3	TXD	
4	DTR	
5	GND	
6	DSR	
7	RTS	
8	CTS	
9	RI	

Table 28: Pin assignments - COM1

1) The interfaces, etc. available on the device or module were numbered accordingly for easy identification. This numbering can differ from the numbering used by the particular operating system.

I/O address and IRQ

Resource	Default setting	Additional setting options
I/O address	3F8	2F8, 3E8, 2E8
IRQ	IRQ4	IRQ3

Table 29: COM1 - I/O address and IRQ

The setting for the I/O address and the IRQ can be changed in the BIOS setup (under "Advanced" - submenu "I/O Device Configuration" setting "Serial port A"). Please note any potential conflicts with other resources when changing this setting.

2.13.2 Serial interfaces COM2

Serial interfaces COM2[1)]		
Type	RS232, modem-capable, not electrically isolated	9-pin DSUB male
UART	16550 compatible, 16 byte FIFO	
Transfer rate	Max. 115 kBaud	
Cable length	Max. 15 meters	
Pin	**Assignment**	
1	DCD	
2	RXD	
3	TXD	
4	DTR	
5	GND	
6	DSR	
7	RTS	
8	CTS	
9	RI	

Table 30: Pin assignments - COM2

1) The interfaces, etc. available on the device or module were numbered accordingly for easy identification. This numbering can differ from the numbering used by the particular operating system.

I/O address and IRQ

Resource	Default setting	Additional setting options
I/O address	2F8	3F8, 3E8, 2E8
IRQ	IRQ3	IRQ4

Table 31: COM2 - I/O address and IRQ

The setting for the I/O address and the IRQ can be changed in the BIOS setup (under "Advanced" - submenu "I/O device configuration" setting "Serial port B"). Please note any potential conflicts with other resources when changing this setting.

2.13.3 X2X (only APC620 embedded)

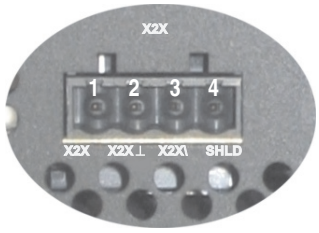
X2X Link interface (only APC620 embedded)	
The electrically isolated X2X Link is a 4-pin multipoint connector.	
Pin	**X2X Link**
1	X2X
2	X2X⊥
3	X2X\
4	SHLD (shield)

Table 32: X2X pin assignments (only APC620 embedded)

Driver support

The fieldbus interface X2X is only supported together with Automation Runtime.

2.13.4 CAN (only APC620 embedded)

CAN	
The electrically isolated CAN bus interface is a 4-pin multipoint connector.	
Transfer rate	Max. 500 kBit/s
Bus length	Max. 1000 meters
Pin	**CAN bus**
1	CAN_H (CAN High)
2	CAN⊥ (CAN Ground)
3	CAN_L (CAN Low)
4	SHLD (shield)

Table 33: CAN pin assignments (only APC620 embedded)

Driver support

The fieldbus interface CAN is only supported together with Automation Runtime.

2.13.5 CAN node number (only APC620 embedded)

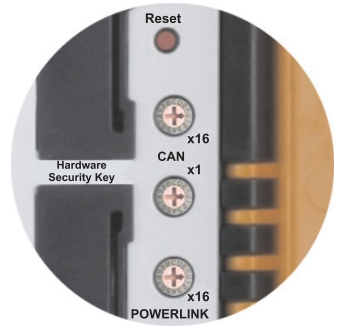
CAN node number switch (x1, x16) - only APC620 embedded			
Both of these hex switches (x16, x1) are used to configure the node number for the CAN interface.			
Switch position			
x16	x1	Description	
0 ... F	0 ... F	Any	

Table 34: CAN node number switch (x1, x16) - only APC620 embedded

2.13.6 CAN terminating switch / LED (only APC620 embedded)

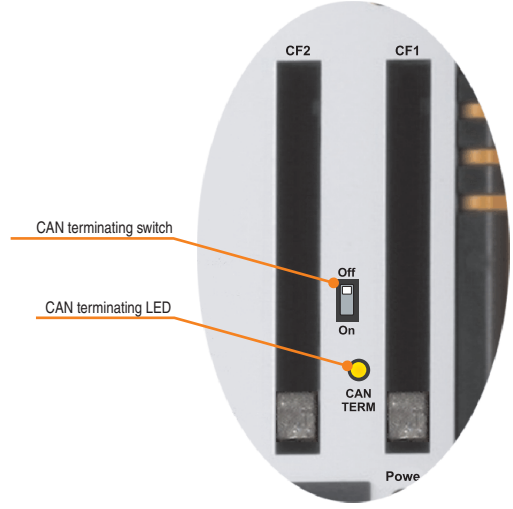
CAN terminating switch / LED (only APC620 embedded)			
CAN networks are cabled using a bus structure where both ends of the bus are equipped with terminating resistors. The APC620 embedded has an integrated terminating resistor (delivery state: disabled with the setting "Off").			
LED	On	Off	
Yellow	The terminating resistor integrated in the bus controller is turned on.	The terminating resistor integrated in the bus controller is turned off.	
CAN terminating switch	Position Off	Position On	
Can be pressed using a pointed object.	Terminating resistor is turned off.	Terminating resistor is turned on.	

Table 35: CAN terminating switch / LED (only APC620 embedded)

2.13.7 Status LEDs CAN / X2X (only APC620 embedded)

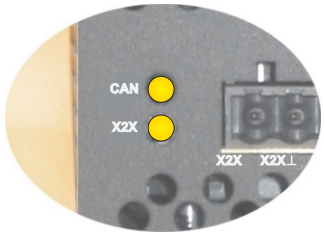
Status LEDs CAN / X2X (only APC620 embedded)			
			
Yellow LED for	**On**	**Off**	
CAN	Sends data	Receives data	
X2X	Sends data	Receives data	

Table 36: Status LEDs CAN / X2X (only APC620 embedded)

2.13.8 POWERLINK (only APC620 embedded)

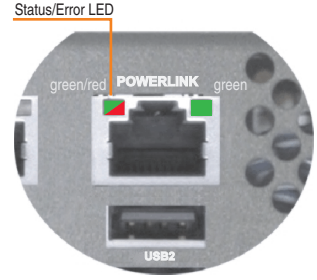
POWERLINK (only APC620 embedded)			
Controller			
Cabling	S/STP (Cat5e)		
Transfer rate			
Cable length	Max. 100 m (min. Cat5e)		
LED color	**On**	**Off**	
Green/red	see Status / Error LED		
Green	Link (POWERLINK network connection available)	Activity (blinking) (Data transfer in progress)	

Table 37: POWERLINK (only APC620 embedded)

Driver support

The fieldbus interface POWERLINK is only supported together with Automation Runtime.

Status / Error LED

The status/error LED is a green/red dual LED. The color green (status) is superimposed on the color red (error).

Red - error	Description
On	The POWERLINK interface has encountered an error (failed Ethernet frames, increased number of collisions on the network, etc.).

Table 38: Status / Error LED as error LED - POWERLINK V2 operating mode

Green - status	Description
Off NOT_ACTIVE	**Managing Node (MN)** The bus is monitored for POWERLINK frames. If a frame is not received within the configured time window (timeout), the interface goes directly into PRE_OPERATIONAL_1 status (single flash). If, however, POWERLINK communication is detected before this time passes, the interface goes directly into the BASIC_ETHERNET status (flickering). **Controlled Node (CN)** The bus is monitored for POWERLINK frames. If a frame is not received within the configured time window (timeout), the interface goes directly into BASIC_ETHERNET status (flickering). If, however, POWERLINK communication is detected during this time, the interface goes directly into the PRE_OPERATIONAL_1 status (single flash).
Green flickering (approx. 10 Hz) BASIC_ETHERNET	The interface is in BASIC_ETHERNET status, and is operated purely as an Ethernet TCP/IP interface. **Managing Node (MN)** This status can only be changed by resetting the interface. **Controlled Node (CN)** If POWERLINK communication is detected while in this status, the interface goes into the PRE_OPERATIONAL_1 state (single flash).
Single flash (approx. 1 Hz) PRE_OPERATIONAL_1	The interface status is PRE_OPERATIONAL_1. **Managing Node (MN)** The MN starts the operation of the "reduced cycle". Collisions are allowed on the bus. There is not yet any cyclic communication. **Controlled Node (CN)** The CN waits until it receives an SoC frame and then switches to PRE_OPERATIONAL_2 status (double flash).
Double flash (approx. 1 Hz) PRE_OPERATIONAL_2	The interface status is PRE_OPERATIONAL_2. **Managing Node (MN)** The MN begins with the cyclic communication (cyclic input data is not yet evaluated). The CNs are configured in this status. **Controlled Node (CN)** In this status, the interface is normally configured by the manager. After this, a command changes the status to READY_TO_OPERATE (triple flash).
Triple flash (approx. 1 Hz) READY_TO_OPERATE	The interface status is READY_TO_OPERATE. **Managing Node (MN)** Normal cyclic and asynchronous communication. Received PDO data is ignored. **Controlled Node (CN)** The configuration of the interface is complete. Normal cyclic and asynchronous communication. The PDO data sent corresponds to the PDO mapping used. However, cyclic data is not yet evaluated.
On OPERATIONAL	The interface status is OPERATIONAL.
Blinking (approx. 2.5 Hz) STOPPED	The interface status is STOPPED. **Managing Node (MN)** This status is not possible for the MN. **Controlled Node (CN)** No output data is produced and no input data is received. Only the appropriate command from the manager can enter or leave this state.

Table 39: Status / Error LED as status LED - POWERLINK V2 operating mode

2.13.9 POWERLINK station number (only APC620 embedded)

POWERLINK station number (x1, x16)			
Both of these hex switches (x16, x1) are used to configure the station number for the POWERLINK. Station numbers are permitted between #00 and #FD.			
Switch position			
x16	x1	Description	
0	0	Operation as managing node	
0 ... F	1 ... D	station number Operation as controlled node	
F	E	Reserved	
F	F	Reserved	

Table 40: POWERLINK station number (x1, x16) - only APC620 embedded

2.13.10 Ethernet connection ETH (only APC620 embedded)

This Ethernet connection is integrated in the CPU board being used.

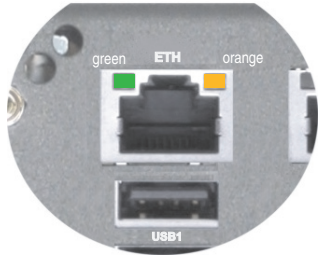
Ethernet connection ETH (only APC620 embedded)			
Controller	Intel 82562		RJ45 twisted pair (10BaseT/100BaseT), female
Cabling	S/STP (Cat5e)		
Transfer rate	10/100 MBit/s [1]		
Cable length	Max. 100 m (min. Cat5e)		
LED	On	Off	
Green	100 MBit/s	10 MBit/s	
Orange	Link (Ethernet network connection available)	Activity (blinking) (Data transfer in progress)	

Table 41: Ethernet connection ETH (only APC620 embedded)

1) Both operating modes possible. Change-over takes place automatically.

2.13.11 Ethernet connection ETH1

This Ethernet connection is integrated in the CPU board being used.

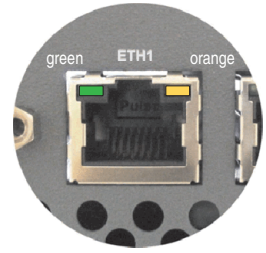
Ethernet connection (ETH1[1])			
Controller	Intel 82562		RJ45 twisted pair (10BaseT/100BaseT), female 
Cabling	S/STP (Cat5e)		
Transfer rate	10/100 MBit/s [2]		
Cable length	See table 43 "Ethernet cable lengths when using 5PC600.X945-00 CPU boards" on page 109.		
LED	**On**	**Off**	
Green	100 MBit/s	10 MBit/s	
Orange	Link (Ethernet network connection available)	Activity (blinking) (Data transfer in progress)	

Table 42: Ethernet connection (ETH1)

1) The interfaces, etc. available on the device or module were numbered accordingly for easy identification. This numbering can differ from the numbering used by the particular operating system.

2) Both operating modes possible. Change-over takes place automatically.

Driver support

A special driver is necessary for operating the Intel Ethernet controller 82562. Drivers for Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Embedded, and DOS are available for download on the B&R Homepage in the download area (www.br-automation.com).

Information:

Required drivers can only be downloaded from the B&R homepage, not from manufacturers' pages.

Ethernet cable lengths when X945 CPU boards are used

When using Intel X945 CPU boards (5PC600.X945-00), the supported cable length depends on the system unit revision.

System unit	Cable length with CAT5e cable	
	Up to 50 meters	Up to 100 meters[1)]
5PC600.SX01-00	Revision < H0	Starting with Revision H0
5PC600.SX02-00	Revision < F5	Starting with Revision F5
5PC600.SX02-01	Revision < G5	Starting with Revision G5
5PC600.SF03-00	-	Starting with Revision A0
5PC600.SX05-00	Revision < G0	Starting with Revision G0
5PC600.SX05-01	Revision < G0	Starting with Revision G0

Table 43: Ethernet cable lengths when using 5PC600.X945-00 CPU boards

1) When higher quality cable is used (e.g.: category CAT7), greater distances are possible.

2.13.12 Ethernet connection ETH2

This Ethernet connection is integrated in the system unit.

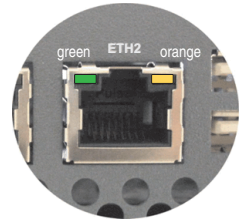
Ethernet connection (ETH2[1])			
Controller	Intel 82551ER		RJ45 twisted pair (10BaseT/100BaseT), female 
Cabling	S/STP (Cat5e)		
Transfer rate	10/100 MBit/s [2]		
Cable length	Max. 100 m (min. Cat5e)		
LED	**On**	**Off**	
Green	100 MBit/s	10 MBit/s	
Orange	Link (Ethernet network connection available)	Activity (blinking) (Data transfer in progress)	

Table 44: Ethernet connection (ETH2)

1) The interfaces, etc. available on the device or module were numbered accordingly for easy identification. This numbering can differ from the numbering used by the particular operating system.

2) Both operating modes possible. Change-over takes place automatically.

Driver support

A special driver is necessary for operating the Intel Ethernet controller 82551ER. Drivers for Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Embedded, and DOS are available for download on the B&R Homepage in the download area (**www.br-automation.com**).

Information:

Required drivers can only be downloaded from the B&R homepage, not from manufacturers' pages.

2.13.13 USB port

The APC620 devices have a USB 2.0 (Universal Serial Bus) host controller with multiple USB ports, two of which are on the outside for easy user access.

See the section "USB connection (only APC620 embedded)" on page 112 for a description of the USB connections on APC620 embedded devices.

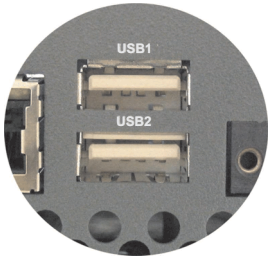
Universal Serial Bus (USB1 und USB2)[1]		
Transfer rate	Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), Full speed (12 MBit/s) up to High speed (480 MBit/s)	2x USB Type A, female 
Power supply	Max. 500 mA per port[2]	
Maximum cable length	5 m (without hub)	

Table 45: USB port

1) The interfaces, etc. available on the device or module were numbered accordingly for easy identification. This numbering can differ from the numbering used by the particular operating system.

2) For safety, every USB port is equipped with a maintenance free "USB current-limiting circuit breaker" (max. 500 mA)

Warning!

Peripheral USB devices can be connected to the USB interfaces. Due to the vast number of USB devices available on the market, B&R cannot guarantee their performance. B&R does ensure the performance of all USB devices that they provide.

Warning!

Because of general PC specifications, this interface should be handled with extreme care with regard to EMC, location of cables, etc.

Driver support

For optimal functionality of USB 2.0 (transfer speed up to 480 Mbit/s) with Windows XP, at least Service Pack 1 must be installed. Without Service Pack 1, Windows XP will only support USB 1.1.
USB 2.0 comes already integrated in B&R's XP embedded operating systems.

2.13.14 USB connection (only APC620 embedded)

The APC620 embedded devices have a USB 2.0 (Universal Serial Bus) host controller with multiple USB ports, two of which are on the outside for easy access.

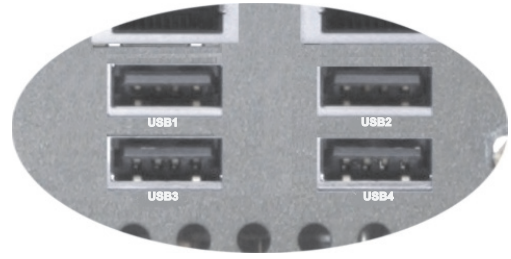
Universal Serial Bus (USB1, USB2, USB3, USB4)[1] - only APC620 embedded		
Transfer rate	Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), Full speed (12 MBit/s) to High speed (480 Mbit/s)	4 x USB type A, female 
Power Supplies[2] USB1, USB3 USB2, USB4	 Max. 500 mA Max. 1 A	
Maximum cable length	5 m (without hub)	

Table 46: USB connections 4 x - only APC620 embedded

1) The interfaces, etc. available on the device or module were numbered accordingly for easy identification. This numbering can differ from the numbering used by the particular operating system.

2) For safety, every USB port is equipped with a maintenance free "USB current-limiting circuit breaker" (max. 500 mA or 1 A). The sum of all 4 USB ports must not exceed the limit of 2 A.

Warning!

Peripheral USB devices can be connected to the USB interfaces. Due to the vast number of USB devices available on the market, B&R cannot guarantee their performance. B&R does ensure the performance of all USB devices that they provide.

Warning!

Because of general PC specifications, this interface should be handled with extreme care with regard to EMC, location of cables, etc.

2.13.15 +24 VDC supply voltage

The Automation PC 620 has a 24 VDC ATX compatible power supply. Depending on the system unit, the power supply provides the following maximum performances (in watts).

System unit	Max. power at + 5 V	Max. power at + 3V3	Max. power at + 12 V	Max. power at - 12 V	Max. total power
5PC600.SX01-00	55	23	12	1.2	70
5PC600.SX02-00	55	23	12	1.2	70
5PC600.SX02-01	55	23	12	1.2	70
5PC600.SF03-00	105	46	24	1.2	110
5PC600.SX05-00	105	46	24	1.2	110
5PC600.SX05-01	105	46	24	1.2	110
5PC600.SE00-00	55	23	12	1.2	55
5PC600.SE00-01	55	23	12	1.2	55
5PC600.SE00-02	55	23	12	1.2	55

Table 47: Power supply depending on the system unit

The 3-pin socket required for the supply voltage connection is not included in delivery. This can be ordered from B&R using the model number 0TB103.9 (screw clamp) or 0TB103.91 (cage clamp).

The pin assignments can be found either in the following table or printed on the APC620 housing. The supply voltage is internally protected (10A, fast-acting), so that the device cannot be damaged if there is an overload (fuse replacement necessary) or if the voltage supply is connected incorrectly (reverse polarity protection - fuse replacement not necessary).

Supply voltage		
Protected against reverse polarity		3-pin, male
Pin	**Description**	
1	+	
2	Functional ground	
3	-	
Accessories		
0TB103.9	Plug 24 V 5.08 3p screw clamps	
0TB103.91	Plug 24 V 5.08 3p cage clamps	

Figure 35: Supply voltage connection

Ground

Caution!

The pin's connection to the functional ground (pin 2) should be as short as possible (e.g. in the switching cabinet). We recommend using the largest possible conductor cross section on the supply plug.

The grounding connection can be found on the bottom of the APC620 systems. The M4 self-locking nut can be used, for example, to fasten a copper strip that is built into the APC620 at a central grounding point in the switching cabinet or system. The largest possible conductor cross section should be used (at least 2.5 mm²).

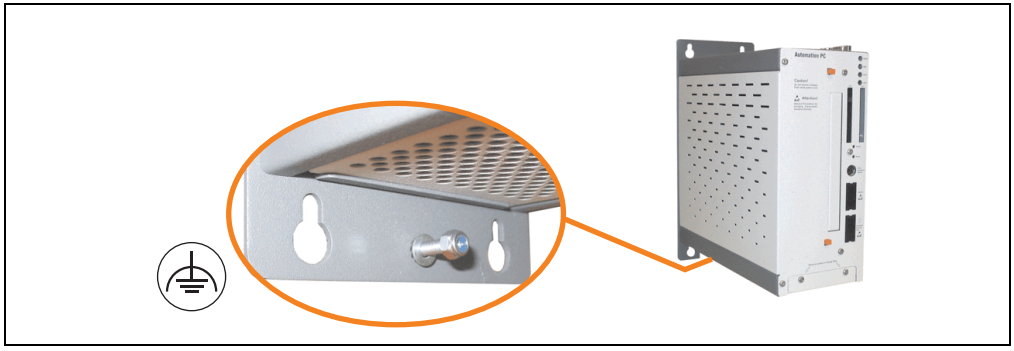


Figure 36: Ground connection

Also see the section "Grounding concept" on page 210.

Starting current

System unit	Typical	Maximum
5PC600.SX01-00	7 A	40 A (time < 300 µs)
5PC600.SX02-00	7 A	40 A (time < 300 µs)
5PC600.SX02-01	7 A	40 A (time < 300 µs)
5PC600.SF03-00	10 A	40 A (time < 300 µs)
5PC600.SX05-00	10 A	40 A (time < 300 µs)
5PC600.SX05-01	10 A	40 A (time < 300 µs)

Table 48: Starting currents in the voltage supply to the system units

Quick switching on/off of the power supply

If the APC620 is in Standby mode (e.g. Windows XP shutdown), then buffering takes a little more time due to capacitors and low power consumption. If the "Power Loss Control" option is set to "Power On" or "Last State" in BIOS, then a system with one of the system unit revisions in table

49 "System unit revisions for at least 10 seconds turn-off time" might not restart because a Power Off/On was not detected. To make sure that these system units will restart after a Power Off/On, the turn-off time should be set to at least 10 seconds.

Model number	Description	Revision
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Starting with revision B0
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Starting with revision B0
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Starting with revision B0
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Starting with revision A0
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Starting with revision A0

Table 49: System unit revisions for at least 10 seconds turn-off time

Thanks to a workaround, the turn-off time can be set as needed in systems with one of the following system unit revisions or higher.

Model number	Description	Revision
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Starting with revision F0
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Starting with revision E0
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Starting with revision F0
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Starting with revision A0
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Starting with revision D0
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Starting with revision D0

Table 50: System unit revisions for any turn-off times

2.13.16 Monitor / Panel connection

When using this video output, understand that the video signals that are available (RGB, DVI, and SDL - Smart Display Link) will vary depending on the system unit and CPU board.

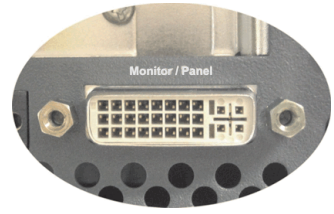
Monitor / Panel	
The following will provide an overview of the video signals available with different system units and CPU boards.	24-pin DVI-I with special functions, female 
System unit	**X945 board**
5PC600.SX01-00	RGB, DVI, SDL
5PC600.SX02-00	RGB
5PC600.SX02-01	RGB, DVI, SDL
5PC600.SF03-00	RGB
5PC600.SX05-00	RGB
5PC600.SX05-01	RGB, DVI, SDL
5PC600.SE00-00	RGB, DVI, SDL
5PC600.SE00-01	RGB
5PC600.SE00-02	RGB, DVI, SDL

Figure 37: Monitor / Panel connection

Hotplug for a display device is not supported in any combination. The plugs are specified for 100 connection cycles.

Caution!

The RGB, DVI and SDL cables can only be plugged in and unplugged when the APC620 and display device (Automation Panel 900, Automation Panel 800, monitor) are turned off.

See "Definitions for RGB, DVI, SDL" on page 120 for descriptions of RGB, DVI and SDL.

Pin assignments

Pin	Assignment	Pin	Assignment
1	T.M.D.S. data 2-	16	Hot Plug detect
2	T.M.D.S. data 2+	17	T.M.D.S. data 0-
3	T.M.D.S. data 2/SDL shield	18	T.M.D.S. data 0+
4	SDL-	19	T.M.D.S. DATA 0/XUSB1 shield
5	SDL+	20	XUSB1-
6	DDC clock	21	XUSB1+
7	DDC data	22	T.M.D.S. clock shield
8	Analog vertical sync	23	T.M.D.S. clock +
9	T.M.D.S. DATA 1-	24	T.M.D.S. clock -
10	T.M.D.S. DATA 1+	c1	Analog red video out
11	T.M.D.S. DATA 1/XUBS0 shield	c2	Analog green video out
12	XUSB0-	c3	Analog blue video out
13	XUSB0+	c4	Analog horizontal sync
14	+ 5 V Power [1]	c5	Analog ground (analog R, G and B return)
15	Ground (return for + 5V, HSync and VSync)		

DVI-I 24 pin, female

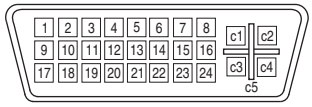


Table 51: Pin assignments - Monitor / panel connection

1) Protected internally by a multifuse

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables	Resolution				
Segment length [m]	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03
5	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03
10	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00[1] 5CASDL.0100-01[1] 5CASDL.0100-03[1]

Table 52: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution				
	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
15	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00[1)] 5CASDL.0150-01[1)] 5CASDL.0150-03[1)]	- - -
20	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	-
25	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	- -	- -
30	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	- -
40	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	- -

Table 52: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables (cont.)

1) See table 53 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 118

2) See table 54 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 119

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. B0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. B0	

Table 53: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. D0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. D0	
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	Rev. B3	
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	

Table 54: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

Definitions for RGB, DVI, SDL

RGB means:

- It is possible to connect RGB monitors (with adapter, model nr. 5AC900.1000-00) and office RGB TFT displays.

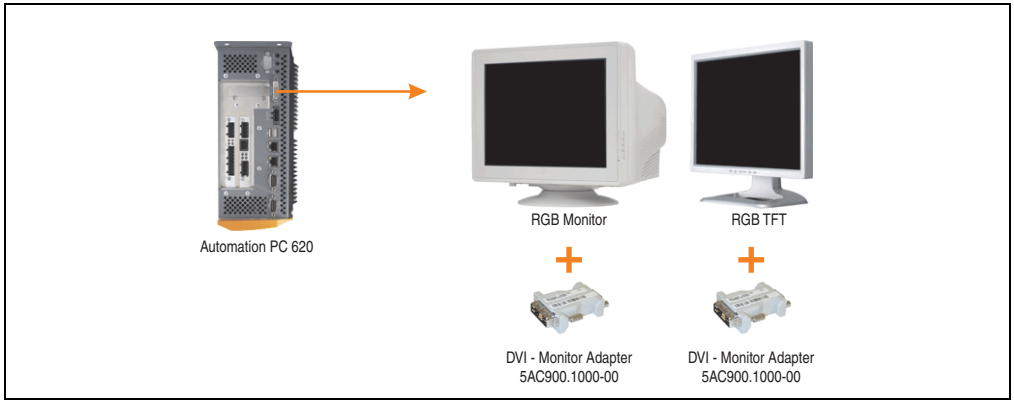


Figure 38: Monitor / Panel connection with RGB video signal

DVI means:

- Connection of B&R Automation Panel 900 display units with Automation Panel Link DVI Receiver (Model nr. 5DLDVI.1000-01), Office Digital/DVI Monitors and Office DVI TFT Displays is possible.

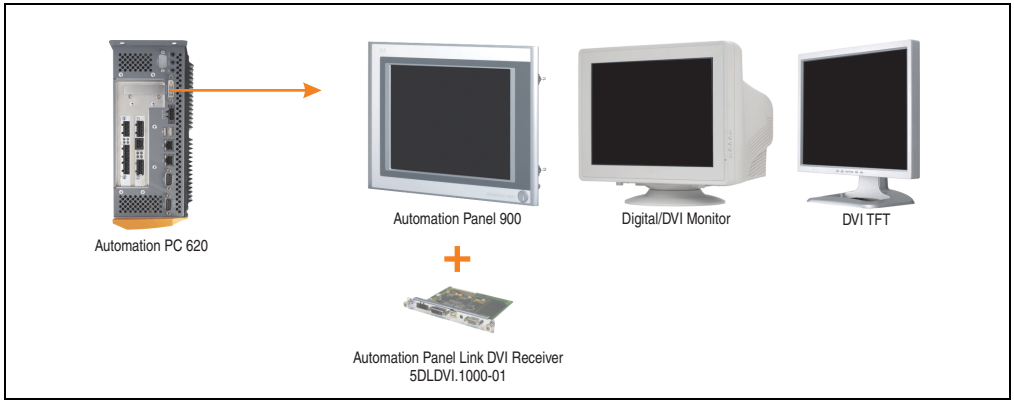


Figure 39: Monitor / Panel connection with DVI video signal

For examples and possibilities for connecting Automation Panel 900 display units via DVI, see Appendix A, chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 4 "Connection examples", starting on page 211.

SDL (Smart Display Link) means:

- Connection of B&R Automation Panel 800 and Automation Panel 900 display units with Automation Panel Link SDL receiver (Model nr. 5DLSDL.1000-01) or SDL transceiver (Model nr. 5DLSDL.1000-01).

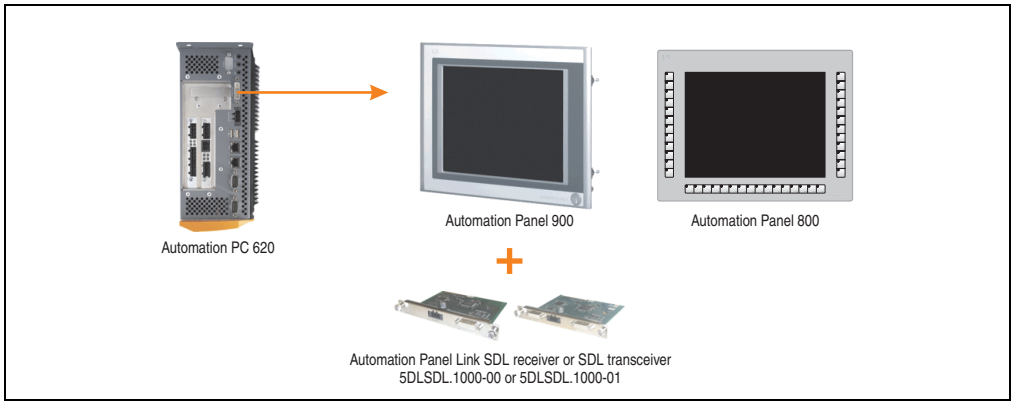


Figure 40: Monitor / Panel connection with SDL video signal

For examples and possibilities for connecting Automation Panel 900 and Automation Panel 800 display units via SDL, see Appendix A, chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 4 "Connection examples", starting on page 211.

2.13.17 MIC, Line IN and Line OUT ports

All APC620 systems include an AC97 (specification 2.2) compatible sound chip with access to the channels MIC, Line IN and Line OUT from the outside.

Information:

APC620 embedded devices do not have these connections.

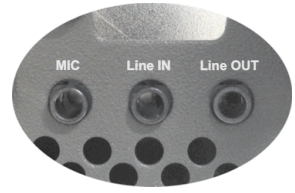
MIC, Line IN and Line OUT		
Controller	Realtek AC97	3.5 mm socket, female 
MIC	Connection of a mono microphone with a 3.5 mm stereo (headphone) jack.	
Line IN	Stereo Line IN signal supplied via 3.5 mm jack.	
Line OUT	Connection of a stereo sound device (e.g. amplifier) via a 3.5 mm jack.	

Table 55: Technical data - MIC, Line IN and Line OUT port

Driver support

A special driver is necessary for operating the AC97 sound chip (Realtek). Drivers for Windows XP Professional and Windows XP Embedded are available for download on the B&R Homepage in the download area (**www.br-automation.com**).

Information:

Required drivers can only be downloaded from the B&R homepage, not from manufacturers' pages.

2.13.18 Add-on interface slot

An optional add-on interface (e.g. CAN, RS485) can be installed here. See also section 3.7 "Interface options" on page 179.

Information:

APC620 embedded devices do not have this option.

Add-on interface slot		
Available add-on interfaces		
5AC600.CANI-00	Add-on CAN interface	
5AC600.485I-00	Add-on RS232/422/485 interface	

Table 56: Add-on interface slot

Information:

An add-on interface module is only available factory-installed.

2.13.19 Add-on UPS module slot

An optional APC620 add-on UPS module can be installed here.

Add-on UPS module slot		
APC620 add-on UPS module + accessories		
5AC600.UPSI-00	Add-on UPS module	
5AC600.UPSB-00	Battery unit 5 Ah	
5CAUPS.0005-00	APC620 UPS cable 0.5 m	
5CAUPS.0030-00	APC620 UPS cable 3 m	

Table 57: Add-on UPS module slot

Information:

An add-on UPS module can be installed with the following system unit revisions or later:

- **5PC600.SX01-00 starting with H0**
- **5PC600.SX02-00 starting with G0**
- **5PC600.SX02-01 starting with H0**
- **5PC600.SF03-00 starting with A0**
- **5PC600.SX05-00 starting with F0**
- **5PC600.SX05-01 starting with F0**
- **5PC600.SE00-00 starting with A0**
- **5PC600.SE00-01 starting with A0**
- **5PC600.SE00-02 starting with A0**

For more on the UPS module, see chapter 6 "Accessories", section 13 "Uninterruptible power supply" on page 464.

For info on configuring the UPS module, see chapter 4 "Software", section 9.3 "UPS configuration" on page 370.

For info on installing the UPS module, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 4 "Installation of the UPS module" on page 508.

2.13.20 AP Link slot

The option of inserting and using an AP Link card is only possible with system units 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SF03-00 and 5PC600.SX05-00.

For more information see section 3.9 "AP Link cards" on page 193.

Information:

APC620 embedded devices do not have this option.

2.13.21 PCI slots

Information:

APC620 embedded devices do not have a PCI slot.

Up to 5 PCI slots are available, depending on the system unit. 5-volt cards or universal cards that comply with the PCI half-size standard 2.2, and that do not exceed the following dimensions can be inserted.

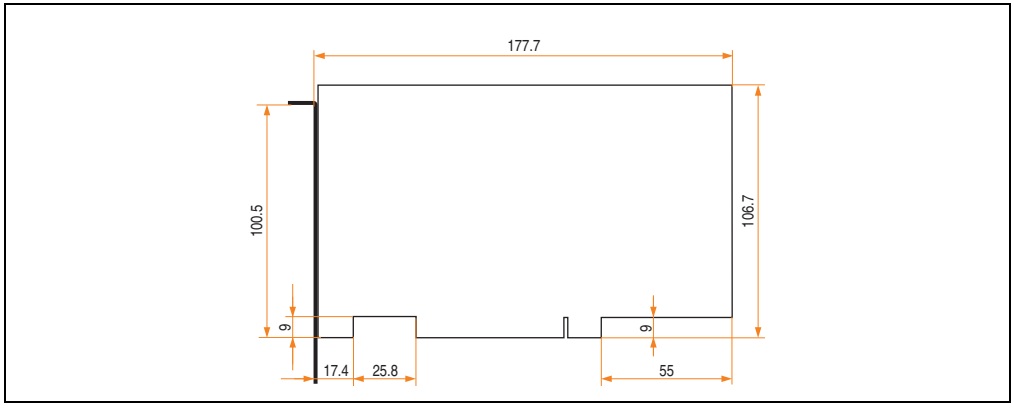


Figure 41: Dimensions - Standard half-size PCI cards

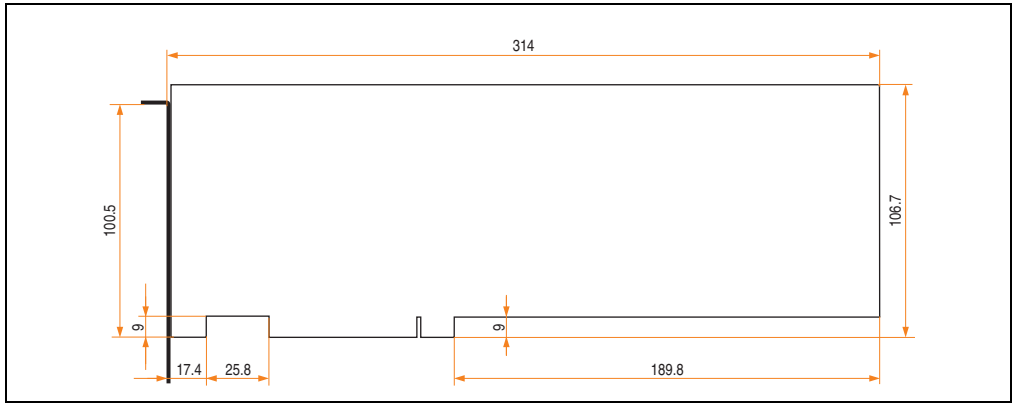


Figure 42: Dimensions - Standard full-size PCI cards

Information:

The total performance of one PCI card per PCI slot should not exceed the limit with or without a fan kit (see section "Power management APC620 system unit with 1 PCI slot" on page 76 or section "Power management APC620 system unit with 3 PCI slots" on page 86 and "Power management APC620 system units with 5 PCI slots" on page 88).

Technical data

Features	PCI bus properties
Default	PCI 2.2
Design	Half-size PCI or full-size PCI[1] 5 Volt connector
PCI bus type	32-bit
PCI bus speed	33 MHz

Table 58: Technical data - PCI bus

1) Only in conjunction with system unit 5PC600.SF03-00.

Voltages on the PCI slot plug (plug-in PCI cards)

The plug design for the PCI slot is the same as the design for a 5-volt PCI plug. The supply is applied at 3.3 volts and 5 volts on the actual plug.

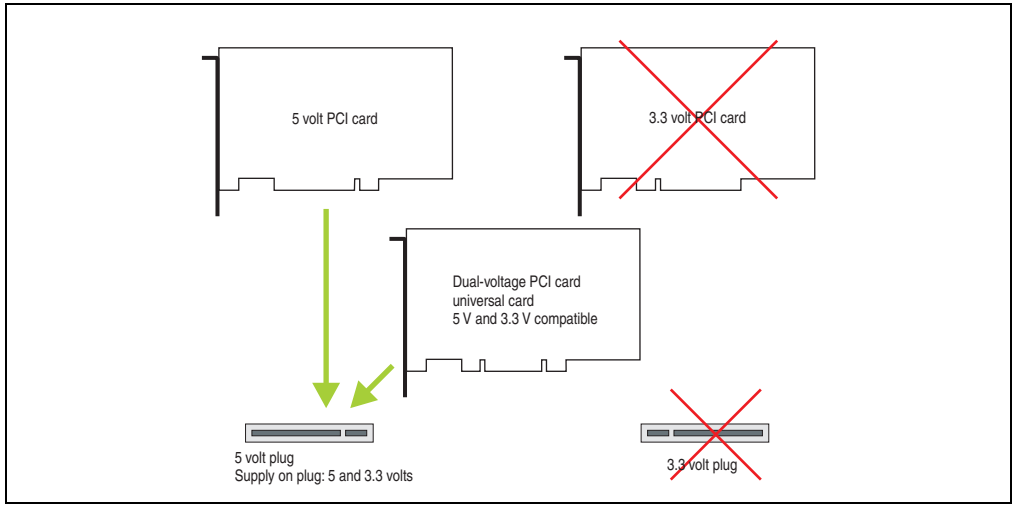


Figure 43: PCI connector type: 5 volt

2.13.22 Status LEDs

The status LEDs are integrated in the system unit behind the orange front cover.

See the section "Status LEDs Power, CF, Link (only APC620 embedded)" on page 129 for a description of the status LEDs on APC620 embedded devices.

Status LEDs				
LED	**Color**		**Meaning**	
Power	Green	On	Supply voltage OK	
	Red	On	The system is in standby mode (S5: soft-off mode or S4: hibernate mode -Suspend-to-Disk)	
	Orange 1)	On	Supply voltage not OK; the system is operating on battery power.	
HDD	Yellow	On	Signals IDE drive access (CF, HDD, CD, etc.)	
Link 1	Yellow	On	Active SDL connection.	
		blinking	An active SDL connection has been interrupted by a loss of power in the display unit.	
		Off	No active SDL connection available.	
Link 2	Yellow	On	Active SDL connection on the AP Link slot.	
		blinking	An active SDL connection on the AP Link slot has been interrupted by a loss of power in the display unit.	
		Off	No active SDL connection on the AP Link slot available.	

Table 59: Technical data - Status LEDs

1) Only lit when add-on UPS module is installed.

The light for the status LEDs is fed to the front cover via fiber optic lines.

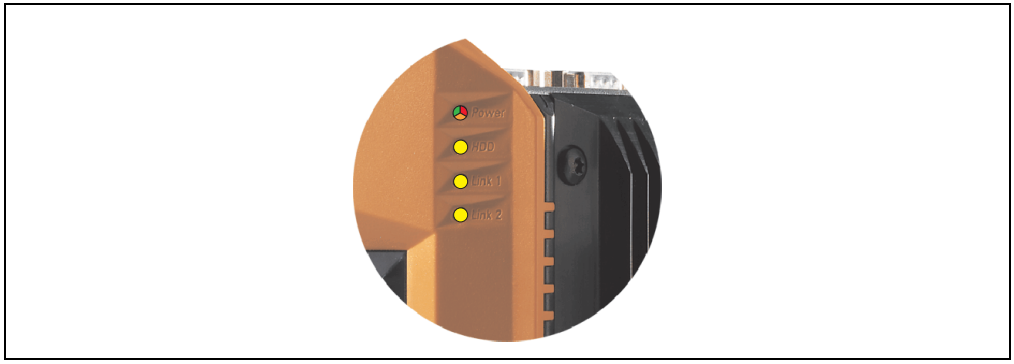


Figure 44: Front-side status LEDs

2.13.23 Status LEDs Power, CF, Link (only APC620 embedded)

The status LEDs are integrated in the system unit behind the orange front cover.

Status LEDs Power, CF, Link (only APC620 embedded)

LED	Color		Meaning
Power	Green	On	Supply voltage OK
	Red	On	The system is in standby mode (S5: soft-off mode or S4: hibernate mode -Suspend-to-Disk)
	Orange 1)	On	Supply voltage not OK; the system is operating on battery power.
CF	Yellow	On	Indicates access to CompactFlash (read or write)
Link	Yellow	On	Active SDL connection on the monitor/panel connection
		blinking	An active SDL connection has been interrupted by a loss of power in the display unit.
		Off	No active SDL connection

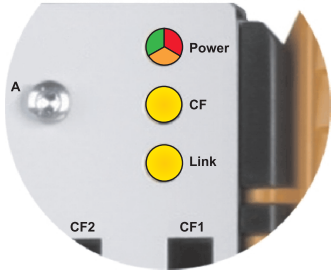


Table 60: Status LEDs Power, CF, Link (only APC620 embedded)

1) Only lit when add-on UPS module is installed.

2.13.24 CompactFlash slot (CF1)

This CompactFlash slot is a fixed component of an APC620 system, and is defined in BIOS as the primary master drive. Type I CompactFlash cards are supported. Available CompactFlash cards - see table 15 "Model numbers - CompactFlash cards" on page 30.

See the section "CompactFlash slots (only APC620 embedded)" on page 133 for a description of the CompactFlash slots on APC620 embedded devices.

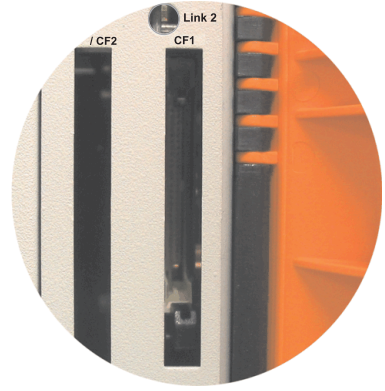
CompactFlash slot (CF1)		
Connection	Primary master IDE device	
CompactFlash Type	Type I	
Accessories	**Short description**	
5CFCRD.0512-04	512 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.1024-04	1024 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.2048-04	2048 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.4096-04	4096 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.8192-04	8192 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.0064-03	CompactFlash 64 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0128-03	CompactFlash 128 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0256-03	CompactFlash 256 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0512-03	CompactFlash 512 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.1024-03	CompactFlash 1024 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.2048-03	CompactFlash 2048 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.4096-03	CompactFlash 4096 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.8192-03	CompactFlash 8192 MB SSI	

Table 61: Technical data - CompactFlash slot (CF1)

Warning!

Inserting and removing the CompactFlash card can only take place without power applied!

2.13.25 Hard disk / CompactFlash slot (HDD/CF2)

This slot allows for the installation of a hard disk or a second CompactFlash slot (type I CompactFlash card) as add-on drives (see table 5.5 "Drives" for available add-on drives). The add-on drive is referred to in BIOS as the primary slave drive.

See the section "CompactFlash slots (only APC620 embedded)" on page 133 for a description of the CompactFlash slots on APC620 embedded devices.

Information:

Add-on drives are only available factory-installed. Therefore, they need to be requested when placing an order.

Hard disk / CompactFlash slot (HDD/CF2)		
Connection	Primary slave IDE device	
Add-on hard disks 2.5" drive (internal)		
5AC600.HDDI-05	Add-on hard disk 40 GB ET, 24/7	
5AC600.HDDI-06	Add-on hard disk 80 GB ET, 24/7	
Add-on CompactFlash slot		
5AC600.CFSI-00	Add-on CompactFlash slot	
CompactFlash Type	Type I	
Accessories	**Short description**	
5CFCRD.0512-04	512 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.1024-04	1024 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.2048-04	2048 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.4096-04	4096 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.8192-04	8192 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.0064-03	CompactFlash 64 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0128-03	CompactFlash 128 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0256-03	CompactFlash 256 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0512-03	CompactFlash 512 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.1024-03	CompactFlash 1024 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.2048-03	CompactFlash 2048 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.4096-03	CompactFlash 4096 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.8192-03	CompactFlash 8192 MB SSI	

Table 62: Technical data - Hard disk / CompactFlash slot (HDD/CF2)

Warning!

Inserting and removing the CompactFlash card can only take place without power applied!

2.13.26 CompactFlash slots (only APC620 embedded)

These CompactFlash slots are a fixed part of an APC620 embedded system and are defined in the BIOS as Primary Master (CF1) and Primary Slave (CF2) drive. Type I CompactFlash cards are supported.

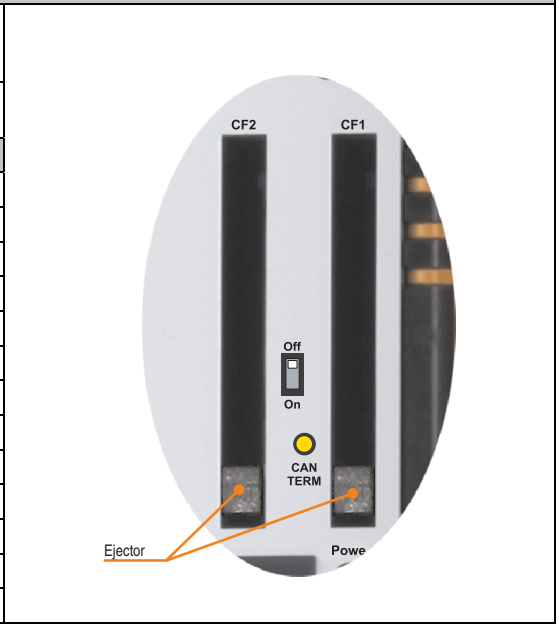
CompactFlash slot (CF1 / CF2)		
Connection CF1 CF2	 Primary master IDE device Primary slave IDE device	
CompactFlash Type	 Type I	
Accessories	**Short description**	
5CFCRD.0512-04	512 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.1024-04	1024 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.2048-04	2048 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.4096-04	4096 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.8192-04	8192 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.0064-03	CompactFlash 64 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0128-03	CompactFlash 128 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0256-03	CompactFlash 256 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0512-03	CompactFlash 512 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.1024-03	CompactFlash 1024 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.2048-03	CompactFlash 2048 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.4096-03	CompactFlash 4096 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.8192-03	CompactFlash 8192 MB SSI	

Table 63: CompactFlash slots (CF1 / CF2) - APC620 embedded

Warning!

Inserting and removing the CompactFlash card can only take place without power applied!

2.13.27 Power button

Due to the complete ATX power supply support, the power button serves various functions. These functions can be configured either in the BIOS setup (see BIOS function "Power button function" in section "Power" on page 307 for X945 CPU boards) or, for example, in the operating system Windows XP.

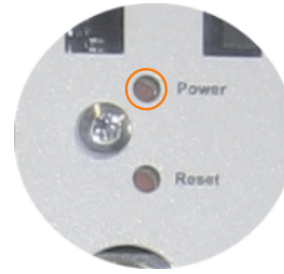
Power button	
The power button can be pressed with a pointed object (i.e. paper clip or tip of a pen). The power button acts like the on/off switch on a normal desktop PC with ATX power supply: **press and release** ... Switches on APC620 or shuts down operating system and switches off the APC620. **press and hold** ... ATX power supply switches off without shutting down the APC620 (**data could be lost!**). Pressing the power button does not reset the MTCX processor.	

Table 64: Technical data - Power button

2.13.28 Reset button

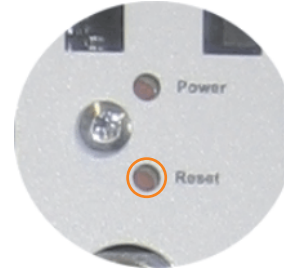
Reset button	
The reset button can be pressed with a pointed object (i.e. paper clip or tip of a pen). Pushing the reset button results in a hardware-reset, PCI-reset. The APC620 is restarted (cold restart). The MTCX processor is not reset when the reset button is pressed.	

Table 65: Technical data - Reset button

Warning!

A system reset can cause data to be lost!

2.13.29 PS/2 keyboard/mouse

Slot for a standard PS/2 mouse or a PS/2 AT-Enhanced keyboard. BIOS automatically determines whether a mouse or a keyboard has been connected, and transfers this information to the operating system.

Information:

APC620 embedded devices do not have a PS/2 interface.

With a PS/2 Y-cable, both keyboard and mouse can be operated simultaneously. They must be connected before the system is switched on.

This interface has a Hot-Plug function for PS/2 keyboards (only when no PS/2 mouse has ever been connected and used!).

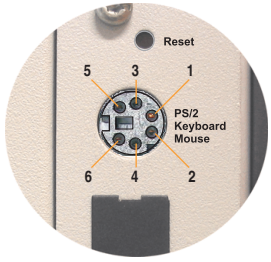
Connection for keyboard/mouse (PS/2)		
Pin	**Assignment**	PS/2 socket, female
1	DATA 0	
2	DATA 1	
3	GND	
4	+5 V[1)]	
5	CLK 0	
6	CLK 1	

Table 66: Technical data - PS/2 keyboard/mouse (external PS/2)

1) The PS/2 keyboard/mouse interface is protected by a multifuse (1 A).

Warning!

Because of general PC specifications, this interface should be used with extreme care concerning EMC, location of cables, etc.. It should therefore only be used for service!

Information:

The BIOS setup defaults only allow for the operation of a PS/2 keyboard. If a PS/2 mouse is connected, it must be activated in BIOS. In order to do this, set "PS/2 mouse" in the BIOS setup menu to "enabled" and save. (Located under Advanced - Miscellaneous - Item "PS/2 mouse").

2.13.30 Battery

The lithium battery (3 V, 950 mAh) buffers the internal real-time clock (RTC) as well as the individually saved BIOS settings and is located behind the black cover. The buffer duration of the battery is at least 4 years (2 1/2 years with the SRAM module model number 5AC600.SRAM-00 or with an APC620 embedded system unit and at 50°C, 8.5 mA current requirements of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%). The battery is subject to wear and should be replaced regularly (at least following the specified buffer duration).

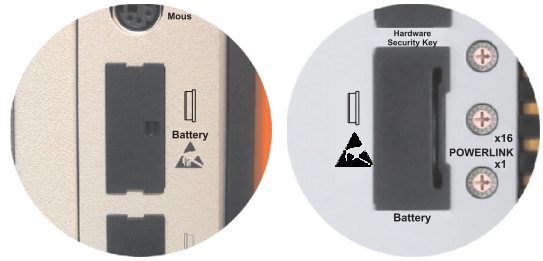
Battery		
Battery Type Removable Lifespan	Renata 950 mAh Yes, accessible from the outside 4 years [1) 2)]	
Accessories	**Short description**	
0AC201.91	**Lithium batteries, 4 pcs.** Lithium batteries (4 pcs.), 3 V / 950 mAh, button cell	
4A0006.00-000	**Lithium battery (1x)** Lithium battery (1 pcs.), 3 V / 950 mAh, button cell	

Table 67: Technical data - battery

1) at 50°C, 8.5 µA of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%.

2) The buffer duration is 2 1/2 years if a SRAM module (Mod.Nr. 5AC600.SRAM-00) is installed or in conjunction with an APC620 embedded system unit.

For more on changing the lithium battery, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section "Changing the battery" on page 487.

For technical information on the lithium battery, see chapter 6 "Accessories", section 4 "Replacement CMOS batteries" on page 410.

Battery status evaluation

The battery status is evaluated immediately following start-up of the device and is subsequently checked by the system every 24 hours. The battery is subjected to a brief load (1 second) during the measurement and then evaluated. The evaluated battery status is displayed in the BIOS Setup pages (under Advanced - Baseboard monitor) and in the B&R Control Center (ADI driver), but can also be read in a customer application via the ADI Library.

Battery status	Meaning
N/A	Hardware, i.e. firmware used is too old and does not support read.
GOOD	Data buffering is guaranteed

Table 68: Meaning of battery status

Battery status	Meaning
BAD	Data buffering is guaranteed for approx. another 500 hours from the point in time that the battery capacity is determined to be BAD (insufficient).

Table 68: Meaning of battery status

Hardware requirements (system unit)

- 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision I0
- 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision H0
- 5PC600.SX02-01 starting with revision K0
- 5PC600.SF03-00 starting with revision A0
- 5PC600.SX05-00 starting with revision H0
- 5PC600.SX05-01 starting with revision H0

Firmware / BIOS requirements

- APC620 / Panel PC 700 Firmware Upgrade V1.19 (MTCX PX32: V1.63, MTCX FPGA V1.19)

2.13.31 Hardware security key

B&R recommends a hardware security key (dongle) based on the DS1425 from MAXIM (previously Dallas Semiconductors) for software copy protection.

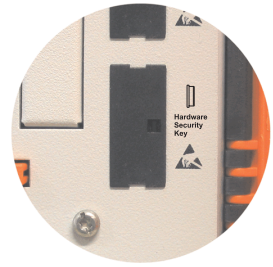
Hardware security key	
A hardware security key (dongle) can be inserted behind the black cover.	

Table 69: Technical data - Hardware security key

Warning!

Turn off power before removing or adding the hardware security key.

I/O address and IRQ

Resource	Default setting	Additional setting options
I/O address	378	278, 3BC
IRQ	-	-

Table 70: Hardware security key - I/O address and IRQ

The setting for the I/O address and the IRQ can be changed in the BIOS setup (under "Advanced" - submenu "I/O device configuration" setting "Parallel port").

2.13.32 Slide-in slot 1 drive slot

The "slide-in slot 1" drive slot exists only in APC620 system units with 2, 3 or 5 PCI slots. It is possible to insert a number of slide-in drives into it. See table for available slide-in drives 8 "Model numbers - Drives" on page 28.

For instructions about installing and replacing a slide-in, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 3 "Slide-in drive - installation and exchange" on page 505.

The slide-in USB FDD drive (5AC600.FDDS-00) is referred to as USB.

Information:

- **It is possible to add, remove, or modify the slide-in drive at any time.**
- **In system units with 5 PCI slots, the slide-in USB FDD (5AC600.FDDS-00) drive must be inserted in slide-in slot 1 for mechanical reasons.**

Caution!

Turn off power before adding or removing a slide-in drive.

Slide-in slot 1		
Connection	USB	
Accessories	**Short description**	
5AC600.FDDS-00	Slide-in USB FDD	

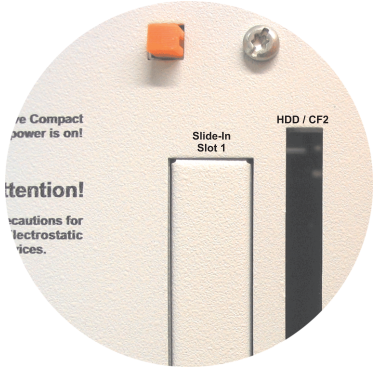


Table 71: Technical data - Slide-in slot 1

2.13.33 Slide-in slot 2 drive slot

The "slide-in slot 2" drive slot exists only in APC620 system units with 5 PCI slots. It is possible to insert a number of slide-in drives into it. See table for available slide-in drives 8 "Model numbers - Drives" on page 28.

For instructions about installing and replacing a slide-in, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 3 "Slide-in drive - installation and exchange" on page 505.

The slide-in USB FDD drive (5AC600.FDDS-00) is referred to as USB.

Information:

- **It is possible to add or remove a slide-in drive at any time.**
- **In system units with 5 PCI slots, the slide-in USB FDD (5AC600.FDDS-00) drive must be inserted in slide-in slot 1 for mechanical reasons.**

Caution!

Turn off power before adding or removing a slide-in drive.

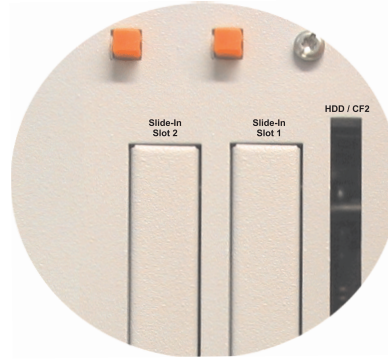
Slide-in slot 2		
Connection	USB	
Accessories	**Short description**	
5AC600.FDDS-00	Slide-in USB FDD	

Table 72: Technical data - Slide-in slot 2

2.14 Serial number sticker

Each B&R device is assigned a unique serial number label with a bar code (type 128), which allows the device to be clearly identified.

The serial number for the entire device is located behind the front door. This serial number represents all of the components built into the system (model number, name, revision, serial number, delivery date and duration of warranty).

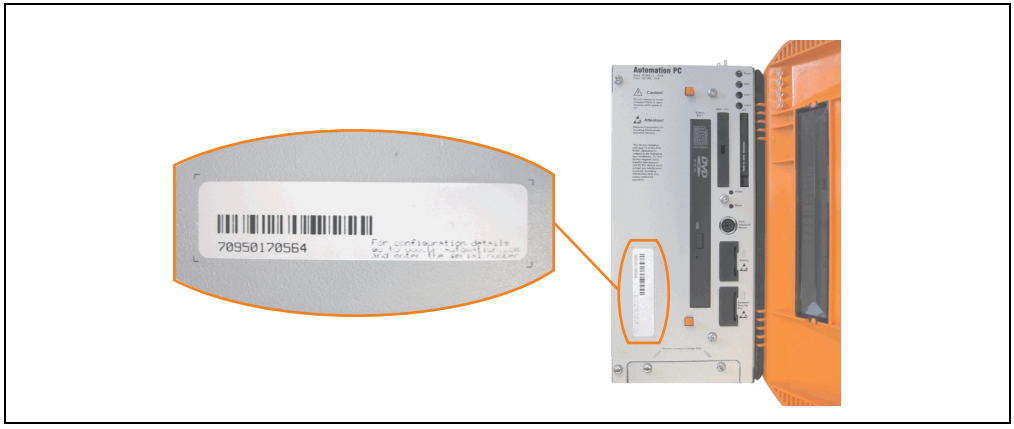


Figure 45: APC620 serial number sticker on front-side

A sticker with detailed information about the individual components can also be found on the back side of the mounting plate.

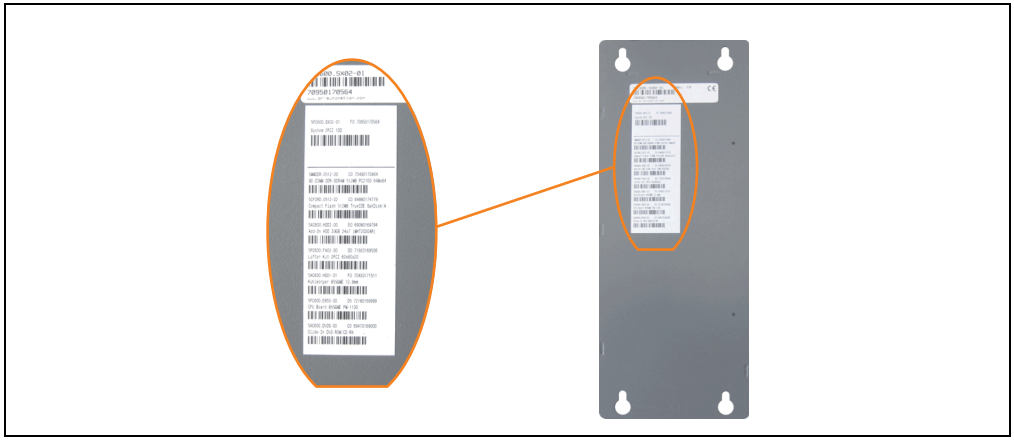


Figure 46: APC620 serial number sticker on back-side

This information can also be found on the B&R homepage. Enter the serial number of the entire device (found behind the front door) in the serial number search field on the start page **www.br-automation.com**. The search provides you with a detailed list of the individual components.

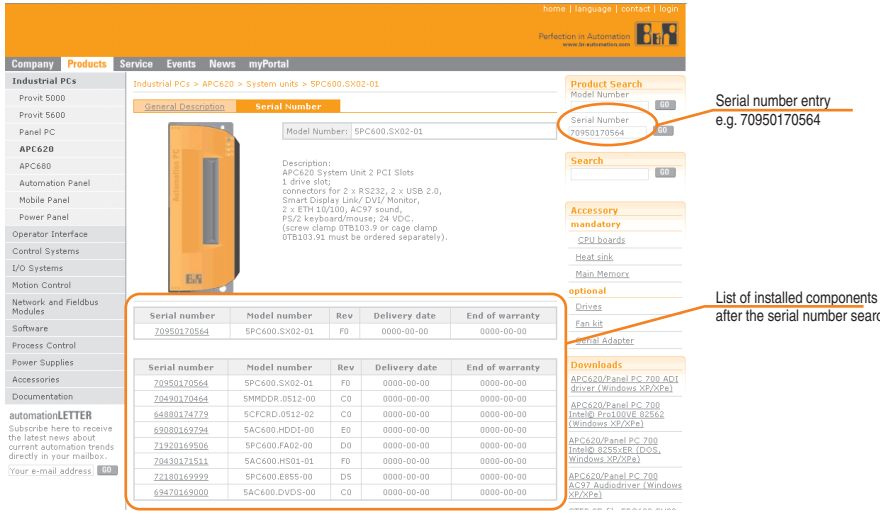


Figure 47: Example of serial number search: 70950170564

2.15 Block diagram

The following block diagrams show the simplified structure according to the system unit being used with a X945 CPU board.

2.15.1 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX01-00

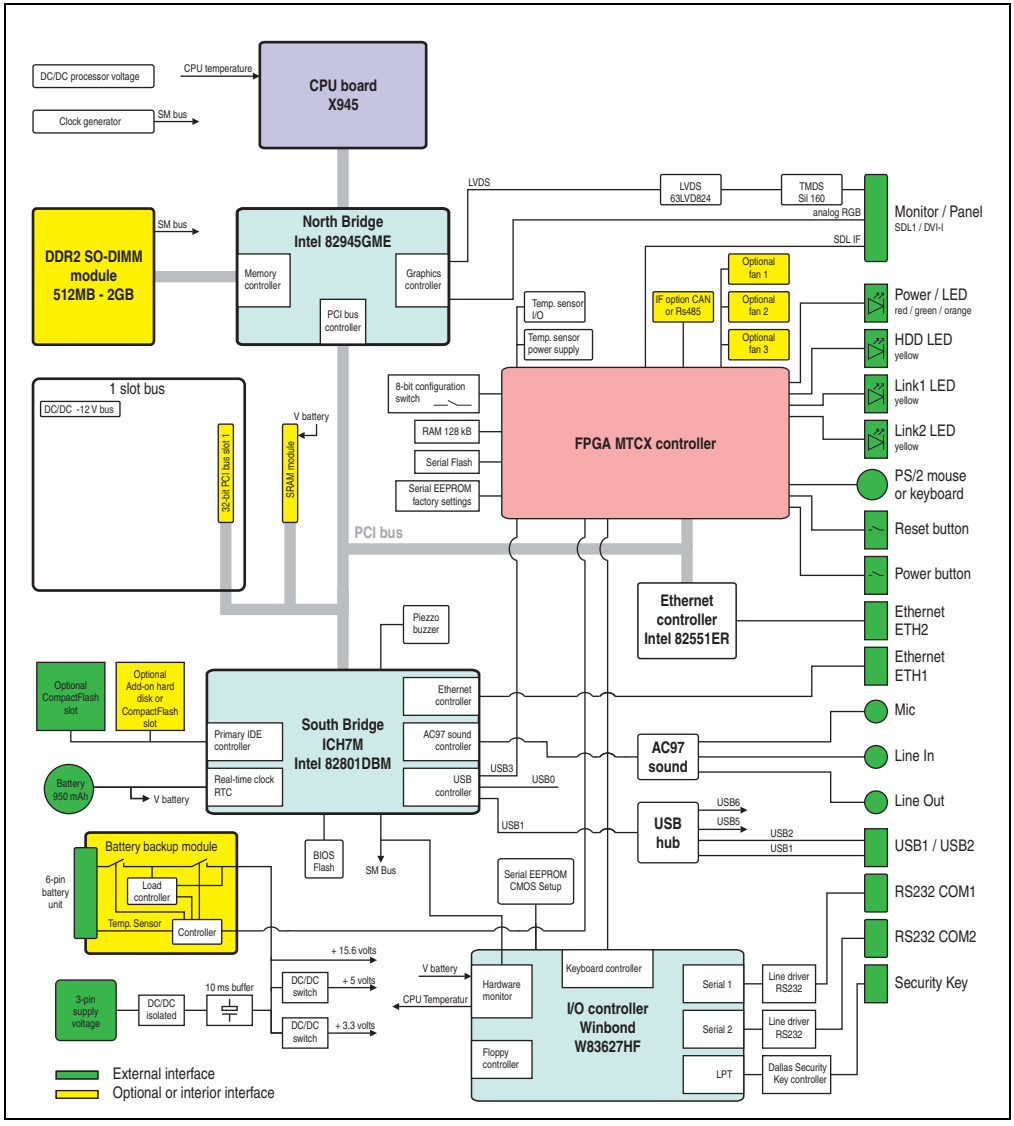


Figure 48: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX01-00 and X945 CPU board

2.15.2 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-00

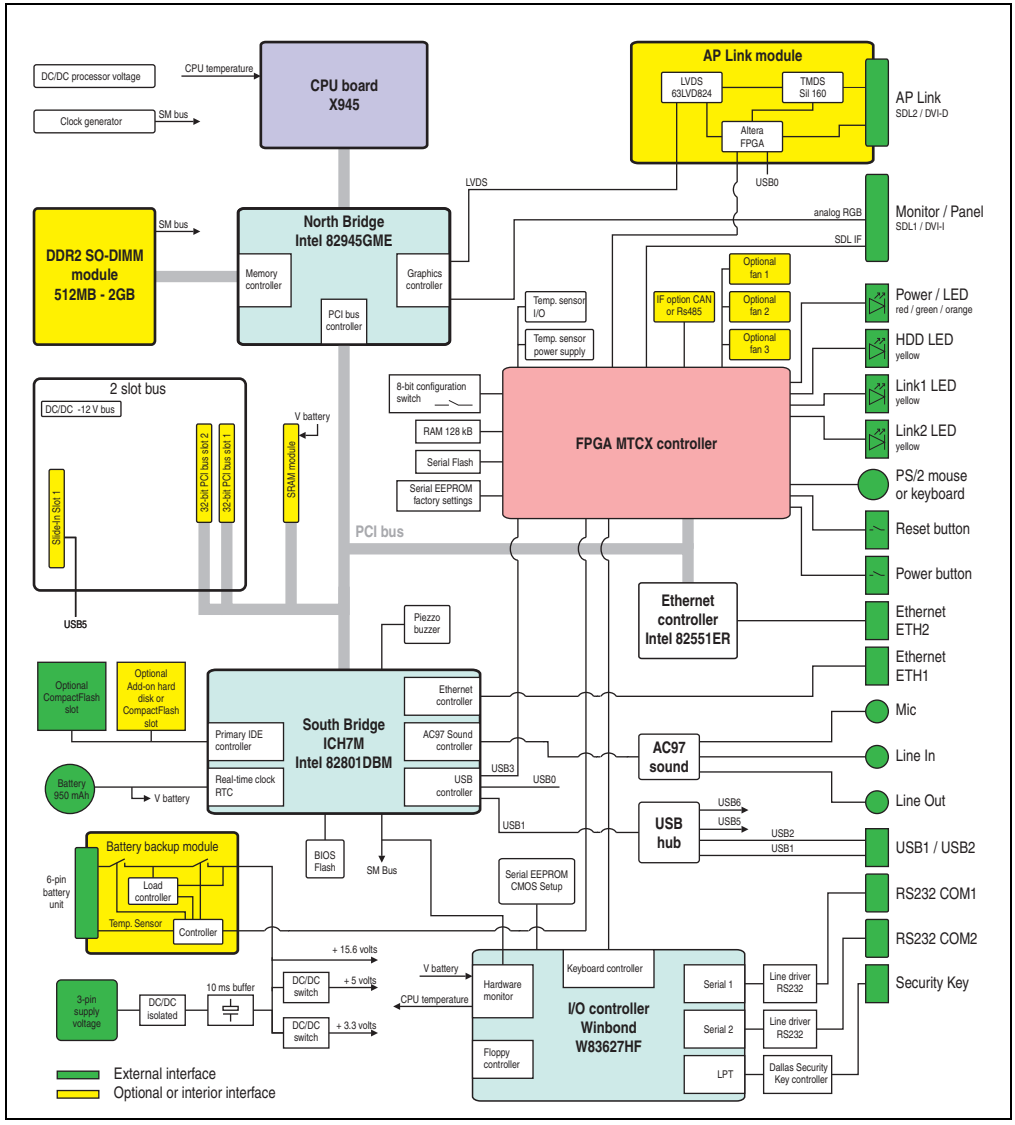


Figure 49: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-00 and X945 CPU board

2.15.3 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-01

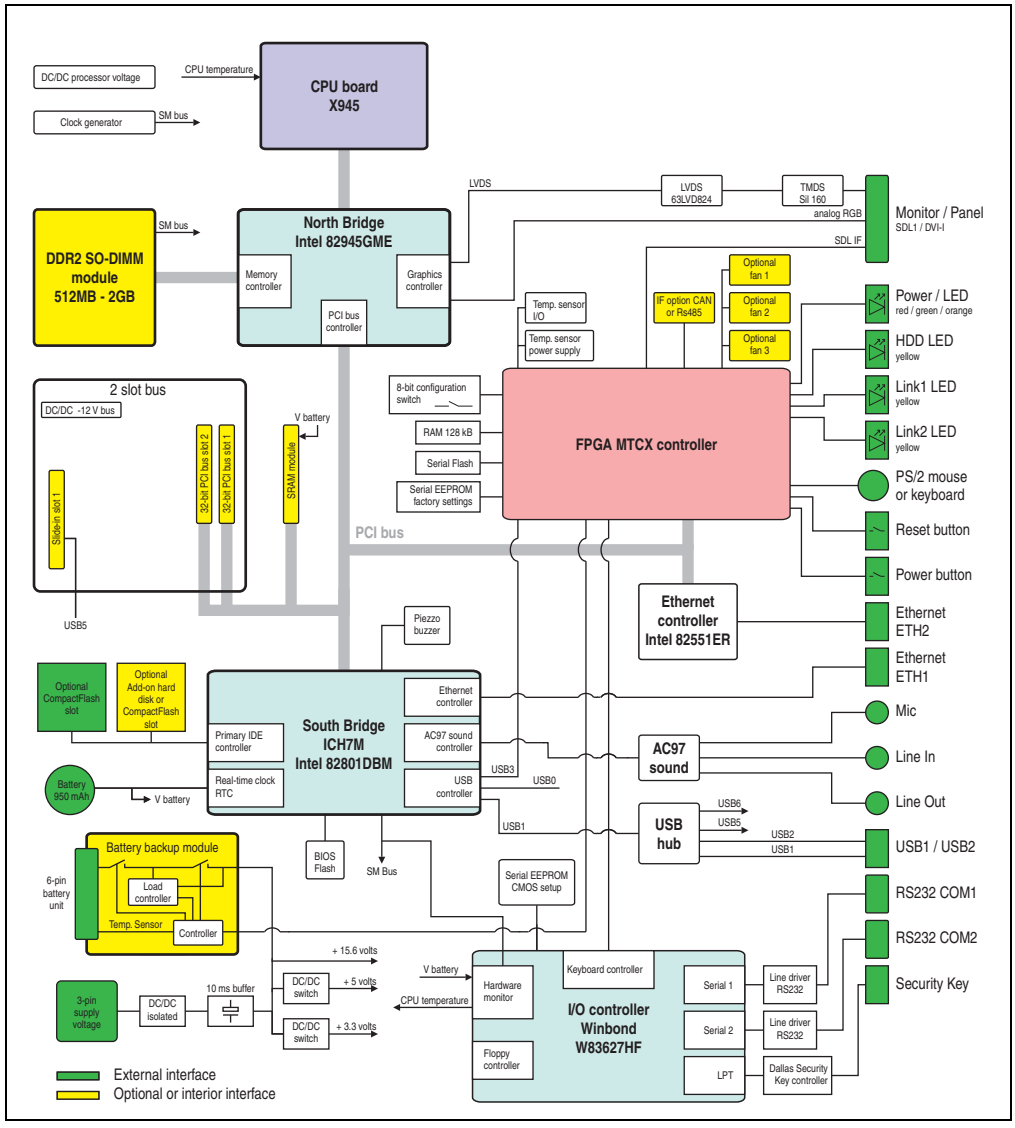


Figure 50: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-01 and X945 CPU board

2.15.4 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SF03-00

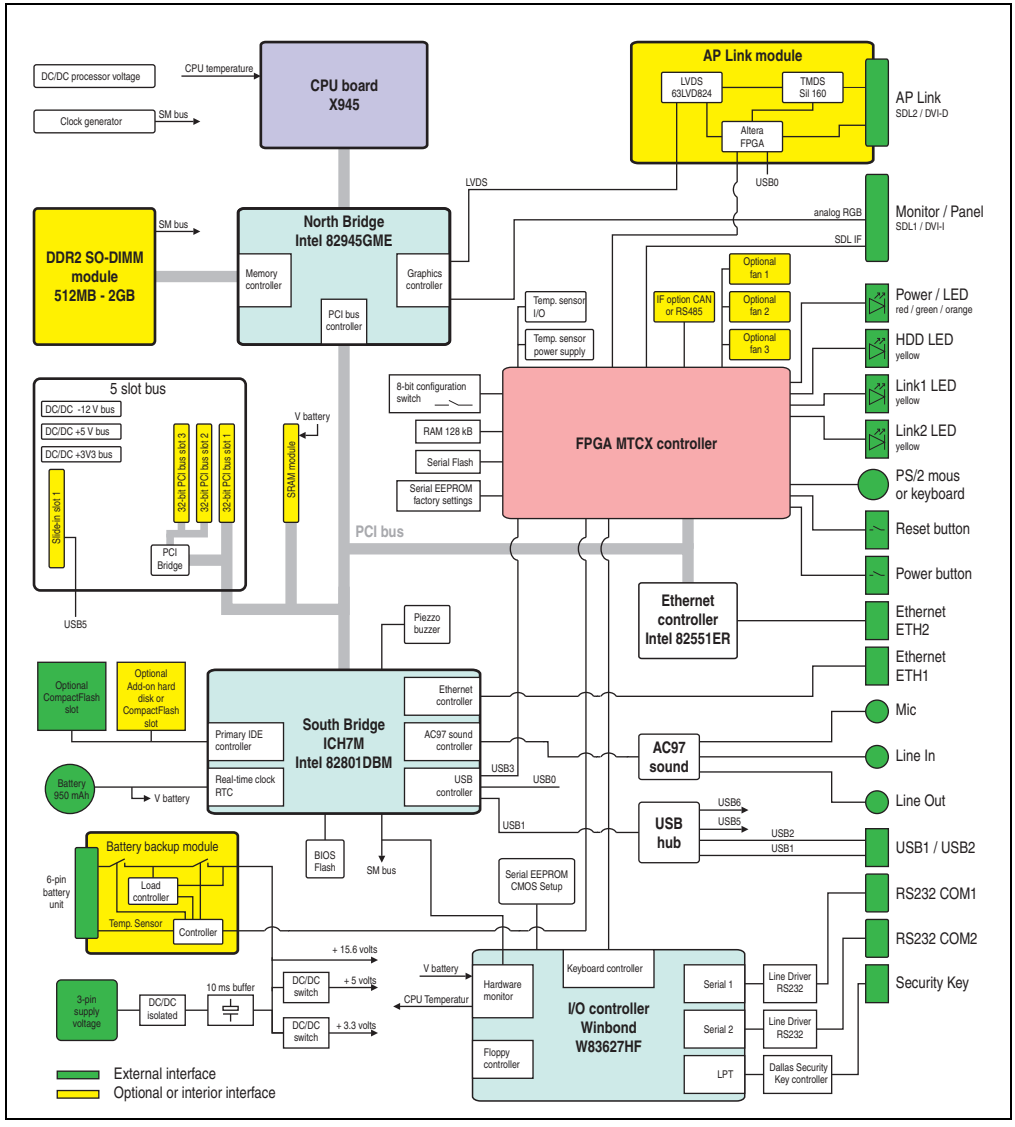


Figure 51: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX03-00 and X945 CPU board

2.15.5 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-00

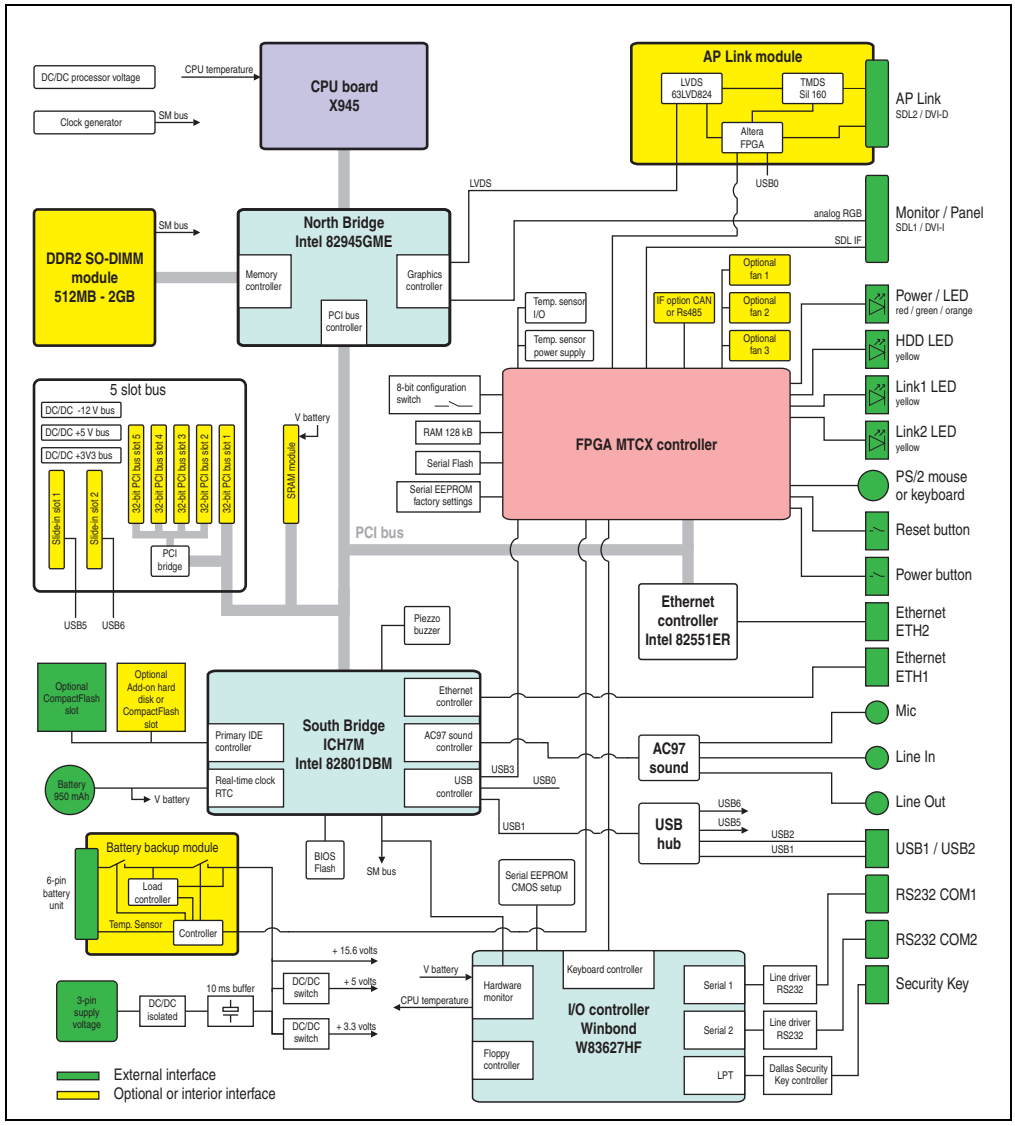


Figure 52: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-00 and X945 CPU board

2.15.6 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01

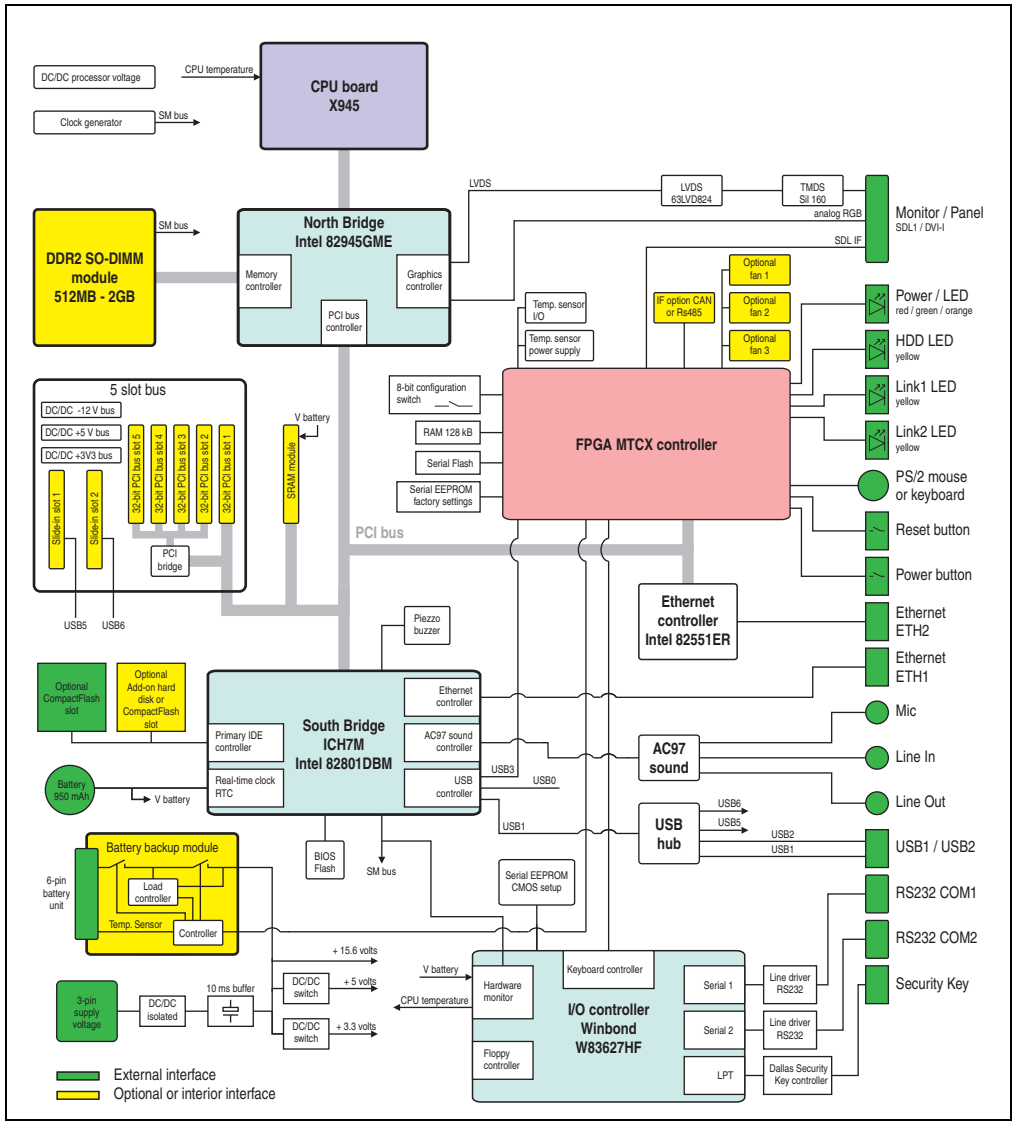


Figure 53: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01 and X945 CPU board

2.15.7 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SE00-00

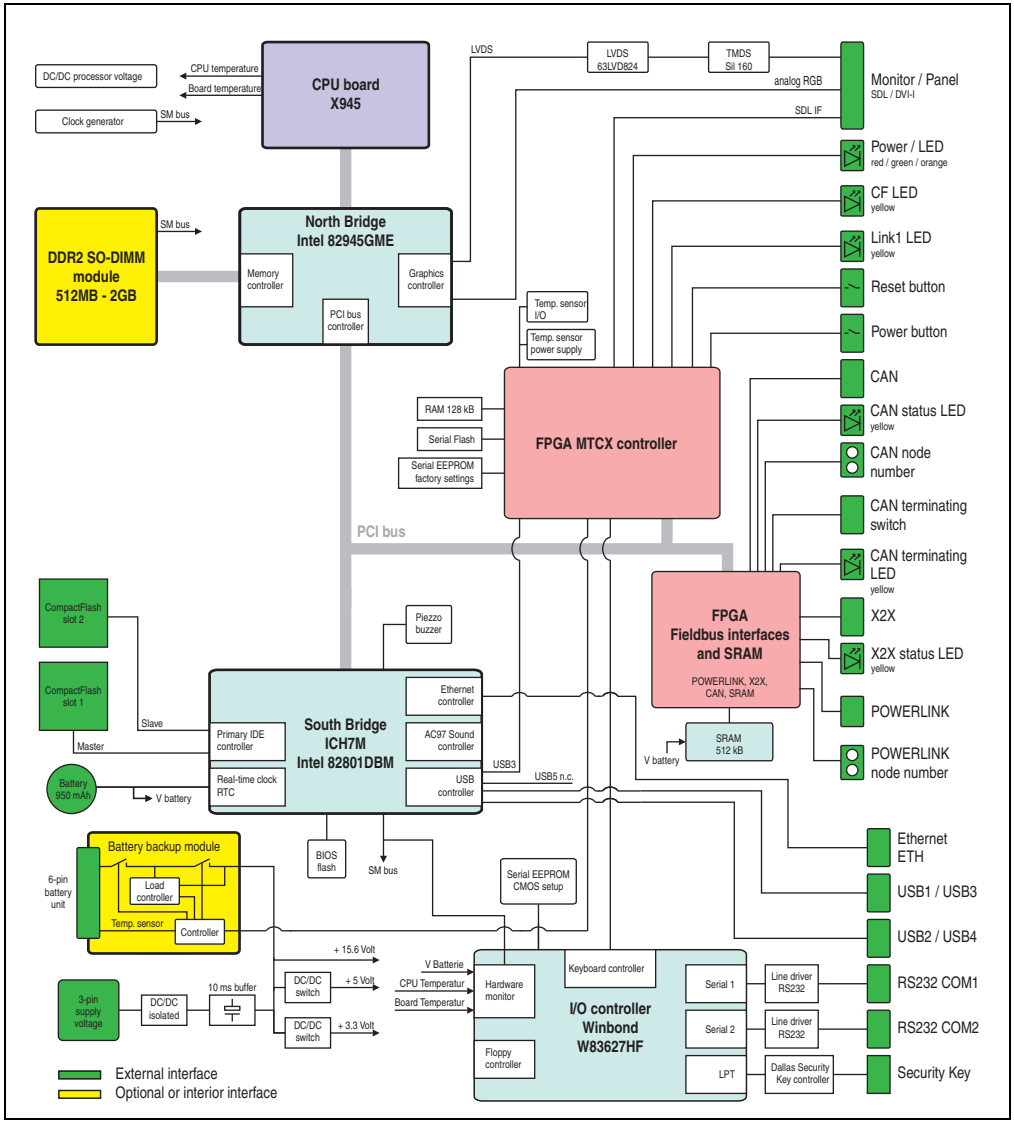


Figure 54: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX00-00 and X945 CPU board

2.15.8 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SE00-01

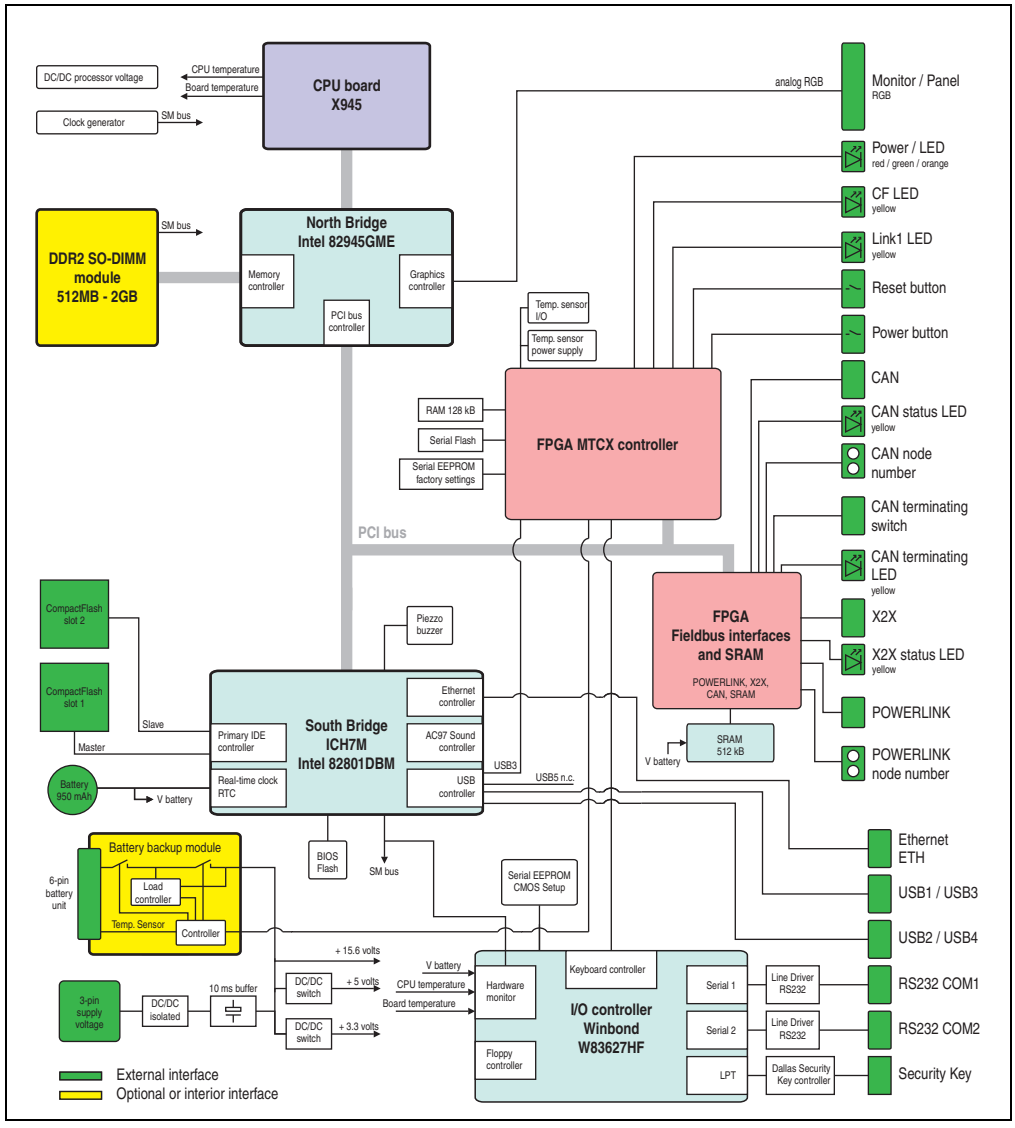


Figure 55: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX00-01 and X945 CPU board

2.15.9 Entire device with system unit 5PC600.SE00-02

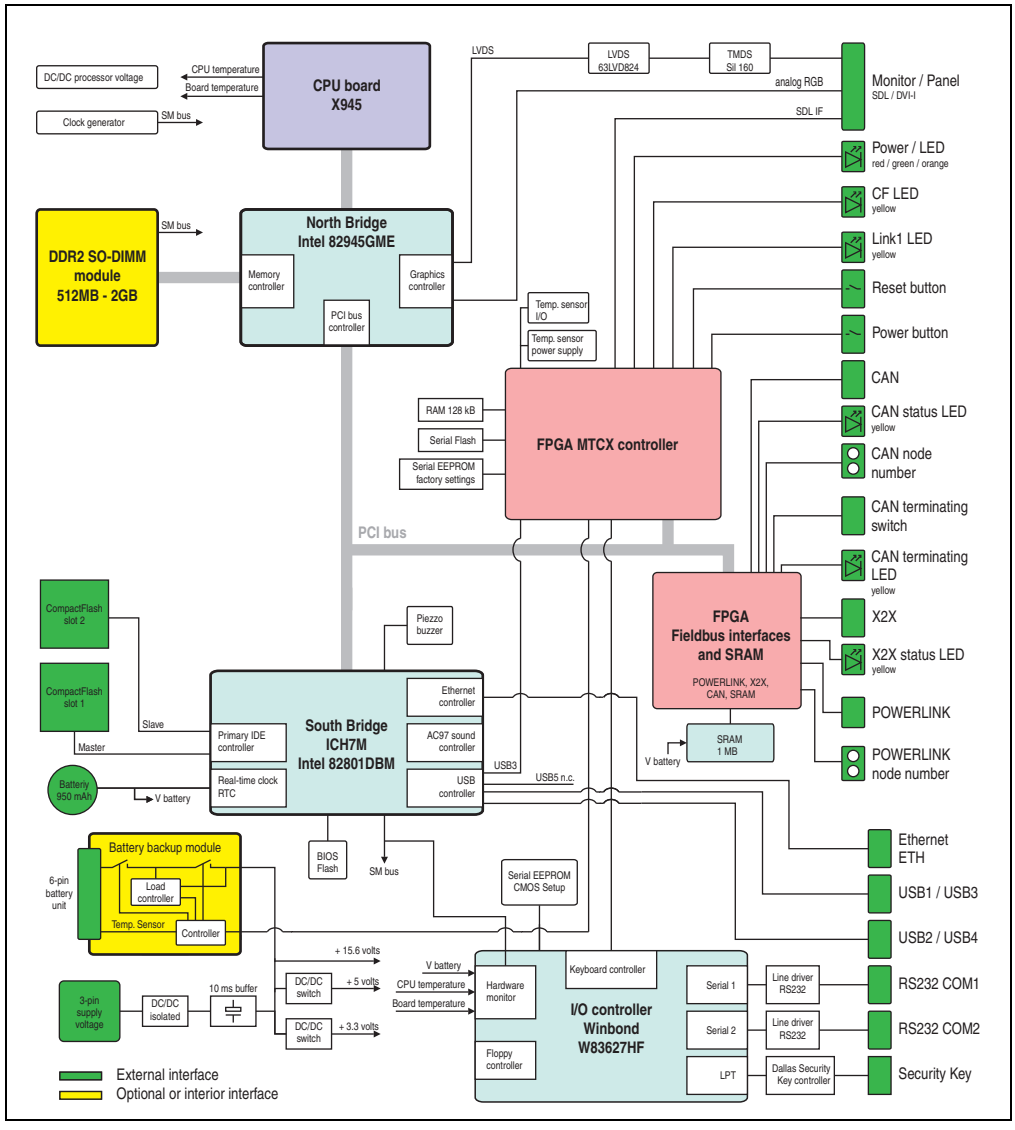


Figure 56: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX00-02 and X945 CPU board

3. Individual components

3.1 System units

All of the individual components of the Automation PC620 system come together inside the system unit. The system unit consists of an APC620 housing with an integrated main board. The housing units are available in variations with 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slots and in APC620 embedded. Units with 2, 3 or 5 PCI slots have an additional 1 or 2 slide-in drives, respectively.

3.1.1 APC620 with 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slots

Features	5PC600.SX01-00	5PC600.SX02-00	5PC600.SX02-01	5PC600.SF03-00	5PC600.SX05-00	5PC600.SX05-01
Photo						
Serial interfaces Type Amount UART Transfer rate Connection	RS232, modem capable 2 16550 compatible, 16 byte FIFO Max. 115 kBaud 9-pin DSUB, male					
Ethernet Controller Transfer rate Connection	See "Ethernet connection ETH1" on page 108 and "Ethernet connection ETH2" on page 110 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 twisted pair (10 Base T / 100 Base T)					
USB interface Type Amount Transfer rate Connection	USB 2.0 2 Up to 480 MBit (high speed) Type A					
Monitor / Panel	DVI-I, female					
AC97 sound	Mic., line in, line out					
IF optional slot	1					
PCI slots half-size full-size PCI standard Bus speed	1 - 2.2 33 MHz	2 - 2.2 33 MHz		- 3 2.2 33 MHz	5 - 2.2 33 MHz	
CompactFlash slot 1 (CF1) Internal organization	integrated Primary master					

Table 73: Technical data - 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slot types

Features	5PC600.SX01-00	5PC600.SX02-00	5PC600.SX02-01	5PC600.SF03-00	5PC600.SX05-00	5PC600.SX05-01
Combined CompactFlash slot 2 / hard disk (HDD/CF2) Internal organization	Yes, optional add-on CompactFlash slot or add-on hard disk Primary slave					
Insert for slide-in drive 1 Internal organization	-	Yes USB				
Insert for slide-in drive 2 Internal organization	-	-	-	-	Yes USB	
APC620 UPS module optional	Yes, starting with Rev. H0	Yes, starting with Rev. G0	Yes, starting with Rev. H0	Yes	Yes, starting with Rev. F0	Yes, starting with Rev. H0
SRAM module optional	Yes, starting with Rev. I0	Yes, starting with Rev. H0	Yes, starting with Rev. K0	Yes	Yes, starting with Rev. H0	Yes, starting with Rev. H0
Reset button	Yes					
Power button	Yes					
PS/2 keyboard / mouse	Yes, combined, will be automatically detected					
Battery slot	Yes					
Hardware security key slot	Yes (DS1425 from MAXIM/Dallas)					
Fan slot	Yes					
Automation Panel link slot	-	1	-	1	1	-
Status LEDs	Power, HDD, Link1, Link2					
Real-time clock (RTC) Battery-buffered Accuracy	Yes See the technical data for CPU boards					
MTCX[1)]	Yes					
Electrical characteristics						
Power supply Rated voltage Starting current Power consumption	24 VDC ±25% Typically 7A Maximum 40 A for < 300 µs See the section 2.7 "Power management APC620 system unit with 1 PCI slot".			24 VDC ±25% Typically 10 A Maximum 40 A for < 300 µs see section 2.9 "Power management APC620 system unit with 3 PCI slots" or 2.10 "Power management APC620 system units with 5 PCI slots"		
Mechanical characteristics						
Housing[2)] Material Paint Front cover	Galvanized steel plate Light gray (similar to Pantone 427CV), dark gray (similar to Pantone 432CV) Colored plastic (similar to Pantone 144CV)					
Outer dimensions Width Length Height	65 mm 251 mm 270 mm	104.5 mm 253 mm 270 mm		125 mm 253 mm 410 mm	185.4 mm 253 mm 270 mm	
Weight	Approx. 1.5 kg	Approx. 2.6 kg		Approx. 4.5 kg	Approx. 3.8 kg	
Mounting plates (for M4 screws)	4			4	6	
Drilling templates for mounting	(see chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 1.2 "Drilling templates")					

Table 73: Technical data - 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slot types (cont.)

1) **M**ain**t**enance **C**ontroller E**x**tended, for more information, see the section "Maintenance Controller Extended (MTCX)" on page 537.

2) Depending on the process or batch, there may be visible deviations in the color and surface structure.

3.1.2 APC620 embedded variations

Features	5PC600.SE00-00	5PC600.SE00-01	5PC600.SE00-02
Photo			
Serial interfaces Type Amount UART Transfer rate Connection	RS232, modem capable 2 16550-compatible, 16-byte FIFO Max. 115 kBaud 9-pin DSUB, male		
Ethernet Controller Transfer rate Connection	See "Ethernet connection ETH (only APC620 embedded)" on page 107 10/100 Mbit/s RJ45 twisted pair (10 Base T / 100 Base T)		
POWERLINK Amount Station number switches	1 2 pcs.		
X2X Link Amount Status LED	1 Yes, see page 105		
CAN bus Amount Transfer rate Node switch Terminating resistor Status LED	See also page 103 1 Max. 500 kBit/s Yes Yes, can be activated using a switch Yes, see page 105		
USB interface Type Amount Transfer rate Connection	USB 2.0 4 Up to 480 MBit (high speed) Type A		
Monitor / Panel	DVI-I, female		
AC97 sound	-		
IF optional slot	-		
PCI slots half-size full-size PCI standard Bus speed	-		
CompactFlash slot 1 (CF1) Internal organization	integrated Primary master		
CompactFlash slot 2 (CF2) Internal organization	integrated Primary slave		

Table 74: Technical data - APC620 embedded variations

Features	5PC600.SE00-00	5PC600.SE00-01	5PC600.SE00-02
Insert for slide-in drive 1 Internal organization	-		
Insert for slide-in drive 2 Internal organization	-		
APC620 UPS module optional	Yes		
SRAM Quantity	Yes 512 KB	Yes 512 KB	Yes 1 MB
Reset button	Yes		
Power button	Yes		
PS/2 keyboard / mouse	-		
Battery slot	Yes		
Hardware security key slot	Yes (DS1425 from MAXIM/Dallas)		
Fan slot	-		
Automation Panel link slot	-		
Status LEDs	Power, HDD, Link1		
Real-time clock (RTC) Battery-buffered Accuracy	Yes See the technical data for the CPU board		
MTCX[1)]	Yes		
Electrical characteristics			
Power supply Rated voltage Starting current Power consumption	24 VDC ±25% Typically 7 A maximum 40 A for < 300 µs See the section 2.11 "Power management for the APC620 embedded system unit".		
Mechanical characteristics			
Housing[2)] Material Paint Front cover	Galvanized steel plate Light gray (similar to Pantone 427CV), dark gray (similar to Pantone 432CV) Colored plastic (similar to Pantone 144CV)		
Outer dimensions Width Length Height	68.3 mm 225.6 mm 210 mm		
Weight	Approx. 1.3 kg		
Mounting plates (for M4 screws)	4		
Drilling templates for mounting	(see chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 1.2 "Drilling templates")		

Table 74: Technical data - APC620 embedded variations (cont.)

1) **M**ain**t**enance **C**ontroller E**x**tended, for more information, see the section "Maintenance Controller Extended (MTCX)" on page 537.

2) Depending on the process or batch, there may be visible deviations in the color and surface structure.

3.2 X945 CPU board

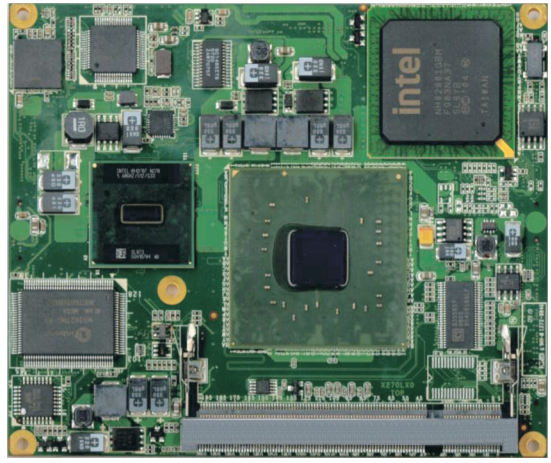


Figure 57: X945 CPU board

Information:

The following characteristics, features, and limit values only apply to this individual component and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device in which this individual component is used, refer to the data given specifically for the entire device.

Features	5PC600.X945-00
Boot loader / Operating system	BIOS AMI (see BIOS section 1 "BIOS options" on page 263)
Processor Architectures Type Name Clock frequency Expanded command set L1 cache L2 cache Floating Point Unit (FPU)	 45 nm Intel® Atom™ N270 1.6 GHz Hyper-threading technology, enhanced speed step SSE, SSE2, SSE3 (Streaming SIMD Extensions) 24 KB 512 KB Yes
Chipset	Intel® 945GME / Intel 82801DBM (ICH7M-DH)
Real-time clock (RTC) Battery-buffered Accuracy	 Yes At 25°C typ. 12 ppm (1 second)[1)] per day

Table 75: Technical data - CPU board X945

Features	5PC600.X945-00
Front side bus	533 MHz
Mass memory management	1x EIDE
Memory Type Quantity Socket	 DDR2 Max. 2 GB SO-DIMM 200-pin
Graphics Controller Memory Color depth Resolution RGB GE1 = flat panel[2)]	 Intel® Graphics Media Accelerator 950 Up to 224 MB (reserved from main memory) Max 32 Bit 400 MHz RAMDAC, up to 2048 x 1536 @75 Hz (QXGA) including 1920 x 1080 @ >85 Hz (HDTV) From 640 x 480 up to 1920 x 1200 (Embedded Panel Interface based on VESA EDID™ 1.3)

Table 75: Technical data - CPU board X945 (cont.)

1) At max. specified ambient temperature: typ. 58 ppm (5 seconds) - worst-case 220 ppm (19 seconds).

2) GE = Graphics Engine

Driver support

In order for the CPU board with the Intel 945GME chipset to work properly, it is necessary to install the Intel chipset driver (e.g. special USB driver) and the graphics chip. They can be downloaded from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

Information:

Required drivers can only be downloaded from the B&R homepage, not from manufacturers' pages.

3.3 Heat sink

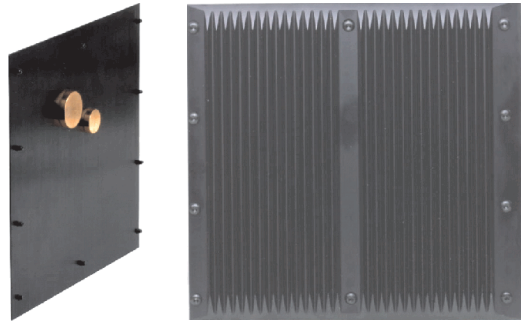


Figure 58: Heat sink

Information:

A heat sink can only be replaced at the B&R plant.

Mechanical characteristics	5AC600.HS01-03	5AC600.HS02-03	5AC600.HS03-02
Ideal for CPU boards	5PC800.X945-00		
Suitable for the following system units	5PC600.SX01-00 5PC600.SX02-00 5PC600.SX02-01 5PC600.SX05-00 5PC600.SX05-01	5PC600.SF03-00	5PC600.SE00-00 5PC600.SE00-01 5PC600.SE00-02
Material	Black-coated aluminum		
Outer dimensions Width Height Depth	 228.7 mm 218 mm 12.8 mm	 228.7 mm 358 mm 12.8 mm	 203.9 mm 158 mm 12.8 mm
Weight	Approx. TBD g	Approx. TBD g	Approx. TBD g

Table 76: Technical data - Heat sink

3.4 Main memory

When choosing a main memory, it is important to consider the 2 GB maximum memory capacity of the CPU boards.

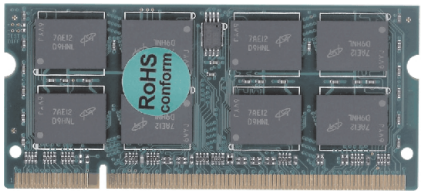


Figure 59: Main memory module

3.4.1 Technical data

Features	5MMDDR.0512-01	5MMDDR.1024-01	5MMDDR.2048-01
Quantity	512 MB	1 GB	2 GB
Type	DDR2 SDRAM / PC2-5300		
Construction	200 Pin SO-DIMM		
Organization	64M x 64-bit	128M x 64-bit	256M x 64-bit

Table 77: Technical data - Main memory

Information:

A main memory module can only be replaced at the B&R plant.

3.5 Drives

3.5.1 Add-on hard disk 40 GB 24x7 ET - 5AC600.HDDI-05

This hard disk is specified for 24-hour operation (24x7) and also provides an extended temperature specification (ET). The add-on drive is referred to internally as the primary slave drive.

Information:

Add-on drives are only available factory-installed. Therefore, they need to be requested when placing an order.

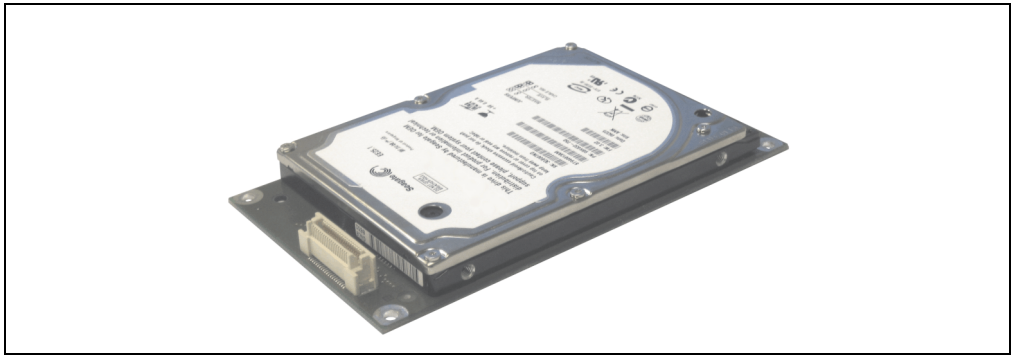


Figure 60: Add-on hard disk 40 GB - 5AC600.HDDI-05

Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features, and limit values only apply to this individual component and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device in which this individual component is used, refer to the data given specifically for the entire device.

Features	5AC600.HDDI-05 < Revision D0	5AC600.HDDI-05 ≥ Revision D0
Manufacturer's product ID	Seagate ST940813AM	Seagate ST940817AM
Formatted capacity	40 GB	
Number of heads	2	
Number of sectors (user)	78,140,160	
Bytes per sector	512	

Table 78: Technical data - Add-on hard disk 5AC600.HDDI-05

Features	5AC600.HDDI-05 < Revision D0	5AC600.HDDI-05 ≥ Revision D0
Revolution speed	5400 rpm ±1%	
Access time (average)	12.5 ms	
Positioning time (seek, typical values) Minimum (track to track) Average (read access) Maximum (read access)	 1 ms 12.5 ms 22 ms	
Starting time (0 rpm to read access)	3 seconds (typically)	
Interface	ATA-6	
Data transfer rate On the medium To/from host	 Max. 321 MBit/s Max. 100 MB/s (Ultra-DMA Mode 5)	 Max. 450 MBit/s Max. 100 MB/s (Ultra-DMA Mode 5)
Cache	8 MB	
S.M.A.R.T. support	Yes	
MTBF	550,000 hours[1)]	750,000 hours[1)]
Mechanical characteristics		
Add-on mounting	Fixed	
Outer dimensions (without slide-in) Width Length Height	 70 mm 100 mm 9.5 mm	
Weight	100 g	
Environmental characteristics		
Ambient temperature[2)] Operation - Standard / 24-hour Bearings Transport	 -30 to +85°C -40 to +95°C -40 to +95°C	
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 5 to 90%, non-condensing 5 to 95%, non-condensing 5 to 95%, non-condensing	
Vibration Operation Bearings	 10 - 500 Hz: 1 g; no non-recovered errors 5 - 500 Hz: 5 g; no non-recovered errors	 5 - 500 Hz: 2 g; no non-recovered errors 5 - 500 Hz: 5 g; no non-recovered errors
Shock (pulse with a sine half-wave) Operation Bearings	 Max. 200 g, 2 ms; no non-recovered errors Max. 110 g, 11 ms; no non-recovered errors Max. 800 g, 2 ms; no damage Max. 400 g, 0.5 ms; no damage	 Max. 300 g, 2 ms; no non-recovered errors Max. 150 g, 11 ms; no non-recovered errors Max. 800 g, 2 ms; no damage Max. 400 g, 0.5 ms; no damage
Altitude Operation Bearings	 - 300 to 4419 meters - 300 to 12,192 meters	 - 300 to 5000 meters - 300 to 12,192 meters

Table 78: Technical data - Add-on hard disk 5AC600.HDDI-05 (cont.)

1) With 8760 POH (Power On Hours) per year and 70°C surface temperature.

2) Temperature values for 305 meter elevation. The temperature specification must be reduced linearly by 1°C every 305 meters. The temperature increase and decrease can be a maximum of 3°C per minute.

Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

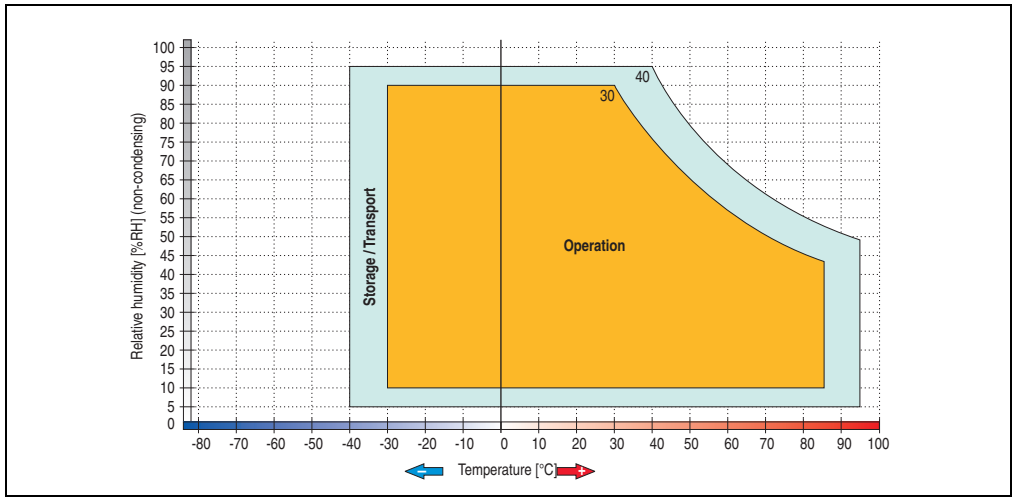


Figure 61: Temperature humidity diagram - Add-on hard disk 5AC600.HDDI-05

Temperature values for 305 meter elevation. The temperature specification must be reduced linearly by 1°C every 305 meters. The temperature increase and decrease can be a maximum of 3°C per minute.

3.5.2 Add-on hard disk 80 GB 24x7 ET - 5AC600.HDDI-06

This hard disk is specified for 24-hour operation (24x7) and also provides an extended temperature specification (ET). The add-on drive is referred to internally as the primary slave drive.

Information:

Add-on drives are only available factory-installed. Therefore, they need to be requested when placing an order.

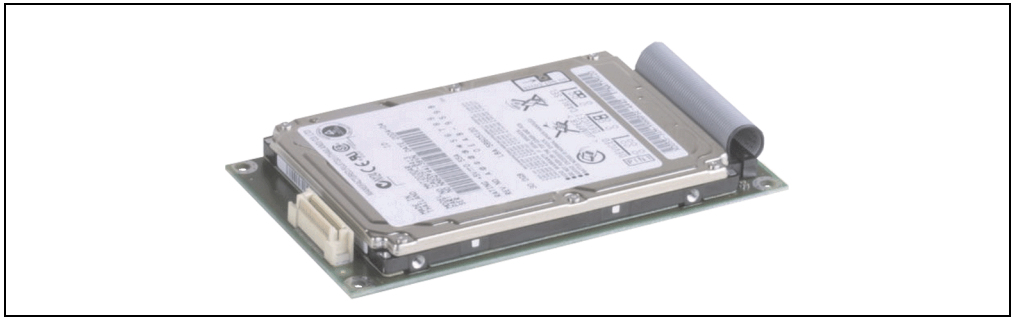


Figure 62: Add-on hard disk 80 GB - 5AC600.HDDI-06

Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features, and limit values only apply to this individual component and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device in which this individual component is used, refer to the data given specifically for the entire device.

Features	5AC600.HDDI-06
Manufacturer's product ID	Seagate ST980817AM
Formatted capacity	80 GB
Number of heads	2
Number of sectors (user)	156,301,488
Bytes per sector	512
Revolution speed	5400 rpm ±1%
Access time (average)	10 ms

Table 79: Technical data - add-on hard disk - 5AC600.HDDI-06

Features	5AC600.HDDI-06
Positioning time (seek, typical values) Minimum (track to track) Average (read access) Maximum (read access)	 1 ms 12.5 ms 22 ms
Starting time (0 rpm to read access)	4 seconds (typically)
Interface	ATA-6
Data transfer rate On the medium To/from host	 Max. 450 MBit/s Max. 100 MB/s (Ultra-DMA Mode 5)
S.M.A.R.T. support	Yes
Cache	8 MB
MTBF	750,000 hours[1)]
Mechanical characteristics	
Add-on mounting	Fixed
Outer dimensions (without slide-in) Width Length Height	 70 mm 100 mm 9.5 mm
Weight	120 g
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature[2)] Operation - Standard / 24-hour Bearings Transport	 -30 to +85°C -40 to +95°C -40 to +95°C
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 5 to 90%, non-condensing 5 to 95%, non-condensing 5 to 95%, non-condensing
Vibration Operation Bearings	 5 - 500 Hz: 2 g; no non-recovered errors 5 - 500 Hz: 5 g; no non-recovered errors
Shock (pulse with a sine half-wave) Operation Bearings	 Max. 300 g, 2 ms; no non-recovered errors Max. 150 g, 11 ms; no non-recovered errors Max. 800 g, 2 ms; no damage Max. 400 g, 0.5 ms; no damage
Altitude Operation Bearings	 - 300 to 5000 meters - 300 to 12,192 meters

Table 79: Technical data - add-on hard disk - 5AC600.HDDI-06 (cont.)

1) With 8760 POH (Power On Hours) per year and 70°C surface temperature.

2) Temperature values for 305 meter elevation. The temperature specification must be reduced linearly by 1°C every 305 meters. The temperature increase and decrease can be a maximum of 3°C per minute.

Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

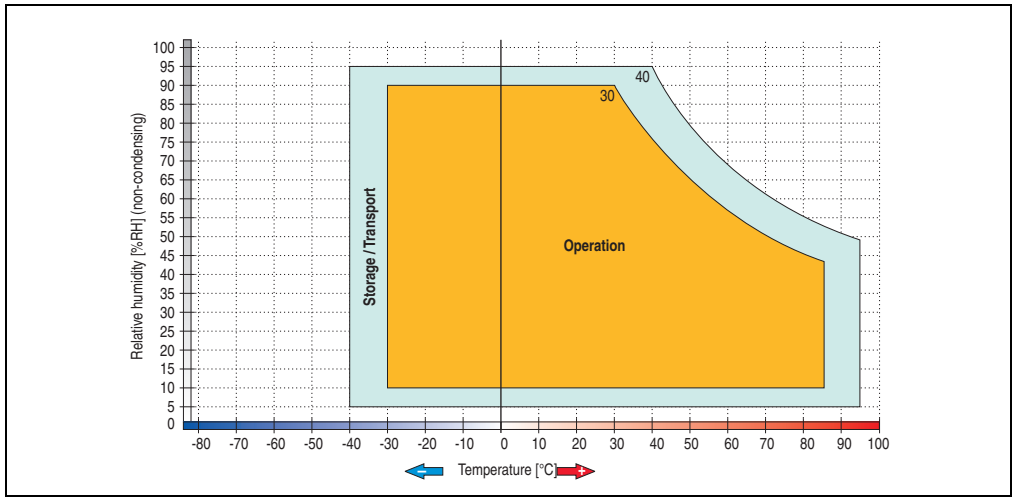


Figure 63: Temperature humidity diagram - Add-on hard disk 5AC600.HDDI-06

Temperature values for 305 meter elevation. The temperature specification must be reduced linearly by 1°C every 305 meters. The temperature increase and decrease can be a maximum of 3°C per minute.

3.5.3 Add-on CompactFlash slot - 5AC600.CFSI-00

A CompactFlash card inserted in the add-on drive is referred to internally as the "primary slave drive."

Information:

Add-on drives are only available factory-installed. Therefore, they need to be requested when placing an order.

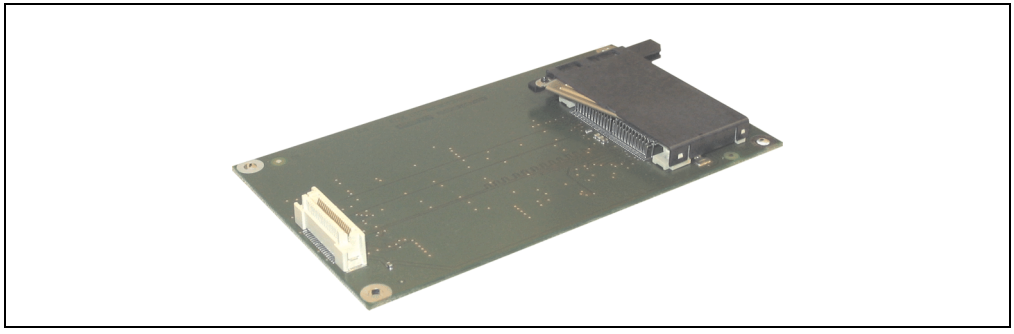


Figure 64: Add-on CompactFlash slot - 5AC600.CFSI-00

Technical data

Features	5AC600.CFSI-00
CompactFlash Type Amount Connection	 Type I 1 slot Primary slave
Weight	100 g

Table 80: Technical data - Add-on CompactFlash slot 5AC600.CFSI-00

Warning!

Inserting and removing the CompactFlash card can only take place without power applied!

3.5.4 Slide-in USB FDD - 5AC600.FDDS-00

The slide-in drive can be used in system units with 2, 3 or 5 PCI slots. In these units it is connected to the system via USB.

Information:

- **It is possible to add, remove, or modify the slide-in drive at any time.**
- **In system units with 5 PCI slots, the slide-in USB FDD drive must be inserted in slide-in slot 1 for mechanical reasons.**

Caution!

Turn off power before adding or removing a slide-in drive.

Figure 65: Slide-in USB FDD - 5AC600.FDDS-00

Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features, and limit values only apply to this individual component and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device in which this individual component is used, refer to the data given specifically for the entire device.

Features	5AC600.FDDS-00
Data capacity	720 KB / 1.25 MB / 1.44 MB (formatted)
USB transfer rate	Full speed (12 Mbps)
Data transfer rate	250 kbits (720 KB) or 500 kbits (1.25 MB and 1.44 MB)
Rotation speed	Up to 360 rpm
Diskette media	High density (2HD) or normal density (2DD) 3.5" diskettes
MTBF	30,000 POH (Power-On Hours)
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature[1)] Operation Bearings Transport	 +4 to +50°C -20 to +60°C -20 to +60°C
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 20 to 80%, non-condensing 5 to 90%, non-condensing 5 to 90%, non-condensing
Vibration Operation Bearings Transport	 At max. 5 - 500 Hz and 0.3 g At max. 10 - 100 Hz and 2 g At max. 10 - 100 Hz and 2 g
Shock (pulse with a sine half-wave) Operation Bearings Transport	 At max. 5 g for 11 ms At max. 60 g for 11 ms At max. 60 g for 11 ms
Altitude	Max. 3000 meters

Table 81: Technical data - Slide-in USB diskette drive - 5AC600.FDDS-00

1) Temperature data is for operation at 500 meters. Derating the max. ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

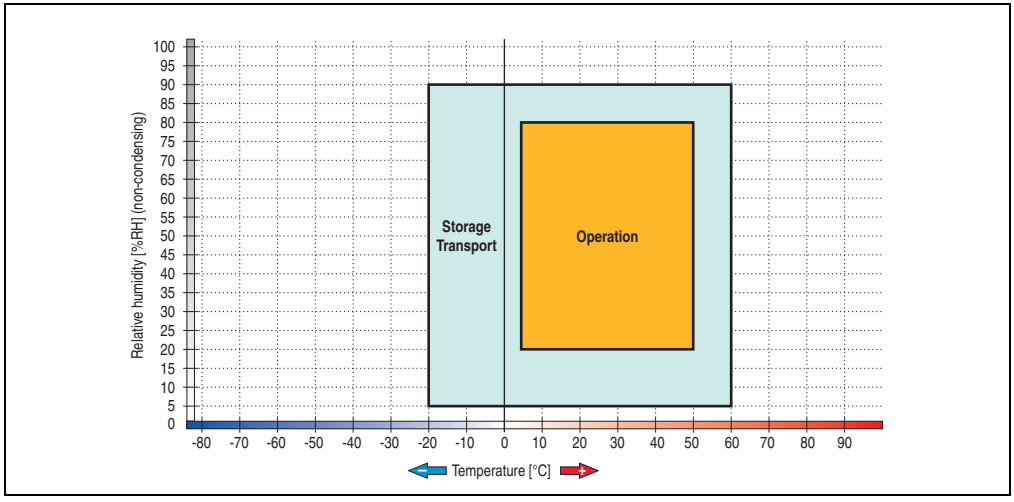


Figure 66: Temperature humidity diagram - Slide-in USB diskette drive 5AC600.FDDS-00

Temperature data is for operation at 500 meters. Derating the max. ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

3.6 RAID system

Sometimes it is simply not possible to avoid using hard disks due to the amount of data that needs to be saved. In this case, a RAID provides high system availability. All data is simultaneously and automatically stored on two hard drives. This double data storage means that when one hard disk fails, the system will continue to run on the second hard disk.

Advantages for the user:

- No data loss when hard drive fails.
- The system continues to run with a hard disk.
- Data redundancy is automatically restored by the system when the faulty hard disk has been replaced.

Depending on the type, the RAID 1 system is designed in the form of 1 or 2 PCI cards.

1 PCI slot: PCI SATA RAID controller - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03 (2x160GB)

2 PCI slot: PCI RAID controller (5ACPCI.RAIC-00) and PCI card with two hard disks (5ACPCI.RAIS-00 or 5ACPCI.RAIS-01).

The system can be flexibly implemented in all APC620 und PPC700s with 1 free PCI slot (depending on the RAID system design). The system also supports RAID 0 applications. As a result, parallel access to two hard drives with a relatively high data throughput is the main focus, in addition to the high availability.

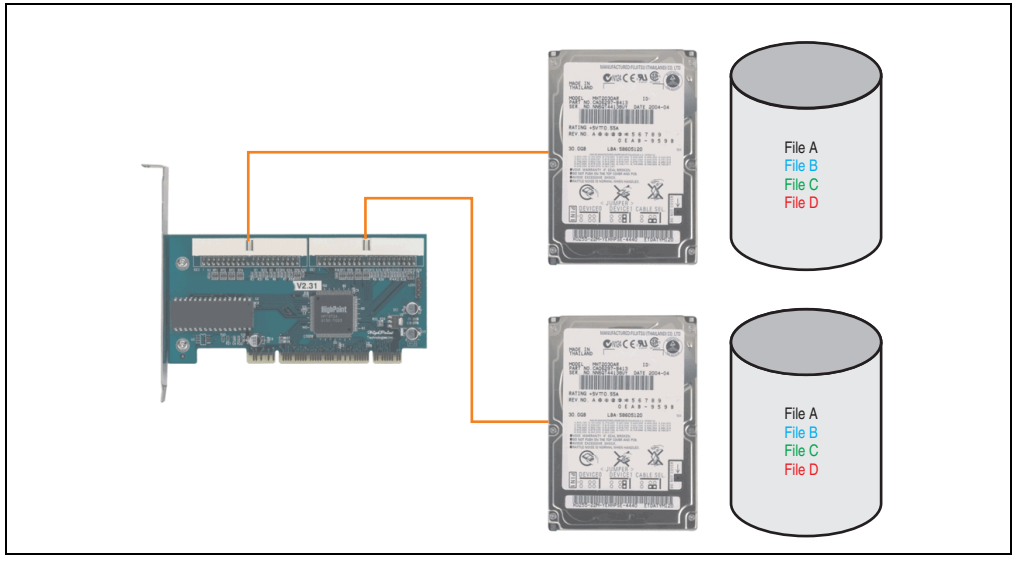


Figure 67: RAID 1 system schematic

3.6.1 PCI SATA RAID 2 x 160 GB 24x7 ET - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03

The hard disks being used are specified for 24-hour operation (24x7) and also provides an extended temperature specification (ET).

Features

- SATA RAID controller
- RAID Level 0 (striped) and 1 (mirrored)
- 2 SATA hard disk drives (suitable for 24 hour operation)
- Only requires 1 PCI slot
- Transfer rates up to 150 MB/s

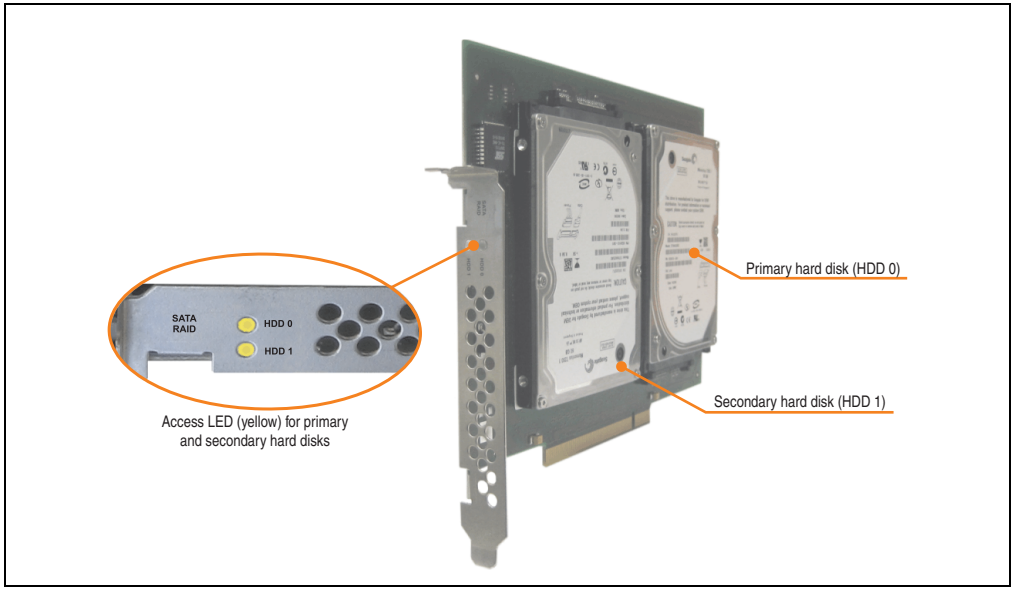


Figure 68: PCI SATA RAID controller - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03

Information:

The PCI SATA RAID controller can not be used in place of a Universal Power Supply (UPS). If the operating system is shut down improperly, the next time it is started it is detected as an error by the RAID 1, and a complete rebuild is executed. This generally takes at least 50 minutes (configurable) to complete.

Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features, and limit values only apply to this individual component and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device in which this individual component is used, refer to the data given specifically for the entire device.

Features	5ACPCI.RAIC-03
SATA RAID controller Type Specifications Data transfer rate RAID level BIOS Extension ROM - requirements	 Sil 3512 SATA link Serial ATA 1.0 Max. 1.5 GB/s (150 MB/s) Supports RAID 0, 1 Approx. 32 KB
Hard disks Amount	Fujitsu M120-ESW MHY2160BH-ESW 2
Formatted capacity (512 bytes/sector)	160 GB
Number of heads	3
Number of sectors (user)	312,581,808
Bytes per sector	512
Revolution speed	5400 rpm ±1%
Access time (average)	5.56 ms
Positioning time (seek, typical values) Minimum (track to track) Average (read access) Maximum (read access)	 1.5 ms 12 ms 22 ms
Starting time (0 rpm to read access)	4 seconds (typically)
Supported transfer mode	SATA 1.0, PIO mode 0-4, multiword DMA mode 0-2, UDMA 0-5
Data transfer rate On the medium To/from host	 Max. 84.6 MBit/s Max. 150 MB/s
Cache	8 MB
S.M.A.R.T. support	Yes
Lifespan	5 years
Electrical characteristics	
Power consumption	0.3 A at 3.3 V (PCI bus) 1 A at 5 V (PCI bus)
Mechanical characteristics	
Mounted on PCI insert	Fixed
Weight	350 g

Table 82: Technical data - RAID hard disk - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03

Environmental characteristics	5ACPCI.RAIC-03
Ambient temperature[1)] Operation - Standard / 24-hour[2)] Bearings Transport	 -15 to +80°C -40 to +95°C -40 to +95°C
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 8 to 90% non-condensing (maximum humidity at +29°C) 5 to 95% non-condensing (maximum humidity at +40°C) 5 to 95% non-condensing (maximum humidity at +40°C)
Vibration[3)] Operation (continuous) Operation (occasional) Bearings Transport	 5 - 500 Hz: max. 0.125 g; duration 1 octave per minute; no unrecoverable errors 5 - 500 Hz: max. 0.25 g; duration 1 octave per minute; no unrecoverable errors 5 - 500 Hz: max. 5 g; duration 0.5 octaves per minute; no damage 5 - 500 Hz: max. 5 g; duration 0.5 octaves per minute; no damage
Shock (pulse with a sine half-wave) Operation Bearings	 Max. 125 g, 2 ms; no unrecoverable errors Max. 400 g, 2 ms; no damage Max. 450 g, 1 ms; no damage Max. 200 g, 0.5 ms; no damage
Altitude Operation Bearings	 - 300 to 3048 meters - 300 to 12,192 meters

Table 82: Technical data - RAID hard disk - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03 (cont.)

1) Temperature values for 305 meter elevation. The temperature specification must be reduced linearly by 1°C every 305 meters. The temperature increase and decrease can be a maximum of 3°C per minute.

2) 24-hour operation means 732 POH (power-on hours) per month.

3) Operation in areas prone to vibration and shock can affect performance negatively (reduction of transfer rate).

Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

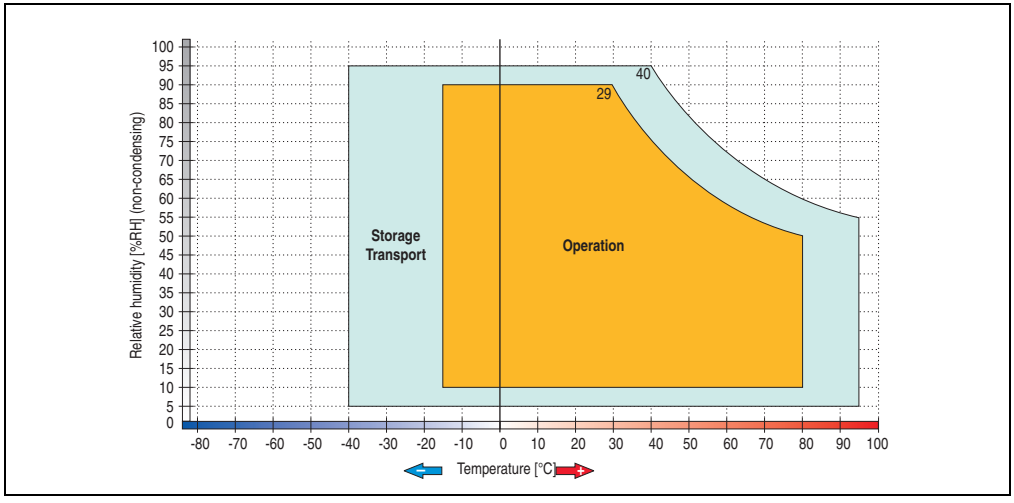


Figure 69: Temperature humidity diagram - SATA RAID hard disk 5ACPCI.RAIC-03

Temperature values for 305 meter elevation. The temperature specification must be reduced linearly by 1°C every 305 meters. The temperature increase and decrease can be a maximum of 3°C per minute.

Driver support

Special drivers are necessary for operating the PCI SATA RAID controller. Drivers for Windows XP Professional and Windows XP Embedded are available for download on the B&R Homepage in the download area (**www.br-automation.com**).

The .NET-based SATARaid™ serial ATA RAID management software can also be found on the B&R homepage.

Information:

Required drivers can only be downloaded from the B&R homepage, not from manufacturers' pages.

Known limitations in a RAID 1 configuration

If one of the two hard disks is physically damaged, when the system is booted the SATA RAID BIOS displays the following error message for approx. 5 seconds: "RAID1 set is in critical status". After this time the operating system is automatically started on the functioning hard disk. The installed SATA Raid™ serial ATA RAID management software does not detect this error status. After repairing the cause of the error (e.g. replacing the hard disk) the SATARaid™ Serial ATA RAID management software automatically executes a rebuild (mirroring of the hard disk). This process takes approximately 50 minutes to complete, regardless of the amount of data and with the highest possible setting for "Rebuild rate".

A hard disk that becomes faulty during operation is detected by the SATA Raid™ Serial ATA RAID management software and indicated with an error message.

Important notes / BIOS Extension ROM

For PCI cards with BIOS Extension ROM, there is a limited area of 64 KB available in the Phoenix BIOS. A B&R PCI SATA RAID controller requires a free area of approx. 32 KB. The remaining area can be used as desired.

If a PCI card requiring BIOS extension ROM is plugged into PCI slot 1 on an AP620 with 5 PCI slots (see figure 70 "PCI slot numbering on APC620 systems with 5 PCI slots") and the B&R PCI SATA RAID controller is plugged-in at a different position (e.g. PCI slot 4), then the BIOS menu item *Advanced - PCI/PnP Configuration - PCI Device, Slot #2* must be set from "*Option ROM Scan*" to "*Disabled*" so that this device can be used for booting. The BIOS default setting is to always attempt to load the BIOS Extension ROM from the PCI slot 1. Alternatively, the two PCI cards can be switched.

This setting does not have to be changed if a PCI card without BIOS extension ROM is plugged-in.

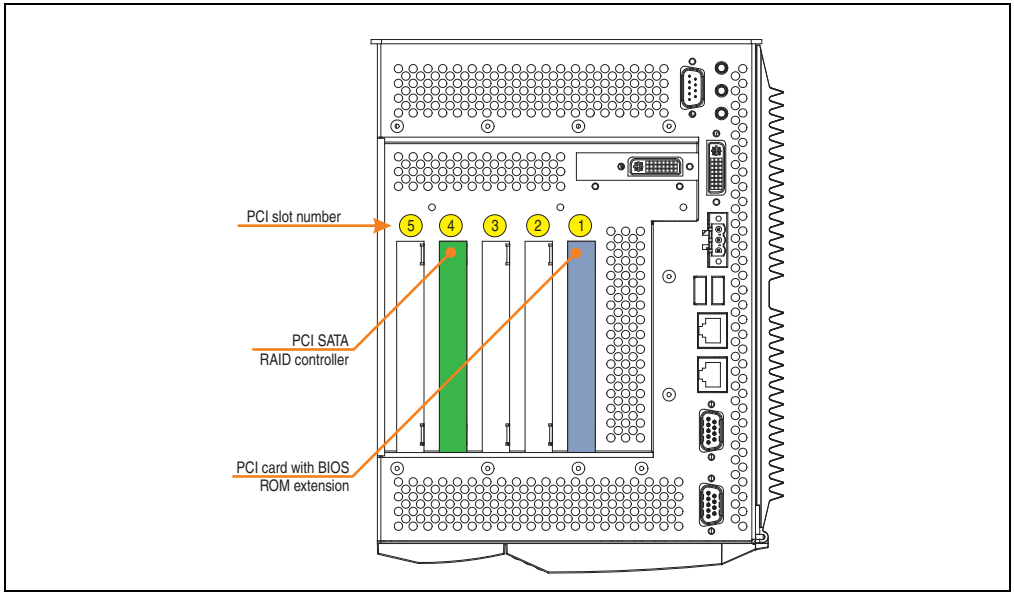


Figure 70: PCI slot numbering on APC620 systems with 5 PCI slots

Configuration of a PCI SATA RAID array

Instructions for configuration of a PCI SATA RAID array using RAID BIOS can be found in chapter 3 "Commissioning", section "Configuration of a SATA RAID array" on page 250.

3.6.2 Replacement SATA HDD 160 GB - 5ACPCI.RAIC-04

The hard disk can be used as a replacement part for 5ACPCI.RAIC-03.

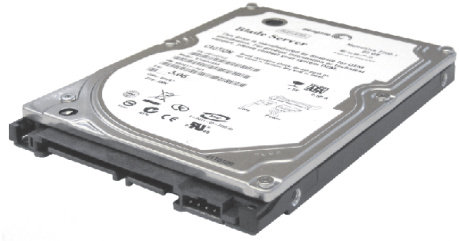


Figure 71: Replacement SATA HDD 160 GB - 5ACPCI.RAIC-04

Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features, and limit values only apply to this individual component and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device in which this individual component is used, refer to the data given specifically for the entire device.

Features	5ACPCI.RAIC-04
Hard disks Amount	Fujitsu M120-ESW MHY2160BH-ESW 1
Formatted capacity (512 bytes/sector)	160 GB
Number of heads	3
Number of sectors (user)	312,581,808
Bytes per sector	512
Revolution speed	5400 rpm ±1%
Access time (average)	5.56 ms
Positioning time (seek, typical values) Minimum (track to track) Average (read access) Maximum (read access)	 1.5 ms 12 ms 22 ms
Starting time (0 rpm to read access)	4 seconds (typically)
Supported transfer mode	SATA 1.0, PIO mode 0-4, multiword DMA mode 0-2, UDMA 0-5
Data transfer rate On the medium To/from host	 Max. 84.6 MBit/s Max. 150 MB/s

Table 83: Technical data - RAID hard disk - 5ACPCI.RAIC-04

Features	5ACPCI.RAIC-04
Cache	8 MB
S.M.A.R.T. support	Yes
Lifespan	5 years
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature[1)] Operation - Standard / 24-hour[2)] Bearings Transport	 -15 to +80°C -40 to +95°C -40 to +95°C
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 8 to 90%, non-condensing (maximum humidity at +29°C) 5 to 95%, non-condensing (maximum humidity at +40°C) 5 to 95%, non-condensing (maximum humidity at +40°C)
Vibration[3)] Operation (continuous) Operation (occasional) Bearings Transport	 5 - 500 Hz: max. 0.125 g; duration 1 octave per minute; no unrecoverable errors 5 - 500 Hz: max. 0.25 g; duration 1 octave per minute; no unrecoverable errors 5 - 500 Hz: max. 5 g; duration 0.5 octaves per minute; no damage 5 - 500 Hz: max. 5 g; duration 0.5 octaves per minute; no damage
Shock (pulse with a sine half-wave) Operation Bearings	 Max. 125 g, 2 ms; no unrecoverable errors Max. 400 g, 2 ms; no damage Max. 450 g, 1 ms; no damage Max. 200 g, 0.5 ms; no damage
Altitude Operation Bearings	 - 300 to 3048 meters - 300 to 12,192 meters

Table 83: Technical data - RAID hard disk - 5ACPCI.RAIC-04 (cont.)

1) Temperature values for 305 meter elevation. The temperature specification must be reduced linearly by 1°C every 305 meters. The temperature increase and decrease can be a maximum of 3°C per minute.

2) 24-hour operation means 732 POH (power-on hours) per month.

3) Operation in areas prone to vibration and shock can affect performance negatively (reduction of transfer rate).

Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

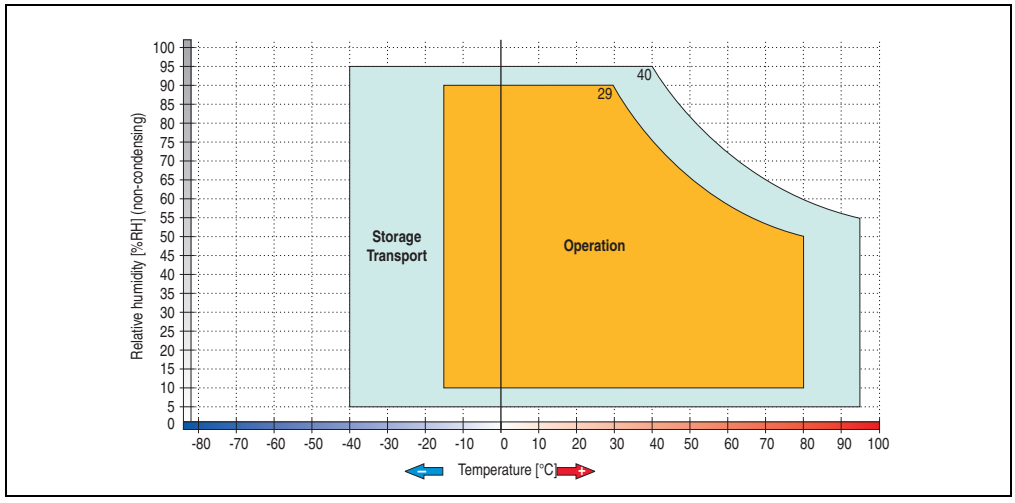


Figure 72: Temperature humidity diagram - SATA RAID hard disk 5ACPCI.RAIC-04

Exchanging a PCI SATA RAID hard disk

Instructions for exchanging a SATA hard disk can be found in chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section "Exchanging a PCI SATA RAID hard disk" on page 529.

3.7 Interface options

An optional interface (CAN or combined RS232/422/485) can be inserted.

Information:

It is possible to add or remove an optional interface at any time.

Caution!

Turn off power before adding or removing an optional interface.

3.7.1 Add-on CAN interface - 5AC600.CANI-00

The add-on CAN interface is equipped with a Bosch CC770 CAN controller (compatible with an Intel 82527 CAN controller), which conforms to CAN specifications 2.0 part A/B. The CAN controller can trigger an NMI (non-maskable interrupt).

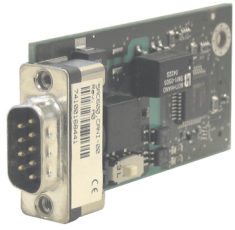


Figure 73: Add-on CAN interface - 5AC600.CANI-00

Technical data

Features	5AC600.CANI-00
CAN interface Controller Amount Connection	 Bosch CC770 (compatible with Intel 82527 CAN controller) 1 9-pin DSUB, male
Terminating resistor Default setting	Can be activated and deactivated using a sliding switch Disabled

Table 84: Technical data - Add-on CAN interface - 5AC600.CANI-00

Pin assignments

Add-on CAN		
Type	Electrically isolated	
Transfer rate	Max. 500 kBit/s	
Bus length	Max. 1000 Meter	
Pin	**Assignment**	
1	n.c.	
2	CAN low	
3	GND	
4	n.c.	
5	n.c.	
6	Reserved	
7	CAN high	
8	n.c.	
9	n.c.	

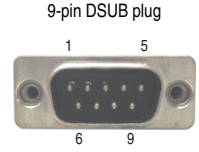


Table 85: Pin assignments - CAN

I/O address and IRQ

Resource	Default setting	Additional setting options
I/O address	384 / 385	-
IRQ	IRQ10	NMI [1]

Table 86: Add-on CAN - I/O address and IRQ

1) NMI = Non Maskable Interrupt.

The setting for the IRQ can be changed in the BIOS setup (under "Advanced" - submenu "Baseboard/Panel Features" - submenu "Legacy Devices", setting "CAN"). Please note any potential conflicts with other resources when changing this setting.

I/O address	Register	Function
384h	Address register	Defines the register number to access.
385h	Data register	Access to the register defined in the address register.

Table 87: CAN address register

Bus length and cable type

The type of cable used depends largely on the required bus length and the number of nodes. The bus length is mainly determined by the bit rate. In accordance with CiA (CAN in Automation) the maximum bus length is 1000 meters.

The following bus lengths are permitted with a maximum oscillator tolerance of 0.121%:

Distance [m]	Transfer rate [kBit/s]
≤ 1000	Typ. 50
≤ 200	Typ. 250
≤ 60	Typ. 500

Table 88: Bus length and transfer rate - CAN

The material used for the cable should preferably have all or most of the following properties in order to reach an optimal transfer rate.

CAN cable	Property
Signal lines	
Cable cross section	2 x 0.25 mm² (24AWG/19), tinned Cu wire
Wire insulation	PE
Conductor resistance	≤ 82 Ω/km
Stranding	Wires stranded in pairs
Shield	Paired shield with aluminum foil
Grounding line	
Cable cross section	1 x 0.34 mm² (22AWG/19), tinned Cu wire
Wire insulation	PE
Conductor resistance	≤ 59 Ω/km
Outer sheathing	
Material	PUR mixture
Characteristics	Halogen free
Entire shielding	From tinned cu wires

Table 89: CAN cable requirements

Terminating resistors

CAN networks are cabled using a bus structure where both ends of the bus are equipped with terminating resistors. The add-on CAN interface has an integrated terminating resistor (delivery state: disabled with the setting "Off").

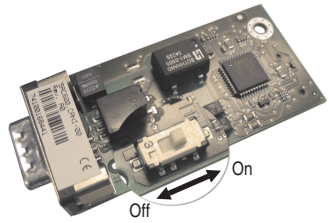


Figure 74: Terminating resistor - Add-on CAN interface 5AC600.CANI-00

Contents of delivery

The screws included in the mounting kit are to be used for installation.

Figure 75: Contents of the delivery / mounting material - 5AC600.CANI-00

3.7.2 Add-on RS232/422/485 interface - 5AC600.485I-00

The serial interface is a combined RS232/RS422/RS485 interface. The operating mode (RS232/RS422/RS485) is selected automatically, depending on the electrical connection.

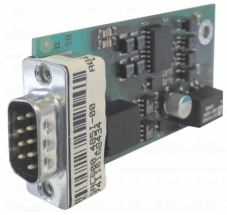


Figure 76: Add-on RS232/422/485 interface - 5AC600.485I-00

Pin assignments

Add-on RS232/422/485			
Features	**RS232**	**RS422/485**	
Type	RS232 not modem compatible; electrically isolated		
UART	16550 compatible, 16 byte FIFO		
Transfer rate	Max. 115 kBit/s		
Bus length	Max. 15 meters	Max. 1200 meters	
Pin	**Assignments (RS232)**	**Assignments (RS422)**	
1	n.c.	TXD\	
2	RXD	n.c.	
3	TXD	n.c.	
4	n.c.	TXD	
5	GND	GND	
6	n.c.	RXD\	
7	RTS	n.c.	
8	CTS	n.c.	
9	n.c.	RXD	

9-pin DSUB plug

Table 90: Pin assignments - RS232/RS422

I/O address and IRQ

Resource	Default setting	Additional setting options
I/O address	2E8	238, 2F8, 338, 3E8, 3F8
IRQ	IRQ10	IRQ 3, 4, 5, 7, 11, 12

Table 91: Add-on RS232/422/485 - I/O address and IRQ

The setting for the I/O address and the IRQ can be changed in the BIOS setup (under "Advanced" - submenu "Baseboard/Panel Features" - submenu "Legacy Devices", setting "COM E"). Please note any potential conflicts with other resources when changing this setting.

RS232 - Bus length and cable type

The maximum transfer rate of 115 kBit/s depends on the cable type being used.

Distance [m]	Transfer rate [kBit/s]
≤ 15	Typ. 64
≤ 10	Typ. 115
≤ 5	Typ. 115

Table 92: RS232 - Bus length and transfer rate

The material used for the cable should preferably have all or most of the following properties in order to reach an optimal transfer rate.

RS232 cable	Property
Signal lines Cable cross section Wire insulation Conductor resistance Stranding Shield	 4 x 0.16 mm² (26AWG), tinned Cu wire PE ≤ 82 Ω/km Wires stranded in pairs Paired shield with aluminum foil
Grounding line Cable cross section Wire insulation Conductor resistance	 1 x 0.34 mm² (22AWG/19), tinned Cu wire PE ≤ 59 Ω/km
Outer sheathing Material Characteristics Entire shielding	 PUR mixture Halogen free From tinned cu wires

Table 93: RS232 - Cable requirements

RS422 - Bus length and cable type

The RTS line must be switched on to activate the sender.

The maximum transfer rate of 115 kBit/s depends on the cable type being used.

Distance [m]	Transfer rate [kBit/s]
1200	Typ. 115

Table 94: RS422 - Bus length and transfer rate

The material used for the cable should preferably have all or most of the following properties in order to reach an optimal transfer rate.

RS422 cable	Property
Signal lines	
Cable cross section	4 x 0.25 mm² (24AWG/19), tinned Cu wire
Wire insulation	PE
Conductor resistance	≤ 82 Ω/km
Stranding	Wires stranded in pairs
Shield	Paired shield with aluminum foil
Grounding line	
Cable cross section	1 x 0.34 mm² (22AWG/19), tinned Cu wire
Wire insulation	PE
Conductor resistance	≤ 59 Ω/km
Outer sheathing	
Material	PUR mixture
Characteristics	Halogen free
Entire shielding	From tinned cu wires

Table 95: RS422 - Cable requirements

RS485 interface operation

The pins of the RS422 default interface (1,4,6 and 9) should be used for operation. The pins should be connected as shown.

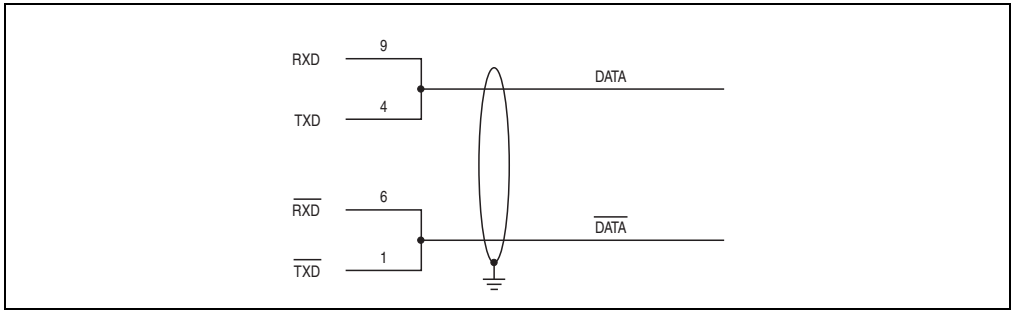


Figure 77: Add-on RS232/422/485 interface - operated in RS485 mode

The RTS line must be switched each time the driver is sent and received; there is no automatic switch back. This cannot be configured in Windows.

The voltage drop caused by long line lengths can lead to greater potential differences between the bus stations, which can hinder communication. This can be improved by running ground wire with the others.

The line ends of the RS485 interface should (at least for longer line lengths or larger transfer rates) be closed. Normally a passive terminator can be used on the bus ends by connecting each of the signal lines with 120 Ω resistor.

RS485 - Bus length and cable type

The maximum transfer rate of 115 kBit/s depends on the cable type being used.

Distance [m]	Transfer rate [kBit/s]
1200	Typ. 115

Table 96: RS485 - Bus length and transfer rate

The material used for the cable should preferably have all or most of the following properties in order to reach an optimal transfer rate.

RS485 cable	Property
Signal lines Cable cross section Wire insulation Conductor resistance Stranding Shield	 4 x 0.25 mm² (24AWG/19), tinned Cu wire PE ≤ 82 Ω/km Wires stranded in pairs Paired shield with aluminum foil
Grounding line Cable cross section Wire insulation Conductor resistance	 1 x 0.34 mm² (22AWG/19), tinned Cu wire PE ≤ 59 Ω/km
Outer sheathing Material Characteristics Entire shielding	 PUR mixture Halogen free From tinned cu wires

Table 97: RS485 - Cable requirements

Contents of delivery

The screws included in the mounting kit are to be used for installation.

Figure 78: Contents of the delivery / mounting material - 5AC600.485I-00

3.8 Fan kit

Information:

Fans are necessary when using components which must work within certain temperature limits, e.g. hard disks, DVD combos, PCI cards, etc.

The fan and dust filter are subject to wear and must be checked with appropriate frequency and cleaned or replaced when not functioning properly (e.g. due to dirt and grime).

3.8.1 Fan kit 1 PCI - 5PC600.FA01-00

This fan kit is an optional addition for system units with 1 PCI slots. For available replacement dust filters for this fan kit, see section "Replacement fan filter" on page 480.

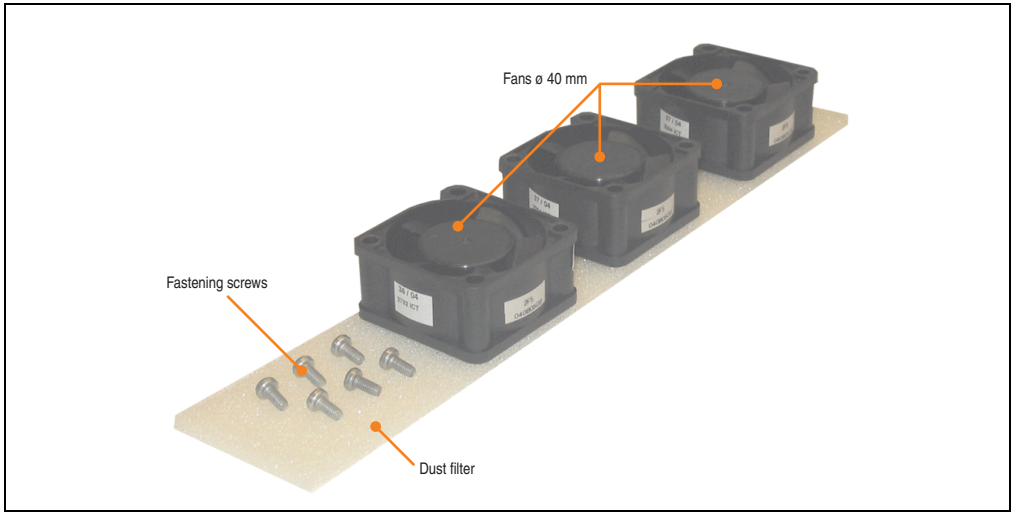


Figure 79: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA01-00

Technical data

Features	5PC600.FA01-00
Fan type Width Length Height	Double ball bearings 40 mm 40 mm 20 mm
Revolution speed	5600 rpm ±10%
Noise level	24 dB
Lifespan	80,000 hours at 30°C

Table 98: Technical data - 5PC600.FA01-00

Features	5PC600.FA01-00
Maintenance interval	The fans are subject to wear. Depending on the work environment, the dust filter should be checked with appropriate frequency to determine whether the air flow provides sufficient cooling. An exchange or cleaning of the filter kit is appropriate at that time.

Table 98: Technical data - 5PC600.FA01-00 (cont.)

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
3	Fans with 40 mm diameter
1	Dust filter
6	Mounting screws

Table 99: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA01-00

Installation

For a description of how to install the fan kit, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 2 "Fan kit installation and replacement", starting on page 490.

3.8.2 Fan kit 2 PCI - 5PC600.FA02-00

This fan kit is an optional addition for system units with 2 PCI slots. For available replacement dust filters for this fan kit, see section "Replacement fan filter" on page 480.

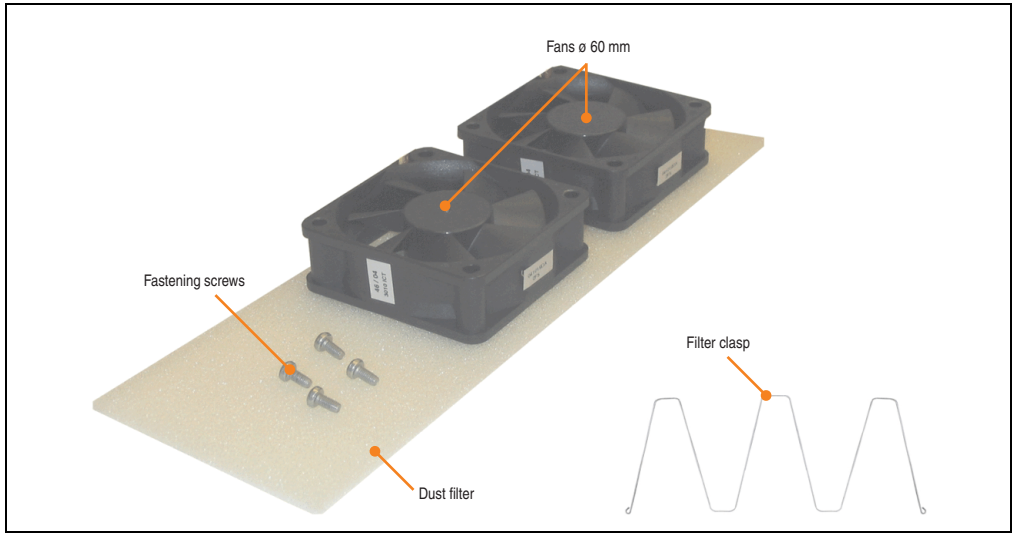


Figure 80: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA02-00

Technical data

Features	5PC600.FA02-00
Fan type Width Length Height	Double ball bearings 60 mm 60 mm 20 mm
Revolution speed	3600 rpm ±10%
Noise level	30.5 dB
Lifespan	80,000 hours at 30°C
Maintenance interval	The fans are subject to wear. Depending on the work environment, the dust filter should be checked with appropriate frequency to determine whether the air flow provides sufficient cooling. An exchange or cleaning of the filter kit is appropriate at that time.

Table 100: Technical data - 5PC600.FA02-00

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
2	Fans with 60 mm diameter
1	Dust filter
1	Filter clasp
4	Mounting screws

Table 101: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA02-00

Installation

For a description of how to install the fan kit, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 2 "Fan kit installation and replacement", starting on page 493.

3.8.3 Fan kit 3 PCI - 5PC600.FA03-00

This fan kit is an optional addition for system units with 3 PCI slots. For available replacement dust filters for this fan kit, see section "Replacement fan filter" on page 480.

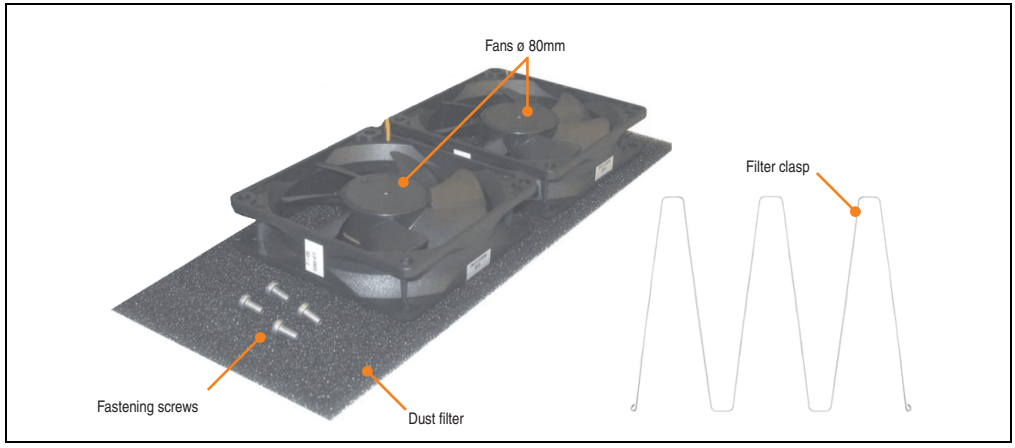


Figure 81: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA03-00

Technical data

Features	5PC600.FA03-00
Fan type Amount Width Length Height	Double ball bearings 2 80 mm 80 mm 20 mm
Revolution speed	2600 rpm ±10%
Noise level	27 dB
Lifespan	80,000 hours at 30°C
Maintenance interval	The fans are subject to wear. Depending on the work environment, the dust filter should be checked with appropriate frequency to determine whether the air flow provides sufficient cooling. An exchange or cleaning of the filter kit is appropriate at that time.

Table 102: Technical data - 5PC600.FA03-00

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
2	Fans with 80 mm diameter
1	Dust filter
1	Filter clasp
4	Mounting screws

Table 103: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA03-00

Amount	Component
2	Cable fastener

Table 103: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA03-00

Installation

For a description of how to install the fan kit, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 2 "Fan kit installation and replacement", starting on page 496.

3.8.4 Fan kit 5 PCI - 5PC600.FA05-00

This fan kit is an optional addition for system units with 5 PCI slots. For available replacement dust filters for this fan kit, see section "Replacement fan filter" on page 480.

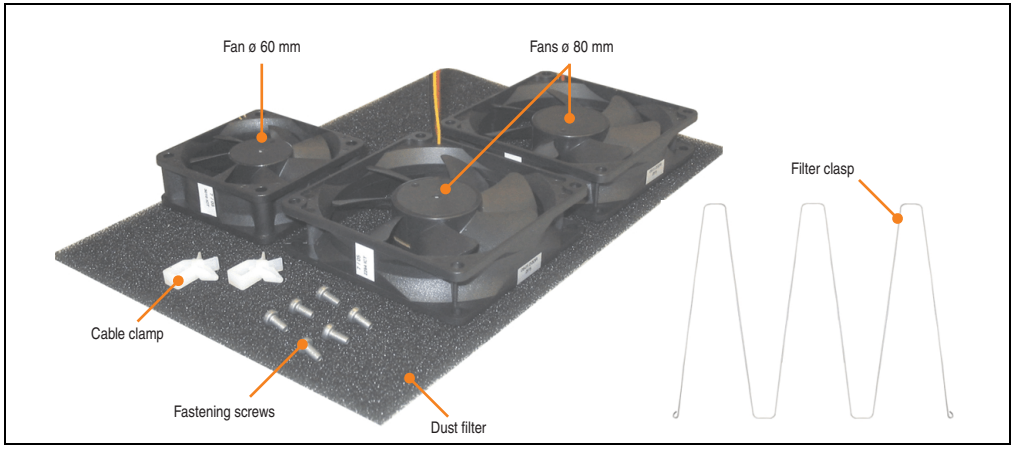


Figure 82: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA05-00

Technical data

Features	5PC600.FA05-00	
Fan type Amount Width Length Height	Double ball bearings 1 60 mm 60 mm 20 mm	Double ball bearings 2 80 mm 80 mm 20 mm
Revolution speed	3600 rpm ±10%	2600 rpm ±10%
Noise level	30.5 dB	27 dB
Lifespan	80,000 hours at 30°C	
Maintenance interval	The fans are subject to wear. Depending on the work environment, the dust filter should be checked with appropriate frequency to determine whether the air flow provides sufficient cooling. An exchange or cleaning of the filter kit is appropriate at that time.	

Table 104: Technical data - 5PC600.FA05-00

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	Fans with 60 mm diameter
2	Fans with 80 mm diameter
1	Dust filter
1	Filter clasp
4	Mounting screws
2	Cable fastener

Table 105: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA05-00

Installation

For a description of how to install the fan kit, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 2 "Fan kit installation and replacement", starting on page 500.

3.9 AP Link cards

For the APC620 system units 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SF03-00 and 5PC600.SX05-00 and an X945 CPU board, a second graphics line can be created using the AP Link graphics adapter cards.

3.9.1 AP Link SDL transmitter - 5AC600.SDL0-00

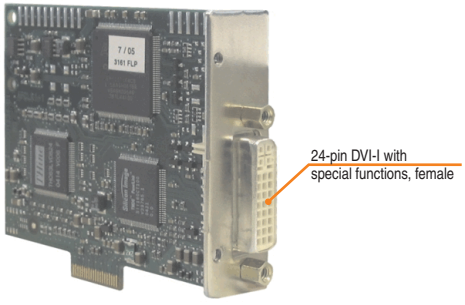


Figure 83: AP Link card

Model number	Short description	Note
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	

Table 106: Model numbers - AP Link graphics adapter

The following video signals are available via AP Link and monitor/panel output. The plugs are specified for 100 connection cycles.

AP Link slot (AP Link card inserted)		
AP Link card	Signal with X945 board on	
	AP Link	Monitor / Panel
5AC600.SDL0-00	DVI, SDL	RGB

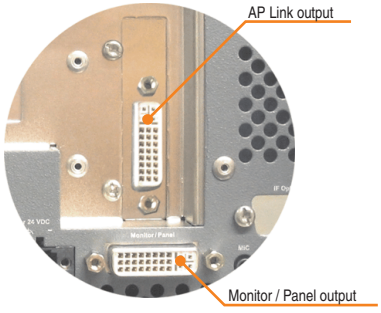


Table 107: AP Link slot (AP Link card inserted)

Hotplug for a display device is not supported in any combination.

Caution!

The RGB, DVI and SDL cables can only be plugged in and unplugged when the APC620 and display device (Automation Panel 900, Automation Panel 800, monitor) are turned off.

Pin assignments

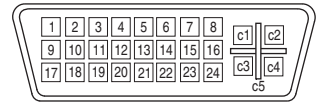
Pin	Assignment	Pin	Assignment	
1	T.M.D.S. data 2-	16	Hot Plug detect	DVI-I 24 pin, female 
2	T.M.D.S. data 2+	17	T.M.D.S. data 0-	
3	T.M.D.S. data 2/SDL shield	18	T.M.D.S. data 0+	
4	SDL-	19	T.M.D.S. DATA 0/XUSB1 shield	
5	SDL+	20	XUSB1-	
6	DDC clock	21	XUSB1+	
7	DDC data	22	T.M.D.S. clock shield	
8	n.c.	23	T.M.D.S. clock +	
9	T.M.D.S. DATA 1-	24	T.M.D.S. clock -	
10	T.M.D.S. DATA 1+	c1	n.c.	
11	T.M.D.S. DATA 1/XUBS0 shield	c2	n.c.	
12	XUSB0-	c3	n.c.	
13	XUSB0+	c4	n.c.	
14	+ 5 V Power [1)]	c5	n.c.	
15	Ground (return for + 5V, HSync and VSync)			

Table 108: Pin assignment for AP Link connection

1) Protected internally by a multifuse

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution				
	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03
5	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03
10	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00[1)] 5CASDL.0100-01[1)] 5CASDL.0100-03[1)]
15	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00[1)] 5CASDL.0150-01[1)] 5CASDL.0150-03[1)]	- - -
20	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-30[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-30[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-30[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-30[1)]	- -
25	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-30[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-30[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-30[1)]	- -	- -
30	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	-
40	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	- -

Table 109: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 110 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 195

2) See table 111 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 196

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. B0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. B0	

Table 110: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. D0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. D0	
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	Rev. B3	
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	

Table 111: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

DVI, SDL description

DVI means:

- Connection of B&R Automation Panel 900 display units with Automation Panel Link DVI Receiver (Model nr. 5DLDVI.1000-01), Office Digital/DVI Monitors and Office DVI TFT Displays is possible.

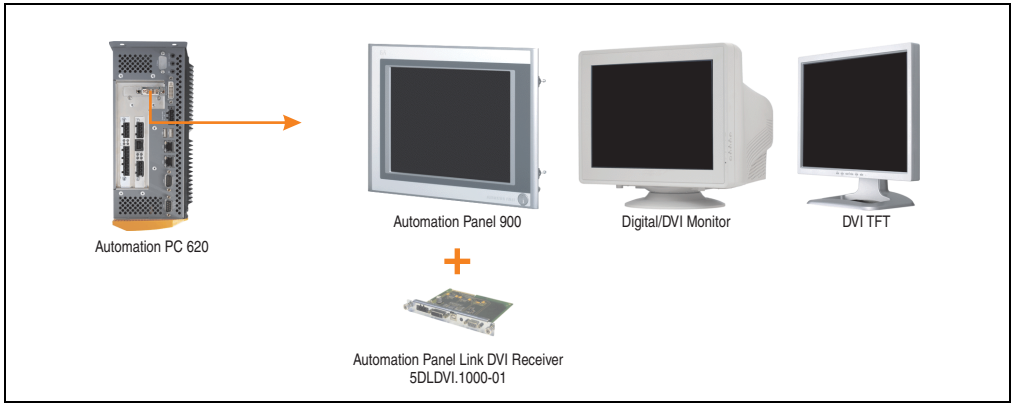


Figure 84: AP Link device connection with DVI video signal

For examples and possibilities for connecting Automation Panel 900 display units via DVI, see Appendix A, chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 4 "Connection examples", starting on page 211.

SDL (Smart Display Link) means:

- Connection of B&R Automation Panel 900 display units with Automation Panel Link SDL receiver (Model nr. 5DLSDL.1000-01) or SDL transceiver (Model nr. 5DLSDL.1000-01).

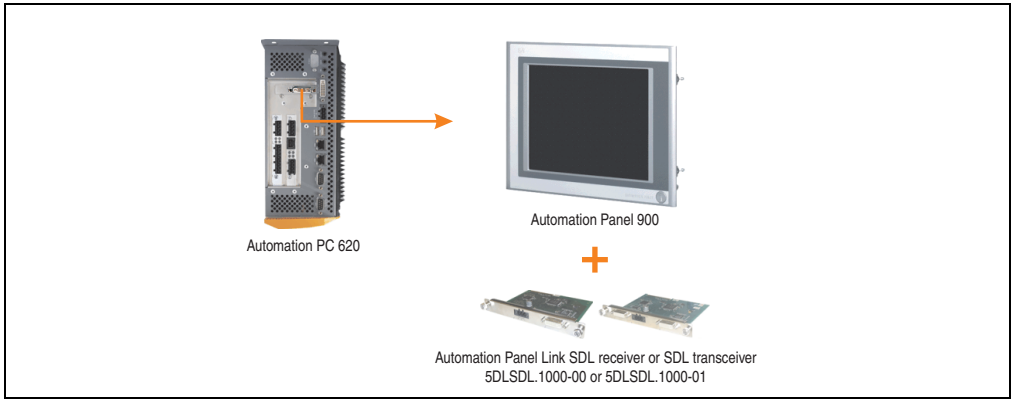


Figure 85: AP Link device connection with SDL video signal

For examples and possibilities for connecting Automation Panel 900 and Automation Panel 800 display units via SDL, see Appendix A, chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 4 "Connection examples", starting on page 211.

Chapter 3 • Commissioning

1. Installation

The APC620 systems are mounted with the mounting plates found on the housing. The plates are designed for M5 screws.

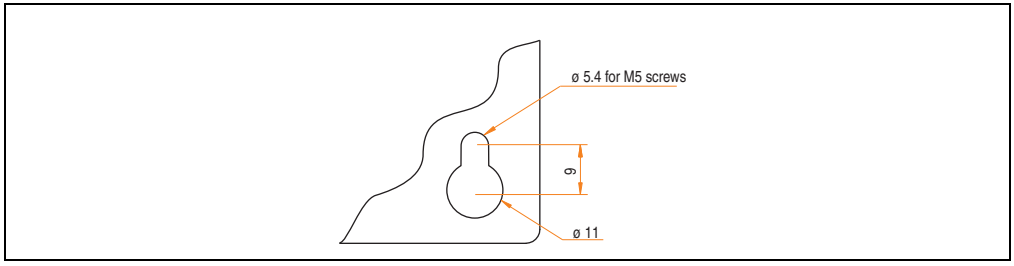


Figure 86: Mounting plates for the APC620

The exact positioning of the mounting holes can be seen in the following drilling templates.

1.1 Important mounting information

- The environmental conditions must be taken into consideration (see chapter 2 "Technical data", section 2.6 "Ambient temperatures for systems with an X945 CPU board" on page 72).
- The APC620 is only for operation in closed rooms.
- The APC620 cannot be situated in direct sunlight.
- The ventilation holes cannot be covered.
- When mounting the device, be sure to use the allowed mounting orientations (see section 1.3 "Mounting orientation" on page 203).
- Be sure the wall or switching cabinet can withstand four times the total weight of the the PC620.
- When connecting certain cable types (DVI, SDL, USB, etc.), keep the flex radius in mind. (see section 2 "Cable connections" on page 209).

1.2 Drilling templates

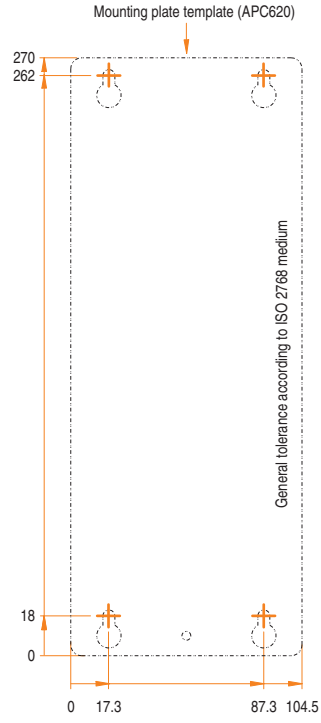
APC620 with 1 PCI slot	APC620 with 2 PCI slots
	

Table 112: Drilling templates - 1 and 2 PCI slots

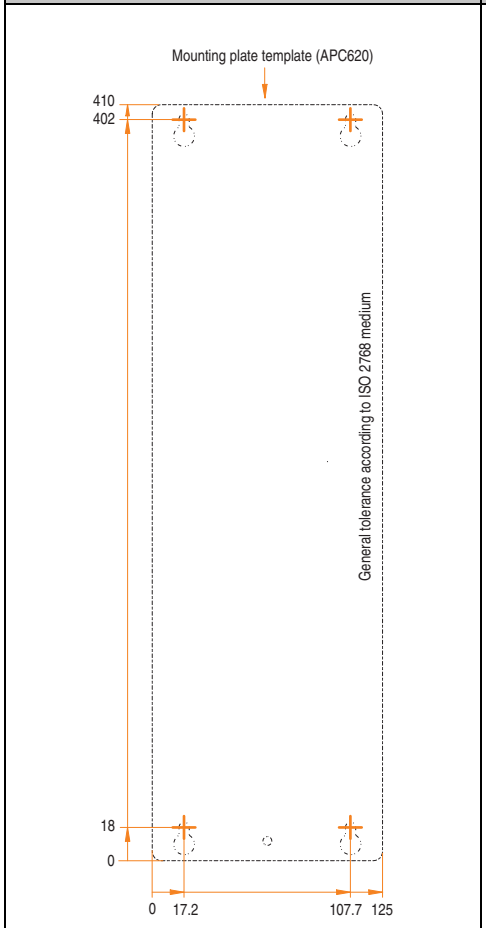
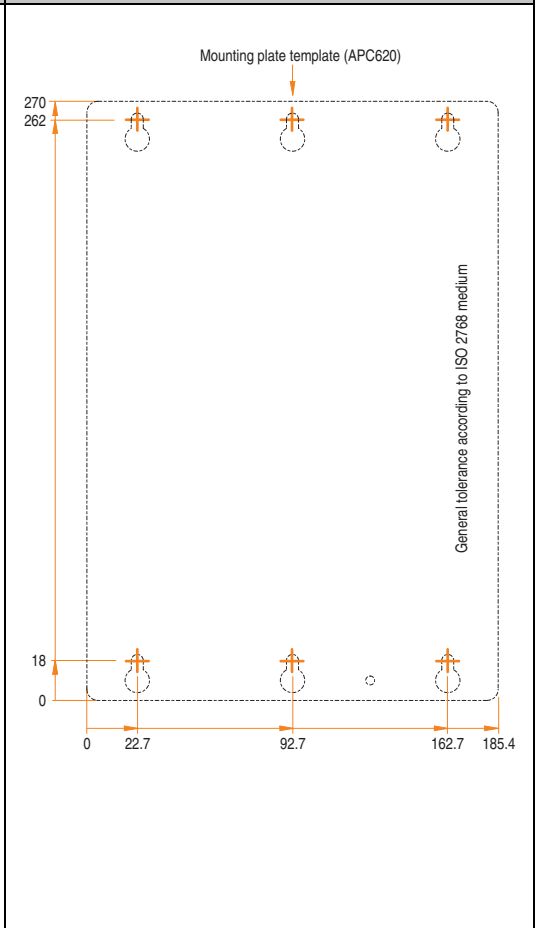
APC620 with 3 PCI slots	APC620 with 5 PCI slots
	

Table 113: Drilling templates - 3 and 5 PCI slots

APC620 embedded

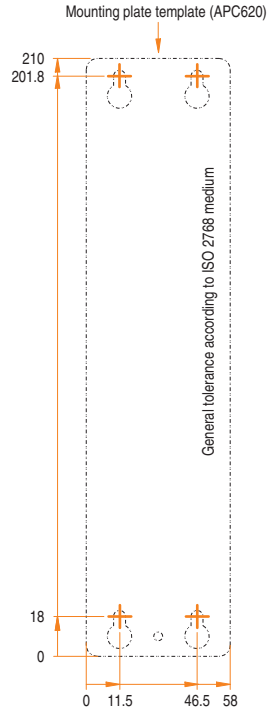


Table 114: Drilling templates - APC620 embedded

1.3 Mounting orientation

The Automation PC620 system must be mounted as described in the following sections.

1.3.1 Standard mounting

Standard mounting refers to vertical mounting orientation.

APC620 systems with and without fan kit can be mounted this way.

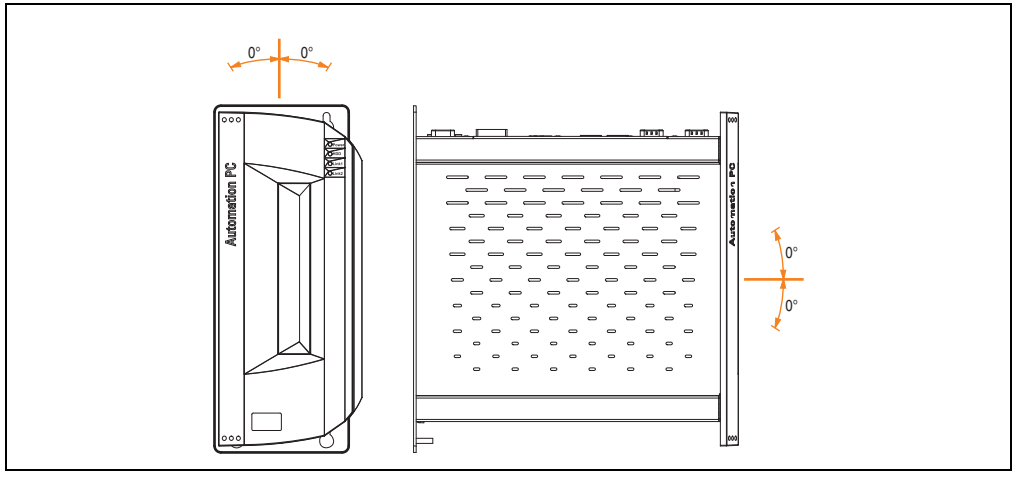


Figure 87: Mounting orientation - Standard

In order to guarantee natural air circulation, mount the system so that the spacing on the top, bottom, and sides is as follows.

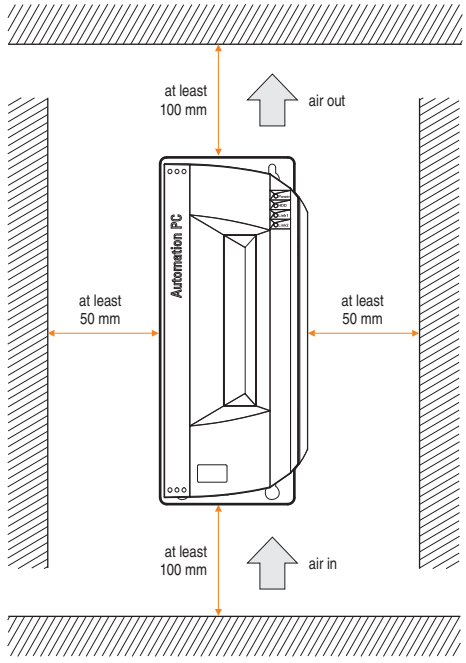


Figure 88: Air circulation spacing - Standard

1.3.2 Optional mounting orientations

Caution!

A fan kit must be used if the system is mounted in the following orientations. In addition, it is important to be sure that the components used are installed in a way that complies with the specifications of the drives being used (hard disk, etc.). See the following pages for information regarding the specifications for mounting orientation.

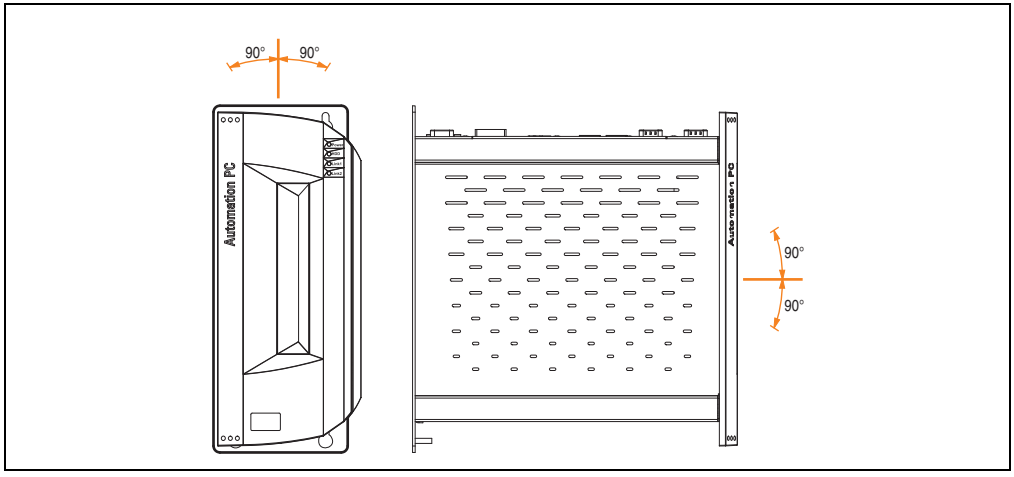


Figure 89: Mounting orientation - Optional

In order to guarantee natural air circulation, mount the system so that the spacing on the top, bottom, and sides is as follows.

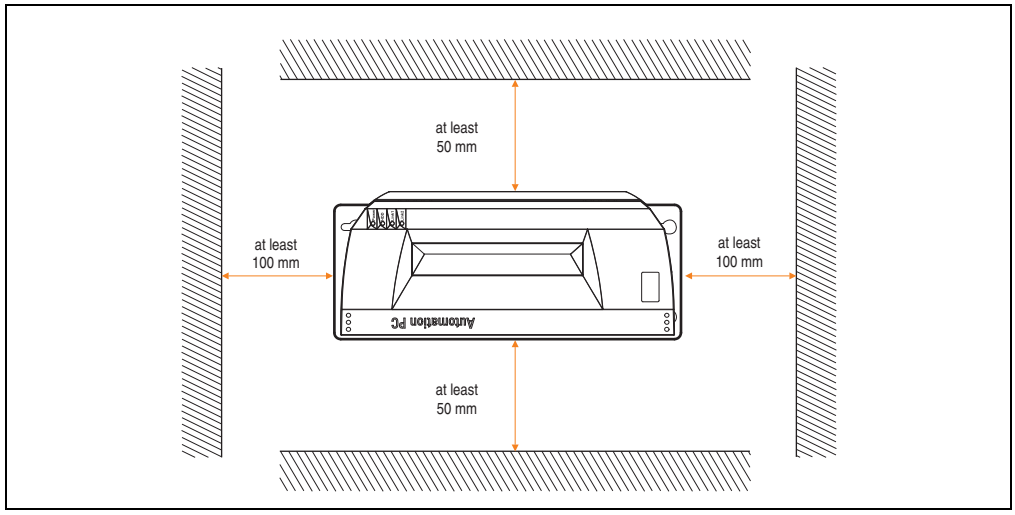


Figure 90: Optional circulation spacing

CompactFlash slot add-on

No limitation on mounting orientation. Permissible mounting orientations are shown in figure 89 "Mounting orientation - Optional" on page 205.

Add-on or slide-in hard disks 20, 30 and 40 GB.

The following figure shows the possible mounting orientations for an APC620 device with an add-on (5AC600.HDDI-00 or 5AC600.HDDI-01) or slide-in hard disk (5AC600.HDDS-00 or 5AC600.HDDS-02).

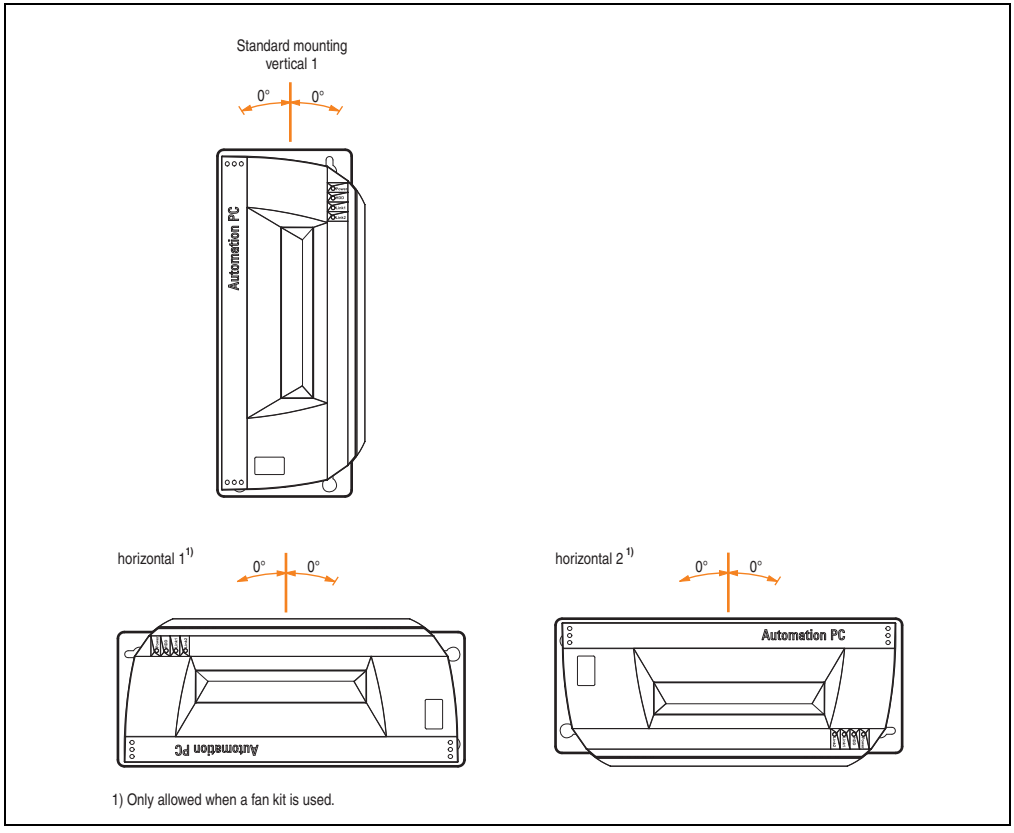
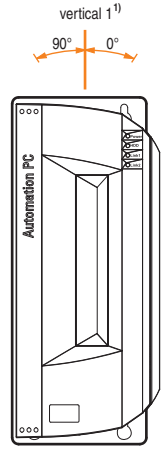


Figure 91: Mounting orientations for an APC620 with hard disk drive

The mounting orientations "horizontal 1" and "horizontal 2" require the use of a fan kit.

Slide-in USB FDD

The following figure shows the possible mounting orientations for an APC620 device with a slide-in USB FDD drive (5AC600.FDDS-00).



1) Only allowed when a fan kit is used.

Figure 92: Mounting orientations for an APC620 with a slide-in USB FDD drive

Mounting orientation "vertical 1" can also be used at 0° without a fan kit.

2. Cable connections

When making cable connections and installing cables, it is not permitted to have a flex radius smaller than the minimum value specified.

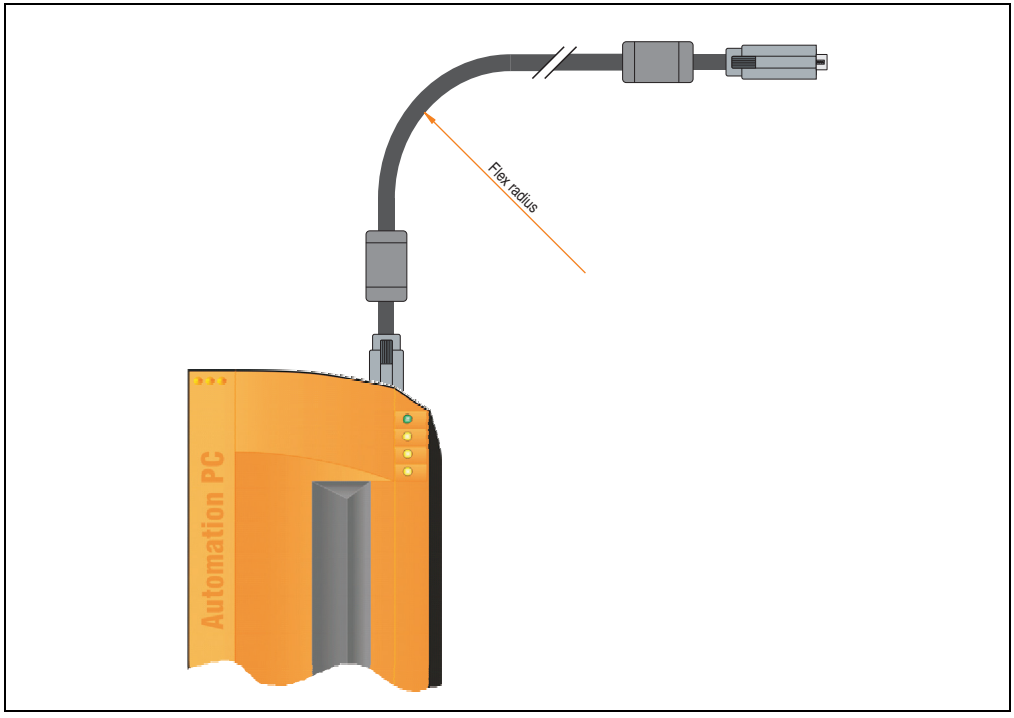


Figure 93: Flex radius - Cable connection

Information:

The value specified for the minimum flex radius can be found in the technical data for the cable that is being used.

2.1 Ethernet cable lengths for ETH1

For error free data transfer, take note of the cable length information in section "Ethernet connection ETH1" on page 108.

3. Grounding concept

The functional ground is a current path with low impedance between isolated circuits and ground, which is not a protective measure, but rather provides e.g. increased immunity to disturbances. It serves only as disturbance dissipation and not as contact protection for persons.

The APC620 functional ground has 2 connections:

- Supply voltage
- Ground connection

To guarantee secure dissipation of electric disturbances, the following points should be observed:

- The device should be connected to the ground using the shortest route possible.
- Use cable with a minimum cross section of 2.5 mm^2 per connection.
- Note the line shielding concept, all connected data cables are used as shielded lines.

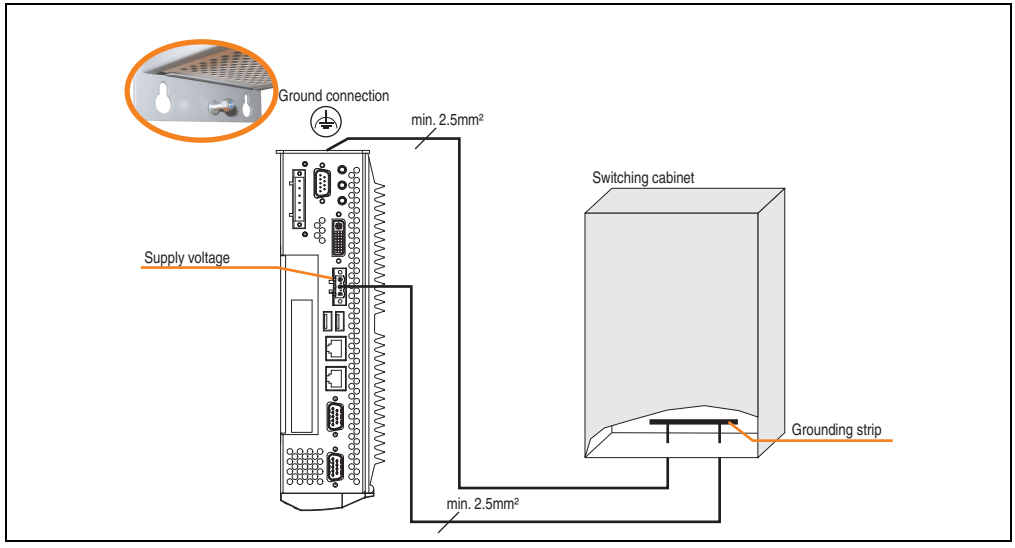


Figure 94: Grounding concept

4. Connection examples

The following examples provide an overview of the configuration options for connecting Automation Panel 800 and Automation Panel 900 and/or Automation Panel 800 devices with the APC620. The following questions will be answered:

- How are Automation Panel 900 devices connected to the monitor / panel output of the APC620, and what needs to be considered?
- How are Automation Panel 800 devices connected to the monitor / panel output of the APC620, and what needs to be considered?
- How are Automation Panel 900 devices connected simultaneously to the Monitor / Panel output on the optional SDL AP Link of the APC620 and what needs to be considered?
- What are "Display Clone" and "Extended Desktop" modes?
- How many Automation Panel 900 devices can be connected per line?
- How many Automation Panel 900 devices can be connected to an Automation Panel 800 device per line?
- How are the connected devices internally numbered?
- Are there limitations to the segment length and if so, what are they?
- What cables and link modules are needed?
- Do BIOS settings have to be changed for a specific configuration?

Information:

An RGB monitor / flat-screen can always be connected to the monitor / panel output of the APC620 (necessary DVI to CRT adapter can be ordered under the model number 5AC900.1000-00).

4.1 Selecting the display units

If an Automation Panel 800 and an Automation Panel 900 should be connected on the same line, the devices must have the same display type.
The following table lists the AP900 devices that can be connected on the same line with an AP800 device.

Automation Panel 800	Automation Panel 900
5AP820.1505-00	5AP920.1505-01 5AP951.1505-01 5AP980.1505-01 5AP981.1505-01
5AP880.1505-00	5AP920.1505-01 5AP951.1505-01 5AP980.1505-01 5AP981.1505-01

Table 115: Selecting the display units

4.2 One Automation Panel 900 via DVI (onboard)

An Automation Panel 900 with max. SXGA resolution is connected to the integrated DVI interface (onboard). As an alternative, an office TFT with DVI interface or an analog monitor (using adapter with model no. 5AC900.1000-00) can also be operated. A separate cable is used for touch screen and USB. If USB devices are to be operated on the Automation Panel 900, the maximum distance is 5 meters. USB devices can only be connected directly to the Automation Panel (without a hub).

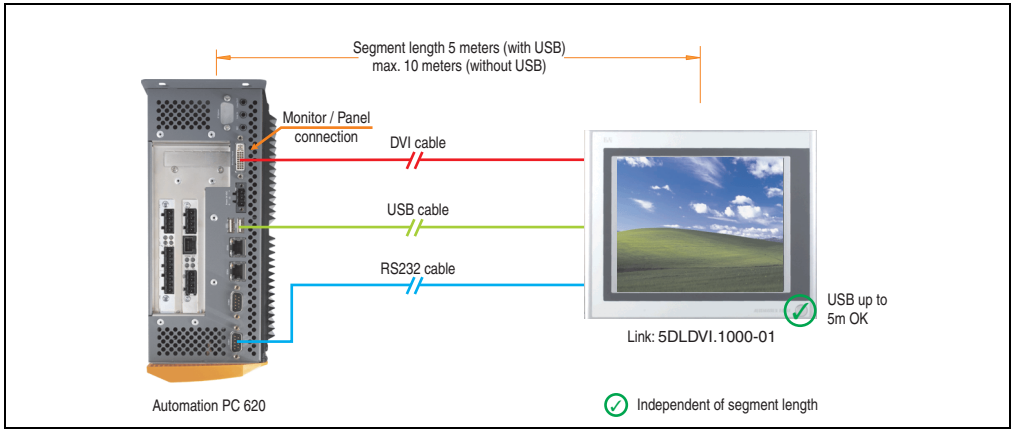


Figure 95: Configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via DVI (onboard)

4.2.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table (e.g. for connecting a non-B&R Automation Panel 900 device).

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. SXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. SXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. SXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. SXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. SXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. SXGA

Table 116: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

4.2.2 Link modules

Model number	Description	Note
5DLDVI.1000-01	**Automation Panel Link DVI receiver** connections for DVI-D, RS232 and USB 2.0 (Type B); 24VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900

Table 117: Link module for the configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via DVI

4.2.3 Cables

Select one cable each from the 3 required types.

Model number	Type	Length
5CADVI.0018-00	DVI cable	1.8 m
5CADVI.0050-00	DVI cable	5 m
5CADVI.0100-00	DVI cable	10 m[1)]
9A0014.02	Touch screen cable - serial	1.8 m
9A0014.05	Touch screen cable - serial	5 m
9A0014.10	Touch screen cable - serial	10 m[1)]
5CAUSB.0018-00	USB cable	1.8 m
5CAUSB.0050-00	USB cable	5 m

Table 118: Cables for DVI configurations

1) USB support is not possible on the Automation Panel 900 because USB is limited to 5 m.

4.2.4 Possible Automation Panel units, resolutions und segment lengths

The following Automation Panel 900 units can be used. In rare cases, the segment length is limited according to the resolution.

Model number	Diagonal	Resolution	Touch screen	Keys	Max. segment length
5AP920.1043-01	10.4“	VGA	✓	-	5 m / 10 m[1)]
5AP920.1214-01	12.1“	SVGA	✓	-	5 m / 10 m[1)]
5AP920.1505-01	15.0“	XGA	✓	-	5 m / 10 m[1)]
5AP920.1706-01	17.0“	SXGA	✓	-	5 m / 10 m[1)]
5AP920.1906-01	19.0“	SXGA	✓	-	5 m / 10 m[1)]

Table 119: Possible Automation Panel units, resolutions und segment lengths

1) USB support is not possible on the Automation Panel 900 because USB is limited to 5 m.

Information:

The DVI transfer mode does not allow reading statistical values on Automation Panel 900 units.

4.2.5 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation.

4.2.6 Windows graphics driver settings

See chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.2.7 Windows touch screen driver settings

See chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.3 An Automation Panel 900 via SDL (onboard)

An Automation Panel 900 is connected to the integrated SDL interface (onboard) via an SDL cable. USB devices can only be connected directly to the Automation Panel (without a hub).

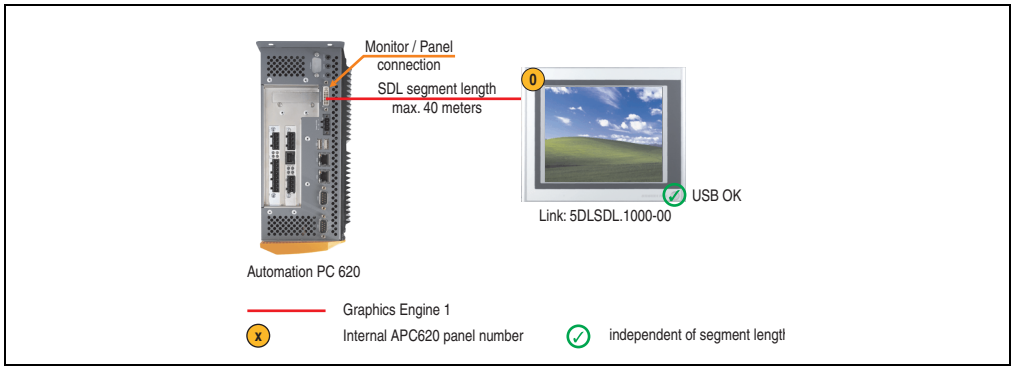


Figure 96: Configuration - An Automation Panel 900 via SDL (onboard)

4.3.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table (e.g. for connecting a non-B&R Automation Panel 900 device).

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA

Table 120: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

4.3.2 Link modules

Model number	Description	Note
5DLSDL.1000-00	**Automation Panel Link SDL receiver** Connection for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900

Table 121: Link module for the configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via DVI

4.3.3 Cables

Select a cable from the following table.

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0018-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0050-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0100-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0150-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0200-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0200-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0250-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0250-30	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0300-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0400-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	40 m
5CASDL.0400-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	40 m

Table 122: Cables for SDL configurations

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution				
	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03
5	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03
10	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00[1)] 5CASDL.0100-01[1)] 5CASDL.0100-03[1)]
15	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00[1)] 5CASDL.0150-01[1)] 5CASDL.0150-03[1)]	- - -
20	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	- -
25	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	- -	- -
30	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	- -
40	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	- -

Table 123: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 124 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 218

2) See table 125 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 219

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. B0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. B0	

Table 124: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. D0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. D0	
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	Rev. B3	
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	

Table 125: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.3.4 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation without touch.

To operate Automation Panel 900 panels with a touch screen (Extended Desktop or Dual Display Clone), the serial interfaces COM C and COM D must be activated in BIOS (BIOS default setting = disabled).

4.3.5 Windows graphics driver settings

"Digital display" must be defined as output device in the graphics driver.

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.3.6 Windows touch screen driver settings

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.4 An Automation Panel 800 via SDL (onboard)

An Automation Panel 800 is connected to the integrated SDL interface (onboard) via an SDL cable. USB devices can only be connected directly to the extension keyboard (without a hub).

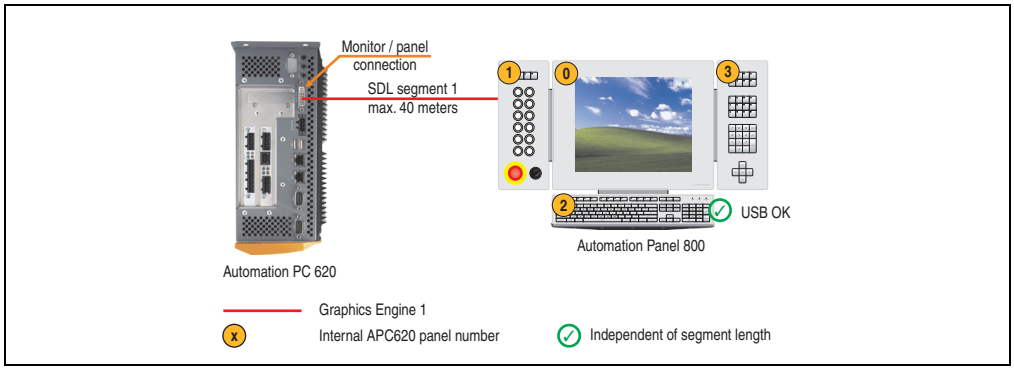


Figure 97: Configuration - An Automation Panel 800 via SDL (onboard)

4.4.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table.

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. XGA

Table 126: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

4.4.2 Cables

Select an SDL cable from the following table.

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0018-20	SDL w/o extender	1.8 m
5CASDL.0050-20	SDL w/o extender	5 m
5CASDL.0100-20	SDL w/o extender	10 m
5CASDL.0150-20	SDL w/o extender	15 m
5CASDL.0200-20	SDL w/o extender	20 m
5CASDL.0250-20	SDL w/o extender	25 m
5CASDL.0300-30	SDL w/ extender	30 m
5CASDL.0400-30	SDL w/ extender	40 m

Table 127: Cables for SDL configurations

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables	Resolution
Segment length [m]	XGA 1024 x 768
1.8	5CASDL.0018-20
5	5CASDL.0050-20
10	5CASDL.0100-20
15	5CASDL.0150-20
20	5CASDL.0200-20[1)]
25	5CASDL.0250-20[1)]
30	5CASDL.0300-30[2)]
40	5CASDL.0400-30[2)]

Table 128: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 129 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)"
2) See table 130 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)"

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	

Table 129: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	-
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	-
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	-
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	-
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	-

Table 130: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.4.3 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation.

4.4.4 Windows graphics driver settings

"Digital display" must be defined as output device in the graphics driver.

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.4.5 Windows touch screen driver settings

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.5 An AP900 and an AP800 via SDL (onboard)

An Automation Panel 900 and an Automation Panel 800 are connected to the integrated SDL interface (onboard) via SDL.

USB is supported up to a maximum distance (segment 1 + segment 2) of 30 m on the two displays. Starting at a distance of 30 m, USB is only available on the first display (front and back) up to a maximum of 40 m. USB devices can only be connected directly to the Automation Panel 900 or extension keyboard (without a hub).

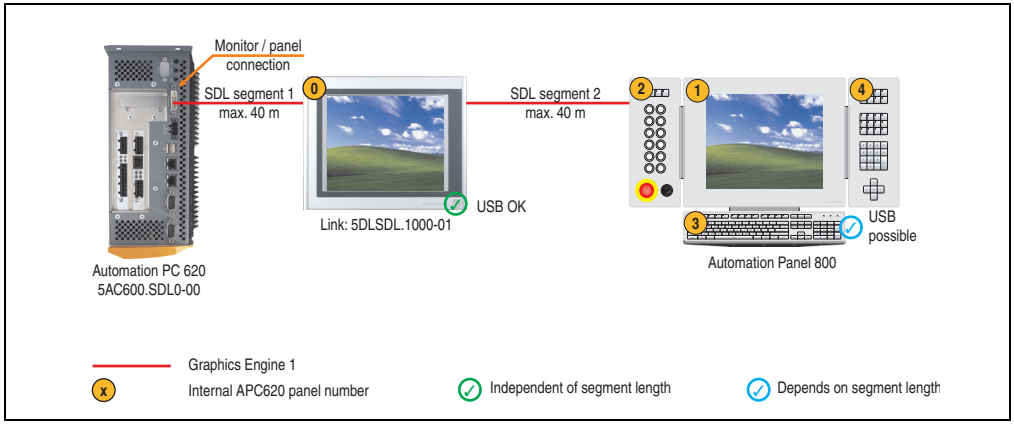


Figure 98: Configuration - An AP900 and an AP800 via SDL (onboard)

4.5.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table.

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA

Table 131: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

4.5.2 Cables

How to select an SDL cable for connecting the AP900 display to the AP900 display 4.3 "An Automation Panel 900 via SDL (onboard)".

How to select an SDL cable for connecting the AP800 display to the AP900 display4.4 "An Automation Panel 800 via SDL (onboard)".

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution XGA 1024 x 768
1.8	5CASDL.0018-20
5	5CASDL.0050-20
10	5CASDL.0100-20
15	5CASDL.0150-20
20	5CASDL.0200-20[1)]
25	5CASDL.0250-20[1)]
30	5CASDL.0300-30[2)]
40	5CASDL.0400-30[2)]

Table 132: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 133 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)"

2) See table 134 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)"

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	

Table 133: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	-
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	-
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	-
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	-
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	-

Table 134: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.5.3 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation.

4.5.4 Windows graphics driver settings

"Digital display" must be defined as output device in the graphics driver.

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.5.5 Windows touch screen driver settings

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.6 Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (onboard)

An Automation Panel 900 is connected to the integrated SDL interface (onboard) via an SDL cable. Up to three other Automation Panels of the same type are connected to this Automation Panel and operated via SDL. All four panels show the same content (Display Clone).

USB is supported up to a maximum distance (SDL segment 1 + SDL segment 2) of 30 m on the first two panels (front and back side). From a distance of 30 m and longer, USB is only available for the first panel (front and back side). USB devices can only be connected directly to the Automation Panel (without a hub).

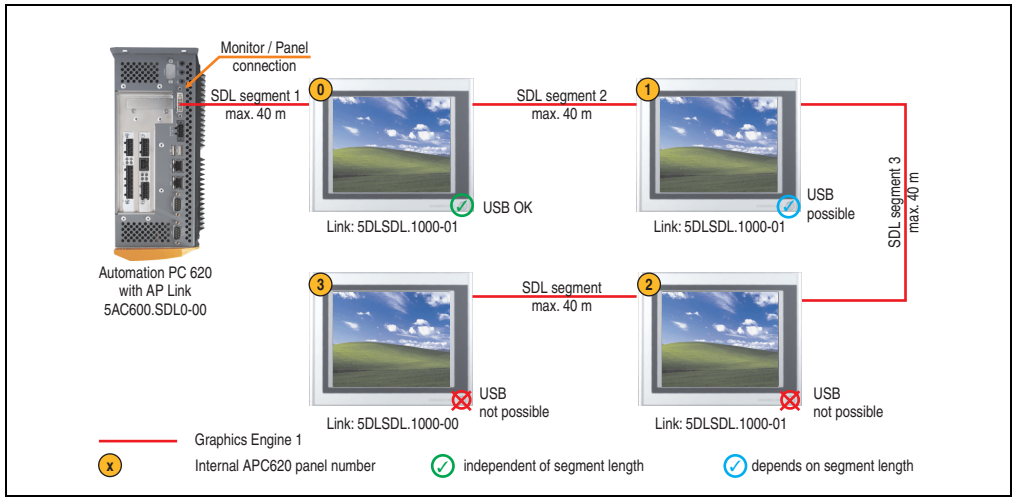


Figure 99: Configuration - Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (onboard)

4.6.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table (e.g. for connecting a non-B&R Automation Panel 900 device).

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA

Table 135: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	✓	-	✓	-	-	✓	✓	Max. UXGA

Table 135: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board (cont.)

4.6.2 Link modules

Model number	Description	Note
5DLSDL.1000-00	**Automation Panel Link SDL receiver** Connection for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900
5DLSDL.1000-01	**Automation Panel Link SDL transceiver** Connections for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900 3 pieces required

Table 136: Link modules for the configuration: 4 Automation Panel 900 via SDL on 1 line

4.6.3 Cables

Select an Automation Panel 900 cable from the following table.

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0018-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0050-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0100-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0150-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0200-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0200-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0250-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0250-30	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0300-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m

Table 137: Cables for SDL configurations

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0400-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	40 m
5CASDL.0400-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	40 m

Table 137: Cables for SDL configurations

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution				
	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03
5	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03
10	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00[1)] 5CASDL.0100-01[1)] 5CASDL.0100-03[1)]
15	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00[1)] 5CASDL.0150-01[1)] 5CASDL.0150-03[1)]	- - -
20	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	--
25	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	- -	- -
30	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	-
40	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	-

Table 138: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 139 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 228

2) See table 140 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 229

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	

Table 139: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. B0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. B0	

Table 139: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. D0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. D0	
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	Rev. B3	
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	

Table 140: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.6.4 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation.

4.6.5 Windows graphics driver settings

"Display Clone" must be defined as output device in the graphics driver, with "Digital Display" as primary device.

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.6.6 Windows touch screen driver settings

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.7 One Automation Panel 900 unit via SDL (AP Link)

An Automation Panel 900 unit is connected to the optional SDL transmitter (AP Link) via an SDL cable. USB devices can only be connected directly to the Automation Panel (without a hub).

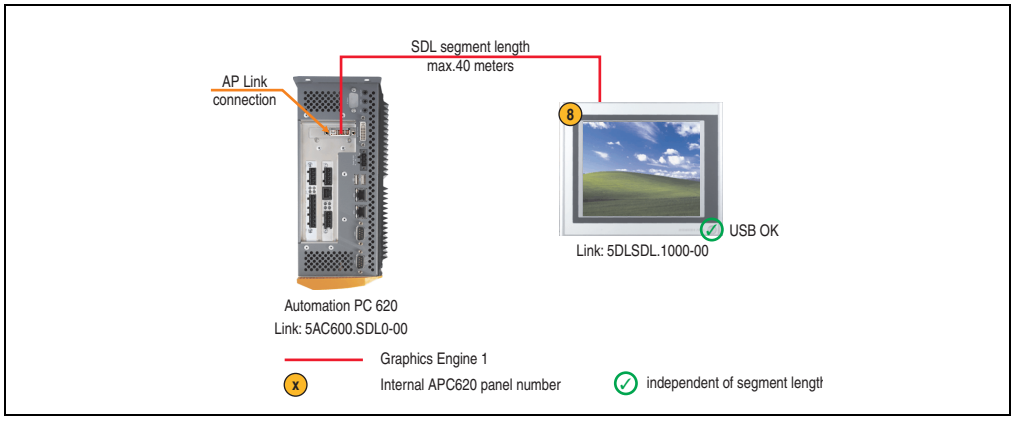


Figure 100: Configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via SDL (AP Link)

4.7.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table (e.g. for connecting a non-B&R Automation Panel 900 device).

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA

Table 141: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

4.7.2 Link modules

Model number	Description	Note
5DLSDL.1000-00	**Automation Panel Link SDL receiver** Connection for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900
5AC600.SDL0-00	**APC620 Smart Display Link transmitter** For connecting Automation Panels to an APC620 via SDL.	For Automation PC 620

Table 142: Link modules for the configuration: 1 Automation Panel 900 via SDL (optional)

4.7.3 Cables

Select a cable from the following table.

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0018-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0050-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0100-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0150-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0200-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0200-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0250-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0250-30	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0300-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0400-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	40 m
5CASDL.0400-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	40 m

Table 143: Cables for SDL configurations

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution				
	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03
5	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03
10	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00[1)] 5CASDL.0100-01[1)] 5CASDL.0100-03[1)]
15	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-0[1)] 5CASDL.0150-01[1)] 5CASDL.0150-03[1)]	- - -
20	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	- -
25	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	- -	- -
30	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	- -
40	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	- -

Table 144: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 145 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 233

2) See table 146 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 234

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. B0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. B0	

Table 145: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. D0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. D0	
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	Rev. B3	
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	

Table 146: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.7.4 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation without touch.

To operate Automation Panel 900 panels with a touch screen (Extended Desktop or Dual Display Clone), the serial interfaces COM C and COM D must be activated in BIOS (BIOS default setting = disabled).

4.7.5 Windows graphics driver settings

"Notebook" must be defined as output device in the graphics driver.

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.7.6 Windows touch screen driver settings

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.8 Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link)

An Automation Panel 900 unit is connected to the optional SDL transmitter (AP Link) via an SDL cable. Three other Automation Panels of the same type are connected to this Automation Panel and operated via SDL. All four panels show the same content (Display Clone).

USB is supported up to a maximum distance (SDL segment 1 + SDL segment 2) of 30 m on the first two panels (front and back side). From a distance of 30 m and longer, USB is only available for the first panel (front and back side). USB devices can only be connected directly to the Automation Panel (without a hub).

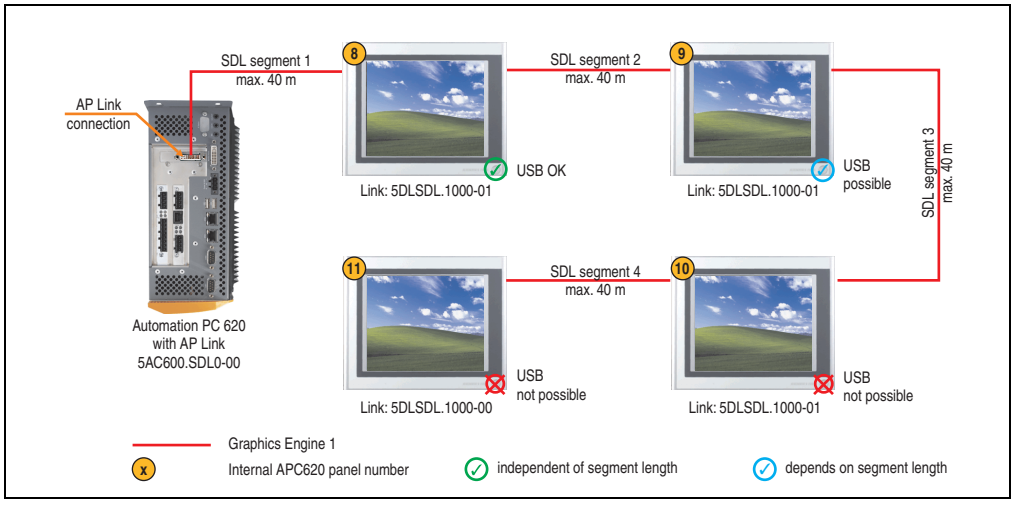


Figure 101: Configuration - 4 Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link)

4.8.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table (e.g. for connecting a non-B&R Automation Panel 900 device).

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA

Table 147: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA

Table 147: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board (cont.)

4.8.2 Link modules

Model number	Description	Note
5DLSDL.1000-00	**Automation Panel Link SDL receiver** Connection for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900
5DLSDL.1000-01	**Automation Panel Link SDL transceiver** Connections for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900 3 pieces required
5AC600.SDL0-00	**APC620 Smart Display Link transmitter** For connecting Automation Panels to an APC620 via SDL.	For Automation PC 620

Table 148: Link modules for configuration: 4 Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (optional) on 1 line

4.8.3 Cables

Selection of 4 cables from the following tables.

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0018-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0050-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0100-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0150-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0200-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0200-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0250-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0250-30	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0300-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m

Table 149: Cables for SDL configurations

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0300-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0400-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	40 m
5CASDL.0400-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	40 m

Table 149: Cables for SDL configurations

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables	Resolution				
Segment length [m]	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03
5	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03
10	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00[1)] 5CASDL.0100-01[1)] 5CASDL.0100-03[1)]
15	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00[1)] 5CASDL.0150-01[1)] 5CASDL.0150-03[1)]	- - -
20	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	- -
25	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	- -	- -
30	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	-
40	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	-

Table 150: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 151 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 238

2) See table 152 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 238

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. B0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. B0	

Table 151: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. D0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. D0	
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	Rev. B3	
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	

Table 152: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.8.4 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation.

4.8.5 Windows graphics driver settings

"Notebook" must be defined as output device in the graphics driver.

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.8.6 Windows touch screen driver settings

For more information on this, see chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.9 Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard)

A CRT monitor (max. UXGA) is connected to the integrated monitor/panel interface (onboard) via RGB. Four additional Automation Panel 900 units (max. UXGA) are connected to the optional SDL transmitter (AP Link). The Automation Panels must be the same type. The two lines display different content (Extended Desktop), but panels show the same content (Display Clone).

USB is supported up to a maximum distance (SDL segment 1 + SDL segment 2) of 30 m on the first two panels (front and back side). From a distance of 30 m and longer, USB is only available for the first panel. USB devices can only be connected directly to the Automation Panel (without hub).

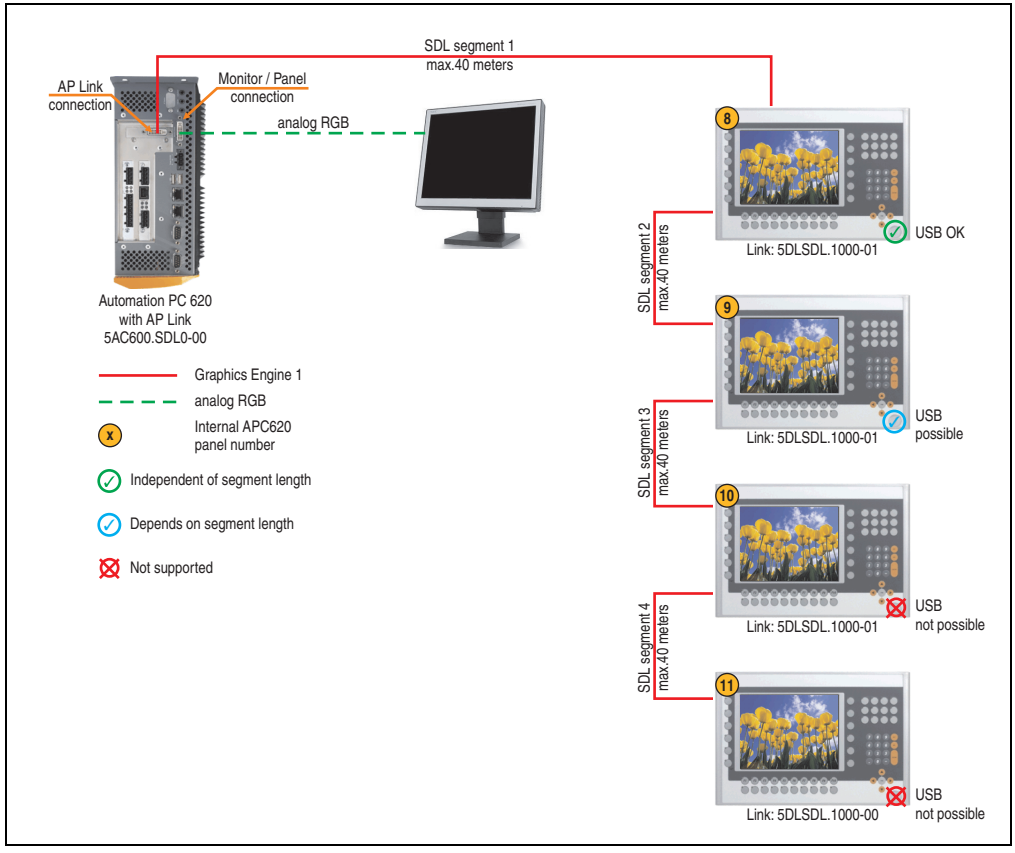


Figure 102: Configuration - Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) and CRT (onboard)

4.9.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table (e.g. for connecting a non-B&R Automation Panel 900 device).

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. UXGA

Table 153: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

4.9.2 Link modules

Model number	Description	Note
5DLSDL.1000-00	**Automation Panel Link SDL receiver** Connection for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900
5DLSDL.1000-01	**Automation Panel Link SDL transceiver** Connections for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900 3 pieces required
5AC600.SDL0-00	**APC620 Smart Display Link transmitter** For connecting Automation Panels to an APC620 via SDL.	For Automation PC 620 1 pieces required

Table 154: Link modules for configuration: 4 Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard)

4.9.3 Cables

Selection of 8 cables from the following tables.

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0018-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0018-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	1.8 m
5CASDL.0050-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	5 m
5CASDL.0050-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	5 m

Table 155: Cables for SDL configurations

Model number	Type	Length
5CASDL.0100-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0100-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	10 m
5CASDL.0150-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-01	SDL cable with 45° plug for fixed type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0150-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	15 m
5CASDL.0200-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0200-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	20 m
5CASDL.0250-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0250-30	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	25 m
5CASDL.0300-00	SDL cable for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-03	SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0300-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	30 m
5CASDL.0400-10	SDL cable with extender for a fixed type of layout	40 m
5CASDL.0400-13	SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout	40 m

Table 155: Cables for SDL configurations

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution				
	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-03
5	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-03
10	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0100-00[1)] 5CASDL.0100-01[1)] 5CASDL.0100-03[1)]
15	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0150-00[1)] 5CASDL.0150-01[1)] 5CASDL.0150-03[1)]	- - -
20	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	- -
25	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	- -	- -
30	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-00[1)] 5CASDL.0300-03[1)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	5CASDL.0300-10[2)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)]	- -
40	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)]	- -

Table 156: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 157 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 243

2) See table 158 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 244

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. B0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. B0	

Table 157: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
SDLR FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL receiver and transceiver	v 01.04	
SDLT FPGA	Firmware on the AP Link SDL transmitter	v 00.02	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5DLSDL.1000-00	AP Link SDL receiver	Rev. D0	
5DLSDL.1000-01	AP Link SDL transceiver	Rev. D0	
5AC600.SDL0-00	AP Link SDL transmitter	Rev. B3	
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	

Table 158: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.9.4 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation without touch.

To operate Automation Panel 900 panels with a touch screen (Extended Desktop or Dual Display Clone), the serial interfaces COM C and COM D must be activated in BIOS (BIOS default setting = disabled).

4.9.5 Windows graphics driver settings

See chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

If all connected Automation Panel 900 panels (line 1 + line 2) should display the same content, then "Dual Display Clone" mode must be set in the graphics driver (see the Chapter 4 "Software", Section 6.2.3 "Graphics settings for Dual Display Clone" on page 354).

4.9.6 Windows touch screen driver settings

See chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.10 Three AP900 units and one AP800 via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard)

A CRT monitor (max. UXGA) is connected to the integrated monitor/panel interface (onboard). Three additional Automation Panel 900 units (max. UXGA) are connected to the optional SDL transmitter. The Automation Panels must be the same type. The two lines display different content (Extended Desktop), but panels show the same content (Display Clone).

USB is supported up to a maximum distance (segment 1 + segment 2) of 30 m on the first two displays. Starting at a distance of 30 m, USB is only available on the first display (front and back) up to a maximum of 40 m. USB devices can only be connected directly to Automation Panel 900 devices (without a hub).

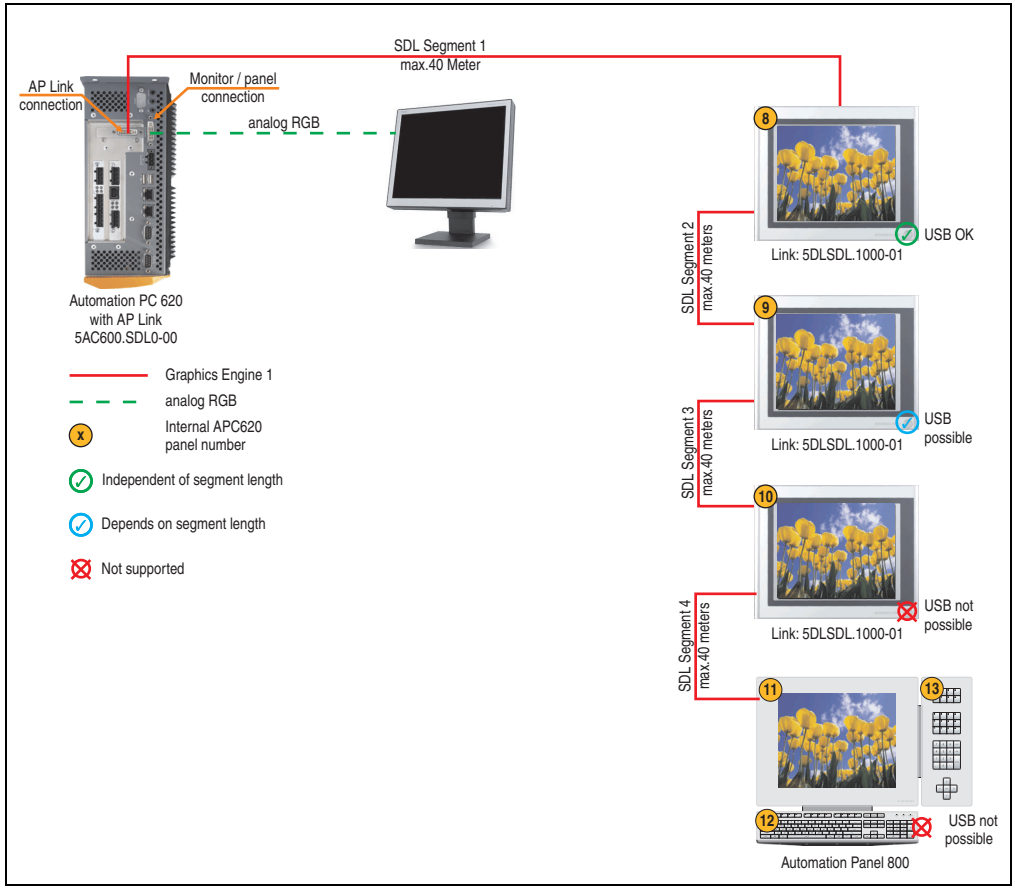


Figure 103: Configuration - Three AP900 units and one AP800 via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard)

4.10.1 Basic system requirements

The following table shows the possible combinations for the APC620 system unit with CPU board to implement the configuration shown in the figure above. If the maximum resolution is limited when making the combination then it is also shown in this table.

If an Automation Panel 800 and an Automation Panel 900 should be connected on the same line, the devices must have the same display type.

CPU board	with system unit							Limitation Resolution
	5PC600.SX01 -00	5PC600.SX02 -00	5PC600.SX02 -01	5PC600.SF03 -00	5PC600.SX05 -00	5PC600.SX05 -01	5PC600.SE00 -00 / -02	
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. XGA
5PC600.X945-00	-	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	Max. XGA

Table 159: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board

4.10.2 Link modules

Model number	Description	Note
5DLSDL.1000-00	**Automation Panel Link SDL receiver** Connection for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900
5DLSDL.1000-01	**Automation Panel Link SDL transceiver** Connections for SDL in, transfer of display data, touch screen, USB 1.1, matrix keys, and service data, 24 VDC (screw clamp 0TB103.9 or cage clamp 0TB103.91 sold separately).	For Automation Panel 900 2 pieces required
5AC600.SDL0-00	**APC620 Smart Display Link transmitter** For connecting Automation Panels to an APC620 via SDL.	For Automation PC 620 1 pieces required

Table 160: Link modules for configuration: 3 AP900 units and one AP800 via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard)

4.10.3 Cables

How to select an SDL cable for connecting the AP900 display to the AP900 display 4.3 "An Automation Panel 900 via SDL (onboard)".

How to select an SDL cable for connecting the AP800 display to the AP900 display4.4 "An Automation Panel 800 via SDL (onboard)".

Cable lengths and resolutions for SDL transfer

The following table shows the relationship between segment lengths and the maximum resolution according to the SDL cable used:

Cables Segment length [m]	Resolution				
	VGA 640 x 480	SVGA 800 x 600	XGA 1024 x 768	SXGA 1280 x 1024	UXGA 1600 x 1200
1.8	- - - -	- - - -	5CASDL.0018-00 5CASDL.0018-01 5CASDL.0018-20 5CASDL.0018-03	- - - -	- - - -
5	- - - -	- - - -	5CASDL.0050-00 5CASDL.0050-01 5CASDL.0050-02 5CASDL.0050-03	- - - -	- - - -
10	- - - -	- - - -	5CASDL.0100-00 5CASDL.0100-01 5CASDL.0100-02 5CASDL.0100-03	- - - -	- - - -
15	- - - -	- - - -	5CASDL.0150-00 5CASDL.0150-01 5CASDL.0150-02 5CASDL.0150-03	- - - -	- - - -
20	- - -	- - -	5CASDL.0200-00[1)] 5CASDL.0200-02[1)] 5CASDL.0200-03[1)]	- - -	- - -
25	- - -	- - -	5CASDL.0250-00[1)] 5CASDL.0250-02[1)] 5CASDL.0250-03[1)]	- - -	- - -
30	- - -	- - -	5CASDL.0300-10[1)] 5CASDL.0300-13[2)] 5CASDL.0300-30[2)]	- - -	- - -
40	- -	- -	5CASDL.0400-10[2)] 5CASDL.0400-13[2)] 5CASDL.0400-30[2)]	- -	- -

Table 161: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables

1) See table 162 "Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 247

2) See table 163 "Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)" on page 248

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 1) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	

Table 162: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

The cable types and resolutions shown with a footnote 2) in the previous table can only be implemented starting with the following firmware and hardware versions:

Firmware	Name	Version	Note
MTCX FPGA	Firmware on the APC620	V 01.15	The version is read from BIOS - see the BIOS description. Supported starting with the APC620 / PPC 700 Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) **V01.10**, available in the download area of the B&R homepage.
MTCX PX32	Firmware on the APC620	v 01.55	
Hardware	**Name**	**Revision**	**Note**
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	Rev. E0	-
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. D0	-
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	Rev. E0	-
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. A0	-
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	Rev. C0	-
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	Rev. C0	-

Table 163: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer)

4.10.4 BIOS settings

No special BIOS settings are necessary for operation without touch.

To operate Automation Panel 900 panels with a touch screen (Extended Desktop or Dual Display Clone), the serial interfaces COM C and COM D must be activated in BIOS (BIOS default setting = disabled).

4.10.5 Windows graphics driver settings

See chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

If all connected Automation Panel 900 panels and Automation Panel 800 panels (line 1 + line 2) should display the same content, then "Dual Display Clone" mode must be set in the graphics driver (see chapter 4 "Software", section 6.2.3 "Graphics settings for Dual Display Clone" on page 354).

4.10.6 Windows touch screen driver settings

See chapter 4 "Software", section 6 "Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional" on page 348.

4.11 Internal numbering of extension units in AP800 devices

An extension unit for an AP800 device is numbered like another device. The numbering of the extension units starts from the display unit and goes in the counter-clockwise direction; all extension unit slots that are not used are left out.
The following graphic shows numbering examples.

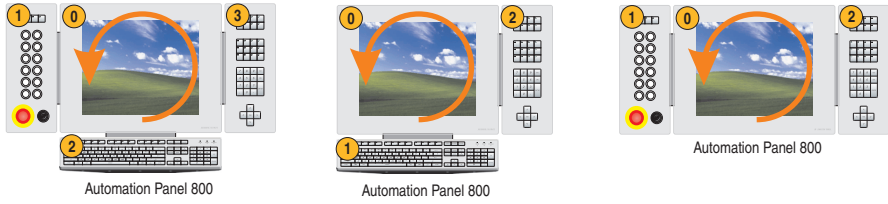


Figure 104: Examples - internal numbering of the extension units

5. Configuration of a SATA RAID array

For the configuration, it's necessary to use the "RAID Configuration Utility" in BIOS. After the POST, enter <Ctrl+S> or <F4> to open RAID BIOS.

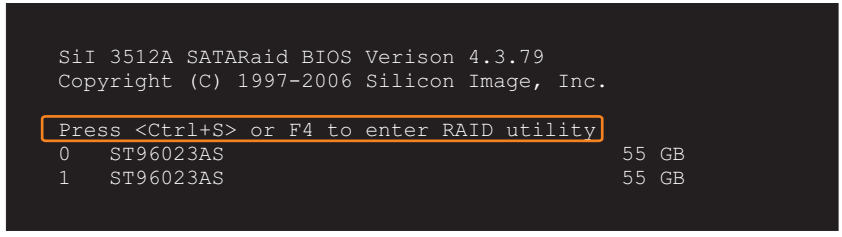


Figure 105: Open the RAID Configuration Utility

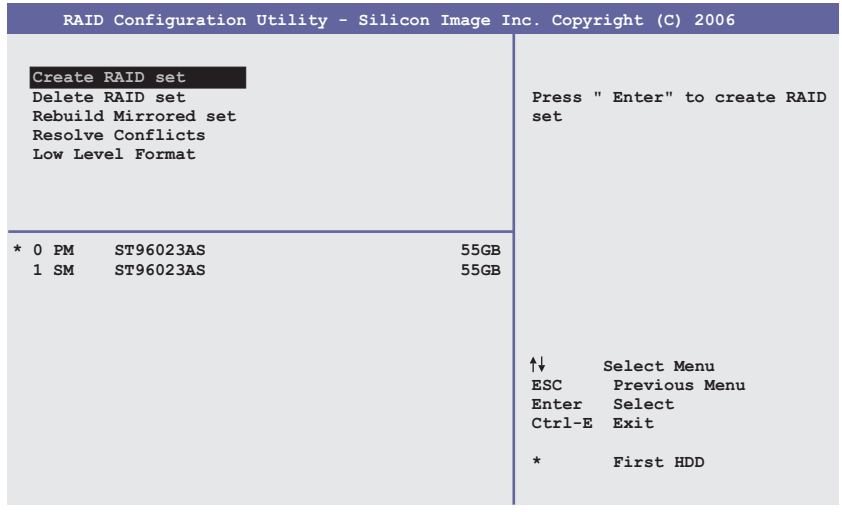


Figure 106: RAID Configuration Utility - Menu

The following keys can be used after entering the BIOS setup:

Key	Function
Cursor ↑	Go to previous item.
Cursor ↓	Go to the next item.
Enter	Select an item or open a submenu.

Table 164: BIOS-relevant keys in the RAID Configuration Utility

Key	Function
ESC	Go back to previous menu.
Ctrl+E	Exit setup and save the changed settings.

Table 164: BIOS-relevant keys in the RAID Configuration Utility

5.1 Create RAID Set

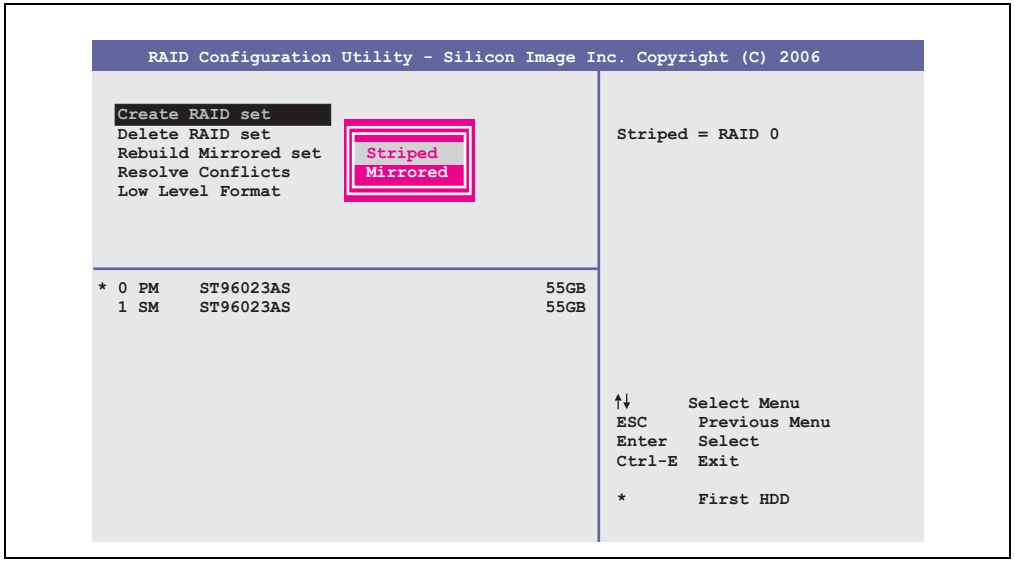


Figure 107: RAID Configuration Utility - Menu

Using the menu "Create RAID set", it's possible to recreate the RAID system as "Striped" = RAID0 or "Mirrored" = RAID1.

5.1.1 Create RAID Set - striped

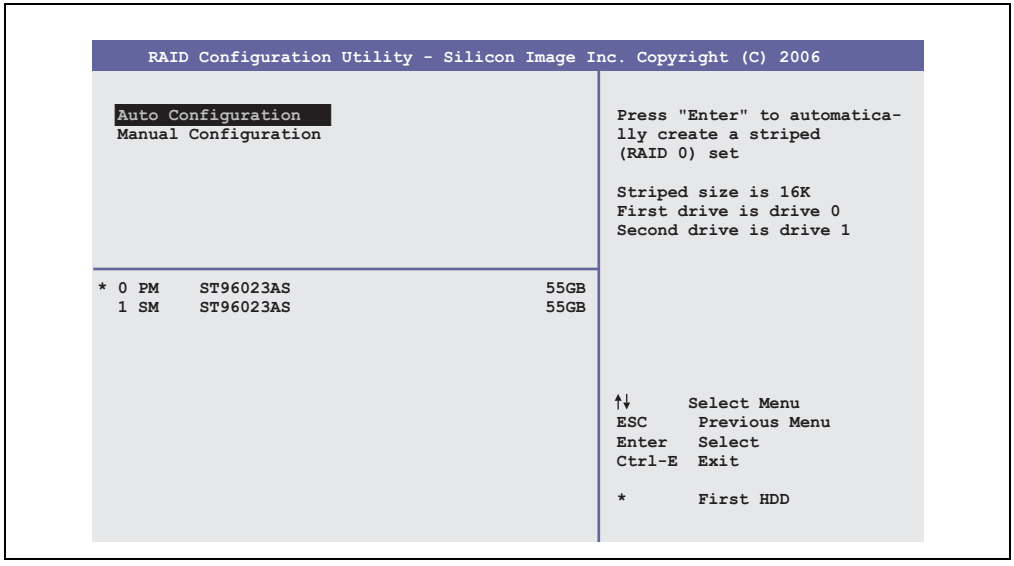


Figure 108: RAID Configuration Utility - Create RAID set - striped

Auto Configuration

Auto Configuration optimizes all settings.

Manual Configuration

It's possible to specify the first and second HDD as well as the "Chunk Size" (= block size, application-dependent).

5.1.2 Create RAID Set - Mirrored

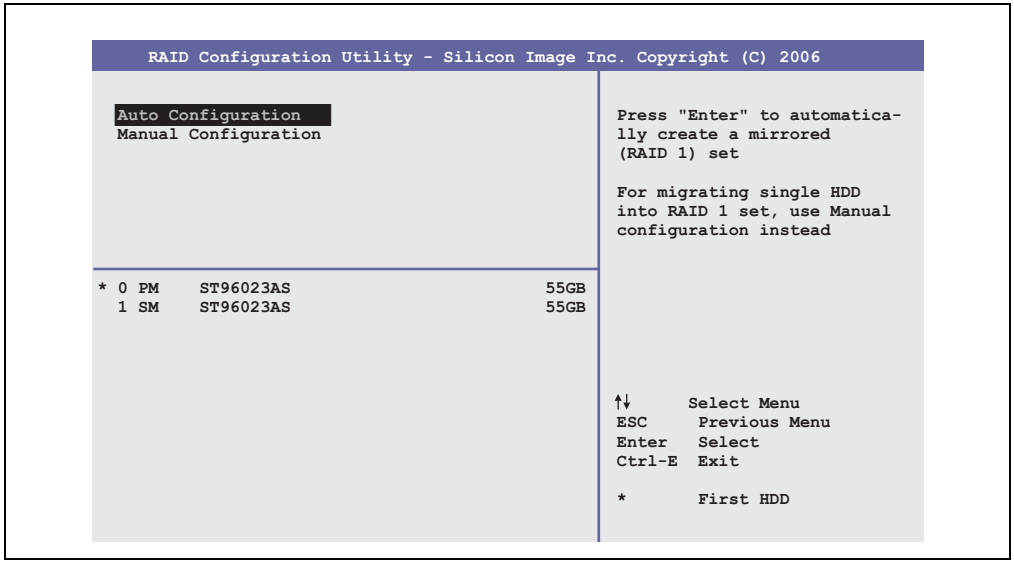


Figure 109: RAID Configuration Utility - Create RAID set - Mirrored

Auto Configuration

Auto Configuration optimizes all settings.

Manual Configuration

It's possible to specify the "Source" and "Target" HDD, and also to specify if a rebuild (mirror) should be done immediately (approx. 50 minutes).

5.2 Delete RAID set

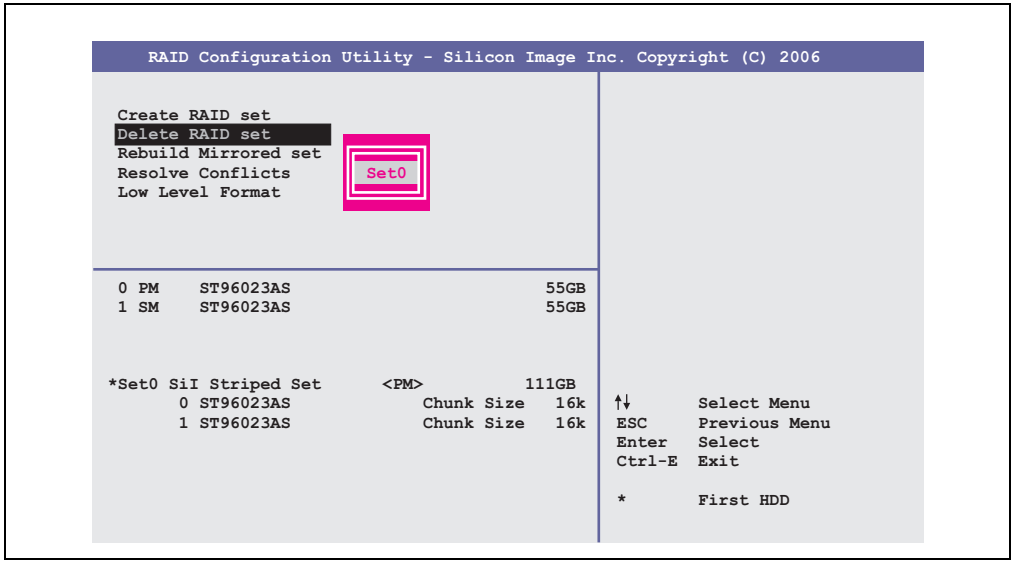


Figure 110: RAID Configuration Utility - Delete RAID set

Using the menu "Delete RAID set", it's possible to delete an existing RAID set.

5.3 Rebuild Mirrored Set

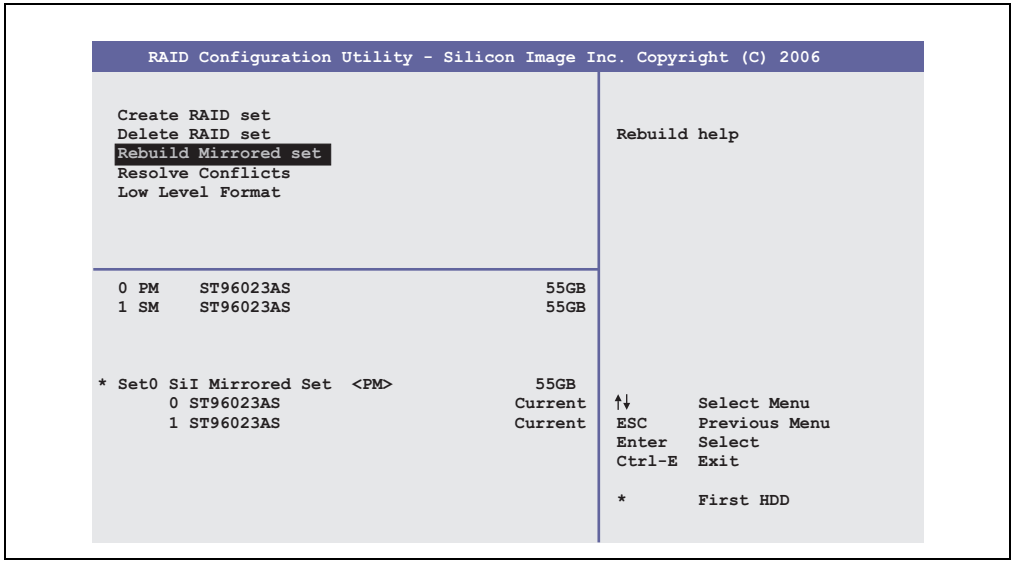


Figure 111: RAID Configuration Utility - Rebuild Mirrored set

The "Rebuild Mirrored set" menu can be used to restart a rebuild procedure in a RAID 1 network if an error occurs, after first interrupting the rebuild procedure or when exchanging a hard disk.

If "onlinerebuild" is selected, then the rebuild is executed during operation after the system is booted. E.g. an event pop-up is displayed by the installed SATA RAID configuration program: `SATARaid detected a new event` and the rebuild is started. The entire rebuild lasts approximately 50 minutes.

If "offlinerebuild" is selected, then a rebuild is performed immediately before starting the operating system (lasts approximately 30 minutes).

5.4 Resolve Conflicts

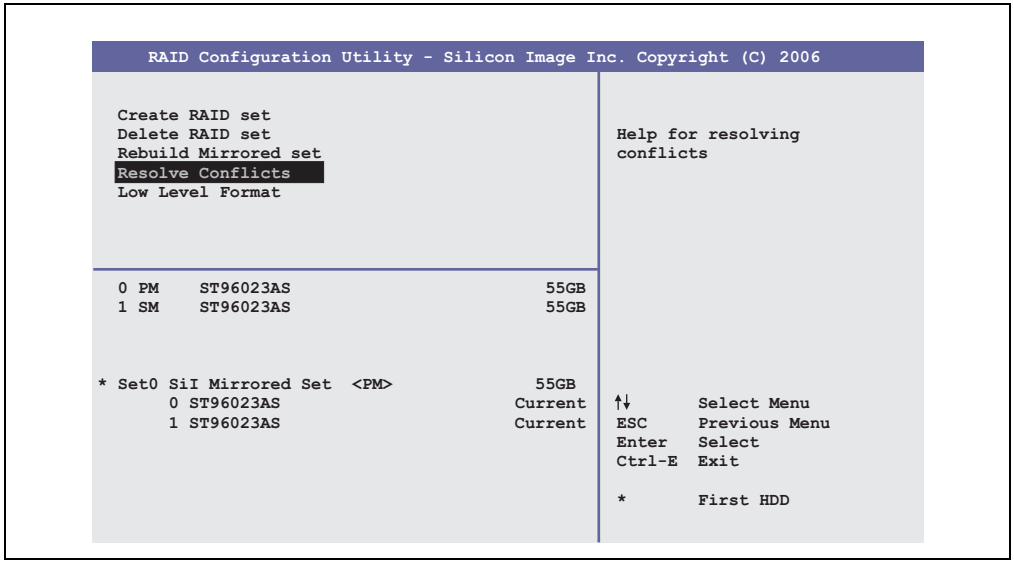


Figure 112: RAID Configuration Utility - Resolve Conflicts

Using the menu "Resolve Conflicts", it's possible to resolve RAID set conflicts. This function is only available if the status of the hard disk is "conflict".

5.5 Low Level Format

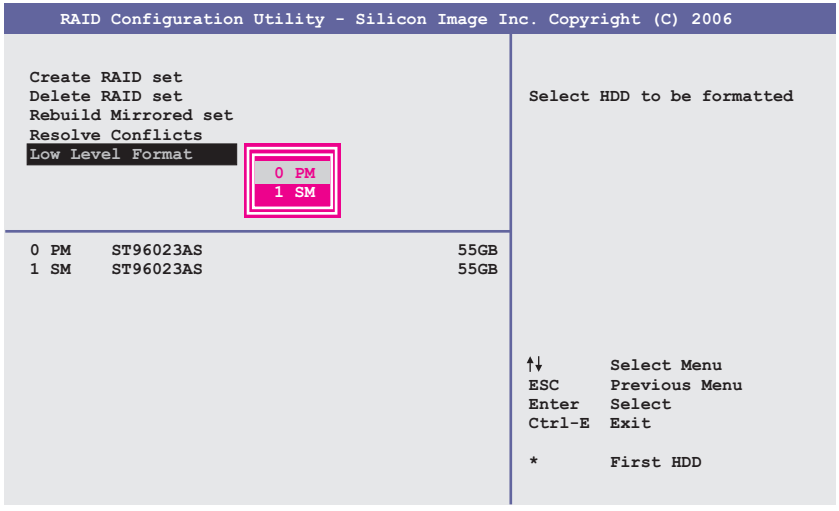


Figure 113: RAID Configuration Utility - Low Level Format

Using the menu "Low Level Format", it's possible to format individual hard disks. This can only be done if a RAID set is not configured. A low level format of a hard disk takes approx. 40 minutes.

6. Connection of USB peripheral devices

Warning!

Peripheral USB devices can be connected to the USB interfaces. Due to the vast number of USB devices available on the market, B&R cannot guarantee their performance. B&R does ensure the performance of all USB devices that they provide.

6.1 Local on the APC620

Many different peripheral USB devices can be connected to the 2 or 4 (APC embedded) USB interfaces. The maximum current load values and transfer speeds can be found in Sections "USB port" on page 111 and "USB connection (only APC620 embedded)" on page 112.

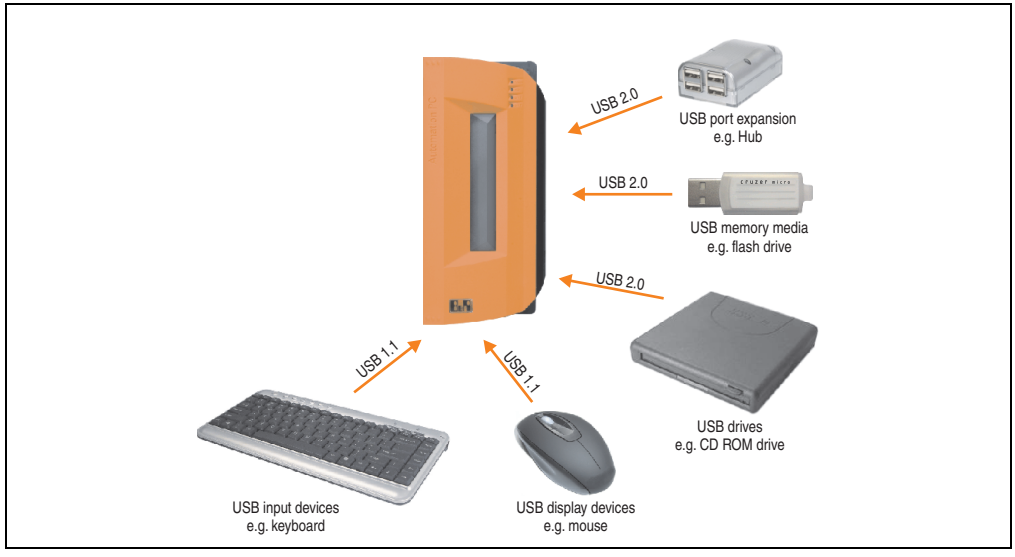


Figure 114: Local connection of USB peripheral devices on the APC620

6.2 Remote connection to Automation Panel 900 via DVI

Many different peripheral USB devices can be connected to the 2 or 3 USB interfaces on the Automation Panel 900. These can each handle a load of 500 mA. The maximum transfer rate is USB 2.0.

Information:

Only end devices (no hubs) can be connected to the Automation Panel 900.

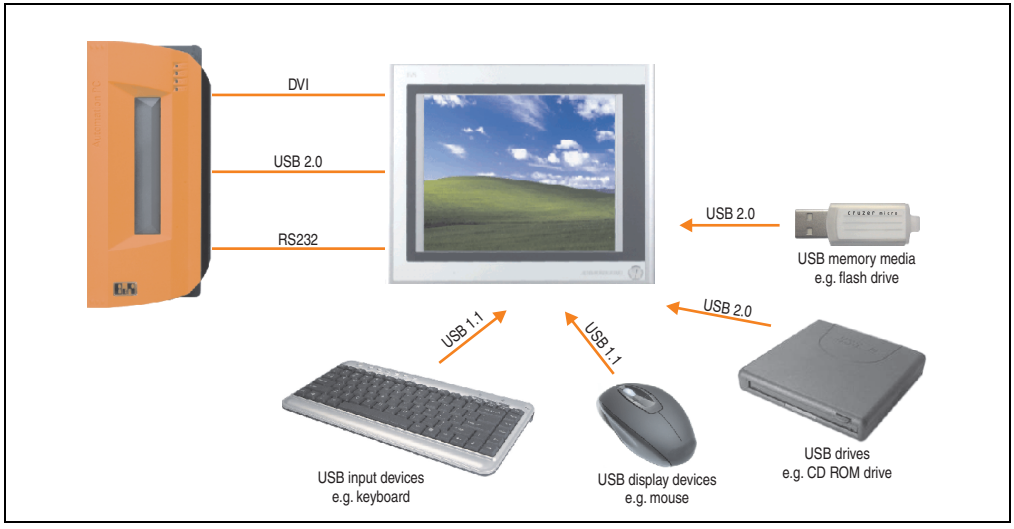


Figure 115: Remote connection of USB peripheral devices to the APC900 via DVI

6.3 Remote connection to Automation Panel 800/900 via SDL

Many different peripheral USB devices can be connected to the 2 or 3 USB interfaces on Automation Panel 900 and/or USB connections on the Automation Panel 800 devices. These can each handle a load of 500 mA. The maximum transfer rate is USB 1.1.

Information:

Only end devices (no hubs) can be connected to the Automation Panel 800/900.

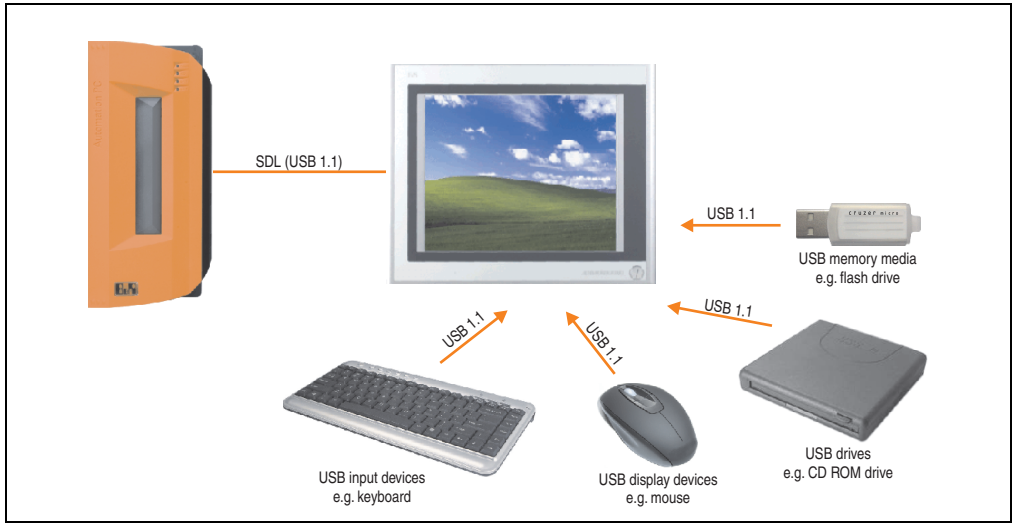


Figure 116: Remote connection of USB peripheral devices to the APC800/900 via SDL

7. Known problems / issues

The following issues for the APC620/PPC700 devices are known:

- No support for IDE-based slide-in drives. Only USB slide-in drives are supported.
- Graphics Engine 2 (GE2) interface not supported. Only GE1 and analog RGB are supported.
- In Windows XP, the Windows Standby mode is not supported in combination with the add-on hard disk (5AC600.HDDI-05 and 5AC600.HDDI-06) in IDE Slave Only mode. A blue screen or Windows crash can occur sporadically when returning from Windows Standby mode. Windows Standby mode will function if a CompactFlash card is connected to the IDE Master in addition the HDD on the slave slot. The same problem also occurs if the "Turn off hard disks" function is activated in the Power Options in the Control Panel (must be set to "Never").
- If the Intel GMA driver (Graphics Media Accelerator) is installed in the system (e.g. in Windows XP), then an analog RGB monitor will always be detected, regardless of whether one is connected or not.
- Using two different types of CompactFlash cards can cause problems in Automation PCs and Panel PCs. This can result in one of the two cards not being detected during system startup. This is caused by varying startup speeds. CompactFlash cards with older technology require significantly more time during system startup than CompactFlash cards with newer technology. This behavior occurs near the limits of the time frame provided for startup. The problem described above can occur because the startup time for the CompactFlash cards fluctuates due to the variance of the components being used. Depending on the CompactFlash cards being used, this error might never, sometimes or always occur.
- During daisy chain operation of multiple AP800/AP900 devices via SDL, it's possible that the touch controller status shows a red "X" in the Control Center applet for the touch screen driver when the touch controller is detected. The functionality of the touch system is not affected by this. This can be avoided by setting a panel locking time of 50 ms. The panel locking time can be configured with the B&R Key Editor.

Chapter 4 • Software

1. BIOS options

The BIOS settings available for the X945 CPU boards are described in the following sections.

Information:

- **The following diagrams and BIOS menu items including descriptions refer to BIOS version 1.10. It is therefore possible that these diagrams and BIOS descriptions do not correspond with the installed BIOS version.**
- **The setup defaults are the settings recommended by B&R. The setup defaults are dependant on the DIP switch configuration on the baseboard (see section 1.9 "BIOS default settings" on page 310).**

1.1 General information

BIOS stands for "Basic Input Output System". It is the most basic standardized communication between the user and the system (hardware). The BIOS system used in the Automation PC 620 systems is produced by American Megatrends Inc.

The BIOS Setup Utility lets you modify basic system configuration settings. These settings are stored in CMOS and in EEPROM (as a backup).

The CMOS data is buffered by a battery, and remains in the APC620 even when the power is turned off (no 24VDC supply).

1.2 BIOS setup and boot procedure

BIOS is immediately activated when switching on the power supply of the Automation PC 620 system or pressing the power button. The system checks if the setup data from the EEPROM is "OK". If the data is "OK", then it is transferred to the CMOS. If the data is "not OK", then the CMOS data is checked for validity. An error message is output if the CMOS data contains errors and the boot procedure can be continued by pressing the <F1> key. To prevent the error message from appearing at each restart, open the BIOS setup by pressing the <Del> key and re-save the settings.

BIOS reads the system configuration information in CMOS RAM, checks the system, and configures it using the Power On Self Test (POST).

When these "preliminaries" are finished, BIOS seeks an operating system in the data storage devices available (hard drive, floppy drive, etc.). BIOS launches the operating system and hands over control of system operations to it.

To enter BIOS Setup, the DEL key must be pressed as soon as the following message appears on the monitor (during POST):

"Press DEL to run SETUP"

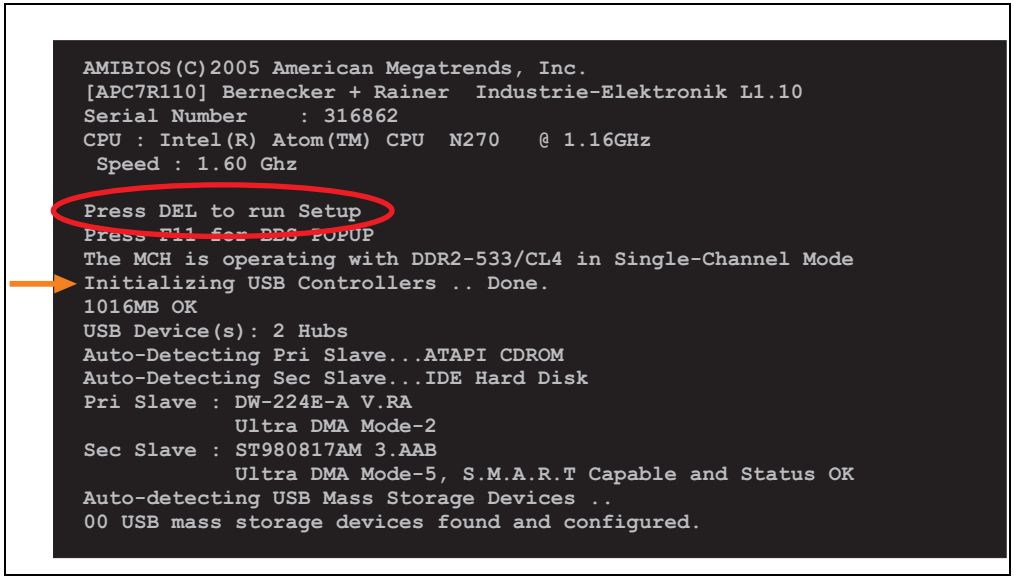


Figure 117: X945 - BIOS diagnostics screen

1.2.1 BIOS setup keys

The following keys are enabled during the POST:

Key	Function
ESC	The system RAM check can be skipped by pressing ESC.
Del	Enters the BIOS setup menu.
F12	Using the F12 key, you can boot from the network.
F11	Cues the boot menu. Lists all bootable devices that are connected to the system. With cursor ↑ and cursor ↓ and by pressing <ENTER>, select the device from which will be booted.
<Pause>	Pressing the <pause> key stops the POST. Press any other key to resume the POST.

Table 165: X945 bios-relevant keys at POST

The following keys can be used after entering the BIOS setup:

Key	Function
F1	General help
Cursor ↑	Moves to the previous item.
Cursor ↓	Go to the next item.
Cursor ←	Moves to the previous item.
Cursor →	Go to the next item.
+ -	Changes the setting of the selected function.
Enter	Changes to the selected menu.
PgUp↑	Change to the previous page.
PgDn ↓	Change to the previous page.
Pos 1	Jumps to the first BIOS menu item or object.
End	Jumps to the last BIOS menu item or object.
F2 / F3	The colors of the BIOS Setup are switched.
F7	Changes are reset.
F9	These settings are loaded for all BIOS configurations.
F10	Save and close.
Esc	Exits the submenu.

Table 166: X945 bios-relevant keys in the BIOS menu

The following sections explain the individual BIOS main menu items in detail.

BIOS setup menu item	Function	From page
Main	You can configure the ground configuration time and date in this menu.	266
Advanced	Advanced BIOS options such as cache areas, PnP, keyboard repeat rate, as well as settings specific to B&R integrated hardware, can be configured here.	267
Boot	The boot order can be set here.	301
Security	For setting up the system's security functions.	303
Power	Setup of various APM (Advanced Power Management) options.	307
Exit	To end the BIOS setup.	309

Table 167: X945 - Overview of BIOS menu items

1.3 Main

Immediately after the DEL button is pressed during startup, the main BIOS setup menu appears.

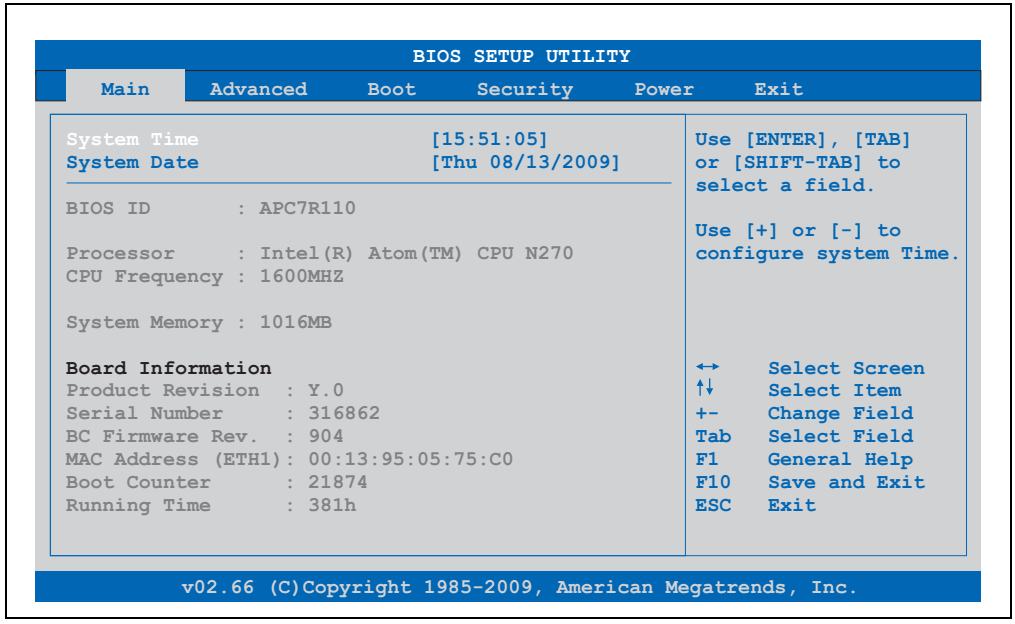


Figure 118: X945 BIOS Main Menu

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
System time	This is the current system time setting. The time is buffered by a battery (CMOS battery) after the system has been switched off.	Adjustment of the system time	Set the system time in the format Hour:Minute:Second (hh:mm:ss).
System date	This is the current system date setting. The time is buffered by a battery (CMOS battery) after the system has been switched off.	Changes to the system date	Set the system date in the format Month:Day:Year (mm:dd:yyyy).
BIOS ID	Displays the BIOS recognition.	None	-
Processor	Displays the processor type.	None	-
CPU frequency	Displays the processor frequency.	None	-
System memory	Displays the system memory size	None	-
Product revision	Displays the CPU board HW revision.	None	-
Serial number	Displays the CPU board serial number.	None	-
BC Firmware rev.	Displays the CPU board controller firmware revision.	None	-
MAC Address (ETH1)	Displays the MAC addresses assigned for the ETH1 interface.	None	-

Table 168: X945 Main Menu setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Boot counter	Displays the boot counter - each restart increments the counter by one (max. 16777215).	None	-
Running time	Displays the runtime in whole hours. (max. 65535).	None	-

Table 168: X945 Main Menu setting options (cont.)

1.4 Advanced

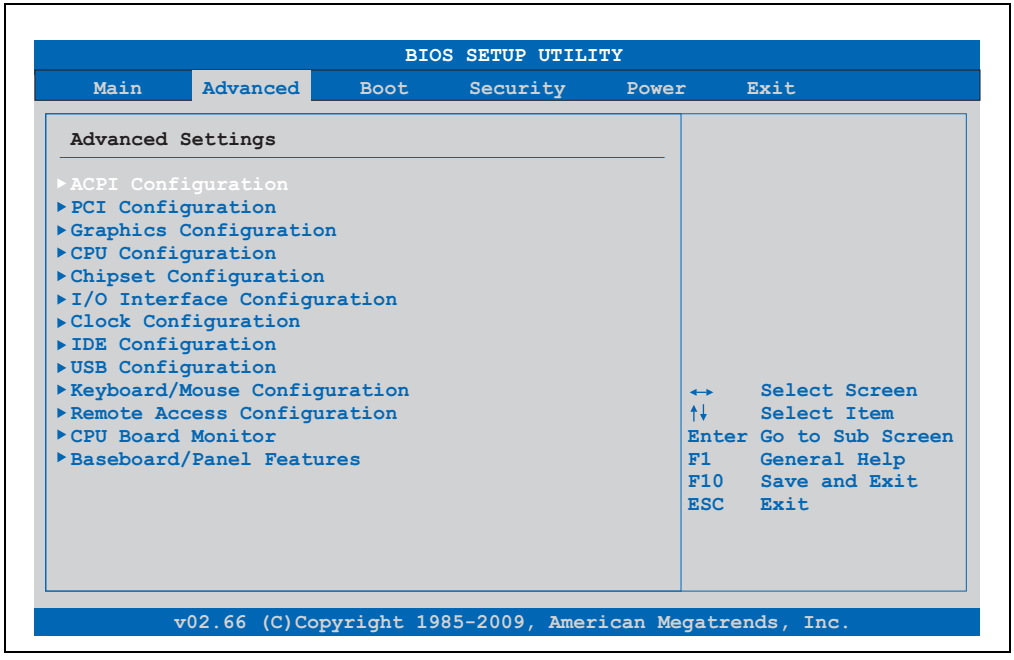


Figure 119: X945 Advanced Menu

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
ACPI Configuration	Configures APCI devices.	Enter	Opens submenu see "ACPI configuration" on page 269.
PCI Configuration	Configures PCI devices.	Enter	Opens submenu see "PCI configuration" on page 271.
Graphics configuration	Configures the graphic settings.	Enter	Opens submenu see "Graphics configuration" on page 275.
CPU configuration	Configures CPU settings.	Enter	Opens submenu see "CPU configuration" on page 277.
Chipset configuration	Configures the chipset functions.	Enter	Opens submenu see "Chipset configuration" on page 279.

Table 169: X945 Advanced Menu setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
I/O interface configuration	Configuration of the I/O devices.	Enter	Opens submenu see "I/O interface configuration" on page 280.
Clock configuration	Configures clock settings.	Enter	Opens submenu see "Clock configuration" on page 282.
IDE Configuration	Configures the IDE functions.	Enter	Opens submenu see "IDE Configuration" on page 283.
USB configuration	Configures USB settings.	Enter	Opens submenu see "USB configuration" on page 289.
Keyboard/mouse configuration	Configuration of the keyboard/mouse options.	Enter	Opens submenu see "Keyboard/mouse configuration" on page 291.
Remote access configuration	Configures the remote access settings.	Enter	Opens submenu see "Remote access configuration" on page 292.
CPU board monitor	Displays the current voltages and temperature of the processor in use.	Enter	Opens submenu see "CPU board monitor" on page 294.
Baseboard/panel features	Displays device specific information and setup of device specific values.	Enter	Opens submenu see "Baseboard/panel features" on page 295.

Table 169: X945 Advanced Menu setting options (cont.)

1.4.1 ACPI configuration

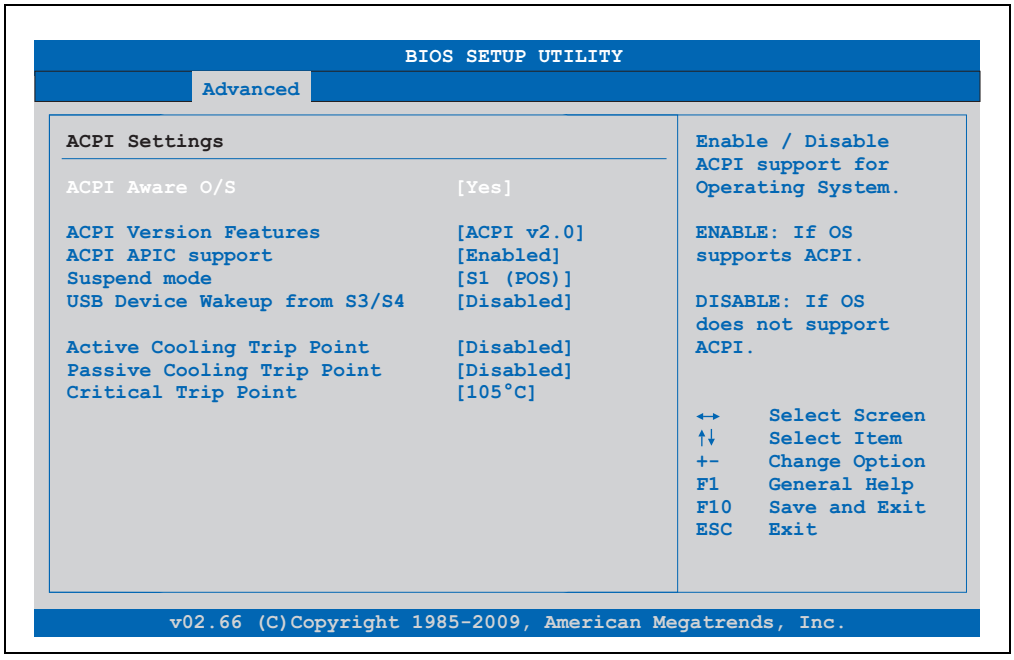


Figure 120: X945 Advanced ACPI configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
ACPI Aware O/S	This function determines if the operating system supports the ACPI function (Advanced Configuration and Power Interface).	Yes	The operating system supports ACPI.
		No	The operating system does not support ACPI.
ACPI Version Features	Option for setting the power option specifications to be supported. The ACPI functions must be supported by the drivers and operating systems being used.	ACPI v1.0	ACPI functions in accordance with v1.0
		ACPI v2.0	ACPI functions in accordance with v2.0
		ACPI v3.0	ACPI functions in accordance with v3.0
ACPI APIC support	This option controls the support of the advanced programmable interrupt controller in the processor.	Enabled	Enables this function.
		Disabled	Disables the function
Suspend mode	Selects the ACPI status to be used when Suspend Mode is enabled.	S1 (POS)	Sets S1 as Suspend Mode. Only a few functions are disabled and are available again at the touch of a button
		S3 (STR)	Sets S3 as Suspend Mode. The current state of the operating system is written to the RAM, which is then supplied solely with power.
USB Device Wakeup from S3/S4	This options makes it possible for activity on a connected USB device to wake the system up from the S3/S4 standby mode.	Enabled	Enables this function.
		Disabled	Disables the function

Table 170: X945 Advanced ACPI configuration setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Active cooling trip point	With this function, an optional CPU fan is activated by the operating system when the CPU reaches the set temperature. Temperature reached.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		50°C, 60°C, 70°C, 80°C, 90°C	Temperature setting for the active cooling trip point. Can be set in 10 degree increments.
Passive cooling trip point	With this function, a temperature can be set at which the CPU automatically reduces its speed.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		50°C, 60°C, 70°C, 80°C, 90°C	Temperature setting for the passive cooling trip point. Can be set in 10 degree increments.
Critical trip point	With this function, a temperature can be set at which the operating system automatically shuts the system down.	80°C, 85°C, 90°C, 95°C, 100°C, 105°C, 110°C	Temperature setting for the critical trip point. Can be set in 5 degree increments.

Table 170: X945 Advanced ACPI configuration setting options (cont.)

1.4.2 PCI configuration

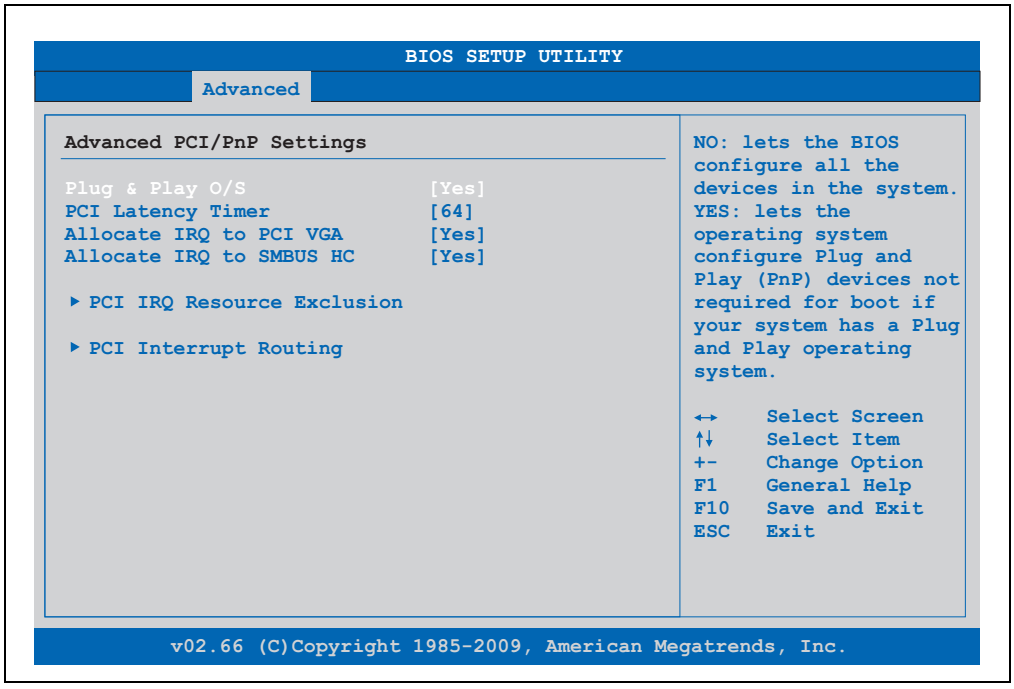


Figure 121: X945 Advanced PCI Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Plug & Play O/S	BIOS is informed if Plug & Play is capable on the operating system.	Yes	The operating system handles the distribution of resources.
		No	The operating system handles the distribution of resources.
PCI latency timer	This option controls how long (in PCI ticks) one PCI bus card can continue to use the master after another PCI card has requested access.	32, 64, 96, 128, 160, 192, 224, 248	Manually sets the value in PCI ticks.
Allocate IRQ to PCI VGA	This function is used to determine if an interrupt is assigned to the PCI VGA.	Yes	Automatic assignment of an interrupt.
		No	No assignment of an interrupt.
Allocate IRQ to SMBUS HC	Use this function to set whether or not the SM (System Management) bus controller is assigned a PCI interrupt.	Yes	Automatic assignment of a PCI interrupt.
		No	No assignment of an interrupt.
PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion	Configures the PCI IRQ resource settings for ISA Legacy devices.	Enter	Opens submenu See "PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion" on page 272
PCI Interrupt Routing	Configures the PCI Interrupt Routing	Enter	Opens submenu See "PCI Interrupt Routing" on page 273

Table 171: X945 Advanced PCI configuration setting options

PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion

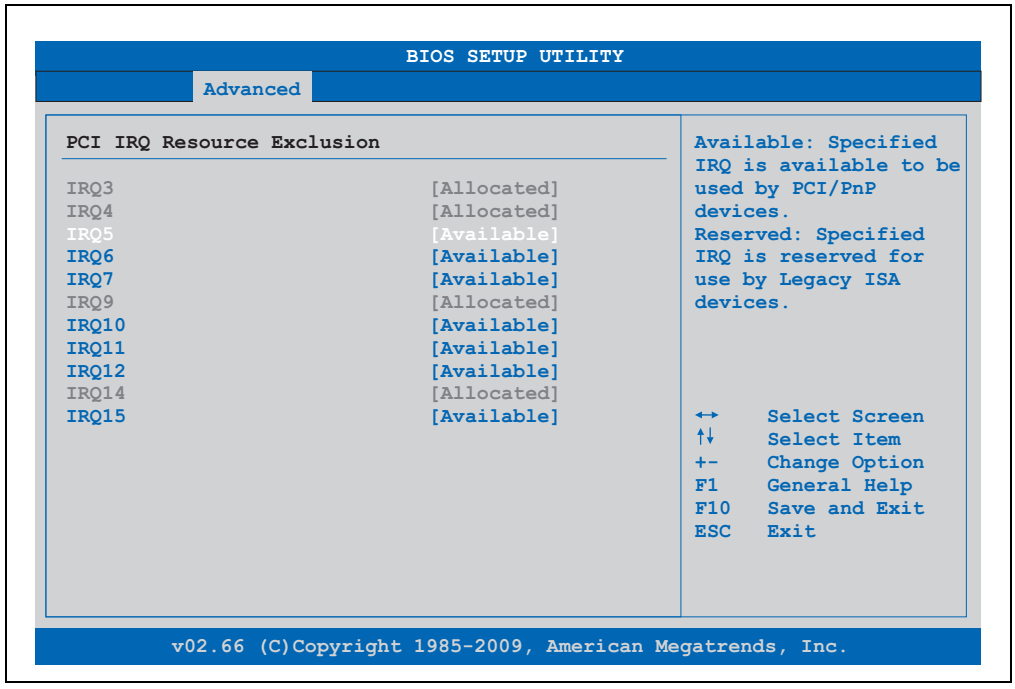


Figure 122: X945 Advanced PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
IRQx	IRQ interrupt routing for Legacy ISA devices.	Allocated	Allocated by the system - cannot be used.
		Available	Available - can be used.
		Reserved	Reserved - cannot be used.

Table 172: X945 Advanced PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion setting options

PCI Interrupt Routing

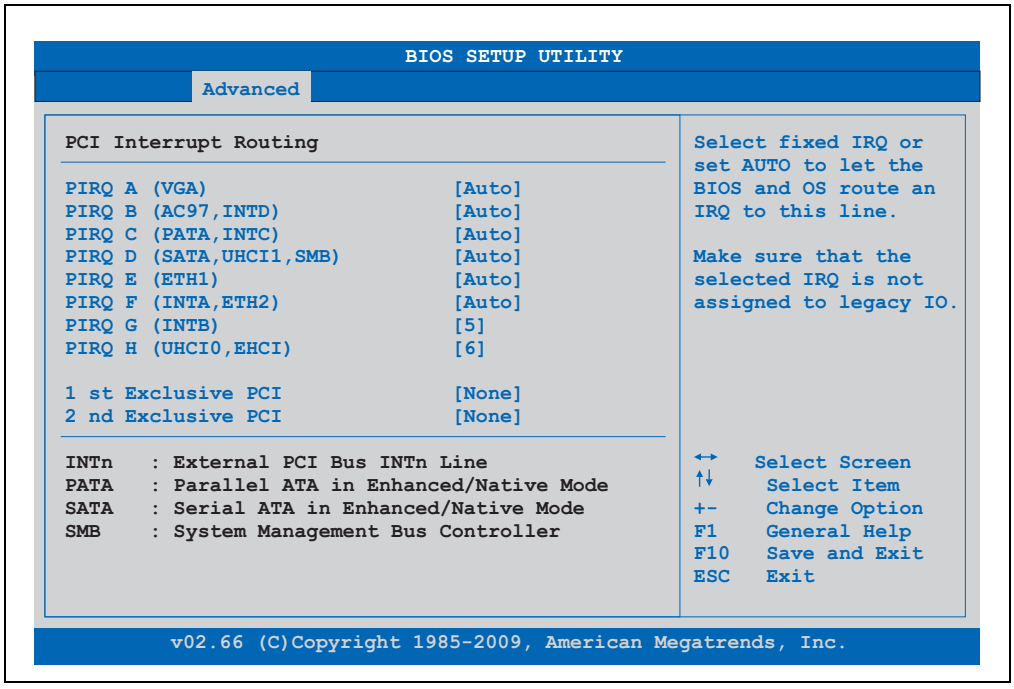


Figure 123: X945 Advanced PCI Interrupt Routing

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
PIRQ A (VGA)	Option for setting the PIRQ A.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment
PIRQ B (AC97, INTD)	Option for setting the PIRQ B.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment
PIRQ C (PATA,INTC)	Option for setting the PIRQ C.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment
PIRQ D (SATA,UHCI1,SMB)	Option for setting the PIRQ D.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment
PIRQ E (ETH1)	Option for setting the PIRQ E.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment

Table 173: X945 Advanced PCI Interrupt Routing setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
PIRQ F (INTA, ETH2)	Option for setting the PIRQ F.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment
PIRQ G (INTB)	Option for setting the PIRQ G.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment
PIRQ H (UHCI0, EHCI)	Option for setting the PIRQ H.	Auto	Automatic assignment by the BIOS and operating system.
		5,6,7,9,10,11,12	Manual assignment
1st Exclusive PCI	With this option you can determine if the IRQ assigned to the PIRQ x is handled exclusively (no IRQ sharing). **Information:** **Is only displayed if a PIRQ is manually set (e.g. 5).**	None	No interrupt is assigned.
		x	Assigns the PIRQ as 1st exclusive PCI IRQ.
2nd Exclusive PCI	With this option you can determine if the IRQ assigned to the PIRQ x is handled exclusively (no IRQ sharing). **Information:** **Only displayed when two PIRQs are set manually.**	None	No interrupt is assigned.
		x	Assigns the PIRQ as 2nd exclusive PCI IRQ.
3rd Exclusive PCI	With this option you can determine if the IRQ assigned to the PIRQ x is handled exclusively (no IRQ sharing). **Information:** **Only displayed in connection with an APC620e and if three PIRQs are set manually.**	None	No interrupt is assigned.
		x	Assigns the PIRQ as 3rd exclusive PCI IRQ.

Table 173: X945 Advanced PCI Interrupt Routing setting options (cont.)

1.4.3 Graphics configuration

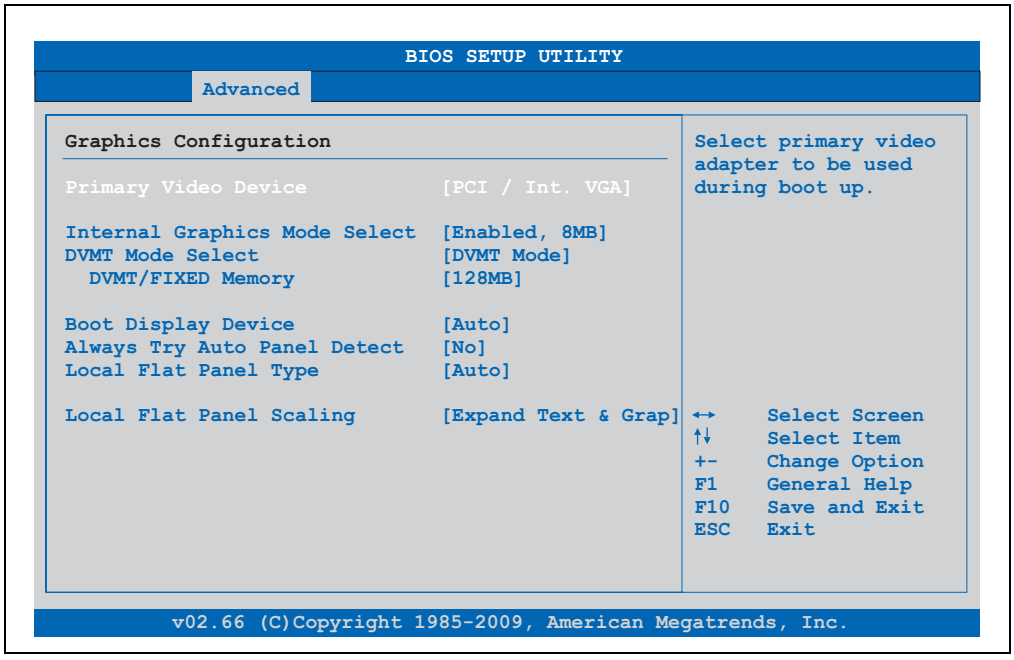


Figure 124: X945 Advanced Graphics configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Primary Video Device	Option for selecting the primary video device.	Internal VGA	The internal graphics chip on the CPU board is used as video device (monitor / panel connection).
		PCI / Int. VGA	The graphics chip of a connected graphics card is used as video device.
Internal Graphics Mode Select	Option for setting the memory size that can be used for the internal graphics controller.	Disabled	No reservation - Disables the graphics controller.
		Enabled, 1MB	1MB main memory provided.
		Enabled, 8MB	8MB main memory provided.
DVMT Mode Select	Option for determining the DVMT mode (Dynamic Video Memory Technology) of the DVMT graphics driver.	Fixed Mode	A fixed amount of memory is allocated to the graphics chip, which is no longer available to the PC.
		DVMT Mode	Memory consumption is controlled dynamically by the DVMT graphics driver. Only the amount of memory that is required is used.
		Combo Mode	The DVMT graphics driver reserves at least 64MB, but can use up to 224MB if necessary.

Table 174: X945 Advanced Graphics configuration setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
DVMT/FIXED Memory	Option for setting the amount of memory used for the DVMT mode.	64MB	64MB of main memory can be used.
		128MB	128MB of main memory can be used.
		Maximum DVMT	The remaining available main memory can be used.
Boot Display Device	Determines which video channel should be enabled for a video device during the boot procedure.	Auto	Automatic selection.
		CRT only	Only use the CRT (Cathode Ray Tube) channel.
		LFP only	Only use the LFP (Local Flat Panel) channel.
		CRT + LFP	Use CRT + LFP channel.
Always Try Auto Panel Detect	This option first searches for EDID data in an external EEPROM to configure the LFP. If no EDID data is found, then the data selected under "Local Flat Panel Type" is used.	No	Disables this function.
		Yes	Enables this function.
Local Flat Panel Type	This option can be used to set a pre-defined profile for the LVDS channel.	Auto	Automatic detection and setting using the EDID data.
		VGA 1x18 (002h)	640 x 480
		VGA 1x18 (013h)	640 x 480
		SVGA 1x18 (01Ah)	800 x 600
		XGA 1x18 (006h)	1024 x 768
		XGA 2x18 (007h)	1024 x 768
		XGA 1x24 (008h)	1024 x 768
		XGA 2x24 (012h)	1024 x 768
		SXGA 2x24 (00Ah)	1280 x 1024
		SXGA 2x24 (018h)	1280 x 1024
		UXGA 2x24 (00Ch)	1600 x 1200
		Customized EDID 1	User-defined profile
		Customized EDID 2	User-defined profile
		Customized EDID 3	User-defined profile
Local Flat Panel Scaling	Determines the screen content should be output according to the defined Local Flat Panel Type.	Centering	The screen content is output centered on the display.
		Expand Text	The text is stretched across the entire surface of the display.
		Expand Graphics	The graphics are stretched across the entire surface of the display.
		Expand Text & Graphics	Text and graphics are stretched across the entire surface of the display.

Table 174: X945 Advanced Graphics configuration setting options (cont.)

1.4.4 CPU configuration

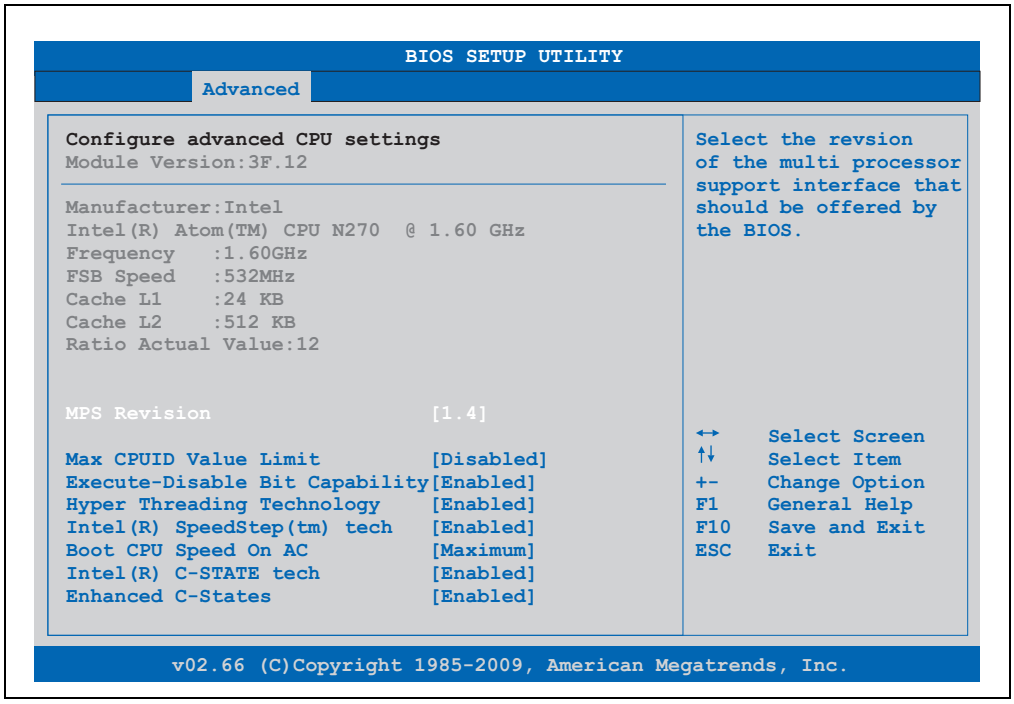


Figure 125: X945 Advanced CPU Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Module Version	BIOS Module Version	None	-
Manufacturer	Manufacturer's display.	None	-
Frequency	Processor speed display	None	-
FSB speed	Cycle display of all addressed components. (Front side bus)	None	-
L1 cache	Displays first level cache memory area.	None	-
L2 cache	Displays first level cache memory area.	None	-
Ratio Actual Value	Displays the Ratio Actual Value.	None	-
MPS Revision	This option supports the use of multiple CPUs (MPS=multi-processor system).	1.1	Sets MPS support Revision 1.1
		1.4	Sets MPS support Revision 1.4
Max CPUID Value Limit	Option for limiting the CPUID input value. This could be necessary for older operating systems.	Enabled	The processor limits the maximum CPUID input value to 03h if necessary when the the processor supports a higher value.
		Disabled	The processor returns the current maximum value upon request of the CPUID input value.

Table 175: X945 Advanced CPU Configuration setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Execute-Disable Bit Capability	Option for enabling or disabling hardware support for prevention of data execution.	Enabled	Enables this function.
		Disabled	Disables this function.
Hyper Threading Technology	Hyper threading technology enables a single physical processor to appear as a multitude of logical processors. This technology allows the operating system to get more out of the internal processor resources, which in turns leads to increased performance. **Information:** **This setting should only be disabled when using an operating system older than Windows XP.**	Enabled	Enables this function.
		Disabled	Disables this function.
Intel (R) SpeedStep (tm) tech	Option for controlling the Intel(R) SpeedStep(TM) technology. The processor clock speed is increased or decreased according to the amount of calculations that must be made. As a result, the power consumption depends largely on the processor load.	Enabled	SpeedStep technology enabled.
		Disabled	SpeedStep technology disabled.
Boot CPU Speed On AC	This setting is used to define the maximum or minimum CPU speed during the boot procedure. However, the operating system can change the speed during operation.	Minimum	CPU starts with minimum speed during the boot procedure.
		Maximum	CPU starts with maximum speed during the boot procedure.
Intel(R) C-STATE tech	This setting allows the operating system to set processor clock rates on its own, thereby saving energy.	Enabled	Enables this function. The processors are run at different frequencies, thereby saving energy.
		Disabled	Disables this function. Both processors are run at the same frequency.
Enhanced C-States[1)]	This setting allows the operating system to set processor clock rates on its own, thereby saving energy.	Enabled	Enables this function.
		Disabled	Disables this function.

Table 175: X945 Advanced CPU Configuration setting options

1) This setting is only shown if *Intel(R) C-State Tech.* is set to *Enabled*.

1.4.5 Chipset configuration

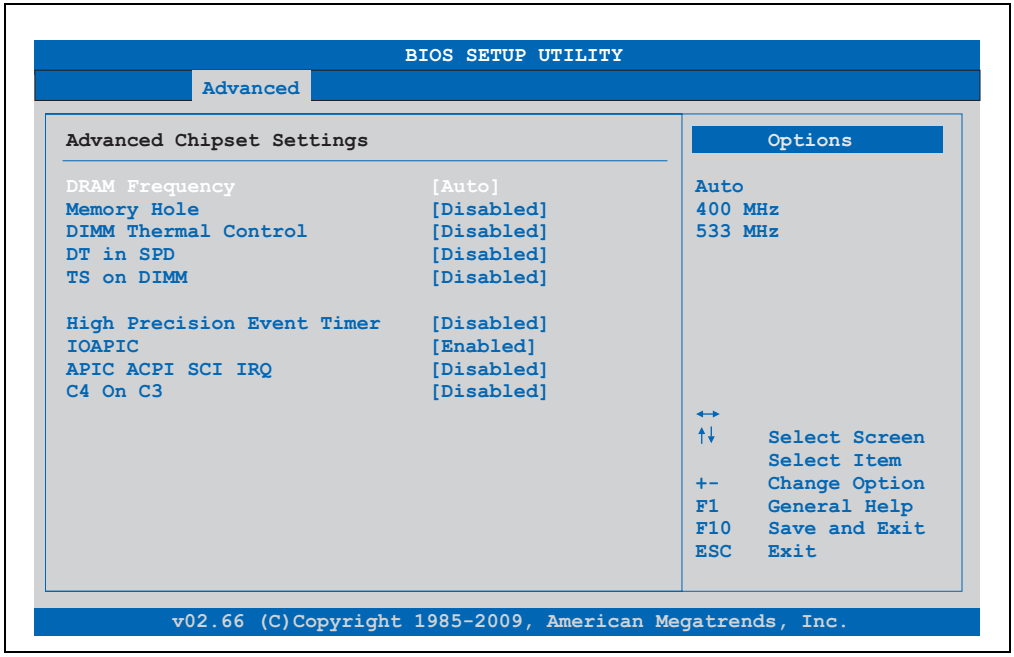


Figure 126: X945 Advanced Chipset Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
DRAM Frequency	Option for setting the RAM frequency.	Auto	Frequency set automatically by the BIOS.
		400, 533 MHz	Desired clock frequency set manually.
Memory Hole	Option for ISA cards with frame buffer. Not relevant for an APC620.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		15MB, -16MB	This address area is reserved.
DIMM Thermal Control	Option for setting the maximum surface temperature of the DIMM module. The module is cooled by limiting the memory bandwidth if the defined surface temperature is reached.	Disabled	Surface temperature not limited.
		40°C, 50°C, 60°C, 70°C, 80°C, 85°C, 90°C	Temperature limit value for the limitation.
DT in SPD	Option to determine whether the GMCH (Graphics and Memory Controller Hub) supports DT (Delta Temperature) in the SPD (Serial Presence Detect) Management Algorithm of the DIMM module.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
TS on DIMM	Option to determine whether the GMCH (Graphics and Memory Controller Hub) supports TS (Thermal Sensor) in the Thermal Management Algorithm of the DIMM module.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.

Table 176: X945 Advanced Chipset setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
High Precision Event Timer	The HPET is a timer inside the PC. It is able to trigger an interrupt with a high degree of accuracy, which allows other programs to better synchronize a variety of applications.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function. This function is recommended for multimedia applications.
IOAPIC	This option is used to activate or deactivate the APIC (Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller). **Information:** **The IRQ resources available to the system are expanded when the APIC mode is enabled.**	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	The IRQ resources available to the system are expanded when the APIC mode is enabled.
APIC ACPI SCI IRQ	This option is used to modify the SCI IRQ when in APIC (Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller) mode.	Disabled	IRQ9 is used for SCI.
		Enabled	IRQ20 is used for SCI.
C4 On C3	Fine-tunes the power saving function on an ACPI operating system.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Processor is needed in C4 if the operating system is initiated in a C3 state.

Table 176: X945 Advanced Chipset setting options

1.4.6 I/O interface configuration

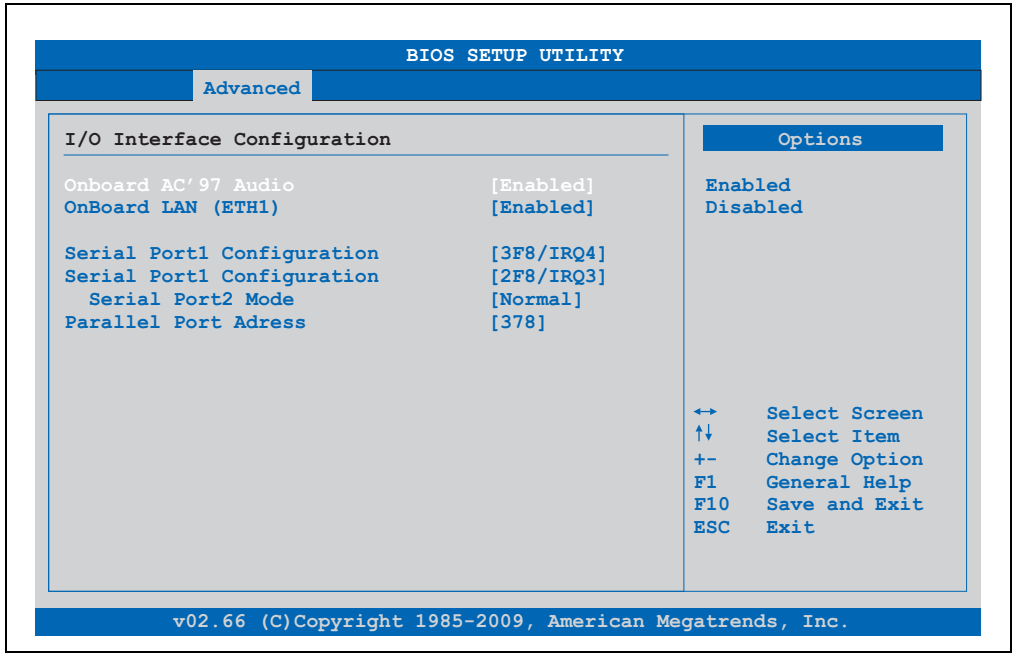


Figure 127: X945 Advanced I/O Interface Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Onboard AC'97 Audio	For turning the AC97 Sound on and off.	Enabled	Enables AC'97 sound.
		Disabled	Disables AC'97 sound.
Onboard LAN (ETH1)	For turning the on-board LAN controller (for ETH1) on and off.	Enabled	Activates the LAN controller or the ETH1 interface.
		Disabled	Deactivates the LAN controller or the ETH1 interface.
Serial port 1 configuration	For the configuration of serial port 1 (COM1).	Disabled	Port 1 deactivated.
		3F8/IRQ4	Assignment of the base I/O address and the interrupt.
		3E8 / IRQ4	Assignment of the base I/O address and the interrupt.
Serial port 2 configuration	For the configuration of serial port 2 (COM1).	Disabled	Port 1 deactivated.
		2F8 / IRQ3	Assignment of the base I/O address and the interrupt.
		2E8 / IRQ3	Assignment of the base I/O address and the interrupt.
Serial port 2 mode	This option is for setting the serial port B as either a standard interface or as an infrared interface (not currently supported).	Normal	Standard interface.
		IrDA	IrDA interface (compliant serial infrared port).
		ASK IR	Interface for IR devices (amplitude shift keyed infrared port).
Parallel port address	The address of the parallel interface can be defined with this option. **Information:** **Address is automatically set, even if the function is disabled.**	Disabled	Deactivates the port.
		378, 278, 3BC	Manual assignment of the port address.

Table 177: X945 Advanced I/O Interface Configuration setting options

1.4.7 Clock configuration

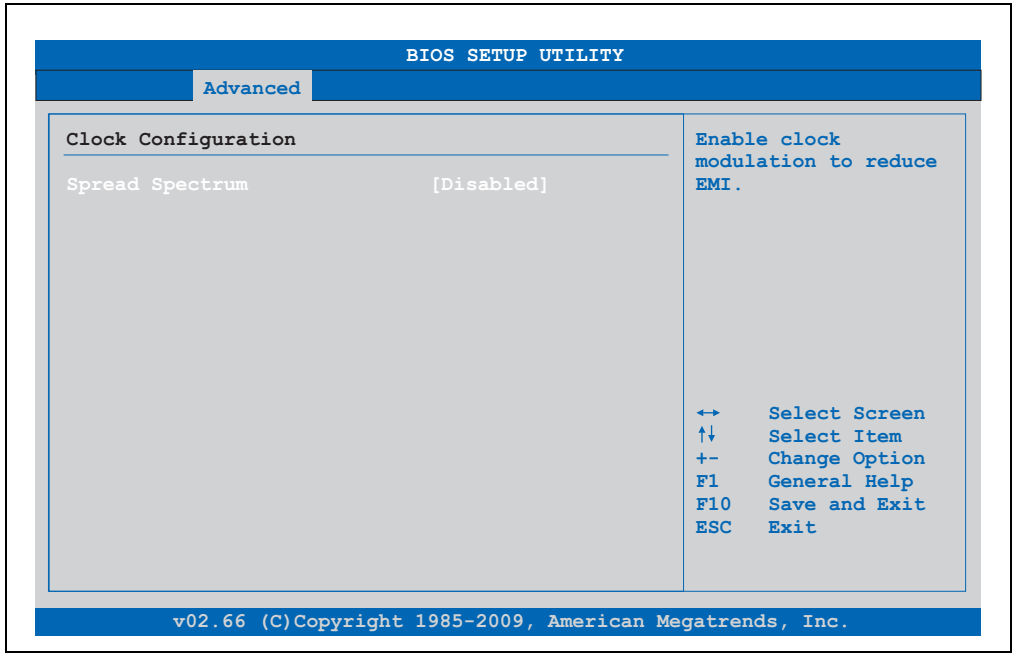


Figure 128: X945 Advanced Clock Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Spread spectrum	With this option, the cycle frequency can be modulated by reducing electromagnetic disturbances.	Enabled	Enables this function.
		Disabled	Disables this function.

Table 178: X945 Advanced Clock Configuration setting options

1.4.8 IDE Configuration

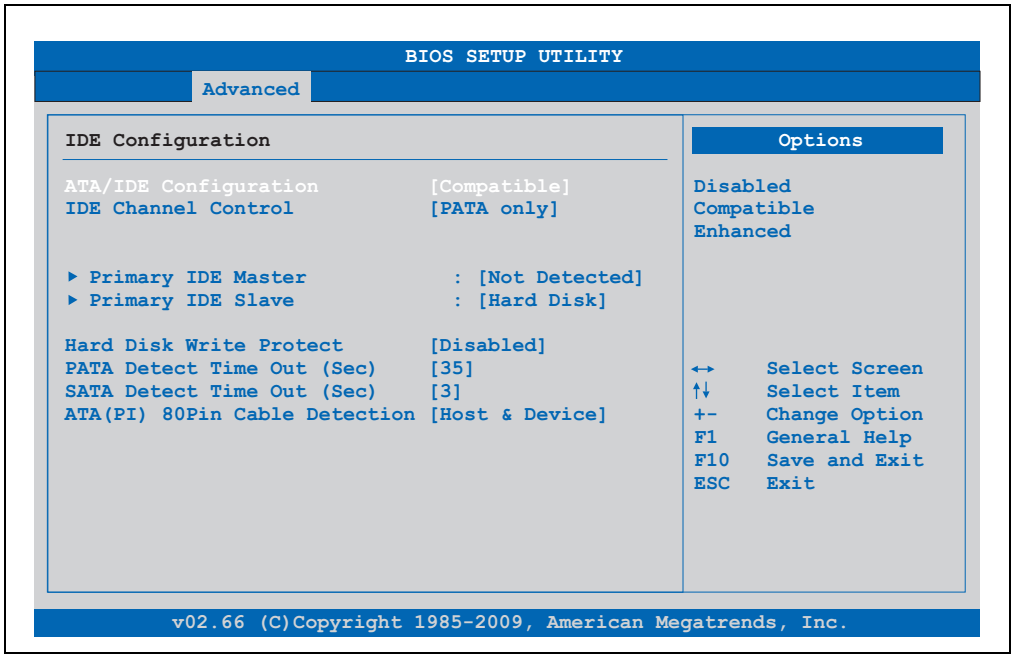


Figure 129: X945 Advanced IDE Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
ATA/IDE Configuration	Option for configuring the integrated PATA and SATA controller.	Disabled	Both controllers disabled.
		Compatible	Both controllers run in Legacy or Compatible Mode.
		Enhanced	Both controllers run in Enhanced or Native Mode.
IDE Channel Control[1)]	Option for configuring the IDE channels in "Compatible" mode.	SATA only	Only use SATA drives.
		SATA Pri, PATA Sec	SATA drives are address primarily and PATA drive secondarily.
		PATA only[2)]	Only use PATA drives.
Primary IDE master	The drive in the system that is connected to the IDE primary master port is configured here.	Enter	Opens submenu See "Primary IDE master" on page 285
Primary IDE slave	The drive in the system that is connected to the IDE primary slave port is configured here.	Enter	Opens submenu See "Primary IDE slave" on page 287
Secondary IDE master	The drive in the system that is connected to the IDE secondary master port is configured here.	Enter	Opens submenu

Table 179: X945 Advanced IDE Configuration setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Secondary IDE slave	The drive in the system that is connected to the IDE secondary slave port is configured here.	Enter	Opens submenu
Third IDE Master[3)]	The drive in the system that is connected to the IDE third master port is configured here.	Enter	Opens submenu
Third IDE Slave[4)]	The drive in the system that is connected to the IDE third slave port is configured here.	Enter	Opens submenu
Hard disk write protect	Write protection for the hard drive can be enabled/disabled here.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
PATA Detect Time Out (Sec)	Configuring the time overrun limit value for the PATA device identification.	0, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35	Manually setting the value.
SATA Detect Time Out (Sec)	Configuring the time overrun limit value for the SATA device identification.	0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 10, 15, 30	Manually setting the value.
ATA(PI) 80Pin Cable Detection	Detects whether an 80 pin cable is connected to the drive, the controller or to both. **Information:** **This option is not available on the APC620 CPU board. Therefore this setting is not relevant.**	Host & device	Using both IDE controllers (motherboard, disk drive).
		Host	IDE controller motherboard used.
		Device	IDE disk drive controller used.

Table 179: X945 Advanced IDE Configuration setting options

1) These settings are only possible if *ATA/IDE Configuration* is set to *Compatible* or *Enhanced*.

2) If this setting is enabled and *ATA/IDE Configuration* is set to *Compatible*, then only the submenus *Primary IDE Master* and *Primary IDE Slave* will be shown.

3) This submenu is only open if *ATA/IDE Configuration* is set to *Enhanced*.

4) This submenu is only open if *ATA/IDE Configuration* is set to *Enhanced*.

Primary IDE master

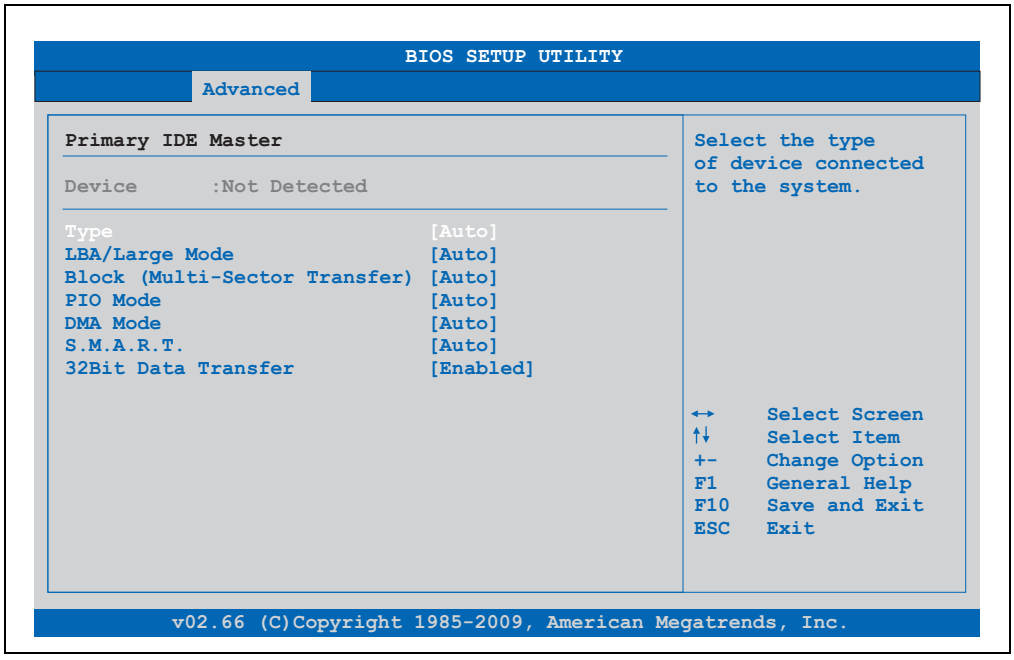


Figure 130: X945 Primary IDE Master

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Type	The type of drive connected to the primary master is configured here.	Not installed	No drive installed.
		Auto	Automatic recognition of the drive and setup of appropriate values.
		CD/DVD	CD -/ DVD drive.
		ARMD	ARMD - drive (zip drive)
LBA/Large mode	This option activates the logical block addressing / large mode for IDE.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Auto	Automatic enabling of this function when supported by the system.
Block (multi-sector transfer)	This option enables the block mode for IDE hard drives. When this option is enabled, the number of blocks per request from the configuration sector of the hard drive is read.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Auto	Automatic enabling of this function when supported by the system.

Table 180: X945 Primary IDE Master setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
PIO mode	The PIO mode determines the data rate of the hard drive. **Information:** **This option is not available on the APC620. Therefore this setting is not relevant.**	Auto	Automatic configuration of PIO mode.
		0, 1, 2, 3, 4	Manual configuration of PIO mode.
DMA mode	The data transfer rate to and from the primary master drive is defined here. The DMA mode must be activated in the Windows device manager in order to guarantee maximum performance. Only possible when manually setting up the drive.	Auto	Automatic definition of the transfer rate.
		Disabled	Manual definition of the transfer rate.
S.M.A.R.T.	Monitoring function of modern hard drives (self-monitoring, analysis and reporting technology).	Auto	Automatic detection and enabling.
		Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
32 bit data transfer	This function enables 32-bit data transfer.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.

Table 180: X945 Primary IDE Master setting options (cont.)

Primary IDE slave

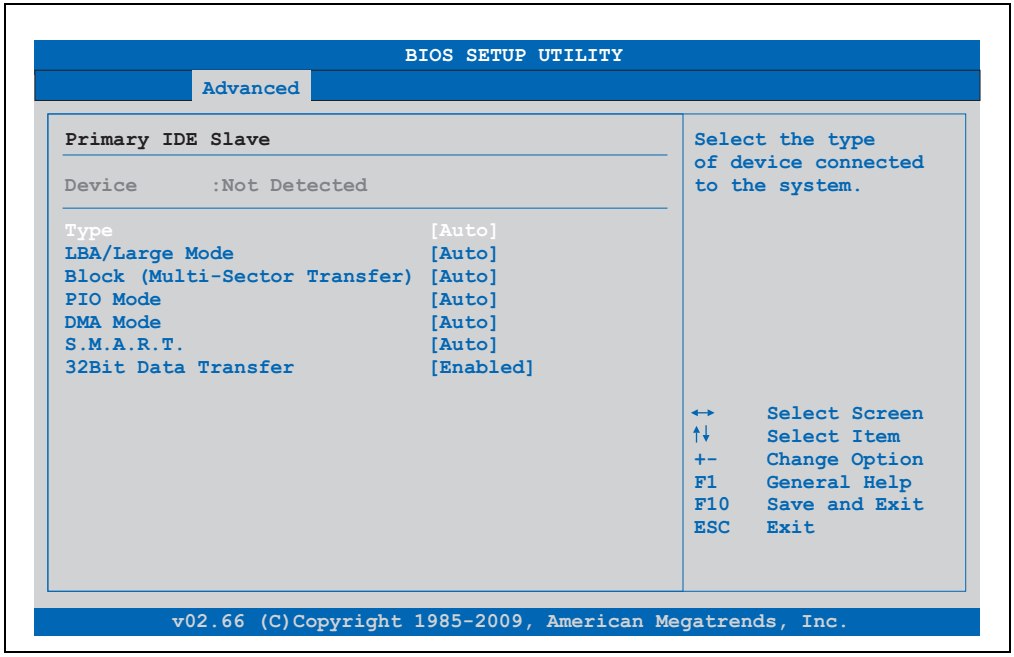


Figure 131: X945 Primary IDE Slave

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Type	The type of drive connected to the secondary slave is configured here.	Not installed	No drive installed.
		Auto	Automatic recognition of the drive and setup of appropriate values.
		CD/DVD	CD -/ DVD drive.
		ARMD	ARMD - drive (zip drive)
LBA/Large mode	This option activates the logical block addressing / large mode for IDE.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Auto	Automatic enabling of this function when supported by the system.
Block (multi-sector transfer)	This option enables the block mode for IDE hard drives. When this option is enabled, the number of blocks per request from the configuration sector of the hard drive is read.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Auto	Automatic enabling of this function when supported by the system.

Table 181: X945 Primary IDE Slave setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
PIO mode	The PIO mode determines the data rate of the hard drive. **Information:** **This option is not available on the APC620. Therefore this setting is not relevant.**	Auto	Automatic configuration of PIO mode.
		0, 1, 2, 3, 4	Manual configuration of PIO mode.
DMA mode	The data transfer rate to and from the secondary slave drive is defined here. The DMA mode must be activated in the Windows device manager in order to guarantee maximum performance. Only possible when manually setting up the drive.	Auto	Automatic definition of the transfer rate.
		Disabled	Manual definition of the transfer rate.
S.M.A.R.T.	Monitoring function of modern hard drives (self-monitoring, analysis and reporting technology).	Auto	Automatic detection and enabling.
		Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
32 bit data transfer	This function enables 32-bit data transfer.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.

Table 181: X945 Primary IDE Slave setting options (cont.)

1.4.9 USB configuration

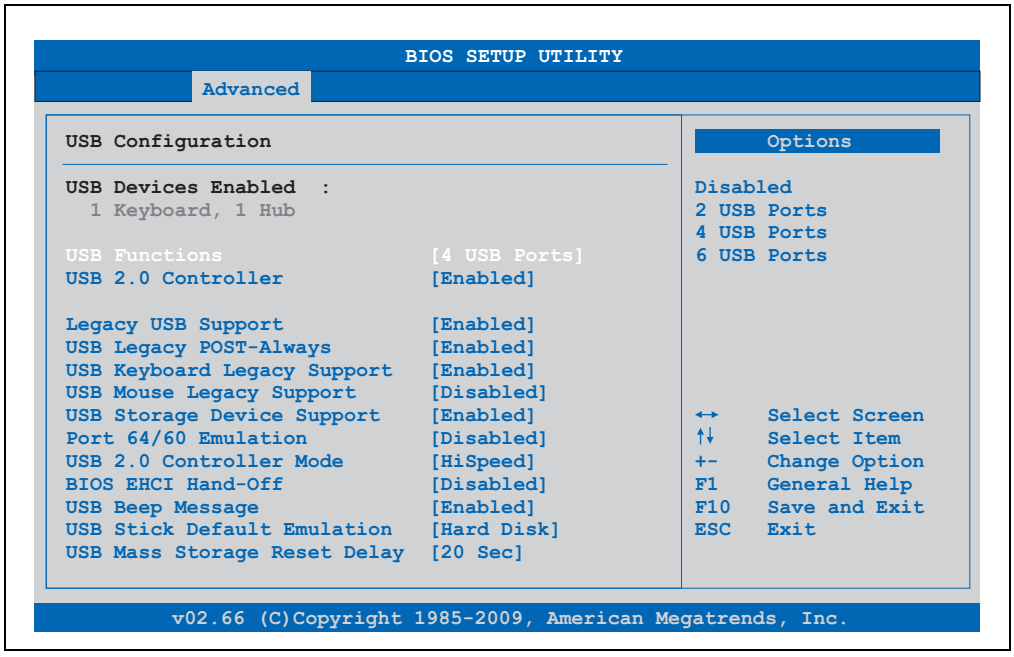


Figure 132: X945 Advanced USB Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
USB function	USB ports can be enabled/disabled here. The USB numbers (e.g. USB1, USB3, etc.) are printed on the APC620 housing).	Disabled	Disables the USB port.
		2 USB ports	USB1, USB3 are enabled.
		4 USB ports	USB1, USB2, USB3, USB4 are enabled.
		6 USB ports	USB1, USB2, USB3, USB4, USB5 are enabled.
		8 USB ports	USB1, USB2, USB3, USB4, USB5, USB are enabled on an AP via SDL.
USB 2.0 controller	Option for enabling or disabling USB 2.0 mode.	Enabled	All USB interfaces run in USB 2.0 mode.
		Disabled	All USB interfaces run in USB 1.1 mode.
Legacy USB support	Legacy USB support can be enabled/disabled here. USB interfaces do not function during startup. USB is supported again after the operating system has started. A USB keyboard is still recognized during the POST.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
		Auto	Automatic enabling.
USB Legacy POST-Always	Option to enable Legacy USB Support during the POST (Power On Self Test) the same as the Legacy USB Support setting.	Enabled	The BIOS Setup can be called up during the POST using a USB keyboard.
		Disabled	Disables this function.

Table 182: X945 Advanced USB Configuration setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
USB keyboard legacy support	USB keyboard support can be enabled/disabled here.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
USB mouse legacy support	USB mouse support can be enabled/disabled here.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
USB storage device support	USB storage device support can be enabled/disabled here.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Port 64/60 emulation	Port 64/60 emulation can be enabled/disabled here.	Disabled	USB keyboard functions in all systems excluding Windows NT.
		Enabled	USB keyboard functions in Windows NT.
USB 2.0 controller mode	Settings can be made for the USB controller.	Full speed	12 MBps
		Hi speed	480 MBps
BIOS EHCI hand-off	The support for the operating system can be set up without the fully automatic EHCI function.	Disabled	Disables the function
		Enabled	Enables this function.
USB beep message	Option for outputting a tone each time a USB device is detected by the BIOS during the POST.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
USB stick default emulation	You can set how the USB device is to be used.	Auto	USB devices with fewer than 530MB of memory are simulated as floppy disk drives and other devices with larger capacities are simulated as hard drives.
		Hard disk	An HDD-formatted drive can be used as an FDD (e.g. zip drive) for starting the system.
USB mass storage reset delay	The waiting time that the USB device POST requires after the device start command can be set. **Information:** **The message "No USB mass storage device detected" is displayed if no USB memory device has been installed.**	10 Sec, 20 Sec, 30 Sec, 40 Sec	Manually setting the value.

Table 182: X945 Advanced USB Configuration setting options (cont.)

1.4.10 Keyboard/mouse configuration

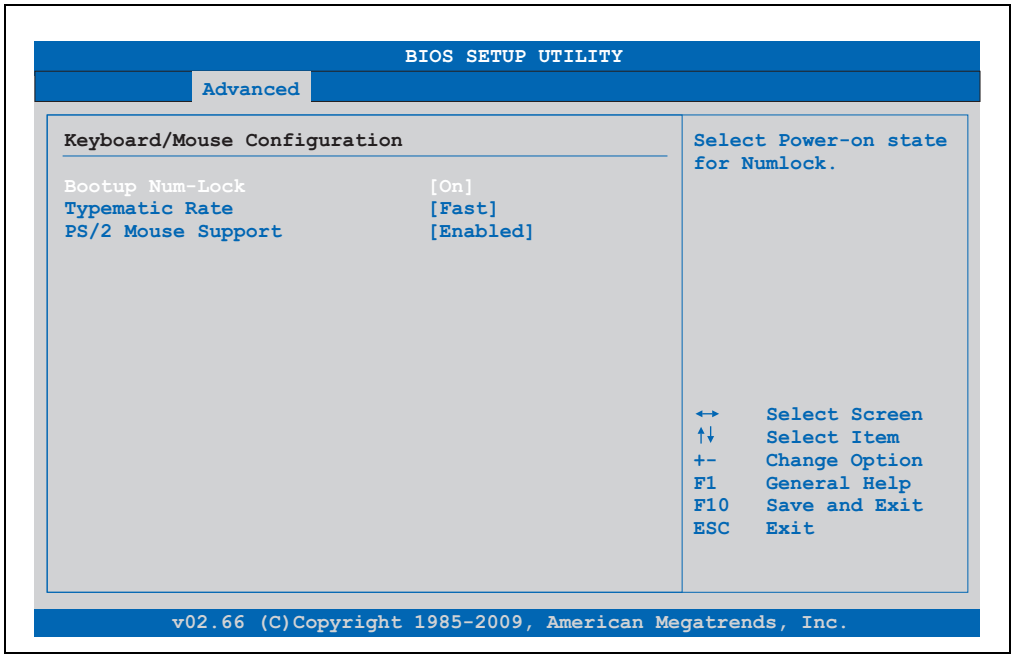


Figure 133: X945 Advanced Keyboard/Mouse Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Boot-up Num-lock	This option sets the status of the numeric keypad when the the system is booted.	Off	Only the cursor functions of the numerical keypad are enabled.
		On	Numeric keypad is enabled.
Typematic rate	The key repeat function is set here.	Slow	Slow key repeat.
		Fast	Fast key repeat.
PS/2 mouse support	Sets whether the PS/2 mouse port should be activated.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
		Auto	Automatic activation of the function if PS/2 mouse port is supported.

Table 183: X945 Advanced Keyboard/Mouse Configuration setting options

1.4.11 Remote access configuration

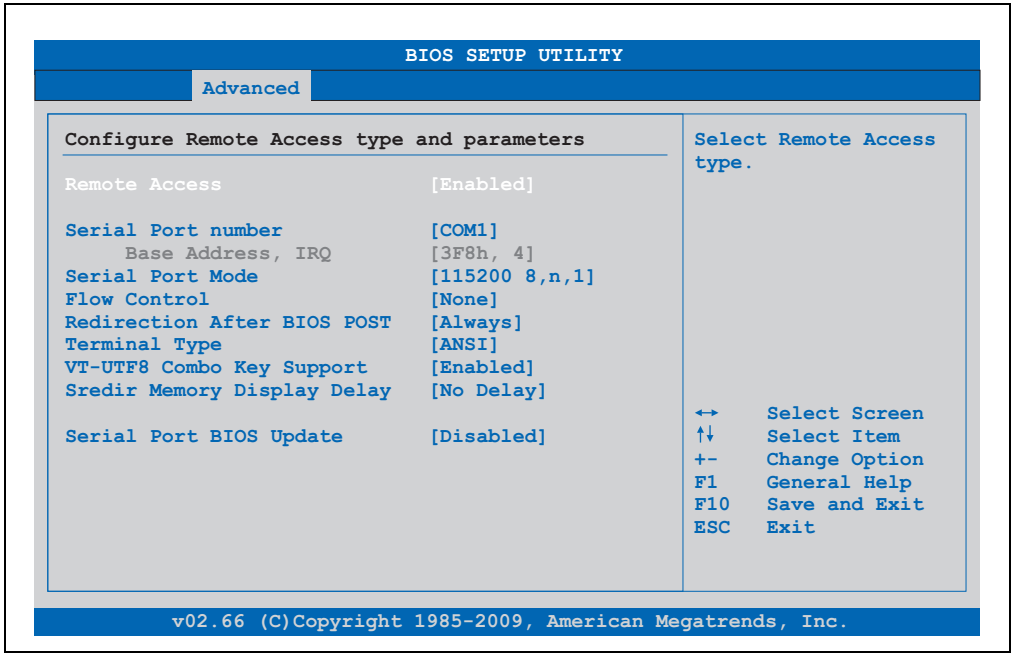


Figure 134: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Remote access	The remote access function can be enabled/disabled here.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Serial port number	The serial interface can be set using this option, as long as disabled is not entered in the *remote access* field.	COM1	Enables the COM1 interface as remote access interface.
		COM2	Enables the COM2 interface as remote access interface.
Base address, IRQ	Serial connection display for the logical address and interrupt, as long as disabled is not entered in the *remote access* field.	None	-
Serial port mode	The serial interface transfer rate is defined here, as long as disabled is not entered in the *remote access* field.	115200 8,n,1. 57600 8,n,1. 38400 8,n,1. 19200 8,n,1. 09600 8,n,1	Manually setting the value.
Flow control	This setting determines how the transfer is controlled via the interface. **Information:** **The setting must be the same on the terminal and the server.**	None	The interface is operated without transfer control.
		Hardware	The interface transfer control is carried out through hardware. This mode must be supported by a cable.
		Software	The interface transfer control is carried out through software.

Table 184: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Redirection after BIOS POST	The redirection after start up can be set here, as long as disabled is not entered in the *remote access* field.	Disabled	The redirection is switched off after start up.
		Boot loader	Redirection is enabled during system start up and charging.
		Always	Redirection is always enabled.
Terminal type	The type of connection can be chosen here, as long as disabled is not entered in the *remote access* field.	ANSI, VT100, VT-UTF8	Manual configuration of the connection type.
VT-UTF8 Combo Key Support	With this option, the VT-UTF8 Combo Key Support for the ANSI and VT100 connections can be enabled, as long as disabled is not entered in the *remote access* field.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Sredir Memory Display Delay	The memory output delay can be set using this option, as long as disabled is not entered in the *remote access* field (Sredir -> serial redirection).	No delay	No delay.
		Delay 1 sec, Delay 2 sec, Delay 4 sec	Manually setting the value.
Serial port BIOS update	During system start up, the update is loaded via the serial interface in the processor. **Information:** **If this option is disabled, the boot time is reduced.**	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.

Table 184: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration setting options (cont.)

1.4.12 CPU board monitor

Information:

The displayed voltage values (e.g. core voltage, battery voltage) on this BIOS Setup page represent uncalibrated information values. These cannot be used to draw any conclusions about any hardware alarms or error conditions. The hardware components used have automatic diagnostics functions that can be applied in the event of error.

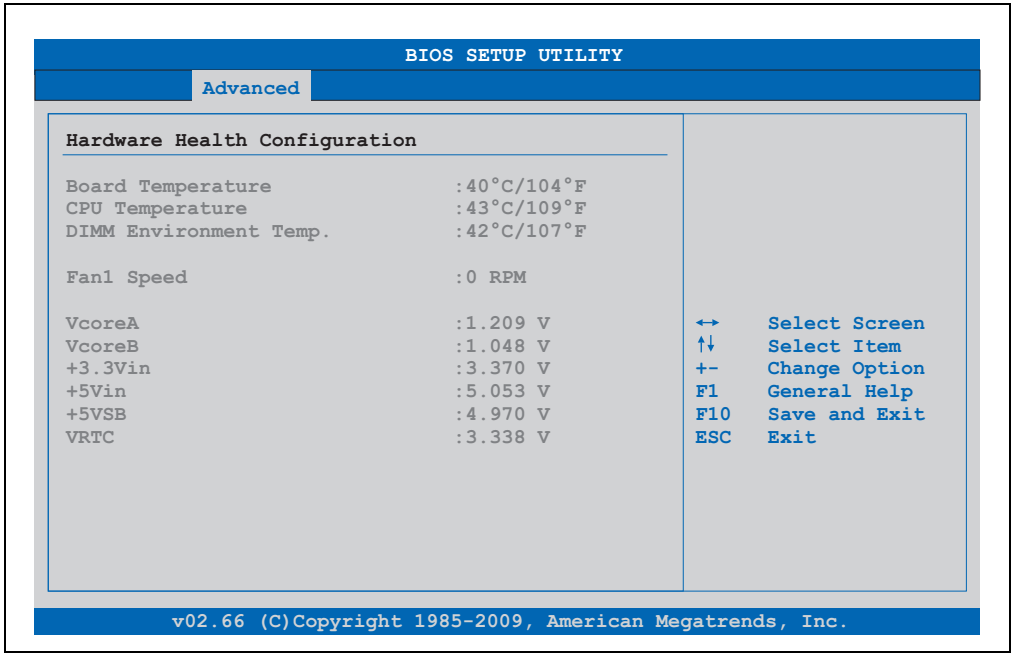


Figure 135: X945 Advanced CPU Board Monitor

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Board temperature	Displays the board temperature in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit.	None	-
CPU temperature	Displays the processor's temperature (in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit).	None	-
DIMM Environment Temp.	Displays the temperature of the DRAM module.	None	-
Fan1 Speed	Displays the rotating speed of the processor fan.	None	-
VcoreA	Displays the processor's core voltage A in volts.	None	-

Table 185: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
VcoreB	Displays the DDR's core voltage B in volts.	None	-
+3.3Vin	Displays the current voltage of the 3.3 volt supply.	None	-
+5Vin	Displays the current voltage of the 5 volt supply.	None	-
+5VSB	Displays the current level of the jumper.	None	-
VRTC	Displays the battery voltage (in volts).	None	-

Table 185: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration setting options (cont.)

1.4.13 Baseboard/panel features

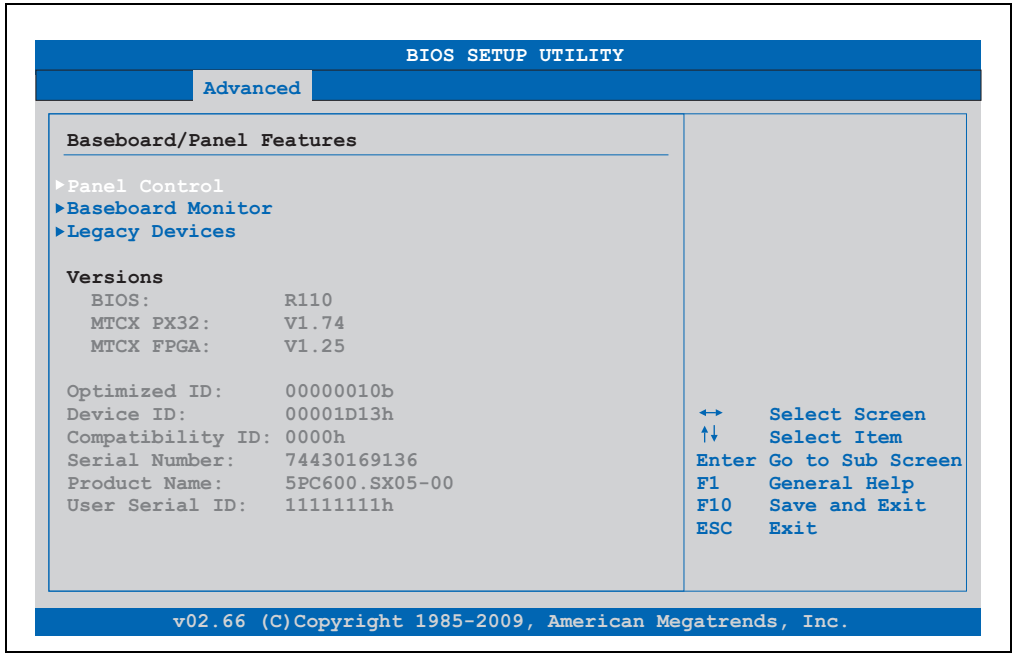


Figure 136: X945 Advanced Baseboard/Panel Features

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Panel control	For special setup of connected panels (display units).	Enter	Opens submenu See "Panel control" on page 297
Baseboard monitor	Display of various temperatures and fan speeds.	Enter	Opens submenu See "Baseboard monitor" on page 298
Legacy devices	Special settings for the interface can be changed here.	Enter	Opens submenu See "Legacy devices" on page 299
BIOS	Displays the BIOS version.	None	-

Table 186: X945 Advanced Baseboard/Panel Features setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
MTCX PX32	Displays the MTCX PX32 firmware version.	None	-
MTCX FPGA	Displays the MTCX FPGA firmware version.	None	-
Optimized ID	Displays the DIP switch setting of the configuration switch.	None	-
Device ID	Displays the hexadecimal value of the hardware device ID.	None	-
Compatibility ID	Displays the version of the device within the same B&R device code. This ID is needed for Automation Runtime.	None	-
Serial number	Displays the B&R serial number.	None	-
Product name	Displays the B&R model number.	None	-
User serial ID	Displays the user serial ID. This 8 digit hex value can be freely assigned by the user (e.g. to give the device a unique ID) and can only be changed with using the "B&R Control Center" via the ADI driver.	None	-

Table 186: X945 Advanced Baseboard/Panel Features setting options (cont.)

Panel control

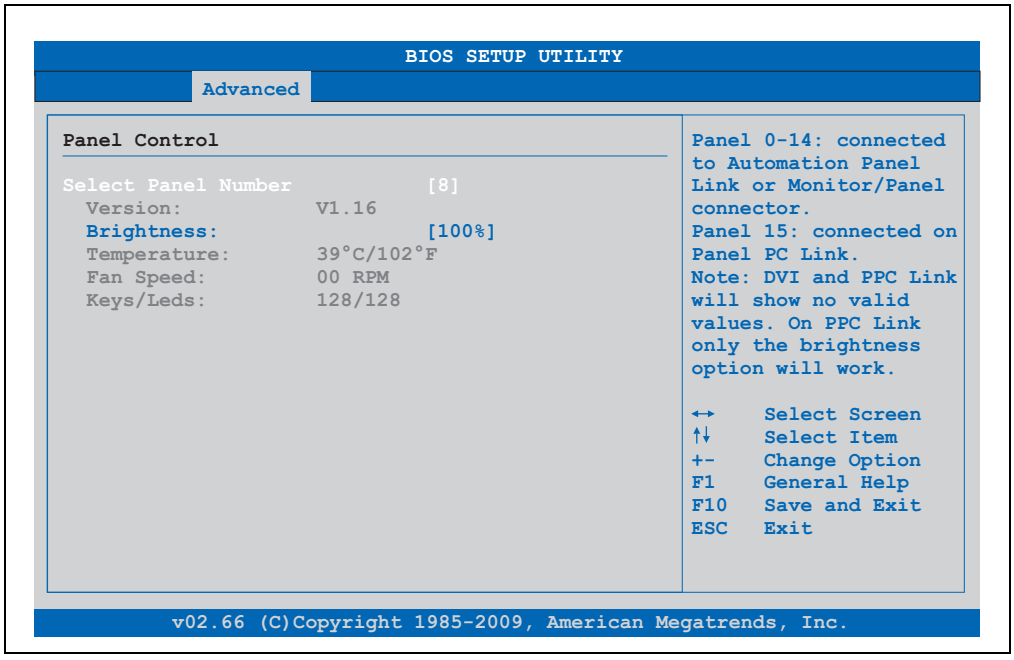


Figure 137: X945 Panel Control

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Select panel number	Selection of the panel number for which the values should be read out and/or changed.	0...15	Selection of panel 0 ... 15. Panel 15 is specifically intended for panel PC 700 systems.
Version	Displays the firmware version of the SDLR controller.	None	-
Brightness	For setting the brightness of the selected panel.	0%, 10%, 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 100%	For setting the brightness (in%) of the selected panel. Changes take effect after saving and restarting the system (e.g. by pressing <F10>).
Temperature	Displays the selected panel's temperature (in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit).	None	-
Fan speed	Displays fan speed for the selected panel.	None	-
Keys/LEDs	Displays the available keys and LEDs on the selected panel.	None	-

Table 187: X945 Panel Control setting options

Baseboard monitor

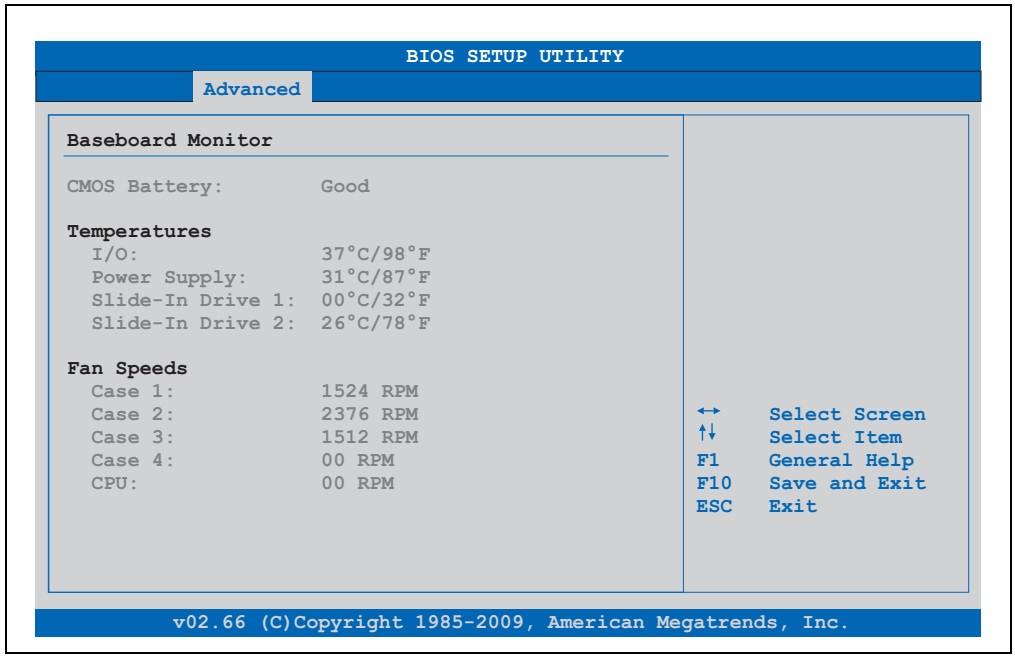


Figure 138: X945 Baseboard Monitor

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
CMOS battery	Displays the battery status. **N/A** - not available **Good** - battery ok. **Bad** - battery is damaged.	None	-
I/O	Displays the temperature in the I/O area in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit.	None	-
Power supply	Displays the temperature in the power supply in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit.	None	
Slide-in drive 1	Displays the temperature of the slide-in drive 1 in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit.	None	-
Slide-in drive 2	Displays the temperature of the slide-in drive 2 in degrees Celsius and Fahrenheit.	None	-
Case 1	Displays the fan speed of housing fan 1.	None	-
Case 2	Displays the fan speed of housing fan 2.	None	-
Case 3	Displays the fan speed of housing fan 3.	None	-
Case 4	Displays the fan speed of housing fan 4.	None	-
CPU	Displays the rotational speed of the CPU fan.	None	-

Table 188: X945 Baseboard Monitor setting options

Legacy devices

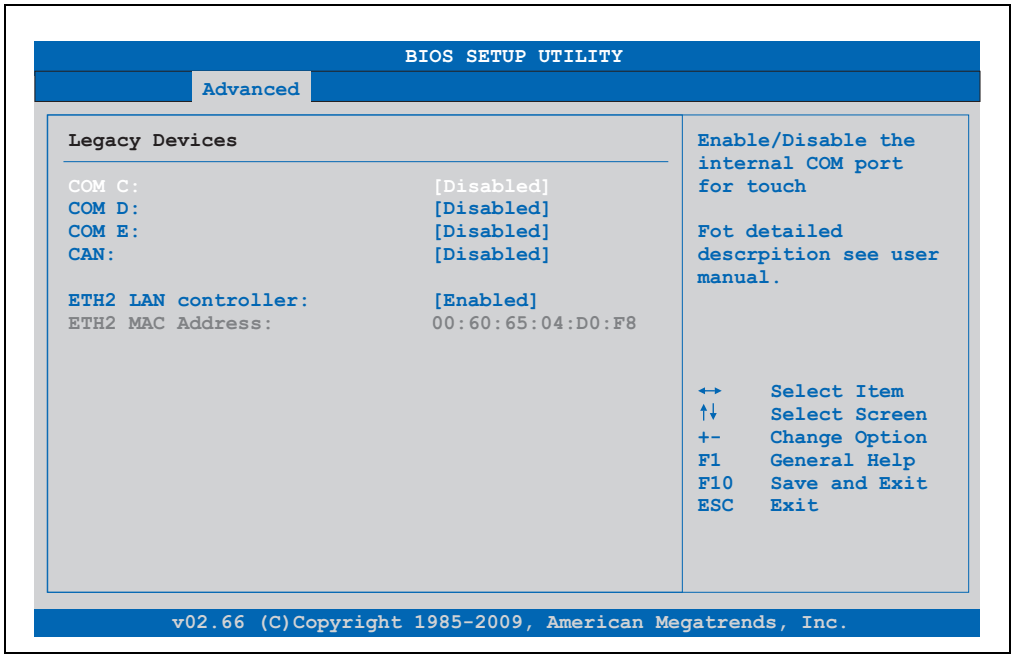


Figure 139: X945 Legacy Devices

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
COM C	Setting of the COM port for the **touch screen on the monitor/panel** connector.	Disabled	Disables the interface.
		Enabled	Enables the interface.
Base I/O address	Selection of the base I/O address for the COM port.	238, 2E8, 328, 338, 3E8	Selected base I/O address is assigned.
Interrupt	Selection of the interrupt for the COM port.	IRQ 5, IRQ 6, IRQ 7, IRQ 10, IRQ 11	Selected interrupt is assigned.
COM D	Setting of the COM port for the **touch screen on the AP Link** connector.	Disabled	Disables the interface.
		Enabled	Enables the interface.
Base I/O address	Selection of the base I/O address for the COM port.	238, 2E8, 328, 338, 3E8	Selected base I/O address is assigned.
Interrupt	Selection of the interrupt for the COM port.	IRQ 5, IRQ 6, IRQ 7, IRQ 10, IRQ 11	Selected interrupt is assigned.
COM E	Configuration of the COM port of the B&R add-on interface option 5AC600.485I-00 (IF option).	Disabled	Disables the interface.
		Enabled	Enables the interface.
Base I/O address	Selection of the base I/O address for the COM port.	238, 2E8, 328, 338, 3E8	Selected base I/O address is assigned.

Table 189: X945 Legacy Devices setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Interrupt	Selection of the interrupt for the COM port.	IRQ 5, IRQ 6, IRQ 7, IRQ 10, IRQ 11	Selected interrupt is assigned.
CAN	Configuration of the CAN port of the B&R add-on CAN interface card 5AC600.CANI-00 (IF option).	Disabled	Disables the interface.
		Enabled	Enables the interface.
Base I/O address	Selection of the base I/O address for the CAN port.	None	-
Interrupt	Selection of the interrupt for the CAN port.	IRQ 10, NMI	Selected interrupt is assigned.
ETH2 LAN controller	For turning the onboard LAN controller (ETH2) on and off.	Disabled	Disables the controller.
		Enabled	Enables the controller.
ETH2 MAC Address	Displays the Ethernet 2 controller MAC address.	None	-

Table 189: X945 Legacy Devices setting options (cont.)

1.5 Boot

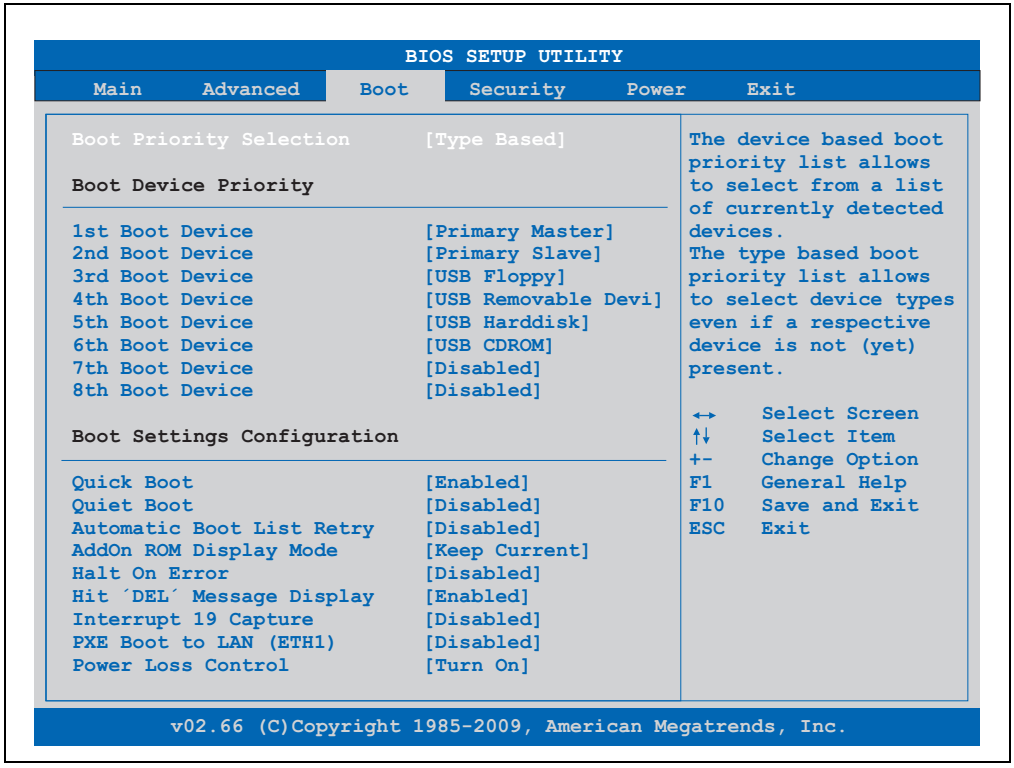


Figure 140: X945 Boot Menu

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Boot priority selection	The method for when the drives should be booted can be set here.	Device based	Only the devices that are recognized by the system are listed. The sequence of this list can be changed.
		Type based	The boot sequence of a device type list can be changed. Device types that are not connected can also be entered to this list.

Table 190: X945 Boot Menu setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
1st boot device	The boot drive can be set using this option.	Disabled, Primary Master, Primary Slave, Secondary Master, Secondary Slave, Legacy Floppy, USB Floppy, USB Hard disk, USB CDROM, USB Removable Device, Onboard LAN, External LAN, PCI Mass Storage, PCI SCSI Card, Any PCI BEV Device, Third Master, Third Slave, PCI RAID, Local BEV ROM	Selecting the desired sequence.
2nd boot device			
3rd boot device			
4th boot device			
5th boot device			
6th boot device			
7th boot device			
8th boot device			
Quick boot	This function reduces the boot time by skipping some POST procedures.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Quiet boot	Determines if POST message or OEM logo (default = black background) is displayed.	Disabled	POST message display.
		Enabled	OEM logo display instead of POST message.
Automatic boot list retry	With this option, the operating system attempts to automatically restart following startup failure.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Add-on ROM display mode	Sets the display mode for the ROM (during the booting procedure).	Force BIOS	An additional BIOS part can be displayed.
		Keep current	BIOS information is displayed.
Hold on errors	This option sets whether the system should pause the Power On Self Test (POST) when it encounters an error.	Disabled	The system does not pause. All errors are ignored.
		Enabled	The system pauses. The system pauses every time an error is encountered.
Hit 'DEL' Message Display	Settings can be made here for the "Hit 'DEL' Message" display. **Information:** **When quiet boot is activated the message is not displayed.**	Disabled	The message is not displayed.
		Enabled	The message is displayed.
Interrupt 19 capture	This function can be used to incorporate the BIOS interrupt.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
PXE boot to LAN (ETH1)	Enables/disables the function to boot from LAN (ETH1).	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Power loss control	Determines if the system is on/off following power loss.	Remain off	Remains off.
		Turn on	Powers on.
		Last state	Enables the previous state.

Table 190: X945 Boot Menu setting options (cont.)

1.6 Security

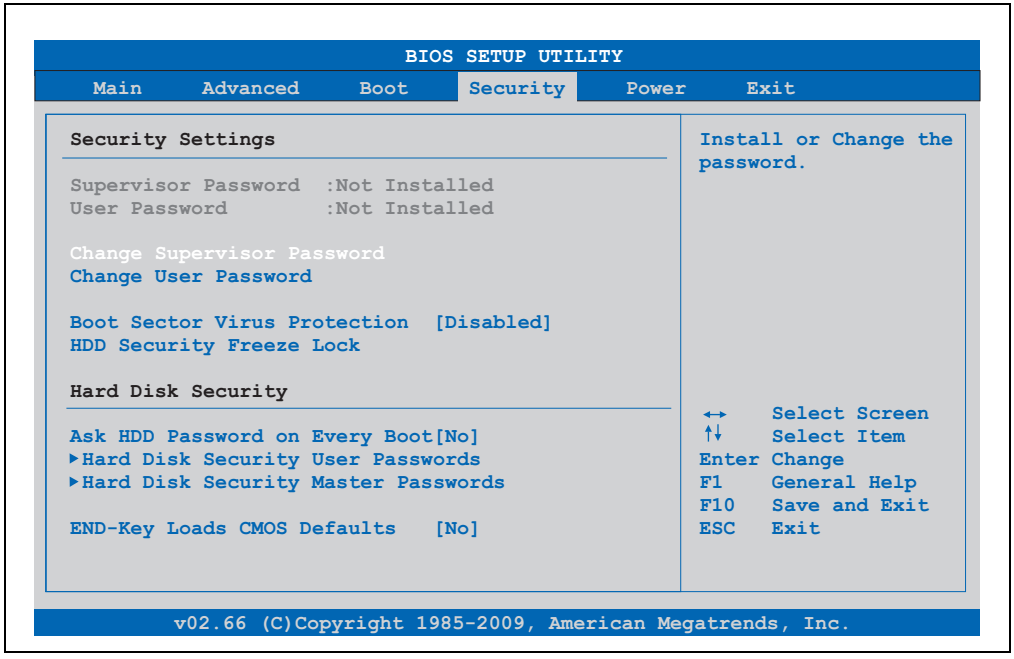


Figure 141: X945 Security Menu

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Supervisor password	Displays whether or not a supervisor password has been set.	None	-
User password	Displays whether or not a user password has been set.	None	-
Change supervisor password	To enter/change a supervisor password. A supervisor password is necessary to edit all BIOS settings.	Enter	Enter password.
Change user password	To enter/change a user password. A user password allows the user to edit only certain BIOS settings.	Enter	Enter password.
Boot sector virus protection	With this option, a warning is issued when the boot sector is accessed through a program or virus. **Information:** **With this option, only the boot sector is protected, not the entire hard drive.**	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.

Table 191: X945 Security Menu setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
HDD Security Freeze Lock	This option can be used to define whether the BIOS sends the HDD Security Freeze Lock command to every connected hard disk that supports the Security command. This prevents the setting or changing of a hard disk password after the POST.	Disabled	Deactivates this function.
		Enabled	Activates this function.
Ask HDD Password on Every Boot	This function can be used to select whether the hard disk password must be entered each time the system boots. **Information:** **Can only be used if a hard disk user password has been created.**	Yes	Deactivates this function.
		No	Activates this function.
Hard disk security user password	The hard disk security user password can be created here.	Enter	Opens submenu See "Hard disk security user password" on page 305
Hard disk security master password	The hard disk security master password can be created here.	Enter	Opens submenu See "Hard disk security master password" on page 306
End-Key Load CMOS Defaults	Using this function, CMOS can be loaded by pressing the END key during POST.	No	Disables this function.
		Yes	Enables this function.

Table 191: X945 Security Menu setting options (cont.)

1.6.1 Hard disk security user password

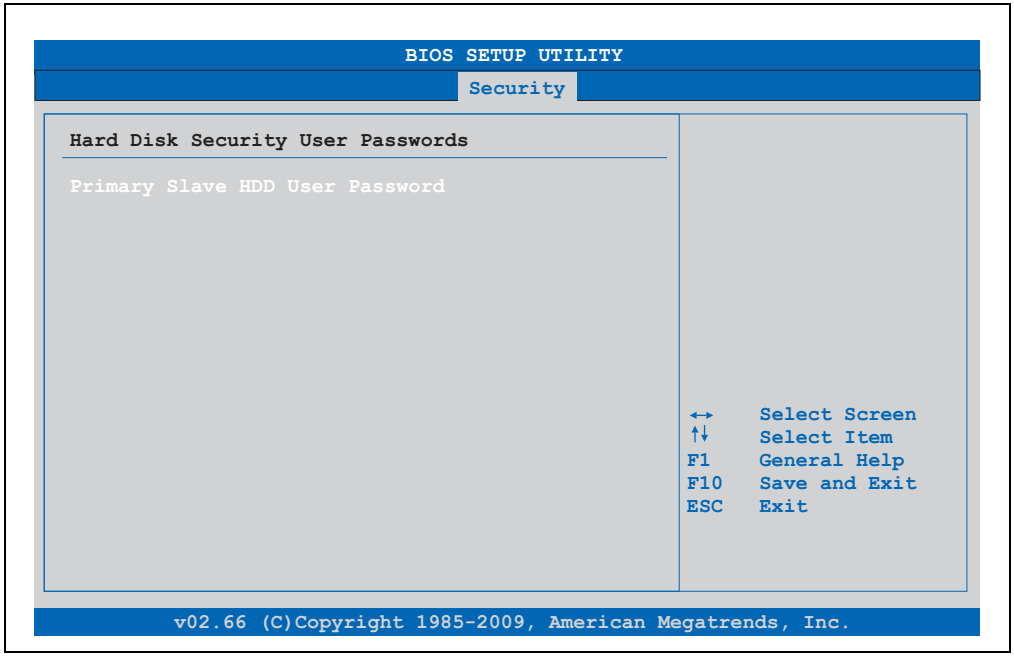


Figure 142: X945 Hard Disk Security User Password

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Primary slave HDD user password	This function makes it possible to use the user password to change or configure each hard drive without having to reboot the device. A user password allows the user to edit only certain BIOS settings.	Enter	Enter password.

Table 192: X945 Hard Disk Security User Password

1.6.2 Hard disk security master password

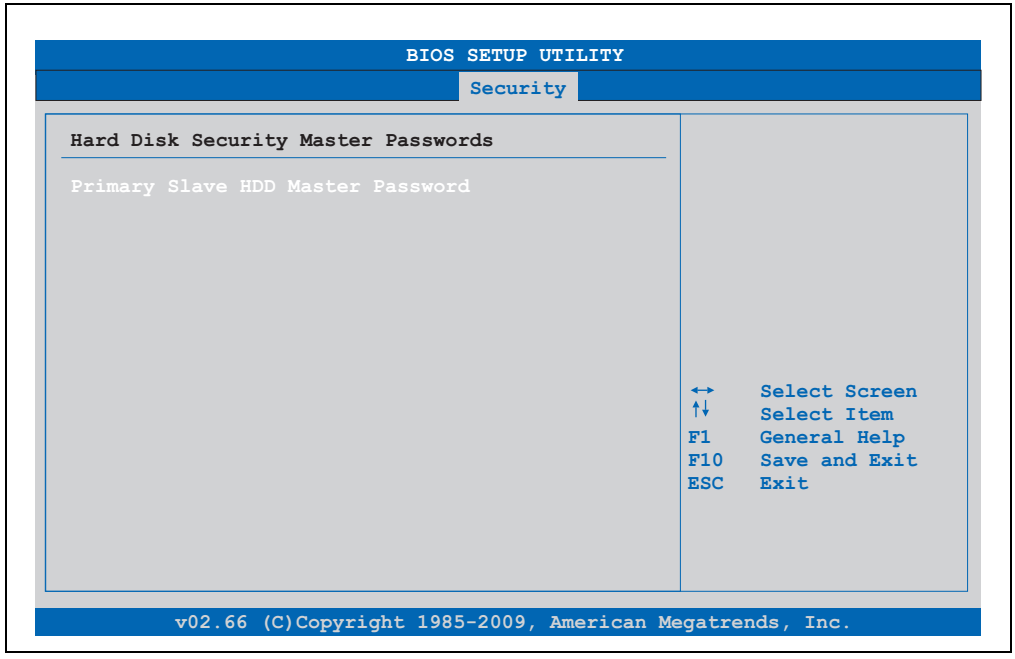


Figure 143: X945 Hard Disk Security Master Password

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Primary slave HDD master password	This function makes it possible to use the user password to change or configure each hard drive without having to reboot the device.	Enter	Enter password.

Table 193: X945 Hard Disk Security Master Password

1.7 Power

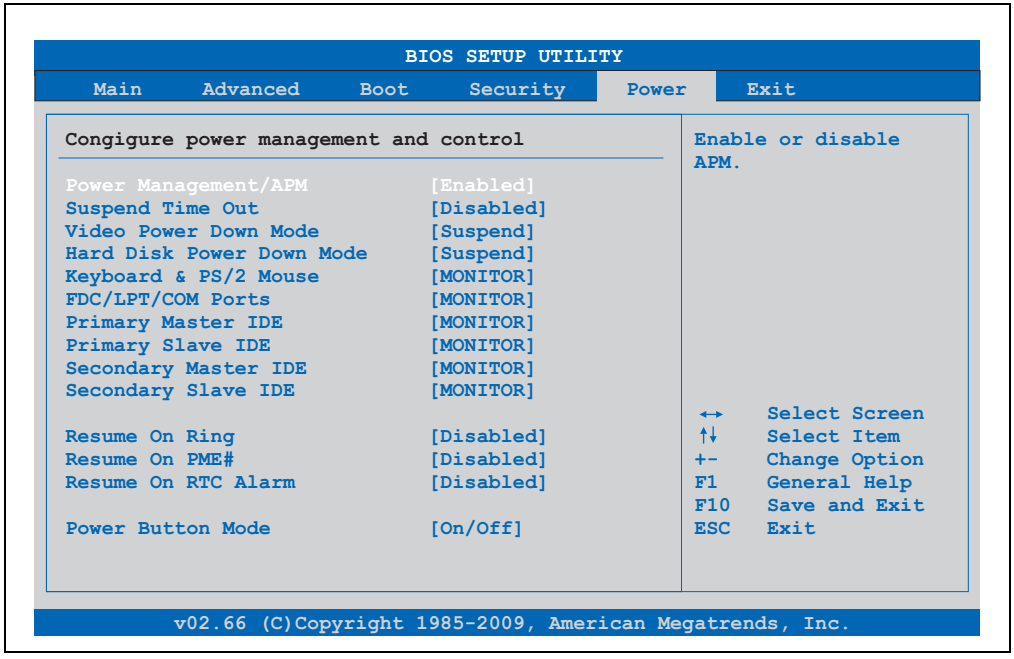


Figure 144: X945 Power Menu

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Power management/APM	This option switches the APM function on or off. This is an advanced plug & play and power management functionality.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Suspend time out	Using this option, you can configure how long the system stays inactive (all components but the CPU are shut off, if possible) before entering suspend mode.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		1 Min, 2 Min, 4 Min, 8 Min, 10 Min, 20 Min, 30 Min, 40 Min, 50 Min, 60 Min;	Manually setting the value.
Video power down mode	This option allows you to set the energy saving mode for the monitor.	Disabled	Do not switch off the monitor.
		Standby	Monitor goes to standby mode.
		Suspend	Monitor goes to suspend mode.
Hard disk power down mode	This option allows you to set the energy saving mode for the hard drive.	Disabled	Do not switch off the hard drive.
		Standby	Monitor goes to standby mode.
		Suspend	Hard drive goes to suspend mode.
Keyboard & PS/2 mouse	The monitoring of activities during power saving mode is determined here.	MONITOR	Keyboard or PS/2 mouse activities return the system to its normal state from a particular energy saving mode.
		IGNORE	Activities are ignored.

Table 194: X945 Power Menu setting options

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
FDC/LPT/COM ports	The monitoring of activities during power saving mode is determined here.	MONITOR	Activity on the parallel port, the serial 1&2 port, or the floppy port returns the system to its normal state from an energy saving mode.
		IGNORE	Activities are ignored.
Primary Master IDE	The monitoring of activities during power saving mode is determined here.	MONITOR	Activities in the IRQ of specific connections or devices return the system to its normal state from power saving mode.
		IGNORE	Activities are ignored.
Primary Slave IDE	The monitoring of activities during power saving mode is determined here.	MONITOR	Activities in the IRQ of specific connections or devices return the system to its normal state from power saving mode.
		IGNORE	Activities are ignored.
Secondary Master IDE	The monitoring of activities during power saving mode is determined here.	MONITOR	Activities in the IRQ of specific connections or devices return the system to its normal state from power saving mode.
		IGNORE	Activities are ignored.
Secondary Slave IDE	The monitoring of activities during power saving mode is determined here.	MONITOR	Activities in the IRQ of specific connections or devices return the system to its normal state from power saving mode.
		IGNORE	Activities are ignored.
Resume on ring	When the modem receives an incoming call, the PC is brought out of power saving mode.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Resume on PME#	With this option, you can switch the PME wakeup function on or off.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Resume on RTC alarm	With this option, you can activate the alarm and enter the date and time for the system start.	Disabled	Disables this function.
		Enabled	Enables this function.
Power button mode	This function determines the function of the power button.	On/Off	Power button switches on/off.
		Suspend	Suppresses the function.

Table 194: X945 Power Menu setting options (cont.)

1.8 Exit

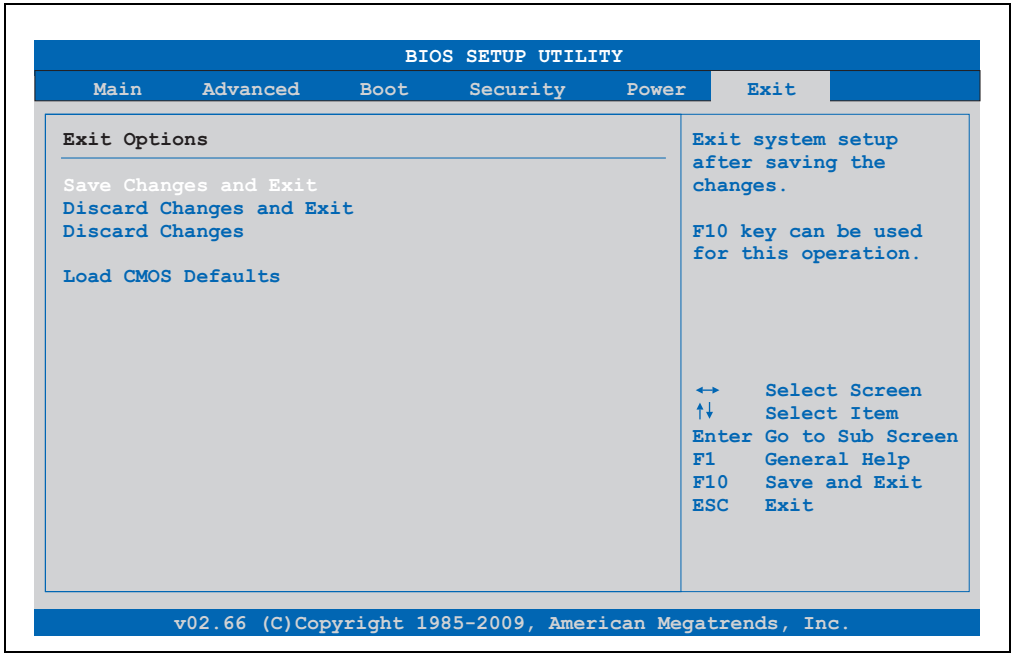


Figure 145: X945 Exit Menu

BIOS setting	Meaning	Setting options	Effect
Save changes and exit	BIOS setup is closed with this item. Changes made are saved in CMOS after confirmation, and the system is rebooted.	OK / cancel	
Discard changes and exit	With this item you can close BIOS setup without saving the changes made. The system is then rebooted.	OK / cancel	
Discard changes	In the event that settings were made which the user can no longer remember, changes can be reset as long as they haven't been saved.	OK / cancel	
Load CMOS defaults	This item loads the CMOS default values, which are defined by the DIP switch settings. These settings are loaded for all BIOS configurations.	OK / cancel	

Table 195: X945 Exit Menu setting options

1.9 BIOS default settings

If the function "load setup defaults" is chosen in the main BIOS setup menu, or if exit is selected (or <F9> is pressed) in the individual setup screens, the following BIOS default settings are the optimized values that will be used.

DIP switch position see Section 3 "Location of the DIP switch in APC620 system units" on page 343).

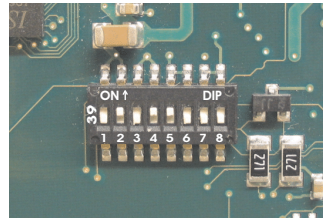


Figure 146: CMOS Profile Hex Switch

Information:

The switch position that is set upon delivery represents the optimum BIOS default values for this system and should therefore not be changed.

The first six DIP switches (1-6) are used to set the profiles. The rest (7,8) are reserved.

Profile number	Optimized for	DIP switch setting							
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7[1)]	8[1)]
Profile 0	Automation PC 620 system units 5PC600.SX01-00.	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	-	-
Profile 1	Reserved	On	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	-	-
Profile 2	Automation PC 620 system units 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX02-01, 5PC600.SF03-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 and 5PC600.SX05-01.	Off	On	Off	Off	Off	Off	-	-
Profile 3	Panel PC 700 system unit 5PC720.1043-00, 5PC720.1214-00, 5PC720.1505-00, 5PC720.1706-00, 5PC720.1906-00, 5PC781.1043-00, 5PC781.1505-00 and 5PC782.1043-00.	On	On	Off	Off	Off	Off	-	-
Profile 4	Panel PC 700 system unit 5PC720.1043-01, 5PC720.1214-01, 5PC720.1505-01 and 5PC720.1505-02.	Off	Off	On	Off	Off	Off	-	-
Profile 5	Automation PC 620 embedded system units 5PC600.SE00-00 und 5PC600.SE00-01.	On	Off	On	Off	Off	Off	-	-
Profile 6	Panel PC 700 system unit 5PC725.1505-00	Off	On	On	Off	Off	Off	-	-

Table 196: Profile overview

1) Reserved

The following pages provide an overview of the BIOS default settings for the different DIP switch position. Yellow highlighted settings are variations in the BIOS default profile (=profile 1).

1.9.1 Main

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
System time	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
System date	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
BIOS ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Processor	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
CPU frequency	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
System memory	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Product revision	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Serial number	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
BC Firmware rev.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
MAC Address (ETH1)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Boot counter	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Running time	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Table 197: X945 - Main profile setting overview

1.9.2 Advanced

ACPI Configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
ACPI Aware O/S	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
ACPI Version Features	ACPI v2.0	ACPI v2.0	ACPI v2.0	ACPI v2.0	ACPI v2.0	ACPI v2.0	ACPI v2.0	
ACPI APIC support	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Suspend mode	S1 (POS)	S1 (POS)	S1 (POS)	S1 (POS)	S1 (POS)	S1 (POS)	S1 (POS)	
USB Device Wakeup from S3/S4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Active cooling trip point	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Passive cooling trip point	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Critical trip point	105°C	105°C	105°C	105°C	105°C	105°C	105°C	

Table 198: X945 Advanced - ACPI Configuration Profile setting overview

PCI Configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Plug & Play O/S	Yes	**No**	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
PCI latency timer	64	64	64	64	64	64	64	
Allocate IRQ to PCI VGA	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Allocate IRQ to SMBUS HC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion								
IRQ3	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	
IRQ4	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	
IRQ5	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	**Allocated**	Available	
IRQ6	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	**Allocated**	Available	
IRQ7	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	**Allocated**	Available	
IRQ9	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	
IRQ10	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	
IRQ11	Available	**Allocated**	Available	**Allocated**	**Allocated**	Available	Available	
IRQ12	Available	**Allocated**	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	
IRQ14	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	Allocated	
IRQ15	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	
PCI Interrupt Routing								
PIRQ A (VGA)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
PIRQ B (AC97,INTD)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	**7**	Auto	
PIRQ C (PATA,INTC)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
PIRQ D (SATA,UHCI1,SMB)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
PIRQ E (ETH1)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
PIRQ F (INTA,ETH2)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	**5**	Auto	
PIRQ G (INTB)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	**6**	Auto	
PIRQ H (UHCI0,EHCI)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
1st Exclusive PCI	-	-	-	-	-	**5**	-	
2nd Exclusive PCI	-	-	-	-	-	**6**	-	
3rd Exclusive PCI	-	-	-	-	-	**7**	-	

Table 199: X945 Advanced - PCI Configuration Profile setting overview

Graphics configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Primary Video Device	Internal VGA	Internal VGA	Internal VGA	Internal VGA	Internal VGA	Internal VGA	Internal VGA	
Internal Graphics Mode Select	Enabled, 8MB	Enabled, 8MB	Enabled, 8MB	Enabled, 8MB	Enabled, 8MB	Enabled, 8MB	Enabled, 8MB	
DVMT Mode Select	DVMT Mode	DVMT Mode	DVMT Mode	DVMT Mode	DVMT Mode	DVMT Mode	DVMT Mode	
DVMT/FIXED Memory	128MB	128MB	128MB	128MB	128MB	128MB	128MB	
Boot Display Device	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
Always Try Auto Panel Detect	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	
Local Flat Panel Type	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
Local Flat Panel Scaling	Expand Text & Graphics	Expand Text & Graphics	Expand Text & Graphics	Expand Text & Graphics	Expand Text & Graphics	Expand Text & Graphics	Expand Text & Graphics	

Table 200: X945 Advanced - Graphics Configuration Profile setting overview

CPU configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Module Version	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Manufacturer	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Frequency	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
FSB speed	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
L1 cache	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
L2 cache	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Ratio Actual Value	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
MPS Revision	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	
Max CPUID Value Limit	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Execute-Disable Bit Capability	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Hyper Threading Technology	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Intel (R) SpeedStep (tm) tech	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Boot CPU Speed On AC	Maximum	Maximum	Maximum	Maximum	Maximum	Maximum	Maximum	
Intel(R) C-STATE tech	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Enhanced C-States	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	

Table 201: X945 Advanced - CPU Configuration Profile setting overview

Chipset configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
DRAM Frequency	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
Memory Hole	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
DIMM Thermal Control	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
DT in SPD	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
TS on DIMM	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
High Precision Event Timer	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
IOAPIC	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
APIC ACPI SCI IRQ	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
C4 On C3	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	

Table 202: X945 Advanced - Chipset Configuration Profile setting overview

I/O interface configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Onboard AC'97 Audio	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	**Disabled**	**Disabled**	
Onboard LAN (ETH1)	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Serial port 1 configuration	3F8/IRQ4	3F8/IRQ4	3F8/IRQ4	3F8/IRQ4	3F8/IRQ4	3F8/IRQ4	**Disabled**	
Serial port 2 configuration	2F8 / IRQ3	2F8 / IRQ3	2F8 / IRQ3	2F8 / IRQ3	2F8 / IRQ3	2F8 / IRQ3	2F8 / IRQ3	
Serial port 2 mode	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	
Parallel port address	378	378	378	378	378	378	**Disabled**	

Table 203: X945 Advanced - I/O Interface Configuration profile setting overview

Clock configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Spread spectrum	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	

Table 204: X945 Advanced - Clock Configuration Profile setting overview

IDE Configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
ATA/IDE Configuration	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible	
Legacy IDE Channels	PATA Only	PATA Only	PATA Only	PATA Only	PATA Only	PATA Only	PATA Only	
Hard disk write protect	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
PATA Detect Time Out (Sec)	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	

Table 205: X945 Advanced - IDE Configuration Profile setting overview

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
SATA Detect Time Out (Sec)	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
ATA(PI) 80Pin Cable Detection	Host & device	Host & device	Host & device	Host & device	Host & device	Host & device	Host & device	
Primary IDE master								
Type	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
LBA/Large mode	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
Block (multi-sector transfer)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
PIO mode	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
DMA mode	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
S.M.A.R.T.	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
32Bit data transfer	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Primary IDE slave								
Type	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
LBA/Large mode	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
Block (multi-sector transfer)	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
PIO mode	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
DMA mode	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
S.M.A.R.T.	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	
32Bit data transfer	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	

Table 205: X945 Advanced - IDE Configuration Profile setting overview (cont.)

USB configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
USB function	4 USB ports	4 USB ports	4 USB ports	4 USB ports	4 USB ports	**6 USB ports**	4 USB ports	
USB 2.0 controller	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Legacy USB support	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
USB Legacy POST-Always	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
USB keyboard legacy support	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
USB mouse legacy support	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
USB storage device support	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Port 64/60 emulation	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
USB 2.0 controller mode	HiSpeed	HiSpeed	HiSpeed	HiSpeed	HiSpeed	HiSpeed	HiSpeed	

Table 206: X945 Advanced - USB Configuration Profile setting overview

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
BIOS EHCI hand-off	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
USB beep message	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
USB stick default emulation	Hard disk	Hard disk	Hard disk	Hard disk	Hard disk	Hard disk	Hard disk	
USB mass storage reset delay	20 Sec	20 Sec	20 Sec	20 Sec	20 Sec	20 Sec	20 Sec	

Table 206: X945 Advanced - USB Configuration Profile setting overview (cont.)

Keyboard/mouse configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Boot-up Num-lock	On	On	On	On	On	On	On	
Typematic rate	Fast	Fast	Fast	Fast	Fast	Fast	Fast	
PS/2 mouse support	Disabled	**Enabled**	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	

Table 207: X945 Advanced Keyboard/Mouse Configuration profile setting overview

Remote access configuration

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Remote access	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Serial port BIOS update	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	

Table 208: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration profile setting overview

CPU board monitor

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Board temperature	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
CPU temperature	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
DIMM Environment Temp.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Fan1 Speed	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
VcoreA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
VcoreB	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
+3.3Vin	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
+5Vin	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
+5VSB	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
VRTC	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Table 209: X945 Advanced CPU Board Monitor profile setting overview

Baseboard/panel features

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
BIOS	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
MTCX PX32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
MTCX FPGA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Optimized ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Device ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Compatibility ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Serial number	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Product name	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
User serial ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Panel control								
Select panel number	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Version	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Brightness	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	
Temperature	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Fan speed	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Keys/LEDs	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Baseboard monitor								
CMOS battery	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
I/O	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Power supply								
Slide-in drive 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Slide-in drive 2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Case 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Case 2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Case 3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Case 4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
CPU	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Legacy devices								
COM C	Disabled	**Enabled**	Disabled	**Enabled**	**Enabled**	Disabled	**Enabled**	
Base I/O address	-	**3E8**	-	**3E8**	**3E8**	-	**3E8**	
Interrupt	-	**11**	-	**11**	**11**	-	**11**	
COM D	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Base I/O address	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Interrupt	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
COM E	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Base I/O address	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Table 210: X945 Advanced - Baseboard/Panel Features profile setting overview

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
BIOS	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
MTCX PX32	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
MTCX FPGA	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Optimized ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Device ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Compatibility ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Serial number	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Product name	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
User serial ID	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Interrupt	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
CAN	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Base I/O address	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Interrupt	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
ETH2 LAN Controller	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
ETH2 MAC Address	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Table 210: X945 Advanced - Baseboard/Panel Features profile setting overview (cont.)

1.9.3 Boot

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Boot priority selection	Type based	Type based	Type based	Type based	Type based	Type based	Type based	
1st boot device	Primary master	**Onboard LAN**	Primary master	Primary master	Primary master	Primary master	Primary master	
2nd boot device	Primary slave	**Primary master**	Primary slave	Primary slave	Primary slave	Primary slave	Primary slave	
3rd boot device	USB floppy	**Primary slave**	USB floppy	USB floppy	USB floppy	USB floppy	USB floppy	
4th boot device	USB removable device	**USB floppy**	USB removable device	USB removable device	USB removable device	USB removable device	USB removable device	
5th boot device	USB hard disk	**USB removable device**	USB hard disk	USB hard disk	USB hard disk	USB hard disk	USB hard disk	
6th boot device	USB CDROM	**USB HDD**	USB CDROM	USB CDROM	USB CDROM	USB CDROM	USB CDROM	
7th boot device	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
8th boot device	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Quick boot	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Quiet boot	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Automatic boot list retry	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	

Table 211: X945 Boot profile setting overview

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Add-on ROM display mode	Keep current	Keep current	Keep current	Keep current	Keep current	Keep current	Keep current	
Hold on errors	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Hit "DEL" Message Display	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Interrupt 19 capture	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
PXE Boot to LAN	Disabled	**Enabled**	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Power loss control	Turn on	Turn on	Turn on	Turn on	Turn on	Turn on	Turn on	

Table 211: X945 Boot profile setting overview

1.9.4 Security

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Supervisor password	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
User password	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Boot sector virus protection	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
HDD Security Freeze Lock	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Ask HDD Password on Every Boot	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	
Hard disk security user password	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Hard disk security master password	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
END-key loads CMOS defaults	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	

Table 212: X945 Security profile setting overview

1.9.5 Power

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Power management/APM	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	
Suspend time out	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Video power down mode	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	
Hard disk power down mode	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	Suspend	
Keyboard & PS/2 mouse	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	
FDC/LPT/COM ports	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	
Primary Master IDE	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	
Primary Slave IDE	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	
Secondary Master IDE	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	

Table 213: X945 Power profile setting overview

Setting / View	Profile 0	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3	Profile 4	Profile 5	Profile 6	My setting
Secondary Slave IDE	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	MONITOR	
Resume on ring	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Resume on PME#	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Resume on RTC alarm	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
Power button mode	On/Off	On/Off	On/Off	On/Off	On/Off	On/Off	On/Off	

Table 213: X945 Power profile setting overview

1.10 BIOS Error signals (beep codes)

While the Automation PC 620 is booting, the following messages and errors can occur with BIOS. These errors are signaled by different beeping codes.

1.10.1 BIOS X945

Beeping code	Meaning	Necessary user action
1 x short	Memory refresh failed.	Load BIOS defaults. In the event that the error persists, send industrial PC to B&R for testing.
2 x short	Parity error: POST error (error in one of the hardware testing procedures)	Load BIOS defaults. In the event that the error persists, send industrial PC to B&R for testing.
3 x short	Base 64 KB memory failure: Basic memory defect, RAM error within the initial 64 KB.	Check the placement of the inserted card. In the event that the error persists, send industrial PC to B&R for testing.
4 x short	Timer not operational: System timer.	Send industrial PC to B&R for checking.
5 x short	Processor error: Processor defect.	Send industrial PC to B&R for checking.
6 x short	8042 gate A20 failure: Keyboard controller defect (block 8042/ A20 gate). Processor cannot switch to protected mode.	Send industrial PC to B&R for checking.
7 x short	Processor exception interrupt error: Virtual mode exception error (CPU generated an interrupt error.	Send industrial PC to B&R for checking.
8 x short	Display memory read/write error: Video memory not accessible; graphic card defect or not built in (no fatal error).	Check inserted graphic card position and eventually exchange. In the event that the error persists, send industrial PC to B&R for testing.

Table 214: BIOS post code messages BIOS X945

1.11 Distribution of resources

1.11.1 RAM address assignment

RAM address	Resource
000000h - 0003FFh	Interrupt vectors
000400h - 09FBFFh	MS-DOS program area
09FC00h - 09FFFFh	Advanced BIOS data
0A0000h - 0CFFFFh	VGA BIOS and memory
0D0000h - 0DFFFFh	Available
0E0000h - 0FFFFFh	System BIOS (AMI)
100000h - (TOM[1] -8MB-192kB)	SDRAM
(TOM-8MB-192kB) - (TOM-192kB)	VGA frame buffer[2]
(TOM-192kB) - TOM	ACPI reclaim, MPS and NVS area[3]

Table 215: RAM address assignment

1) T.O.M. = Top of memory = max. installed DRAM.
2) The VGA frame buffer can be reduced to 1 MB in the setup.
3) Only if *ACPI Aware OS* is set to *YES* in the setup.

1.11.2 DMA channel assignment

DMA channel	Resource
0	Available
1	Available
2	Floppy disk drive (FDC)
3	LPT (ECP) [1]
4	Reserved (Cascade DMA Controller)
5	Available
6	Available
7	Available

Table 216: DMA channel assignment

1) Not available if the parallel port is not used in ECP mode.

1.11.3 I/O address assignment

I/O address	Resource
000h - 01Fh	DMA controller 1
020h - 03Fh	Interrupt controller 1
040h - 05Fh	Timer
060h - 06Fh	Keyboard controller
070h - 071h	Real-time clock, NMI mask, CMOS
080h	Debug port (POST code)
081h - 09Fh	Page register - DMA controller
0A0h - 0BFh	Interrupt controller 2
0C0h - 0DFh	DMA controller 2
0F0h - 0FFh	FPU
170h - 177h	Secondary Hard Disk IDE channel
1F0h - 1F7h	Primary Hard Disk IDE channel
238h - 023F	COM5
278h - 27Fh	Hardware Security Key (LPT2)
2E8h - 2EFh	COM4
2F8h - 2FFh	COM2
376h - 376h	Secondary Hard Disk IDE channel
378h - 37Fh	LPT1 (printer connection)
384h - 385h	CAN controller
3B0h - 3BBh	VGA controller
3BCh - 3BFh	LPT3
3C0h - 3DFh	VGA controller
3E8h - 3EFh	COM3
3F6h - 3F6h	Primary Hard Disk IDE channel
3F0h - 3F7h	FDD controller
3F8h - 3FFh	COM1
LPT1 + 400h	ECP Port, LPT+400h
CF8h - CFBh	PCI config address register
CFCh - CFFh	PCI config data register
4100h - 417Fh	MTCX
FF00h - FF07h	IDE bus master register

Table 217: I/O address assignment

1.11.4 Interrupt assignments in PCI mode

IRQ		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	NMI	NONE
System timer		●																	
Keyboard			●																
IRQ cascade				●															
COM1 (Serial port A)					❍	●													
COM2 (Serial port B)					●	❍													
LPT1					❍	❍	❍	❍	❍		❍	❍	❍	❍		❍			●
LPT2					❍	❍	❍	❍	❍		❍	❍	❍	❍		❍			●
LPT3					❍	❍	❍	❍	❍		❍	❍	❍	❍		❍			●
PS/2 mouse														●					
ACPI[1)]											●								
FDD								●											❍
Real-time clock										●									
Coprocessor (FPU)															●				
Primary IDE channel																●			
Secondary IDE channel																	❍		
B&R	COM3 (COM C)				❍	❍	❍		❍			❍	❍	❍					●
	COM4 (COM D)				❍	❍	❍		❍			❍	❍	❍					●
	COM5 (COM E)				❍	❍	❍		❍			❍	❍	❍					●
	CAN											❍						❍	●

Table 218: IRQ interrupt assignments in PCI mode

1) **A**dvanced **C**onfiguration and **P**ower **I**nterface.

● ... Default setting
❍ ... Optional setting

1.11.5 Interrupt assignments in APIC mode

A total of 23 IRQs are available in the APIC mode (**A**dvanced **P**rogrammable **I**nterrupt **C**ontroller). The activation of this option is only effective if it takes place before the operating system (Windows XP) is activated. There are then 23 IRQs available.

IRQ		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	NMI	NONE
System timer		●																									
Keyboard			●																								
IRQ cascade				●																							
COM1 (Serial port A)					❍	●																					
COM2 (Serial port B)					●	❍																					
LPT1					❍	❍	❍	❍	❍		❍	❍	❍	❍		❍											●
LPT2					❍	❍	❍	❍	❍		❍	❍	❍	❍		❍											●
PS/2 mouse														●													
ACPI[1)]											●																
FDD								●																			❍
Real-time clock										●																	
Coprocessor (FPU)															●												
Primary IDE channel																●											
Secondary IDE channel																	❍										
B&R	COM3 (COM C)				❍	❍	❍		❍			❍	❍	❍													●
	COM4 (COM D)				❍	❍	❍		❍			❍	❍	❍													●
	COM5 (COM E)				❍	❍	❍		❍			❍	❍	❍													●
	CAN											❍														❍	●
PIRQ A [2)]																		●									
PIRQ B [3)]																			●								
PIRQ C [4)]																				●							
PIRQ D [5)]																					●						
PIRQ E [6)]																						●					
PIRQ F[7)]																							●				
PIRQ G[8)]																								●			
PIRQ H [9)]																									●		

Table 219: IRQ interrupt assignments in APIC mode

1) **A**dvanced **C**onfiguration and **P**ower **I**nterface.
2) PIRQ A: Graphics controller.
3) PIRQ B: INTD + AC97 audio controller.
4) PIRQ C: INTC + Native IDE.
5) PIRQ D: USB UHCI controller #1 + SM bus.
6) PIRQ E: LAN controller (ETH1).
7) PIRQ F: INTA + ETH2
8) PIRQ G: INTB
9) PIRQ H: USB EHCI controller + UHCI0.

● ... Default setting
❍ ... Optional setting

The PCI resources are assigned to fixed IRQ lines when the APIC function is enabled. The following image shows the connections to the individual PCI slots.

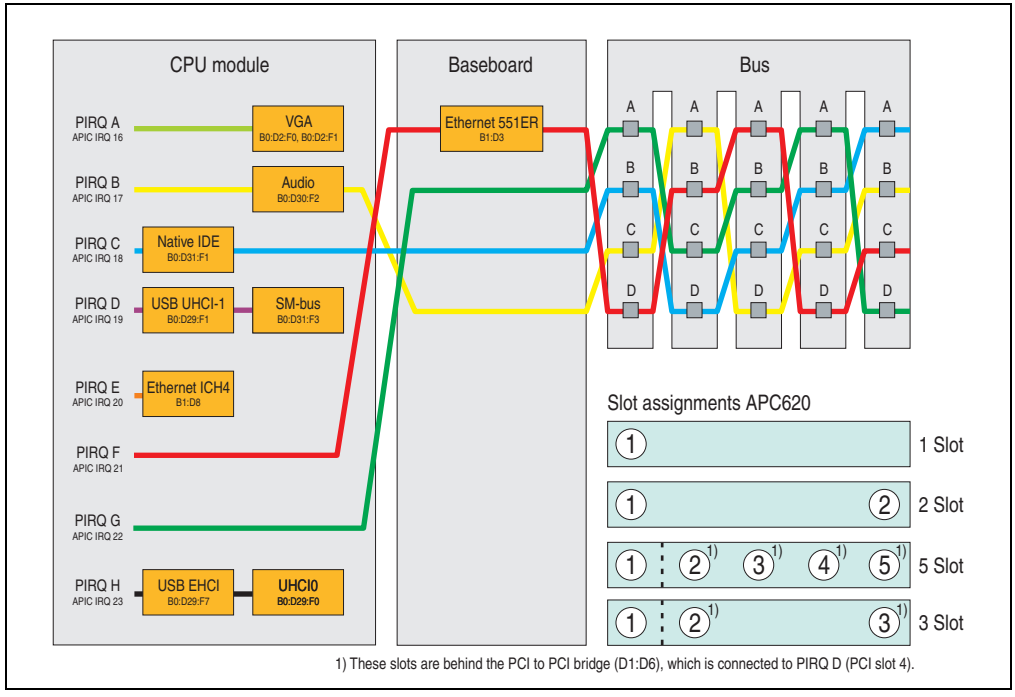


Figure 147: PCI Routing with activated APIC CPU board X945

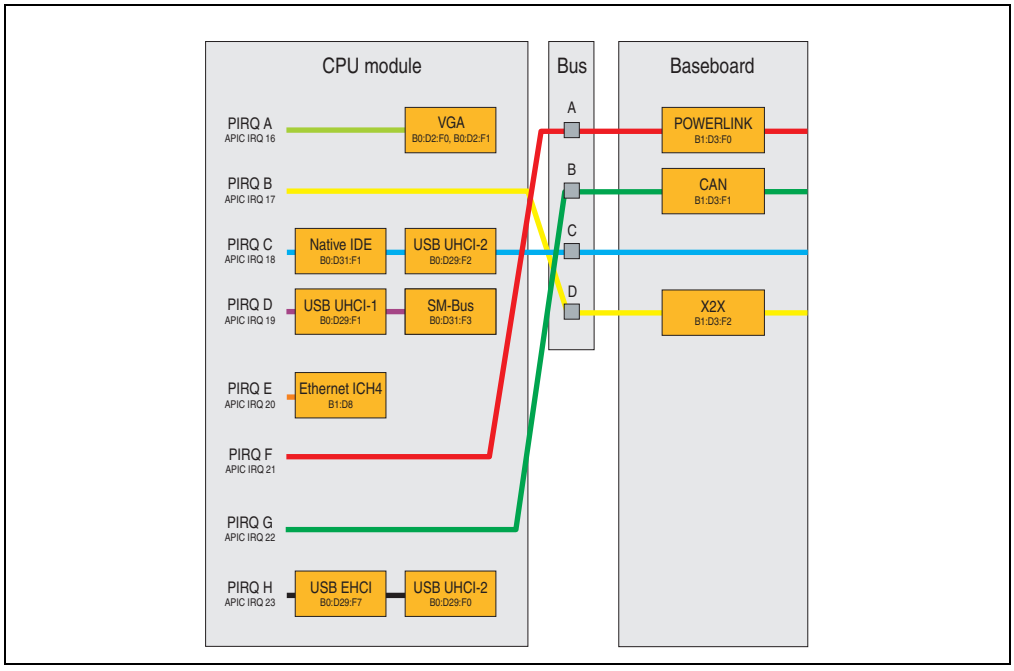


Figure 148: PCI Routing with activated APIC CPU board X945 on the APC620e

1.11.6 Inter-IC (I²C) bus

I²C address	Resource	Note
A0h	EEPROM	EEPROM for CMOS data - cannot be used
B0h	Reserved	Cannot be used
58h	Reserved	Cannot be used

Table 220: Inter-IC (I²C) bus resources

1.11.7 System Management (SM) bus

SM Bus address	SM device	Note
12h	SMART_CHARGER	
14h	SMART_SELECTOR	
16h	SMART_BATTERY	
D2h	Clock Generator	

Table 221: Inter-IC (I²C) bus resources

2. Upgrade information

Warning!

The BIOS and firmware on APC620 systems must be kept up to date. New versions can be downloaded from the B&R homepage (www.br-automation.com).

2.1 BIOS upgrade

2.1.1 Requirements

The following peripheral devices are needed for a software upgrade:

- USB floppy drive or USB flash drive
- 1.44 MB HDD diskette(s) (max. 3 diskettes)
- PS/2 or USB keyboard
- B&R upgrade software (**www.br-automation.com**)

2.1.2 What information do I need?

Information:

Individually saved BIOS settings are deleted when upgrading the BIOS.

Before you begin the upgrade, it helps to determine the various software versions.

Which BIOS version and firmware are already installed on the APC620?

This information can be found on the same BIOS setup page for both the X945 CPU boards:

- After switching on the APC620, you can get to the BIOS Setup by pressing "F2" or "DEL".
- From the BIOS main menu "advanced" (top), select "baseboard/panel features" (bottom):

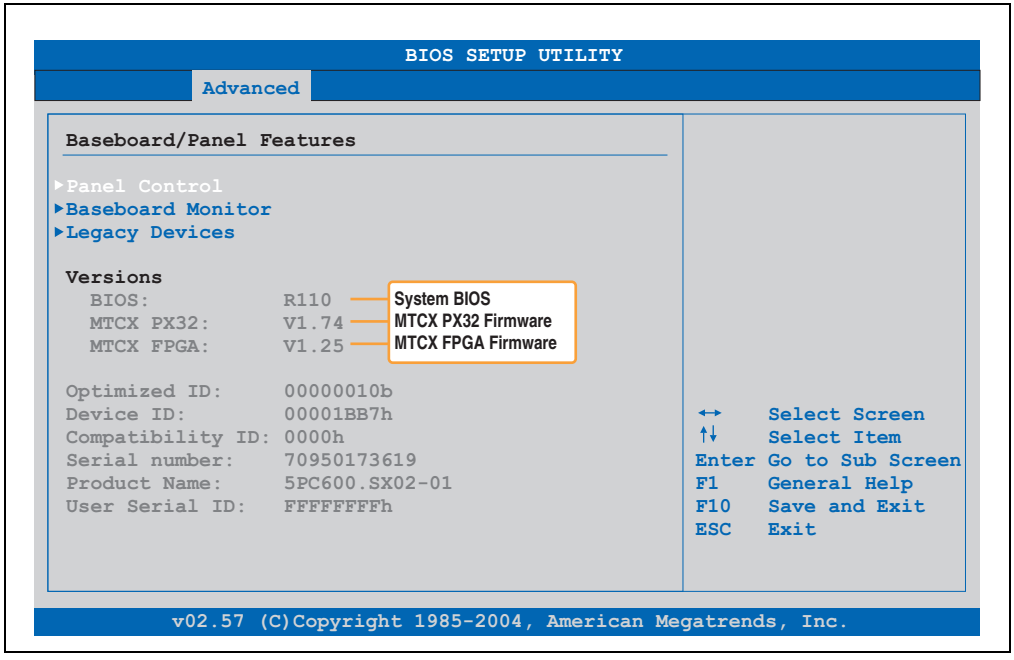


Figure 149: Software versions

Which firmware is installed on the Automation Panel Link transceiver/receiver?

This information can be found on the following BIOS setup page:

- After switching on the APC620, you can get to the BIOS Setup by pressing "F2" or "DEL".
- From the BIOS main menu "advanced" (top), select "baseboard/panel features" (bottom) and then "panel control":

Information:

The version can only be shown if an Automation Panel with Automation Panel Link SDL transceiver (5DLSDL.1000-01) and Automation Panel Link SDL receiver (5DLSDL.1000-00) is connected.

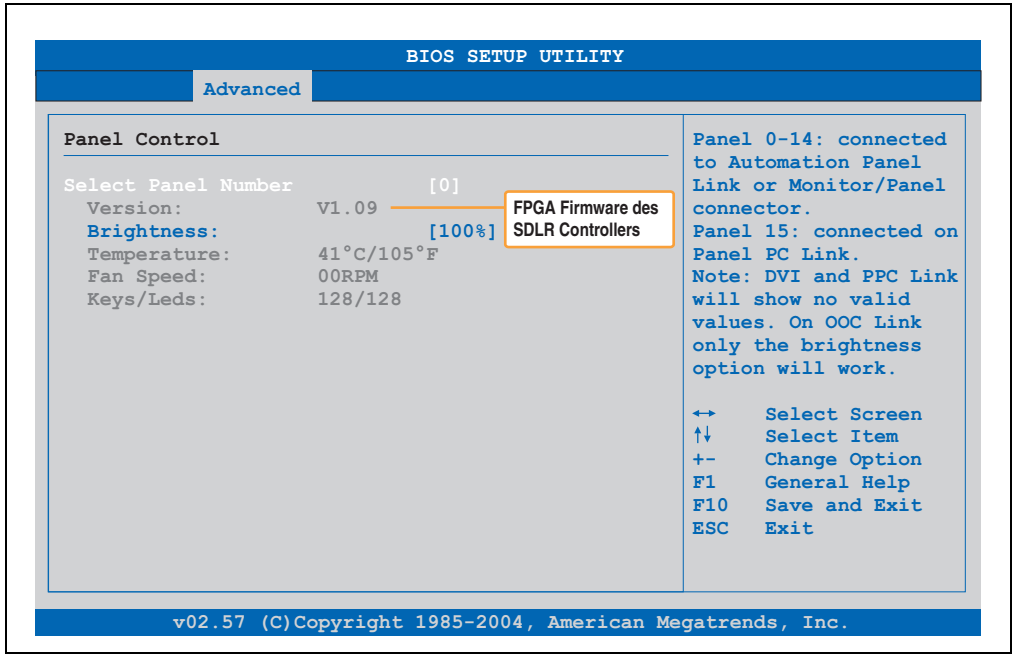


Figure 150: Firmware version of Automation Panel Link SDL transceiver/receiver

2.1.3 Upgrade BIOS for X945

- Download and unzip the zip file from the B&R homepage.
- Copy the files to a MS-DOS startup disk or USB stick (see the section 2.3 "Creating an MS-DOS boot diskette in Windows XP" on page 337 for information about creating a bootable disk or section "Creating a bootable USB flash drive" on page 432 about creating a bootable USB Memory stick).
- Insert the diskette in the USB floppy drive or the USB stick in the USB port and reboot the PPC700.
- The following boot menu will be shown after startup:

```
1. Upgrade AMI BIOS for X945/N270 (5PC600.X945-xx)

2. Exit to MS-DOS
```

Concerning point 1:
BIOS is automatically upgraded (default after 5 seconds).

Concerning point 2:
Return to the shell (MS-DOS).

- The system must be rebooted after a successful upgrade.

Information:

After the system restart, the warning "CMOS checksum BAD" is displayed, but BIOS boots through it. The setup can be opened using the "Del" key and the setup defaults must be loaded again and saved using either the "F9" key or the menu item "Exit" - "Load CMOS defaults".

2.1.4 Windows XP Embedded and BIOS upgrade

If the following error message appears after upgrading BIOS:

```
"Copy Error"

"Setup cannot copy the file Audio3d.dll"
```

then the audio driver must be reinstalled.

To do this, use the audio driver from the B&R Homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

During the installation of the audio driver, the following 2 files must be manually selected from the following directories.

ksuser.dll in the directory ...\Windows\system32

ks.sys in the directory ...\Windows\system32\drivers

2.2 Upgrading the firmware

With the APC620 / Panel PC firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT), the firmware of a number of controllers (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT, UPS) can be updated, depending on the construction of the APC620 system.

2.2.1 Procedure

- Download and unzip the zip file from the B&R homepage.
- Copy the files to a MS-DOS startup disk (see the section 2.3 "Creating an MS-DOS boot diskette in Windows XP" on page 337 for information about creating a bootable disk or Appendix A, section "Creating a bootable USB flash drive" on page 432 about creating a bootable USB Memory stick).
- Insert the diskette in the USB floppy drive or the USB flash drive in the USB port and reboot the APC620.
- The boot menu is shown after startup

Information:

- **The following boot menu options including descriptions are based on version 1.27 of the APC620 / Panel PC Firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) disk. In some cases, these descriptions might not match the version you are currently using.**

Boot menu options:

```
1. Upgrade MTCX (APC620/PPC700) PX32 and FPGA

2. Upgrade SDLT (APC620) only

3. Upgrade SDLR (AP800/AP900) on monitor/panel

   3.1 Upgrade SDLR on AP 0 (AP800/AP900)

   3.2 Upgrade SDLR on AP 1 (AP800/AP900)

   3.3 Upgrade SDLR on AP 2 (AP800/AP900)

   3.4 Upgrade SDLR on AP 3 (AP800/AP900)

   3.5 Upgrade all SDR (AP800/AP900)

   3.6 Return to main menu

4. Upgrade SDLR (AP800/AP900) on AP link slot

   4.1 Upgrade SDLR on AP 8 (AP800/AP900)

   4.2 Upgrade SDLR on AP 9 (AP800/AP900)
```

```
   4.3 Upgrade SDLR on AP 10 (AP800/AP900)

   4.4 Upgrade SDLR on AP 11 (AP800/AP900)

   4.5 Upgrade all SDLR (AP800/AP900)

   4.6 Return to main menu

5. Upgrade add-on UPS (firmware and battery settings)

   5.1 Upgrade add-on UPS firmware (5AC600.UPSI-00)

   5.2 Upgrade battery settings (5AC600.UPSB-00)

   5.3 Return to main menu

6. Exit
```

Concerning point 1:
Automatically upgrade PX32 and FPGA for MTCX (default after 5 seconds).

Concerning point 2:
The FPGA of the SDLT controller on the AP Link slot is automatically updated.

Concerning point 3:
A submenu is opened for upgrading the SDLR controller on the Monitor/Panel plug.

3.1. Upgrade SDLR on AP 0 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 0.

3.2 Upgrade SDLR on AP 1 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 1.

3.3 Upgrade SDLR on AP 2 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 2.

3.4 Upgrade SDLR on AP 3 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 3.

3.5. Upgrade all SDLR (AP800/AP900)
All SDLR controllers are automatically updated on all Automation Panels on the Monitor/Panel. (by default, after 5 seconds).

3.6. Return to main menu
Returns to the main menu.

Concerning point 4:
A submenu is opened for upgrading the SDLR controller on the AP Link slot.

4.1. Upgrade SDLR on AP 8 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 8.

4.2. Upgrade SDLR on AP 9 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 9.

4.3 Upgrade SDLR on AP 10 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 10.

4.4 Upgrade SDLR on AP 11 (AP800/AP900)
The SDLR controller is automatically updated on Automation Panel 11.

4.5 Upgrade all SDLR (AP800/AP900)
All SDLR controllers are automatically updated on all Automation Panels on the AP Link slot (by default, after 5 seconds).

4.6 Return to main menu
Returns to the main menu.

Concerning point 5:
The submenu for the add-on UPS firmware and upgrade and the battery settings upgrade is opened - this is irrelevant for PPC700 systems.

Concerning point 6:
Return to the shell (MS-DOS).

Information:

The system must be powered off and on again after a successful controller upgrade.

2.2.2 Possible upgrade problems and version dependencies

1. The SDLR firmware can only be updated if an Automation Panel with Automation Panel Link Transceiver (5DLSDL.1000-01) and Automation Panel Link Receiver (5DLSDL.1000-00) is connected. This update is only permitted in an office environment (clean environment - no disturbances) because a software error in versions older than V0.03 can cause errors. This error can cause the Automation Panel to remain off after an update. If this error occurs, the Automation Panel Link Transceiver (5DLSDL.1000-01) or Automation Panel Link Receiver (5DLSDL.1000-00) must be exchanged or sent in for repair.

2. Daisy Chain operation of 2 Automation Panel 900 units is supported starting with SDLR version V00.08 or V01.01 and MTCX PX32 V01.33 and MTCX FPGA V01.11 (contents of the MTCX upgrade disk V01.04).

3. Operation of an SDLT adapter in the AP Link slot is supported starting with MTCX PX32 V01.50 and MTCX FPGA V01.12 (contents of the MTCX upgrade disk V01.07).

4. When using a functional SDL connection with an installed SDLR version V00.03 or lower, the SDLR must first be updated to version V00.05 or higher. Only then can the MTCX PX32 and FPGA be updated. If the MTCX PX32 and FPGA is updated first, then the SDLR FW can no longer be updated.

5. Starting with SDLR version V00.05 or V01.01, the MTCX PX32 must be higher than or equal to V01.23 and the MTCX FPGA must higher than or equal to V01.09. Otherwise, full SDL functionality is not possible.

6. SDL with equalizer is first supported starting with SDLR version V01.04 and MTCX PX32 version V01.55 and MTCX FPGA version V01.15. An SDLT with version V00.02 is required on the AP Link slot (contents of the MTCX upgrade disk V01.10). SDL with equalizer allows longer distances (max. 40m) depending on the AP being used. Detailed information for this can be found in the APC620 or PPC700 user's manual.

7. Automation Panel Link transceivers (5DLSDL.1000-01) or Automation Panel Link receivers (5DLSDL.1000-00) with a Firmware version lower than or equal to V00.10 can no longer be combined with Automation Panel Link transceivers (5DLSDL.1000-01) or Automation Panel Link receivers (5DLSDL.1000-00) with a Firmware higher than or equal to V01.04. Daisy Chain mode is not possible with such a combination.

8. The menu items "2. Upgrade MTCX PX32 only" and "3. Upgrade MTCX FPGA only" have been removed from the boat menu starting with MTCX Upgrade Disk V01.13.

9. The menu items "3. Upgrade SDLR on Monitor/Panel" and "4. Upgrade SDLR on AP Link Slot" (starting with MTCX upgrade disk V01.13) for upgrading the Automation Panel 800 series have been expanded.

10. The ID AP8H was changed to SDL8 (AP800 series).

11. The menu item "5. Upgrade add-on UPS (firmware and battery settings)", starting with MTCX upgrade disk V01.16, has been inserted.

12. Starting with MTCX upgrade disk V01.16, all firmware files are equipped with an XML header; as a result, the name assignment has changed (compatible with Automation Studio and Automation Runtime).

13. If a UPS (e.g. 5AC600.UPSI-00) + battery unit (e.g. 5AC600.UPSB-00) is connected to the system and operable, then after an upgrade of the MTCX or SDLT you must either disconnect the battery or push the Power button (to put the system in Standby mode), before executing the required power off/on. If not, the firmware upgrade will not work because the UPS buffers the system.

14. Starting with UPS firmware V01.10, the APC620/PPC700 ADI driver + Control Center V01.80 should be used in order to configure the new options "configurable LowBatteryShutdownTime" and UL compliant "OverCurrentEnable".

15. The IF option Add-On Module CAN with SJA1000 (5AC600.CANI-01) is only supported starting with MTCX FPGA V01.23 (MTCX Upgrade DISK V01.24).

2.3 Creating an MS-DOS boot diskette in Windows XP

- Place an empty 1.44 MB HD diskette in the disk drive
- Open Windows Explorer
- Right-click on the 3½" floppy icon and select **"Format..."**.

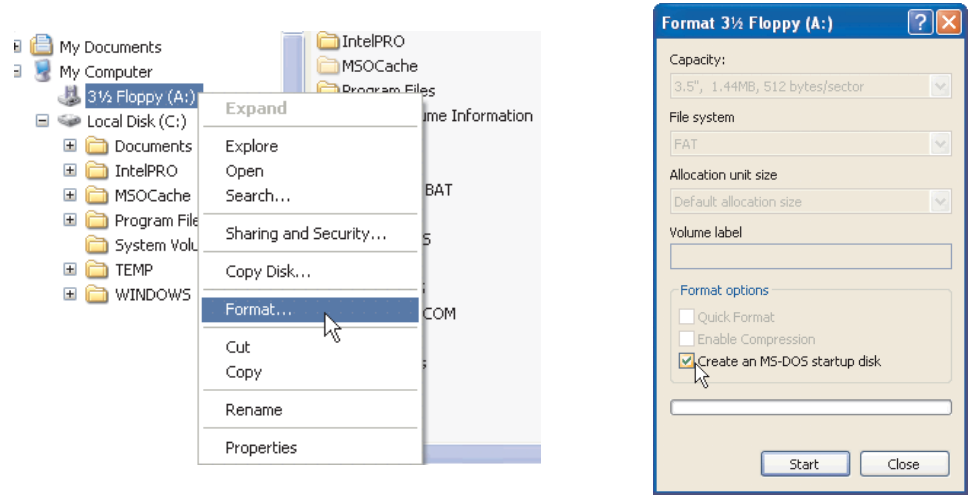


Figure 151: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 1

- Then select the checkbox **"Create an MS-DOS startup disk"**, press **"Start"** and acknowledge the warning message with "OK".

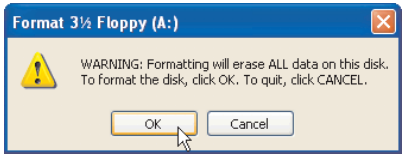


Figure 152: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 2

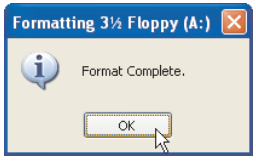
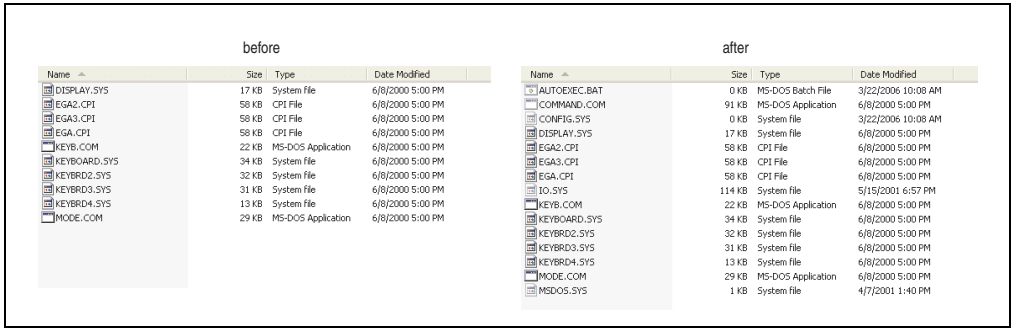


Figure 153: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 3

After creating the startup disk, some of the files must be deleted because of the size of the update.

When doing this, all files (hidden, system files, etc.) must be shown on the diskette.

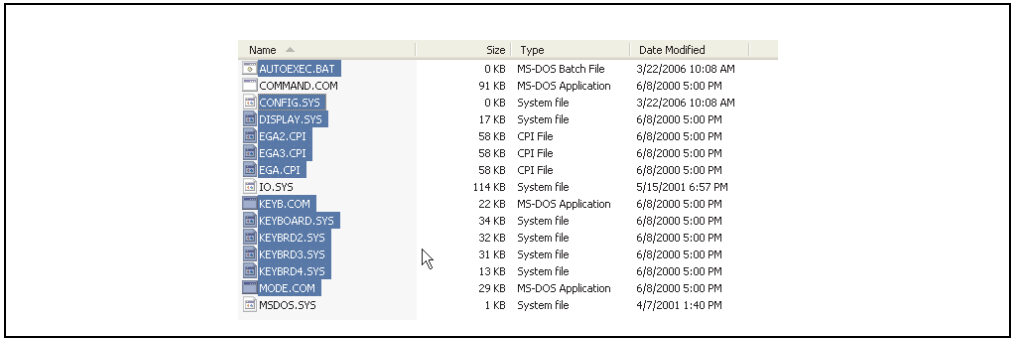
In Explorer, go to the "tools" menu, select "folder options..." and open the "view" tab - now deactivate the option "hide protected operating system files (recommended)" (activated as default) and deactivate the option "show hidden files and folders".



Name	Size	Type	Date Modified
DISPLAY.SYS	17 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA2.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA3.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYB.COM	22 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBOARD.SYS	34 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD2.SYS	32 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD3.SYS	31 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD4.SYS	13 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
MODE.COM	29 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM

Name	Size	Type	Date Modified
AUTOEXEC.BAT	0 KB	MS-DOS Batch File	3/22/2006 10:08 AM
COMMAND.COM	91 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
CONFIG.SYS	0 KB	System file	3/22/2006 10:08 AM
DISPLAY.SYS	17 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA2.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA3.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
IO.SYS	114 KB	System file	5/15/2001 6:57 PM
KEYB.COM	22 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBOARD.SYS	34 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD2.SYS	32 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD3.SYS	31 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD4.SYS	13 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
MODE.COM	29 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
MSDOS.SYS	1 KB	System file	4/7/2001 1:40 PM

Figure 154: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 4



Name	Size	Type	Date Modified
AUTOEXEC.BAT	0 KB	MS-DOS Batch File	3/22/2006 10:08 AM
COMMAND.COM	91 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
CONFIG.SYS	0 KB	System file	3/22/2006 10:08 AM
DISPLAY.SYS	17 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA2.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA3.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
EGA.CPI	58 KB	CPI File	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
IO.SYS	114 KB	System file	5/15/2001 6:57 PM
KEYB.COM	22 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBOARD.SYS	34 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD2.SYS	32 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD3.SYS	31 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
KEYBRD4.SYS	13 KB	System file	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
MODE.COM	29 KB	MS-DOS Application	6/8/2000 5:00 PM
MSDOS.SYS	1 KB	System file	4/7/2001 1:40 PM

Figure 155: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 5

Now all files (marked) except Command.com, IO.sys and MSDOS.sys can be deleted.

2.4 Creating a bootable USB flash drive for B&R upgrade files

When used in connection with a B&R industrial PC, it is possible to upgrade BIOS from one of the USB flash drives available from B&R. To do this, the USB flash drive must be prepared accordingly. This is done with the B&R Embedded OS Installer, which can be downloaded for free from the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

2.4.1 Requirements

The following peripherals are required for creating a bootable USB flash drive:

- B&R USB flash drive
- B&R Industrial PC
- USB Media Drive
- B&R Embedded OS Installer (V3.00 or higher)

2.4.2 Procedure

- Connect the USB flash drive to the PC.
- If the drive list is not refreshed automatically, the list must be updated using the command **Drives > Refresh**.
- Mark the desired USB flash drive in the drive list.
- Change to the **Action** tab and select **Install a B&R Update to a USB flash drive** as type of action.
- Enter the path to the MS-DOS operating system files. If the files are part of a ZIP archive, then click on the button **By ZIP file...**. If the files are stored in a directory on the hard drive, then click on the button **By folder...**.
- In the **B&R Upgrade** text box, it's also possible to enter the path to the ZIP file for the B&R Upgrade Disk and select the file.
- Click on the **Start action** button in the toolbar.

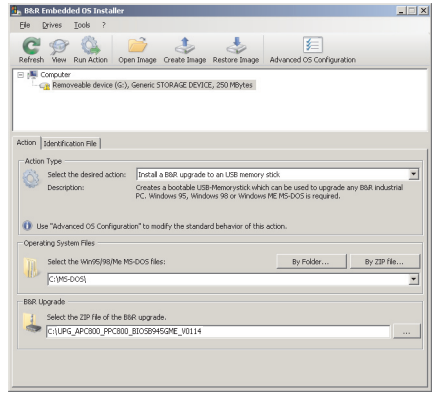


Figure 156: Creating a USB flash drive for B&R upgrade files

2.4.3 Where do I get MS-DOS?

Information concerning creating an MS-DOS boot diskette can be found in section 2.3 "Creating an MS-DOS boot diskette in Windows XP" on page 337. Then the files from the diskette are to be copied to your hard drive.

2.5 Creating a bootable CompactFlash card for B&R upgrade files

When used in connection with a B&R industrial PC, it is possible to upgrade BIOS from one of the CompactFlash cards available from B&R. To do this, the CompactFlash card must be prepared accordingly. This is done with the B&R Embedded OS Installer, which can be downloaded for free from the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

2.5.1 Requirements

The following peripherals are required for creating a bootable CompactFlash card:

- CompactFlash card
- B&R Industrial PC
- B&R Embedded OS Installer (V3.10 or higher)

2.5.2 Procedure

- Insert the CompactFlash card in the CF slot on the industrial PC.
- If the drive list is not refreshed automatically, the list must be updated using the command **Drives > Refresh**.
- Select the desired CompactFlash card from the drive list.
- Change to the **Action** tab and select **Install a B&R Update to a CompactFlash card** as type of action.
- Enter the path to the MS-DOS operating system files. If the files are part of a ZIP archive, then click on the button **By ZIP file...**. If the files are stored in a directory on the hard drive, then click on the button **By folder...**.
- In the **B&R Upgrade** text box, it's also possible to enter the path to the ZIP file for the B&R Upgrade Disk and select the file.
- Click on the **Start action** button in the toolbar.

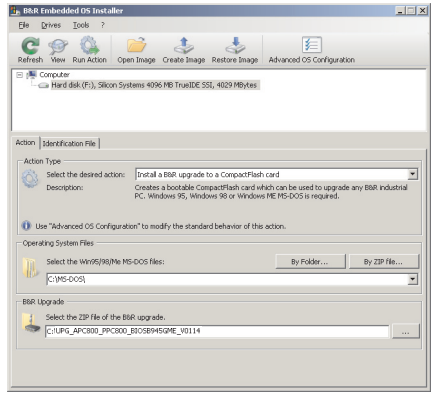


Figure 157: Creating a CompactFlash card for B&R upgrade files

2.5.3 Where do I get MS-DOS?

Information concerning creating an MS-DOS boot diskette can be found in section 2.3 "Creating an MS-DOS boot diskette in Windows XP" on page 337. Then the files from the diskette are to be copied to your hard drive.

2.6 Upgrade problems

Potential upgrade problems are listed in the Liesmich.txt or Readme.txt files on the upgrade disks.

3. Location of the DIP switch in APC620 system units

Warning!

The following procedure is only permitted with the power switched off and the supply voltage disconnected!

To get to the DIP switches, it is necessary to open the front cover. To do this, loosen the five Torx screws (T10) marked and pull the cover off towards the front. Then the DIP switches can be accessed at the location marked in yellow. The setting can now be made using a pointed object. If the system has a slide-in drive, it must be removed first to get to the DIP switches.

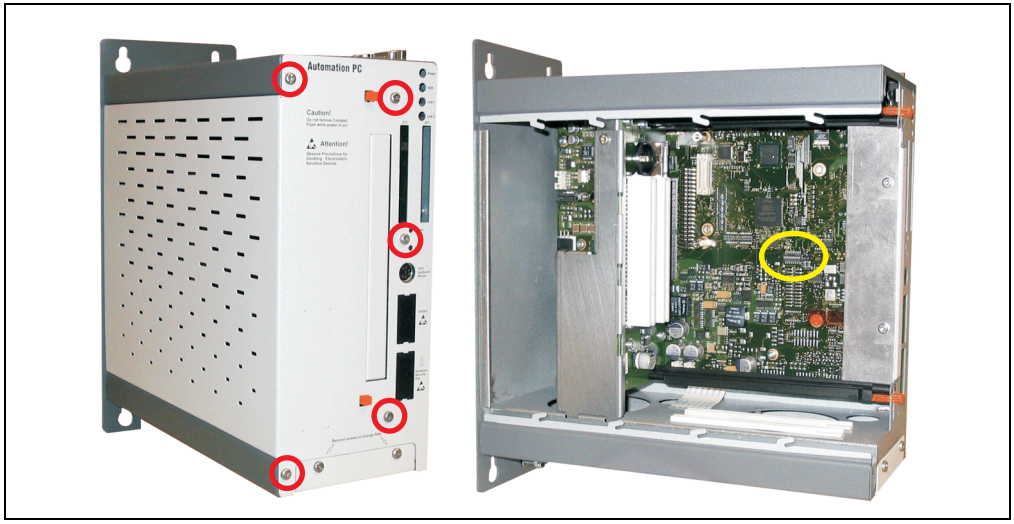


Figure 158: Location of DIP switch

4. Automation PC 620 with Automation Runtime

4.1 General information

An integral component of Automation Studio™ is Automation Runtime, the software kernel which allows applications to run on a target system. This runtime environment offers numerous important advantages:

- Guaranteed highest possible performance for the hardware being used
- Runs on all B&R target systems
- Makes the application hardware-independent
- Applications can be easily ported between B&R target systems
- Cyclic system guarantees deterministic behavior
- Configurable jitter tolerance in all task classes
- Supports all relevant programming language such as IEC 61131-3 and C
- Extensive function library conforming to IEC 61131-3 as well as the expanded B&R Automation library
- Integrated into Automation NET. Access to all networks and bus systems via function calls or the Automation Studio™ configuration

4.2 Support for Automation PC 620 embedded

4.2.1 AR010

The fieldbus interfaces CAN, X2X, and POWERLINK are supported by AR010 with an AS 2.6 upgrade.

4.2.2 AR106

The fieldbus interfaces CAN, X2X, and POWERLINK are supported by AR 2.94 together with an AS 2.7.

4.3 Support for the Automation PC 620 with 5PC600.X945-00 CPU board

4.3.1 AR010

The system is supported by AR010 with an AS 3.0.80 upgrade.

4.3.2 AR106

In preparation.

4.4 Selection of devices

Power supply buffering of 10 ms is guaranteed starting with the following system unit revisions:

Model number	Description	Revision
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	B0
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	B0
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	B0
5PC600.SF03-00	System 3 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	A0
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	A0
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	A0
5PC600.SE00-00	APC620e System SDL EPL X2X CAN 512kB	A0
5PC600.SE00-01	APC620e System CRT EPL X2X CAN 512KB	A0
5PC600.SE00-02	APC620e System SDL EPL X2X CAN 1MB	A0

Table 222: System unit support for buffering with Automation Runtime

4.5 Visual Components graphic engine support

The output of graphics with Visual Components is only supported by graphic engine 1. Graphic engine 2 is not supported. The following table should clarify the mapping and stretching function of the graphic engine in connection with the different system unit variations.

System unit	Graphic engine (GE) Number	Graphic engine number on		Stretch support on graphic connection
		Monitor / Panel	AP Link slot (5AC600.SDL0-00)	
5PC600.SX01-00	1	GE1	-	Monitor / Panel
5PC600.SX02-00	2	analog RGB	GE1	AP Link slot (5AC600.SDL0-00)
5PC600.SX02-01	1	GE1	-	Monitor / Panel
5PC600.SF03-00	2	analog RGB	GE1	AP Link slot (5AC600.SDL0-00)
5PC600.SX05-00	2	analog RGB	GE1	AP Link slot (5AC600.SDL0-00)
5PC600.SX05-01	1	GE1	-	Monitor / Panel
5PC600.SE00-00	1	GE1	-	Monitor / Panel
5PC600.SE00-01	1	GE1	-	Monitor / Panel
5PC600.SE00-02	1	GE1	-	Monitor / Panel

Table 223: Visual Components video output with different system units

A graphic engine 1 (GE1) is only available in connection with AP Link SDL transmitter 5AC600.SDL0-00 for system units 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 and 5PC600.SF03-00. If no AP Link SDL transmitter is present in the system units listed, then video output is not possible with Visual Components.

5. Automation PC 620 with MS-DOS

Figure 159: Automation PC 620 with MS-DOS

Model number	Short description	Note
9S0000.01-010	**OEM MS-DOS 6.22 German (disk)** OEM MS-DOS 6.22 German disks Only delivered with a new PC.	
9S0000.01-020	**OEM MS-DOS 6.22 English (disk)** OEM MS-DOS 6.22 English disks Only delivered with a new PC.	

Table 224: Model numbers - MS-DOS

5.1 Known problems

Either no drivers are available for the following hardware components or only with limitations:

- AC97 Sound - no support.
- USB 2.0 - only USB 1.1 rates can be reached.
  USB Support - only BIOS output USB is supported.
- Graphics Support - No special drivers available.
- A few "ACPI control" BIOS functions cannot be used.

The following table shows the tested resolutions and color depths on the Monitor / Panel connector with X945 CPU boards.

Resolutions for DVI	Color depth		
	8-bit	16-bit	24-bit
640 x 480	✓	✓	✓
800 x 600	✓	✓	✓
1024 x 768	✓	✓	✓
1280 x 1024	✓	✓	✓
Resolutions for RGB	**Color depth**		
	8-bit	**16-bit**	**24-bit**
640 x 480	✓	✓	✓
800 x 600	✓	✓	✓
1024 x 768	✓	✓	✓
1280 x 1024	✓	✓	✓
1600 x 1200	✓	✓	✓
1920 x 1440	✓	✓	

Table 225: Tested resolutions and color depths for DVI and RGB signals

6. Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Professional

Figure 160: Windows XP Professional Logo

Model number	Short description	Note
5SWWXP.0600-GER	**WinXP Professional with SP3, CD German** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 3, CD, German. Only available with a new device.	
5SWWXP.0600-ENG	**WinXP Professional with SP3, CD English** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 3, CD, English. Only available with a new device.	
5SWWXP.0600-MUL	**WinXP Professional with SP3, CD, Multi-language** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 3, CD, multi-language. Only available with a new device.	
5SWWXP.0500-GER	**WinXP Professional with SP2c, CD German** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2c, CD, German. Only available with a new device.	
5SWWXP.0500-ENG	**WinXP Professional with SP2c, CD English** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2c, CD, English. Only available with a new device.	
5SWWXP.0500-MUL	**WinXP Professional with SP2c, CD English** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2c, CD, multi-language. Only available with a new device.	

Table 226: Model numbers - Windows XP Professional

6.1 Installation

Upon request, B&R will pre-install Windows XP Professional on the desired mass memory (add-on hard disk, slide-in hard disk). All of the drivers required for operation (graphics, network, etc.) are also installed when doing so.

6.1.1 FAQ

Installation on PCI SATA RAID controller - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03

The following steps are necessary for installing Windows XP Professional on the PCI SATA RAID controller:

1) Download the RAID driver from the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**) and copy the files to a diskette.
2) Connect the Media Drive (5MD900.USB2-01 or 5MD900.USB2-00) to the USB port.
3) Insert the diskette and Windows XP Professional CD in the the Media Drive and boot from the CD.
4) Press the F6 key during setup to install a third-party SCSI or a driver.
5) Press the "s" key when asked about installing an additional drive. Insert the disk in the floppy drive. Press "Enter" and select the driver.
6) Follow the setup instructions.
7) The setup copies the files to the Windows XP Professional folder and restarts the APC620.

6.2 Graphics drivers

For operation modes "extended desktop" and "dual display clone", the Intel Extreme graphics chip driver must be installed. Graphics drivers for X945 CPU boards are available for approved operating systems in the download area (Service - Material Related Downloads - BIOS / Drivers / Updates) on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

6.2.1 Installing the graphics driver for X945 CPU boards

Information:

The following screenshots and descriptions refer to the graphics driver version 14.32.4 for X945 CPU boards. Therefore, it is possible that the screenshots and descriptions might not correspond with the installed driver version.

After the driver is installed, it can be configured in the Control Panel (called up through the icon in the taskbar or Start - Control Panel - Display - Settings - Advanced).

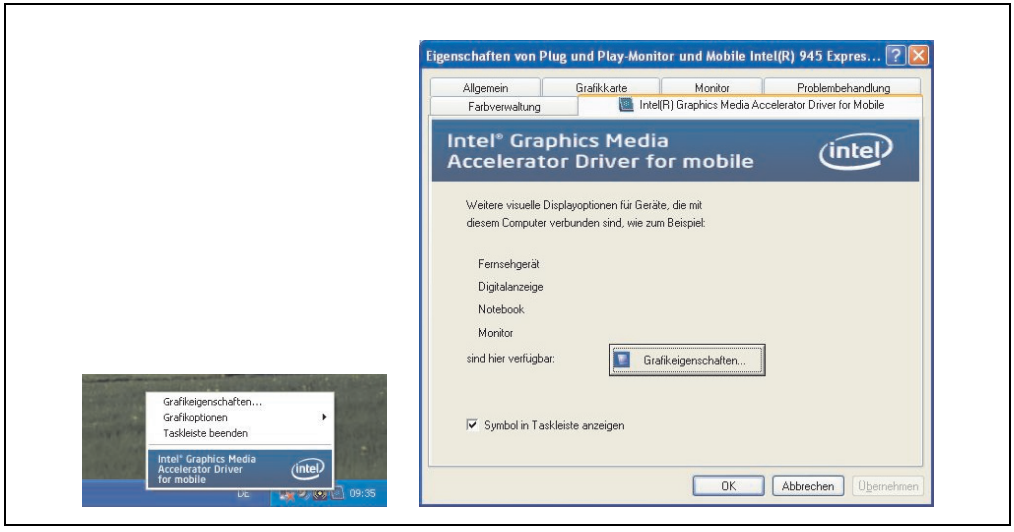


Figure 161: Accessing the graphics driver via Control Panel

6.2.2 Graphics settings for Extended Desktop

Under the "Extended desktop" settings, "Notebook" can be set as the primary device (Graphics Engine 1) and "Monitor" as secondary device. The two lines display different content (Extended Desktop).

The following table is valid for 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 and 5PC600.SF03-00:

Driver settings		Effect on APC620	
Primary device	Notebook	AP Link output	Graphics engine 1
Secondary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Primary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Secondary device	Notebook	AP Link output	Graphics engine 1

Table 227: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine for 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 und 5PC600.SF03-00

The following table is valid for 5PC600.SX01-00, 5PC600.SX02-01, 5PC600.SX05-01, 5PC600.SE00-00 and 5PC600.SE00-02:

Driver settings		Effect on APC620	
Primary device	Notebook	Monitor / Panel	Graphics engine 1
Secondary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Primary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Secondary device	Notebook	Monitor / Panel	Graphics engine 1

Table 228: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine for 5PC600.SX01-00, 5PC600.SX02-01, 5PC600.SX05-01, 5PC600.SE00-00 and 5PC600.SE00-02

Resolution and color depth can be configured separately for each line via the device settings for notebook and monitor.

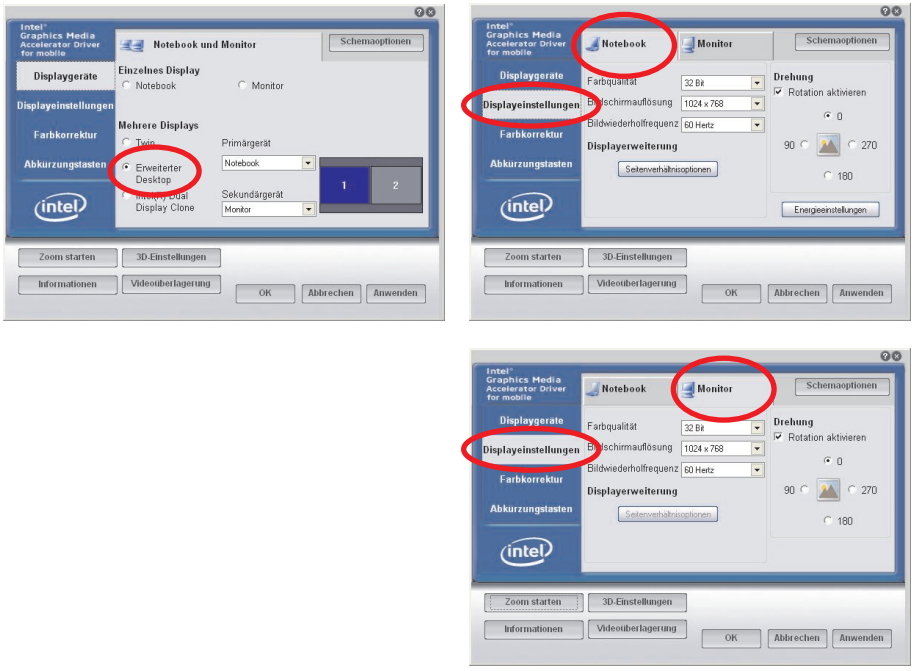


Figure 162: Extended desktop settings - primary device and monitor

The internal serial interface COM C on the APC620 must be activated in BIOS (under Advanced - Baseboard/Panel Features - Legacy Devices) for the Automation 900 devices' touch screens. See the section 6.3.1 "Installation for Extended Desktop" on page 356 for information about installing the touch screen driver.

A panel locking time can be set in the B&R Control Center to prevent simultaneous operation of the Automation Panel 900 (see the .chm help file for the B&R Control Center).

Information:

- **The panel locking time is reset to the value configured in the key configuration (KCF - Key Configuration File) when the system is restarted.**

6.2.3 Graphics settings for Dual Display Clone

In "Dual display clone" mode, the same content is displayed on every connected Automation Panel 900 unit on both lines (Graphics Engine 1 and Monitor). This enables operation of the application from every display.

The following table is valid for 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 and 5PC600.SF03-00:

Driver settings		Effect on APC620	
Primary device	Notebook	AP Link output	Graphics engine 1
Secondary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Primary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Secondary device	Notebook	AP Link output	Graphics engine 1

Table 229: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine (DDC) for 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 und 5PC600.SF03-00

The following table is valid for 5PC600.SX01-00, 5PC600.SX02-01, 5PC600.SX05-01, 5PC600.SE00-00 and 5PC600.SE00-02:

Driver settings		Effect on APC620	
Primary device	Notebook	Monitor / Panel	Graphics engine 1
Secondary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Primary device	Monitor	Monitor / Panel	Monitor
Secondary device	Notebook	Monitor / Panel	Graphics engine 1

Table 230: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine (DDC) for 5PC600.SX01-00, 5PC600.SX02-01, 5PC600.SX05-01, 5PC600.SE00-00 and 5PC600.SE00-02

Resolution and color depth can only be set on the line designated as the primary device.

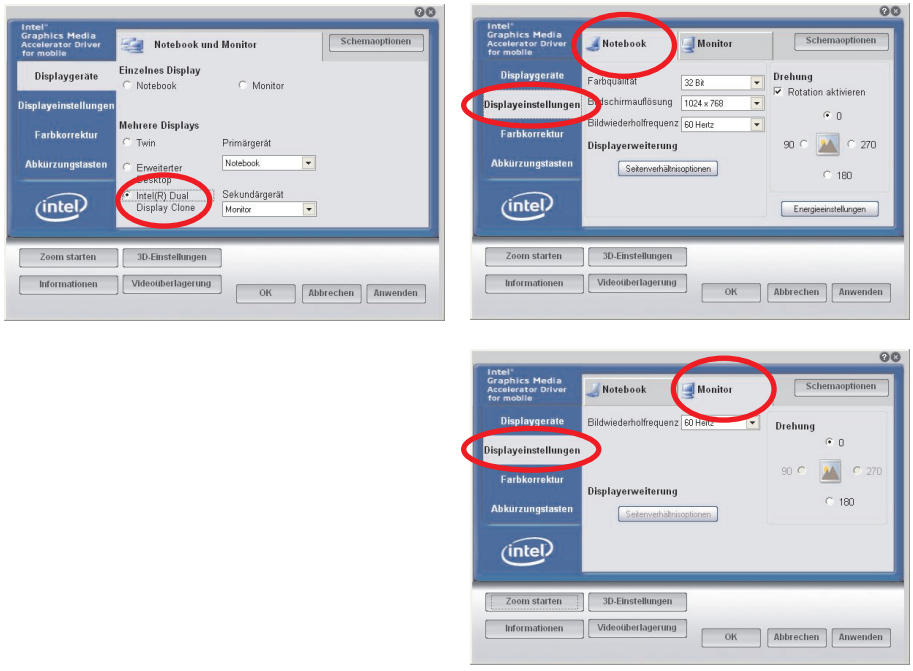


Figure 163: Dual display clone settings - primary and monitor

The internal serial interface COM C on the APC620 must be activated in BIOS (under Advanced - Baseboard/Panel Features - Legacy Devices) for the Automation 900 devices' touch screens. See the section 6.3.2 "Installation for Dual Display Clone" on page 358 for information about installing the touch screen driver.

A panel locking time can be set in the B&R Control Center to prevent simultaneous operation of the Automation Panel 900 (see the .chm help file for the B&R Control Center).

Information:

- **The panel locking time is reset to the value configured in the key configuration (KCF - Key Configuration File) when the system is restarted.**

6.3 Touch screen driver

For operation modes "extended desktop" and "dual display clone", the Elo touch screen driver must be installed. This can be found in the download area (Service - Material Related Downloads - BIOS / Drivers / Updates) on the B&R homepage (www.br-automation.com).

Information:

The touch screen drivers are based on the Windows mouse system. That means that either a mouse (USB or PS/2) must have been connected during the Windows installation or the mouse drivers must be installed additionally (e.g. automatically installed when later connecting a USB mouse). The BIOS function "PS/2 Mouse" must be set to "Enabled" when using a PS/2 mouse. This is located on the BIOS setup page "Advanced" - "Miscellaneous" (the default setting is "Disabled").

6.3.1 Installation for Extended Desktop

Information:

- Activate COM C and COM D in BIOS.
- During installation the panel locking time must be set to 0 ms ("Auto detect" of the driver could only recognize 1 touch screen).

- Executing setup
- The Automation Panel 900 unit's touch screen is connected with the APC620 serially, so the serial touch screen drivers must be installed.

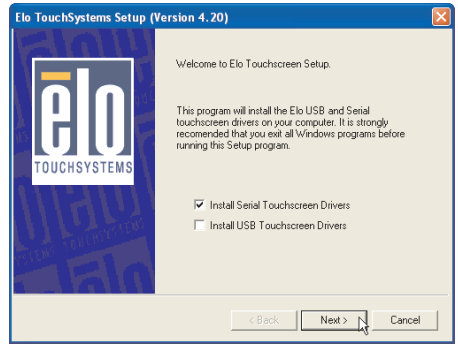


Figure 164: Touch screen driver - serial touch screen

- The driver's auto-detect function sends data packets to every existing serial interface. It then returns a list of all the ports on which an Elo touch screen is connected. The panel locking time must be set to 0 ms (auto-detect only found 1 touch screen)

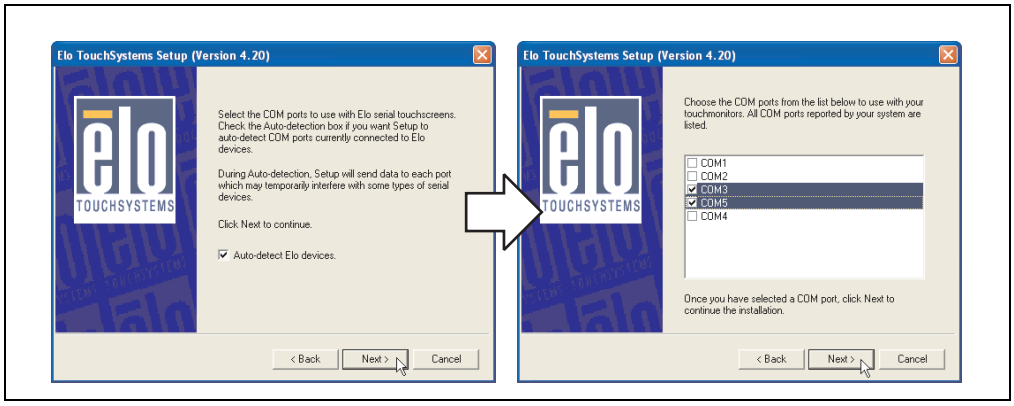


Figure 165: Touch screen driver - auto-detect

- After selecting the COM ports on which Elo touch screens are connected, the system must be rebooted.
- After restarting, each line of touch screens must be calibrated separately. This is done in the menus "Properties 1" and "Properties 2" with the "Align" button. When one touch screen is being calibrated, the others are automatically locked.

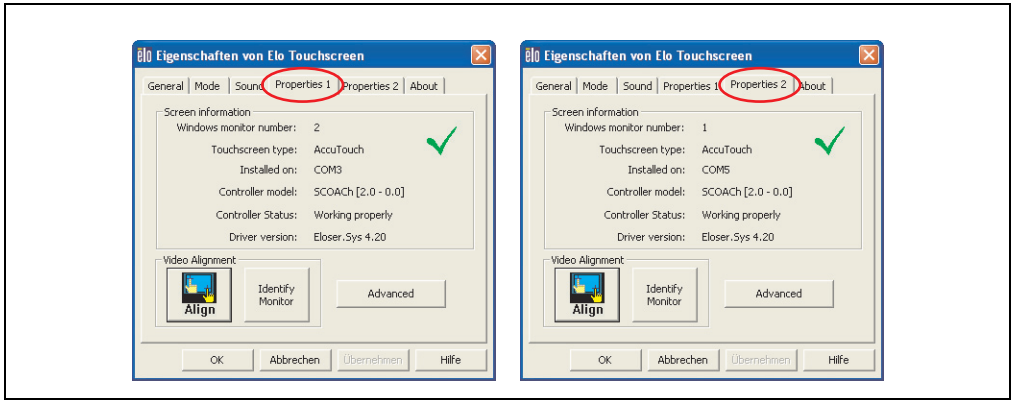


Figure 166: Touch screen calibration

6.3.2 Installation for Dual Display Clone

Information:

- Activate COM C in BIOS.
- During installation the panel locking time must be set to 0 ms ("Auto detect" of the driver could only recognize 1 touch screen).

- Executing setup
- The Automation Panel 900 unit's touch screen is connected with the APC620 serially, so the serial touch screen drivers must be installed.

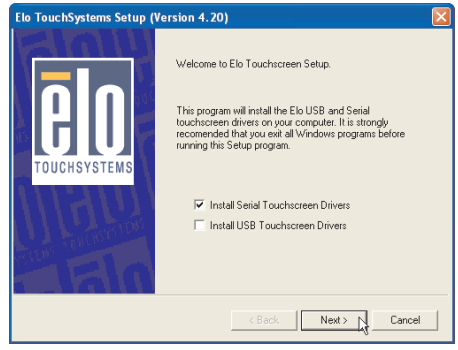


Figure 167: Touch screen driver - serial touch screen

- The driver's auto-detect function sends data packets to every existing serial interface. It then returns a list of all the ports on which an Elo touch screen is connected. The panel locking time must be set to 0 ms (auto-detect only found 1 touch screen)

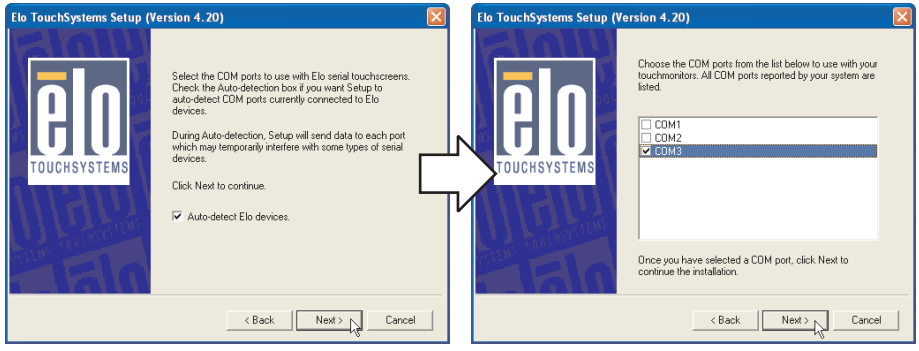


Figure 168: Touch screen driver - auto-detect

- After selecting the COM ports on which Elo touch screens are connected, the system must be rebooted.
- After restarting, only one touch screen must be calibrated. These settings are then applied to other touch screens.

Figure 169: Touch screen calibration

6.3.3 FAQ

Power options and touch screen

The power options allow a few different settings (e.g. Turn off monitor, Turn off hard disks and System standby for a Windows XP system).

Caution!

If the "Turn off monitor" function is enabled and a time has been set, then touching the dark touch display after the time has expired presents the risk of "blindly" activating one of the commands in the application and unintentionally triggering functions.

This can be avoided by activating a screen saver. As a result, the next time the touch screen is touched, the screen saver is deactivated.

6.4 Audio driver

An audio driver can be found in the download area (Service - Material Related Downloads - BIOS / Drivers / Updates) on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

See the section "MIC, Line IN and Line OUT ports" on page 122 for information about the audio driver type.

6.4.1 Installation

Execute the downloaded setup.

Information:

The option "AC97 Audio controller" must be set to "Enabled" (default setting) in BIOS under Advanced - I/O Device Configuration.

6.5 Network driver

The APC620 has 2 different networks controllers. Drivers for both network connections (ETH1 and ETH2) are available for approved operating systems in the download area (Service - Material Related Downloads - BIOS / Drivers / Updates) on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

See the sections "Ethernet connection ETH1" on page 108 and "Ethernet connection ETH2" on page 110 for information about network controller types.

6.5.1 Installation ETH1

Execute the downloaded setup.

6.5.2 Installation ETH2

Installation is performed via the Windows device manager using the Net559ER.inf file.

6.6 Automation PC 620 embedded

The fieldbus interfaces CAN, X2X and POWERLINK are not supported by Microsoft Windows XP (no drivers present).

7. Automation PC 620 with Windows XP Embedded

Figure 170: Windows XP Embedded Logo

Model number	Short description	Note
5SWWXP.0430-ENG	**WinXPe FP2007 APC620 945GME XTX** Microsoft OEM Windows XP Embedded Feature Pack 2007, English; for APC620 with CPU board 5PC600.X945-00; order CompactFlash separately (at least 512 MB).	

Table 231: Model numbers - Windows XP Embedded

7.1 General information

Windows XP Embedded is the modular version of the desktop operating system Windows XP Professional. Windows XP Embedded is based on the same binary files as Windows XP Professional and is optimally tailored to the hardware being used. In other words, only the functions and modules required by the respective device are included. Windows XP Embedded is also based on the same reliable code as Windows XP Professional. It provides industry with leading reliability, improvements in security and performance, and the latest technology for Web browsing and extensive device support.

7.2 Features with FP2007 (Feature Pack 2007)

The feature list shows the most important device functions in Windows XP Embedded with Feature Pack 2007 (FP2007).

Function	Present
Enhanced write filter (EWF)	✓
File Based Write Filter	✓
Page file	configurable
Administrator account	✓
User account	configurable
Explorer shell	✓
Registry Filter	✓
Internet Explorer 6.0 + SP2	✓
Internet information service (IIS)	-
Terminal service	✓

Table 232: Device functions in Windows XP Embedded with FP2007

Function	Present
Windows Firewall	✓
MSN-Explorer	-
Outlook Express	-
Administrative Tools	✓
Remote Desktop	✓
Remote Assistance	-
.NET Framework	-
ASP.NET	-
Codepages/User Locale/Keyboard	✓
Disk Management Service	✓
Windows Installer Service	✓
Class Installer	✓
CoDevice Installer	✓
Media Player	-
DirectX	-
Accessories	✓
Number of fonts	89

Table 232: Device functions in Windows XP Embedded with FP2007

7.3 Installation

Upon request, Windows XP Embedded can be preinstalled at B&R Austria on a suitable CompactFlash card (at least 512 MB). The APC620 system is then automatically configured after it has been switched on for the first time. This procedure takes approximately 30 minutes, and the device will be rebooted a number of times.

Brief instructions for creating your own Windows XP Embedded images or a suitable Target Designer export file for X945 CPU boards can be downloaded from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

7.4 Graphics drivers

Already included in the B&R Windows XP Embedded image for X945 CPU boards.

7.5 Touch screen driver

The touch screen driver must be manually installed in order to operate Automation Panel 900 touch screen devices. The driver installation is identical to the driver installation for Windows XP Professional Systems. For more information, see 6.3 "Touch screen driver" on page 356

The driver can be downloaded from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

7.6 Audio driver

Already integrated in the B&R Windows XP Embedded image for X945 CPU boards.

7.6.1 After a BIOS upgrade

If the following error message appears after upgrading BIOS:

```
"Copy Error"
```

```
"Setup cannot copy the file Audio3d.dll"
```

then the audio driver must be reinstalled.

To do this, use the audio driver from the B&R Homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

During the installation of the audio driver, the following 2 files must be manually selected from the following directories.

ksuser.dll in the directory ...\Windows\system32

ks.sys in the directory ...\Windows\system32\drivers

7.7 Network driver

Already integrated in the B&R Windows XP Embedded image for X945 CPU boards.

7.8 FAQ

7.8.1 Why does the B&R device restart when shutdown?

If the APC620 is connected with a B&R device, then the option "USB root hubs" must be disabled in the Windows XP Embedded device manager under "Universal Serial Bus controllers" using the following dialog box: **Properities > Power Management > Allow the computer to turn off this device to save power**.

8. Automation PC 620 with Windows CE

Model number	Short description	Note
5SWWCE.0830-ENG	**WinCE6.0 Pro APC620 945GME XTX** Microsoft OEM Windows CE 6.0 Professional, English; for APC620 with CPU board 5PC600.X945-00; order CompactFlash separately (at least 128 MB).	

Table 233: Model numbers - Windows CE

8.1 General information

B&R Windows CE is an operating system which is optimally tailored to B&R's devices. It includes only the functions and modules which are required by each device. This makes this operating system extremely robust and stable. A further advantage of B&R Windows CE compared to other operating systems are the low licensing costs.

8.2 Windows CE 6.0 features

Detailed information about Windows CE for B&R devices can be downloaded in the download area on the B&R homepage (www.br-automation.com).

Features	Windows CE 6.0
Supported screen resolutions	VGA (TFT), SVGA (TFT), XGA (TFT)
Chipset	Intel 945GME
Color depth	16-bit or 65,536 colors[1)]
Graphics card driver	Intel(R) embedded graphics driver TBD
Main memory	Automatic detection and use of up to 512 MB RAM
Boot time / Startup time	Approx. 20 seconds
Screen rotation	not supported
Web browser	Internet Explorer
.NET	Compact Framework
Image size	TBD[2)]

Table 234: Windows CE 6.0 features

Features	Windows CE 6.0
Custom keys	Supported
PVI	Supported
Automation Device Interface	Supported
Remote Desktop Protocol for thin clients	Supported
B&R VNC Viewer	Supported
B&R Task Manager	Supported
B&R Picture Viewer	Supported
Compatible with zenOn	Yes
Compatible with Wonderware	No
Serial interfaces for any use	3
DirectX	No
Audio ports	"Line OUT" and "MIC" are supported. "Line IN" is not supported.

Table 234: Windows CE 6.0 features

1) The color depth depends on the display used.
2) Use the function *"Compress Windows CE Image"* in the B&R Embedded OS Installer to reduce the image size.

8.3 Requirements

The device must fulfill the following criteria to be able run the Windows CE operating system.

- At least 128 MB main memory
- At least one 128 MB CompactFlash card (size should be specified when ordered)

8.4 Installation

Windows CE is usually preinstalled at the B&R plant.

8.4.1 B&R Embedded OS Installer

The B&R Embedded OS Installer allows you to install existing B&R Windows CE images. The four files (NK.BIN, BLDR, LOGOXRES.BMP, and LOGOQVGA.BMP) must be provided from an already functioning B&R Windows CE installation.

The B&R Embedded OS Installer can be downloaded from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**). Further information is available in the online help for the B&R Embedded OS Installer.

9. Automation Device Interface (ADI) driver - Control Center

The ADI (Automation Device Interface) driver enables access to specific functions of B&R devices. Settings for this device can be read and edited using the B&R Control Center applet in the control panel.

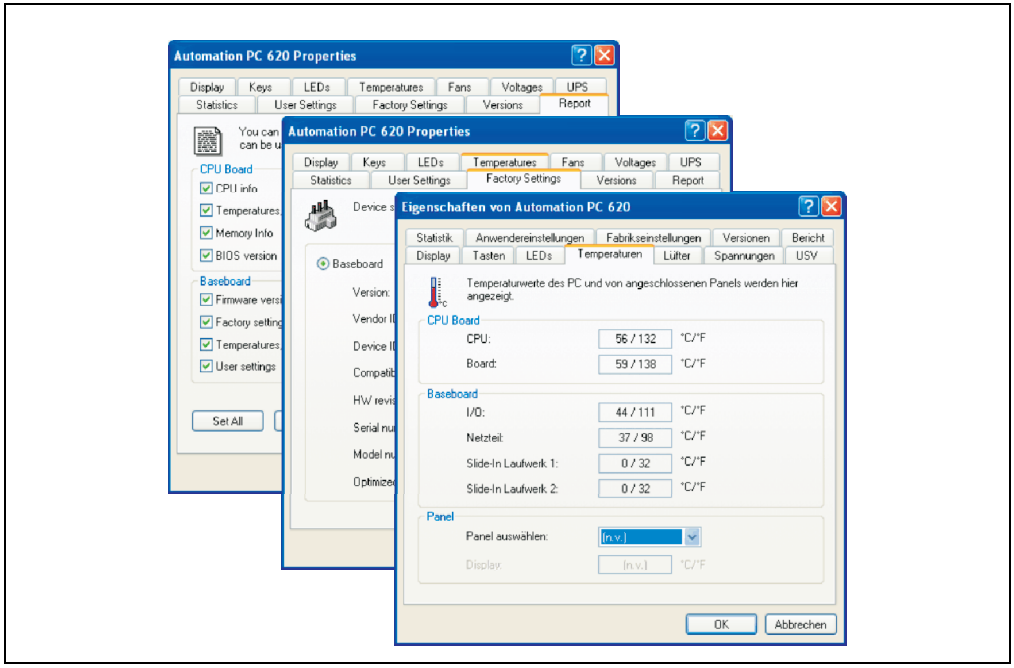


Figure 171: ADI Control Center screenshots (Version 1.61) - example

Information:

The displayed temperature and voltage values (e.g. CPU temperature, core voltage, battery voltage) on the corresponding ADI page represent uncalibrated information values. These cannot be used to draw any conclusions about any hardware alarms or error conditions. The hardware components used have automatic diagnostics functions that can be applied in the event of error.

Features (device dependent)

- Adjusting the display brightness of connected Panels
- Reading device specific keys (in order for this to be possible, a key configuration must be installed that was created with the B&R Key Editor)
- Change the user serial ID
- Activation of device specific LEDs on a foil keypad

- Reading temperatures, fan speeds, and statistical data
- Reading user settings and factory settings
- Reading software versions
- Updating and securing firmware
- Creating reports about the current system (support assistance)
- Setting the SDL equalizer value for the SDL cable adjustment
- Configuring an optional mounted UPS

Supports following systems:

System	Operating system	Note
Automation PC 820	Windows XP Professional	Installation using its own setup
	Windows XP Embedded	Content of B&R Windows XP Embedded image
Automation PC 810	Windows XP Professional	Installation using its own setup
	Windows XP Embedded	Content of B&R Windows XP Embedded image
Automation PC 620	Windows XP Professional	Installation using its own setup
	Windows XP Embedded	Content of B&R Windows XP Embedded image
	Windows CE	Content of B&R Windows CE image
Panel PC 700	Windows XP Embedded	Content of B&R Windows XP Embedded image
	Windows CE	Content of B&R Windows CE image
Power Panel 100 BIOS devices	Windows XP Embedded	Content of B&R Windows XP Embedded image
	Windows CE 4.x, 5.0	Content of B&R Windows CE image
Power Panel 300 BIOS devices	Windows XP Embedded	Content of B&R Windows XP Embedded image
	Windows CE 4.x, 5.0	Content of B&R Windows CE image
	Windows CE 6.0	Content of B&R Windows CE image
Mobile Panel BIOS devices	Windows XP Embedded	Content of B&R Windows XP Embedded image
	Windows CE 4.x	Content of B&R Windows CE image
Automation Panel 800	-	Together with Automation PC 620 / Automation PC 800 and Panel PC 700
Automation Panel 900	-	Together with Automation PC 620 / Automation PC 800 and Panel PC 700

Table 235: System support - ADI driver

A detailed description of the Control Center can be found in the integrated online help.

The B&R Automation Device Interface (ADI) driver (also contains Control Center) can be downloaded for free from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

9.1 Installation

The latest version of the ADI driver for the existing target system can be found in the download area (Service - Material Related Downloads - BIOS / Drivers / Updates) on the B&R homepage (www.br-automation.com).

1) Download and unzip the ZIP archive
2) Close all applications.
3) Start BrSetup.exe (e.g. by double clicking in Explorer) or right click on BrSetup.inf in explorer and select "Install".

Information:

The ADI driver and B&R control center are already included in the Windows XP Embedded operating system. If a more current ADI driver version exists (see the B&R homepage download area), it can be installed later. A potentially activated "Enhanced Write Filter (EWF)" must be taken into consideration when installing.

9.2 SDL equalizer setting

The equalizer makes it possible to adjust the strength of the video signal to the SDL cable length. This allows you to improve the visual representation on the display.

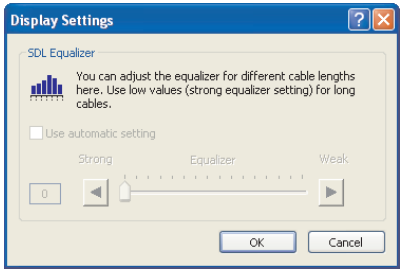


Figure 172: ADI Control Center - SDL equalizer settings

The value is optimally defined for the cable length when using the "Automatic setting".

The equalizer value can only be changed if the function is supported by Automation Panel 900 (starting with Panel Firmware version 1.04 or higher) and if MTCX PX32 version 1.54 or higher is installed. Otherwise, the dialog fields are disabled.

9.3 UPS configuration

Here, the status values for an installed B&R APC620 UPS can be displayed and the battery settings for the UPS can be changed, updated, and saved. The system settings for the UPS can also be configured.

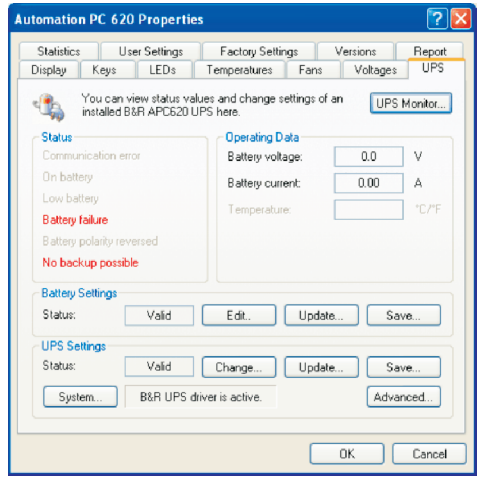


Figure 173: ADI Control Center - UPS settings

Caution!

The installed UPS must be selected and configured in the Control Panel using the energy options in order for battery operation to be supported.

Information for Windows XP Embedded:

The UPS service is supported starting with B&R Windows Embedded Version 2.10 or higher.

9.3.1 Configuration of UPS operation for the B&R APC620 UPS

1) Open the energy options dialog box in the Control Panel.
2) Go to the UPS tab and click on "Select".
3) Set the manufacturer to "Bernecker + Rainer" and the model to "APC620 UPS" and click on "Finish". The value for the COM connection is only required for a serially connected UPS and is ignored by the APC620 UPS driver.
4) Click on "Apply" to begin UPS operation. After a few seconds the UPS status and details are displayed.

Information:

- **Administrator rights are required in order to change the energy options or display the UPS status.**
- **In a German version of Windows XP Professional the battery status is displayed as "low" in the energy options, even if the battery is OK (Windows error). In an English version, three battery status levels are displayed: unknown, OK, replace. A low battery status is never displayed.**

9.3.2 Display status values for UPS

1) Open the Control Center in the Control Panel.
2) Select UPS tab.

The displayed values are updated automatically.

Information:

The "reversed battery polarity" status is only displayed in UPS firmware version 1.08 or higher. In UPS firmware version 1.07 or smaller, a change between battery operation and normal operation can lead to communication errors.

Select UPS monitor to display UPS status changes since the last time the system or UPS driver was started.

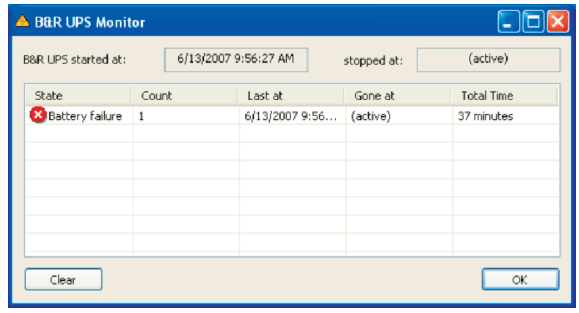


Figure 174: ADI Control Center - UPS monitor

The dialog box is updated automatically when the status changes.

To remove a status from the list, click on delete.

Information:

The current status of the UPS is also displayed when the UPS service is started in the Windows Control Panel on the UPS page in the energy options.

9.3.3 Change UPS battery settings

1) Open the Control Center in the Control Panel.
2) Select UPS tab.
3) Under "Battery settings", click on "Edit". Clicking on "Open" opens a dialog box.
4) Select and open the file containing the battery settings.

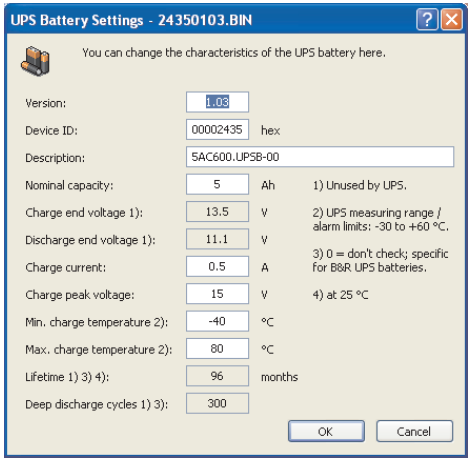


Figure 175: ADI Control Center - UPS battery settings

In this dialog box you can change the settings for the UPS battery.

Information:

To make settings for batteries not from B&R, it is best to make a copy of a file with battery settings from B&R under a new name and make adjust the settings in this file for the battery being used.

Current files with settings for batteries from B&R can be found on the B&R APC620 / PPC700 firmware upgrade disk (starting with V1.16) and can also be updated using these.

Information:

If you would like to change the current battery settings on the UPS, they must first be saved in a file.

9.3.4 Update UPS battery settings

1) Open the Control Center in the Control Panel.
2) Select UPS tab.
3) Under "Battery settings", click on "Update". Clicking on "Open" opens a dialog box.
4) Select and open the file containing the battery settings. The "Download" dialog box is opened.

The transfer can be aborted by clicking on "Cancel" in the Download dialog box. "Cancel" is disabled when the flash memory is being written to.

Caution!

- **Battery operation is not possible during the update.**
- **If the transfer is interrupted, then the procedure must be repeated until the battery settings have been updated successfully. Otherwise battery operation will no longer be possible.**

Deleting the data in flash memory can take several seconds depending on the memory block being used. The progress indicator is not updated during this time.

Information:

The UPS is automatically restarted after a successful download. This can cause a brief failure in the UPS communication.

9.3.5 Save UPS battery settings

1) Open the Control Center in the Control Panel.
2) Select UPS tab.
3) Under "Battery settings", click on "Save". Clicking on "Save under" opens a dialog box.
4) Enter a file name or select an existing file and click on "Save".

The transfer can be aborted by clicking on "Cancel" in the Download dialog box.

9.3.6 Configure UPS system settings

1) Open the Control Center in the Control Panel.
2) Select UPS tab.
3) Under UPS settings, click on "System". The energy options dialog box in the Control Panel is opened.

Further information regarding the UPD system settings can be found in the Windows help.

Information:

Administrator rights are required in order to change the energy options or display the UPS status.

9.3.7 Configuring the "UL compliant operation"

1) Open the Control Center in the Control Panel.
2) Select UPS tab.
3) Under UPS settings, click on "Change". This opens the following dialog box:

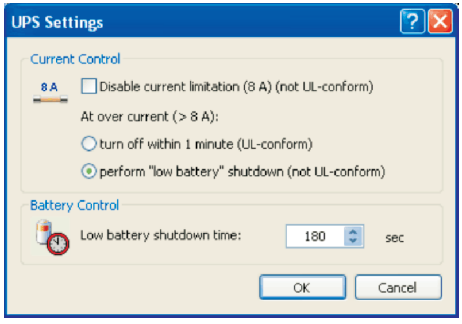


Figure 176: ADI Control Center - UPS settings

Information:

- **For UL compliant operation, ADI driver version 1.80 and UPS firmware version 1.10 are minimum requirements.**
- **The UL compliant operation is switched on by default.**

If the "Low Battery" shutdown option is activated, the LowBatteryFlag is set at over-current, and a low battery shutdown is executed (for more information on low battery shutdown, see "Procedure following power failure" on page 378). If the UL compliant operation is reactivated, the following warning is displayed.

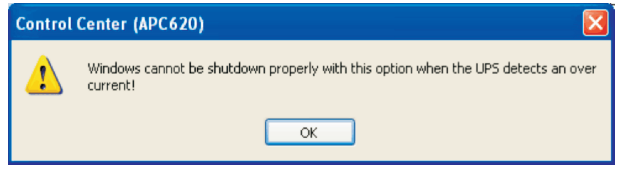


Figure 177: ADI control center warning

9.3.8 Change additional UPS settings

1) Open the Control Center in the Control Panel.
2) Select UPS tab.
3) Under UPS settings, click on "Advanced". This opens the following dialog box:

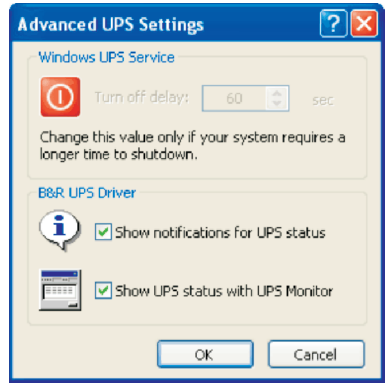


Figure 178: ADI Control Center - Advanced UPS settings

Information:

Administer rights are required in order to display this dialog box.

Change turn-off time for UPS

Under "Windows UPS Service", you can enter the turn-off time in seconds. This is the length of time that the UPS waits before switching off the power supply.

Information:

This time is evaluated by the Windows UPS Service, but can not be set in the UPS system settings of the energy options. This value should only be changed if the system requires longer than the default setting of 180 seconds to shut down.

Caution!

The time entered must be longer than the time required to shut down the operating system.

Activate UPS messages

Under "B&R UPS driver", activate the checkbox "UPS status messages". Any changes to the UPS status will then trigger a message from the B&R UPS driver.

Information:

Shutting down the system is only reported by the Windows UPS Service. The UPS Service also sends other messages if they are activated in the UPS system settings energy options. These messages are only displayed when the Windows Alerter and Windows Messenger[1)] are active and the PC is logged on to a network. Additionally, some conditions of the B&R APC620 UPS are not detected by the Windows UPS Service, and are therefore do not trigger messages (e.g. when there are no battery settings on the UPS). The Windows Services can be found in the Control Panel under Administrative Tools - Services.

1) The Windows Alerter is supported starting with B&R Windows Embedded Version 2.10 or higher.

If the checkbox "Display UPS status with UPS monitor" is also activated, a new message is not displayed for every change, but only a general message and request for you to start the B&R UPS monitor. As long as the UPS monitor is active, no new messages are displayed.

Information:

Regardless of these options, all changes to the UPS status are logged in Windows event protocol (under "Application").

9.3.9 Procedure following power failure

Over-current shutdown

If an over-current >8 A is present during battery operation for a duration of 16 seconds, the over-current shutdown is executed. A turn-off time of one minute is available to the system.

If the supply is regenerated during this time, then the shut down process is aborted.

Information:

The over-current shutdown has the highest priority.

Low battery shutdown

If the LowBatteryFlag is set during power failure, then the "low battery" shutdown is executed, preventing the battery from dying. Once the turn-off time expires (3 minutes by default), the UPS shuts down.

If an "over-current" shutdown or "standard" shutdown is detected during the shutdown process, the "low battery" shutdown is replaced by the respective process.

Standard shutdown

The standard shutdown is effective when the UPS service is active, the turn-off time is 3 minutes by default.

If the power supply returns during the shutdown process, the shutdown timer runs until the APC620 enters standby mode. Then the turn-off time is reduced to 4 seconds.

Chapter 5 • Standards and certifications

1. Applicable European guidelines

- EMC guidelines 2004/108/EG
- Low-voltage guidelines 2006/95/EG
- Machine guidelines 98/37/EG beginning 12/29/2009: 2006/42/EG

2. Overview of standards

The Automation PC 620 as an entire device meets the following standards:

Standard	Description
EN 55011 Class A	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), radio disturbance product standard, industrial, scientific, and medical high-frequency devices (ISM devices), limit values and measurement procedure; group 1 (devices that do not create HF during material processing) and group 2 (devices that create HF during material processing)
EN 55022 Class A	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), radio disturbance characteristics, information technology equipment (ITE devices), limits and methods of measurement
EN 55024 Class A	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), immunity characteristics, information technology equipment (ITE devices), limits and methods of measurement
EN 60060-1	High-voltage test techniques - part 1: General specifications and testing conditions
EN 60068-2-1	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test A: Dry cold
EN 68068-2-2	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test B: Dry heat
EN 60068-2-3	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test and guidance: Damp heat, constant
EN 60068-2-6	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test: Vibration (sinusoidal)
EN 60068-2-14	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test N: Change of temperature
EN 60068-2-27	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test and guidance: Shock
EN 60068-2-30	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test and guidance: Damp heat, cyclic
EN 60068-2-31	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test: Drop and topple, primarily for equipment-type specimens
EN 60068-2-32	Environmental testing - part 2: Tests; test: Free fall
EN 60204-1	Safety of machinery, electrical equipment on machines - part 1: General requirements
EN 60529	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)
EN 60664-1	Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems - part 1: Principles, requirements and tests

Table 236: Overview of standards

Standard	Description
EN 60721-3-2	Classification of environmental conditions - part 3: Classification of groups of environmental parameters and their severities, section 2: Transport
EN 60721-3-3	Classification of environmental conditions - part 3: Classification of groups of environmental parameters and their severities, section 3: Stationary use at weather-protected locations
EN 61000-4-2	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-2: Testing and measuring techniques; electrostatic discharge immunity test
EN 61000-4-3	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-3: Testing and measuring techniques; radiated radio-frequency electromagnetic field immunity test
EN 61000-4-4	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-4: Testing and measuring techniques; electrical fast transient/burst immunity test
EN 61000-4-5	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-5: Testing and measuring techniques; surge immunity test
EN 61000-4-6	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-6: Testing and measuring techniques; immunity to conducted disturbances, induced by radio-frequency fields
EN 61000-4-8	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-8: Testing and measuring techniques; power frequency magnetic field immunity test
EN 61000-4-11	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-11: Testing and measuring techniques; voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations immunity tests
EN 61000-4-12	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-12: Testing and measuring techniques; oscillatory waves immunity test
EN 61000-4-17	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-12: Testing and measuring techniques; ripple on DC input power port immunity test
EN 61000-4-29	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - part 4-29: Testing and measuring techniques; voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations on DC input power port immunity tests
EN 61000-6-2 (EN 50082-2)	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), generic immunity standard - part 2: industrial environments (EN 50082-2 has been replaced by EN 61000-6-2)
EN 61000-6-4 (EN 50081-2)	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), generic emission standard - part 2: industrial environments (EN 50081-2 has been replaced by EN 61000-6-4)
EN 61131-2 IEC 61131-2	Product standard, programmable logic controllers - part 2: Equipment requirements and tests
UL 508	Industrial control equipment (UL = Underwriters Laboratories)
VDE 0701-1	Service, modification, and testing of electrical devices - part 1: General requirements
47 CFR	Federal Communications Commission (FCC), 47 CFR Part 15 Subpart B Class A

Table 236: Overview of standards (cont.)

3. Requirements for emissions

Emissions	Test carried out according to	Limits according to
Network-related emissions	EN 55011 / EN 55022	EN 61000-6-4: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 55011: Industrial, scientific, and medical (ISM) radio-frequency equipment, class A (industrial areas)
		EN 55022: Information technology equipment (ITE devices), class A (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		47 CFR Part 15 Subpart B Class A (FCC)
Emissions, Electromagnetic emissions	EN 55011 / EN 55022	EN 61000-6-4: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 55011: Industrial, scientific, and medical (ISM) radio-frequency equipment, class A (industrial areas)
		EN 55022: Information technology equipment (ITE devices), class A (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		47 CFR Part 15 Subpart B Class A (FCC)

Table 237: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for emissions

3.1 Network related emissions

Test carried out according to EN 55011 / EN 55022	Limits according to EN 61000-6-4	Limits according to EN 55011 class A	Limits according to EN 55022 class A
Power mains connections 150 kHz - 500 kHz	-	79 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 66 dB (µV) Average	79 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 66 dB (µV) Average
Power mains connections 500 kHz - 30 MHz	-	73 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 60 dB (µV) Average	73 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 60 dB (µV) Average
AC mains connections 150 kHz - 500 kHz	79 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 66 dB (µV) Average	-	-
AC mains connections 500 kHz - 30 MHz	73 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 60 dB (µV) Average	-	-
Other connections 150 kHz - 500 kHz	-	-	97 - 87 dB (µV) and 53 - 43 dB (µA) Quasi-peak value 84 - 74 dB (µV) and 40 - 30 dB (µA) Average
Other connections 500 kHz - 30 MHz	-	-	87 dB (µV) and 43 dB (µA) Quasi-peak value 74 dB (µV) and 30 dB (µA) Average
Test carried out according to EN 55011 / EN 55022	**Limits according to EN 61131-2**	**Limits according to 47 CFR Part 15 Subpart B class A**	
Power mains connections [1)] 150 kHz - 500 kHz	79 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 66 dB (µV) Average	-	
Power mains connections 500 kHz - 30 MHz	73 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 60 dB (µV) Average	-	
AC mains connections 150 kHz - 500 kHz	-	79 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 66 dB (µV) Average	
AC mains connections 500 kHz - 30 MHz	-	73 dB (µV) Quasi-peak value 60 dB (µV) Average	

Table 238: Test requirements - Network-related emissions for industrial areas

Other connections 150 kHz - 500 kHz	Only informative for cable lengths > 10 m 40 - 30 dB (µA) Quasi-peak value 30 - 20 dB (µA) Average	-	-
Other connections 500 kHz - 30 MHz	Only informative for cable lengths > 10 m 30 dB (µA) Quasi-peak value 20 dB (µA) Average	-	-

Table 238: Test requirements - Network-related emissions for industrial areas (cont.)

1) AC network connections only with EN 61131-2

3.2 Emissions / Electromagnetic emissions

Test carried out according to EN 55011 / EN 55022	**Limits according to EN 61000-6-4**	**Limits according to EN 55011 class A**	**Limits according to EN 55022 class A**
30 MHz - 230 MHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 40 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value	< 40 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value	< 40 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value
230 MHz - 1 GHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 47 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value	< 47 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value	< 47 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value
Test carried out according to EN 55011 / EN 55022	**Limits according to EN 61131-2**		
30 MHz - 230 MHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 40 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value		
230 MHz - 1 GHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 47 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value		
Test carried out	**Limits according to 47 CFR Part 15 Subpart B class A**		
30 MHz - 88 MHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 90 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value		
88 MHz - 216 MHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 150 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value		
216 MHz - 960 MHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 210 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value		
>960 MHz measured at a distance of 10 m	< 300 dB (µV/m) Quasi-peak value		

Table 239: : Test requirements - Electromagnetic emissions for industrial areas

4. Requirements for immunity to disturbances

Immunity	Test carried out according to	Limits according to
Electrostatic discharge (ESD)	EN 61000-4-2	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)
Immunity against high-frequency electromagnetic fields (HF field)	EN 61000-4-3	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)
Immunity to high-speed transient electrical disturbances (burst)	EN 61000-4-4	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)
Immunity to surge voltages	EN 61000-4-5	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)
Immunity to conducted disturbances	EN 61000-4-6	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)
Immunity against magnetic fields with electrical frequencies	EN 61000-4-8	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)
Immunity to voltage dips, short-term interruptions and voltage fluctuations	EN 61000-4-11	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)
Immunity to damped vibration	EN 61000-4-12	EN 61000-6-2: Generic standard (industrial areas)
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 55024: Information technology equipment (ITE devices)

Table 240: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for immunity

Evaluation criteria according to EN 61000-6-2

Criteria A:
The operating equipment must continue to work as intended **during** the test. There should be no interference in the operating behavior and no system failures below a minimum operating quality as defined by the manufacturer.

Criteria B:
The operating equipment must continue to work as intended **after** the test. There should be no interference in the operating behavior and no system failures below a minimum operating quality as defined by the manufacturer.

Criteria C:
A temporary function failure is permitted when the function restores itself, or the function can be restored by activating configuration and control elements.

Criteria D:
Impairment or failure of the function, which can no longer be established (operating equipment destroyed).

4.1 Electrostatic discharge (ESD)

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-2	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
Contact discharge to powder-coated and bare metal housing parts	±4 kV, 10 discharges, criteria B	±4 kV, 10 discharges, criteria B	±4 kV, 10 discharges, criteria B
Discharge through the air to plastic housing parts	±8 kV, 10 discharges, criteria B	±8 kV, 10 discharges, criteria B	±8 kV, 10 discharges, criteria B

Table 241: Test requirements - Electrostatic discharge (ESD)

4.2 High-frequency electromagnetic fields (HF field)

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-3	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
Housing, completely wired	80 MHz - 1 GHz, 10 V/m, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A	80 MHz - 1 GHz, 1.4 - 2 GHz, 10 V/m, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A 800-960 MHz (GSM), 10 V/m, pulse modulation with 50% duty cycle, criteria A	80 MHz - 1 GHz, 1.4 - 2 GHz, 3 V/m, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A

Table 242: Test requirements - High-frequency electromagnetic fields (HF field)

4.3 High-speed transient electrical disturbances (Burst)

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-4	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
AC power I/O	±2 kV, criteria B	-	±1 kV, criteria B
AC power inputs	-	±2 kV, criteria B	-
AC power outputs	-	±1 kV, criteria B	-
DC power I/O >10 m [1)]	±2 kV, criteria B	-	±0.5 kV, criteria B
DC power inputs >10 m	-	±2 kV, criteria B	-
DC power outputs >10 m	-	±1 kV, criteria B	-
Functional ground connections, signal lines and I/Os >3 m	±1 kV, criteria B	±1 kV, criteria B	±0.5 kV, criteria B
Unshielded AC I/O >3 m	-	±2 kV, criteria B	-
Analog I/O	±1 kV, criteria B	±1 kV, criteria B	-

Table 243: Test requirements - High-speed transient electrical disturbances (burst)

1) For EN 55024 without length limitation.

4.4 Surge voltages (Surge)

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-5	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
AC power I/O, L to L	±1 kV, criteria B	±1 kV, criteria B	±1 kV, criteria B
AC power I/O, L to PE	±2 kV, criteria B	±2 kV, criteria B	±2 kV, criteria B
DC power I/O, L+ to L-, >10 m	±0.5 kV, criteria B	-	-
DC power I/O, L to PE, >10 m	±0.5 kV, criteria B	-	±0.5 kV, criteria B
DC power inputs, L+ to L-	-	±0.5 kV, criteria B	-
DC power inputs, L to PE	-	±1 kV, criteria B	-
DC power outputs, L+ to L-	-	±0.5 kV, criteria B	-
DC power outputs, L to PE	-	±0.5 kV, criteria B	-
Signal connections >30 m	±1 kV, criteria B	±1 kV, criteria B	±1 kV, criteria B
All shielded cables	-	±1 kV, criteria B	-

Table 244: Test requirements - Surge voltages

4.5 Conducted disturbances

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-6	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
AC power I/O	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 10 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 3 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 3 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, criteria A

Table 245: Test requirements - Conducted disturbances

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-6	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
DC power I/O	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 10 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 3 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 3 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, criteria A
Functional ground connections	0.15 - 80 MHz, 10 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, Length 3 seconds, criteria A	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 3 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A	-
Signal connections >3 m	0.15 - 80 MHz, 10 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, Length 3 seconds, criteria A	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 3 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, length 3 seconds, criteria A	150 kHz - 80 MHz, 3 V, 80% amplitude modulation with 1 kHz, criteria A

Table 245: Test requirements - Conducted disturbances (cont.)

4.6 Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-8	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
Test direction x, test in the field of an induction coil 1 m x 1 m	30 A/m, criteria A	30 A/m, criteria A	50 Hz, 1 A/m, criteria A
Test direction y, test in the field of an induction coil 1 m x 1 m	30 A/m, criteria A	30 A/m, criteria A	50 Hz, 1 A/m, criteria A
Test direction z, test in the field of an induction coil 1 m x 1 m	30 A/m, criteria A	30 A/m, criteria A	50 Hz, 1 A/m, criteria A

Table 246: Test requirements - Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies

4.7 Voltage dips, fluctuations and short-term interruptions

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-11	Limits according to EN 61000-6-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 55024
AC power inputs	Voltage dip 70% (30% reduction), 0.5 periods, criteria B	-	Voltage dip < 5% (> 95% reduction), 0.5 half-oscillations, criteria B
AC power inputs	Voltage dip 40% (60% reduction), 5 periods, criteria C	-	Voltage dip 70% (30% reduction), 25 half-oscillations, criteria C
AC power inputs	Voltage dip 40% (60% reduction), 50 periods, criteria C	-	-
AC power inputs	Voltage interruptions < 5% (> 95% reduction), 250 periods, criteria C	-	Voltage interruptions < 5% (> 95% reduction), 250 half-oscillations, criteria C
AC power inputs	-	20 interruptions, 0.5 periods, criteria A	-
DC power inputs	-	20 interruptions for 10 ms < UN - 15%, criteria A	-

Table 247: Test requirements - Voltage dips, fluctuations, and short-term interruptions

4.8 Damped oscillations

Test carried out according to EN 61000-4-12	Limits according to EN 61131-2		
Power I/O, L to L	±1 kV, 1 MHz, repeat rate 400/seconds, length 2 seconds, connection lengths 2 m, criteria B		
Power I/O, L to PE	±2.5 kV, 1 MHz, repeat rate 400/seconds, length 2 seconds, connection lengths 2 m, criteria B		

Table 248: Test requirements - Damped vibration

5. Mechanical conditions

Vibration	Test carried out according to	Limits according to
Vibration operation	EN 60068-2-6	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 60721-3-3 class 3M4
Vibration during transport (packaged)	EN 60068-2-6	EN 60721-3-2 class 2M1
		EN 60721-3-2 class 2M2
		EN 60721-3-2 class 2M3
Shock during operation	EN 60068-2-27	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		EN 60721-3-3 class 3M4
Shock during transport (packaged)	EN 60068-2-27	EN 60721-3-2 class 2M1
		EN 60721-3-2 class 2M2
		EN 60721-3-2 class 2M3
Toppling (packaged)	EN 60068-2-31	EN 60721-3-2 class 2M1
		EN 60721-3-2 class 2M2
		EN 60721-3-2 class 2M3
Free fall (packaged)	EN 60068-2-32	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers

Table 249: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for vibration

5.1 Vibration during operation

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-6	Limits according to EN 61131-2		Limits according to EN 60721-3-3 class 3M4		
Vibration during operation: Uninterrupted duty with moveable frequency in all 3 axes (x, y, z), 1 octave per minute	10 sweeps for each axis		10 sweeps for each axis		
	Frequency	**Limit value**	**Frequency**	**Limit value**	
	5 - 9 Hz	Amplitude 3.5 mm	2 - 9 Hz	Amplitude 3 mm	
	9 - 150 Hz	Acceleration 1 g	9 - 200 Hz	Acceleration 1 g	

Table 250: Test requirements - Vibration during operation

5.2 Vibration during transport (packaged)

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-6	Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M1		Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M2		Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M3	
Vibration during transport: Uninterrupted duty with moveable frequency in all 3 axes (x, y, z)	10 sweeps for each axis, packaged		10 sweeps for each axis, packaged		10 sweeps for each axis, packaged	
	Frequency	**Limit value**	**Frequency**	**Limit value**	**Frequency**	**Limit value**
	2 - 9 Hz	Amplitude 3.5 mm	2 - 9 Hz	Amplitude 3.5 mm	2 - 8 Hz	Amplitude 7.5 mm
	9 - 200 Hz	Acceleration 1 g	9 - 200 Hz	Acceleration 1 g	8 - 200 Hz	Acceleration 2 g
	200 - 500 Hz	Acceleration 1.5 g	200 - 500 Hz	Acceleration 1.5 g	200 - 500 Hz	Acceleration 4 g

Table 251: Test requirements - Vibration during transport (packaged)

5.3 Shock during operation

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-27	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 60721-3-3 class 3M4	
Shock during operation: Pulse (half-sine) stress in all 3 axes (x, y, z)	Acceleration 15 g, length 11 ms, 18 shocks	Acceleration 15 g, length 11 ms	

Table 252: Test requirements - Shock during operation

5.4 Shock during transport (packaged)

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-27	Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M1	Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M2	Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M3
Pulse (half-sine) stress in all 3 axes (x, y, z)	Acceleration 10 g, Length 11 ms, each 3 shocks, packaged	Acceleration 30 g, Length 6 ms, each 3 shocks, packaged	Acceleration 100 g, Length 6 ms, each 3 shocks, packaged

Table 253: Test requirements - Shock during transport

5.5 Toppling

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-31	Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M1		Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M2		Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M3	
Drop and topple	Devices: Drop/topple on each edge		Devices: Drop/topple on each edge		Devices: Drop/topple on each edge	
	Weight	**Required**	**Weight**	**Required**	**Weight**	**Required**
	<20 kg	Yes	<20 kg	Yes	<20 kg	Yes
	20 - 100 kg	-	20 - 100 kg	Yes	20 - 100 kg	Yes
	>100 kg	-	>100 kg	-	>100 kg	Yes

Table 254: Test requirements - Toppling

5.6 Free fall (packaged)

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-32	Limits according to EN 61131-2		Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M1		Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M2		Limits according to EN 60721-3-2 class 2M3	
Free fall	Devices with delivery packaging each with 5 fall tests		Devices packaged		Devices packaged		Devices packaged	
	Weight	**Height**	**Weight**	**Height**	**Weight**	**Height**	**Weight**	**Height**
	<10 kg	1.0 m	<20 kg	0.25 m	<20 kg	1.2 m	<20 kg	1.5 m
	10 - 40 kg	0.5 m	20 - 100 kg	0.25 m	20 - 100 kg	1.0 m	20 - 100 kg	1.2 m
	>40 kg	0.25 m	>100 kg	0.1 m	>100 kg	0.25 m	>100 kg	0.5 m
	Devices with product packaging each with 5 fall tests							
	Weight	**Height**						
	<10 kg	0.3 m						
	10 - 40 kg	0.3 m						
	>40 kg	0.25 m						

Table 255: Test requirements - Toppling

6. Climate conditions

Temperature / humidity	Test carried out according to	Limits according to
Worst case operation	UL 508	UL 508: Industrial control equipment EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Dry heat	EN 60068-2-2	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Dry cold	EN 60068-2-1	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Large temperature fluctuations	EN 60068-2-14	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Temperature fluctuations in operation	EN 60068-2-14	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Humid heat, cyclic	EN 60068-2-30	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Humid heat, constant (storage)	EN 60068-2-3	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers

Table 256: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for temperature and humidity

6.1 Worst case during operation

Test carried out according to UL 508	Limits according to UL 508	Limits according to EN 61131-2	
Worst case during operation. Operation of the device with the max. ambient temperature specified in the data sheet at the max. specified load	3 hours at max. ambient temperature (min. +40°C) duration approx. 5 hours	3 hours at max. ambient temperature (min. +40°C) duration approx. 5 hours	

Table 257: Test requirements - Worst case during operation

6.2 Dry heat

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-2	Limits according to EN 61131-2		
Dry heat	16 hours at +70°C for 1 cycle, then 1 hour acclimatization and function testing, duration approximately 17 hours		

Table 258: Test requirements - Dry heat

6.3 Dry cold

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-1	Limits according to EN 61131-2		
Dry cold	16 hours at -40°C for 1 cycle, then 1 hour acclimatization and function testing, duration approximately 17 hours		

Table 259: Test requirements - Dry cold

6.4 Large temperature fluctuations

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-14	Limits according to EN 61131-2		
Large temperature fluctuations	3 hours at -40° C and 3 hours at +70°C, 2 cycles, then 2 hours acclimatization and function testing, duration approximately 14 hours		

Table 260: Test requirements - Large temperature fluctuations

6.5 Temperature fluctuations in operation

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-14	Limits according to EN 61131-2		
Open devices: These can also have a housing and are installed in switching cabinets	3 hours at +5° C and 3 hours at 55°C, 5 cycles, temperature gradient 3°C / min, the unit is occasionally supplied with voltage during testing, duration approximately 30 hours		
Closed devices: These are devices whose data sheet specifies a surrounding housing (enclosure) with the corresponding safety precautions	3 hours at +5°C and 3 hours at +55°C, 5 cycles, temperature gradient 3°C / min, the unit is occasionally supplied with voltage during testing, duration approximately 30 hours		

Table 261: Test requirements - Temperature fluctuations in operation

6.6 Humid heat, cyclical

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-30	Limits according to EN 61131-2		
Alternating climate	24 hours at +25°C / +55°C and 97% / 83% RH, 2 cycles, then 2 hours acclimatization, function testing and insulation, duration approximately 50 hours		

Table 262: Test requirements - Humid heat, cyclic

6.7 Humid heat, constant (storage)

Test carried out according to EN 60068-2-3	Limits according to EN 61131-2		
Humid heat, constant (storage)	48 hours at +40°C and 92.5% RH, then insulation test within 3 hours, duration approximately 49 hours		

Table 263: Test requirements - Humid heat, constant (storage)

7. Safety

Safety	Test carried out according to	Limits according to
Ground resistance	EN 61131-2	EN 60204-1: Electrical equipment of machines
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Insulation resistance		EN 60204-1: Electrical equipment of machines
High voltage	EN 60060-1	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		UL 508: Industrial control equipment
Residual voltage	EN 61131-2	EN 60204-1: Electrical equipment of machines
		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
Leakage current		VDE 0701-1: Service, changes and testing of electrical devices
Overload	UL 508	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		UL 508: Industrial control equipment
Simulation component defect	UL 508	EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers
		UL 508: Industrial control equipment
Voltage range		EN 61131-2: Programmable logic controllers

Table 264: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for safety

7.1 Ground resistance

Test carried out according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 60204-1[1)]		Limits according to EN 61131-2
Ground resistance: housing (from any metal part to the ground terminal)	Smallest effective cross section of the protective ground conductor for the branch being tested	Maximum measured voltage drop at a test current of 10 A	Test current 30 A for 2 min, < 0.1 Ω
	1.0 mm²	3.3 V	
	1.5 mm²	2.6 V	
	2.5 mm²	1.9 V	
	4.0 mm²	1.4 V	
	> 6.0 mm²	1.0 V	

Table 265: Test requirements - Ground resistance

1) See EN 60204-1:1997 page 62, table 9.

7.2 Insulation resistance

Test carried out	Limits according to EN 60204-1[1)]		
Insulation resistance: main circuits to protective ground conductor	> 1 MΩ at 500 V DC voltage		

Table 266: Test requirements - Insulation resistance

1) See EN 60204-1:1997 page 62, table 9.

7.3 High voltage

Test carried out according to EN 60060-1	Limits according to EN 61131-2[1)]				Limits according to UL 508		
	Input voltage	Test voltage			Input voltage	Test voltage	
		1.2/50 µs voltage surge peak	AC, 1 min	DC, 1 min		AC, 1 min	DC, 1 min
High voltage: Primary circuit to secondary circuit and to protective ground circuit (transformers, coils, varistors, capacitors and components used to protect against over-voltage can be removed before the test)	0 - 50 VAC 0 - 60 VDC	850 V	510 V	720 V	≤ 50 V	500 V	707 V
	50 - 100 VAC 60 - 100 VDC	1360 V	740 V	1050 V	> 50 V	1000 V + 2 x U_N	(1000 V + 2 x U_N) x 1.414
	100 - 150 VAC 100 - 150 VDC	2550 V	1400 V	1950 V			
	150 - 300 VAC 150 - 300 VDC	4250 V	2300 V	3250 V			
	300 - 600 VAC 300 - 600 VDC	6800 V	3700 V	5250 V			
	600 - 1000 VAC 600 - 1000 VDC	10200 V	5550 V	7850 V			

Table 267: Test requirements - High voltage

1) See EN 61131-2:2003 page 104, table 59.

7.4 Residual voltage

Test carried out according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to EN 60204-1	Limits according to EN 61131-2	
Residual voltage after switching off	< 60 V after 5 sec (active parts) < 60 V after 1 sec (plug pins)	< 60 V after 5 sec (active parts) < 60 V after 1 sec (plug pins)	

Table 268: Test requirements - Residual voltage

7.5 Leakage current

Test carried out	Limits according to VDE 0701-1		
Leakage current: Phase to ground	< 3.5 mA		

Table 269: Test requirements - Leakage current

7.6 Overload

Test carried out according to UL 508	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to UL 508	
Overload of transistor outputs	50 switches, 1.5 I_N, 1 sec on / 9 sec off	50 switches, 1.5 I_N, 1 sec on / 9 sec off	

Table 270: Test requirements - Overload

7.7 Defective component

Test carried out according to UL 508	Limits according to EN 61131-2	Limits according to UL 508	
Simulation of how components in power supply became defective	Non-flammable surrounding cloth No contact with conductive parts	Non-flammable surrounding cloth No contact with conductive parts	

Table 271: Test requirements - Defective component

7.8 Voltage range

Test carried out according to	Limits according to EN 61131-2			
Supply voltage	Measurement value	Tolerance min/max		
	24 VDC 48 VDC 125 VDC	-15% +20%		
	24 VAC 48 VAC 100 VAC 110 VAC 120 VAC 200 VAC 230 VAC 240 VAC 400 VAC	15% +10%		

Table 272: Test requirements - Voltage range

8. Other tests

Other tests	Test carried out according to	Limits according to
Protection type	-	EN 60529: Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)
Degree of pollution	-	EN 60664-1: Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems - part 1: Principles, requirements and tests

Table 273: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for other tests

8.1 Protection

Test carried out according to	Limits according to EN 60529	Limits according to EN 60529	
Protection of the operating equipment	IP2. Protection against large solid foreign bodies =12.5 mm diameter	IP.6 Protection against large solid foreign bodies: dust-proof	
Protection of personnel	IP2. Protection against touching dangerous parts with finger	IP.6 Protection against touching dangerous parts with conductor	
Protection against water permeation with damaging consequences	IP.0 Not protected	IP.5 Protected against sprayed water	

Table 274: Test requirements - Protection

8.2 Degree of pollution

Test carried out according to	Limits according to EN 60664-1		
Definition	Degree of pollution II		

Table 275: Test requirements - Degree of pollution

9. SDL flex cable - test description

9.1 Torsion

9.1.1 Test structure

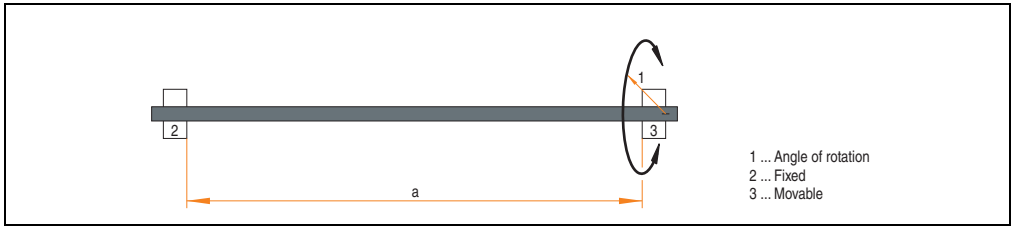


Figure 179: Test structure - torsion

9.1.2 Test conditions

- Distance a: 450 mm
- Rotation angle: ±85°
- Velocity: 50 cycles / minute
- Special feature: The cable was clamped down twice in the machine.

9.1.3 Individual tests

- Visible pixel errors: At the beginning of the test, the minimum equalizer setting was determined. This is the value between 0-15 at which no more pixel errors are visible. If the equalizer setting is changed due to the mechanical load, this is noted.
- Touch screen for function (with a 21.3" Automation Panel - 5AP920.2138-01)
- USB mouse function
- Hot plug function tested by unplugging the USB plug
- After a test duration of 15000 cycles, the test was ended with a result of "OK".

9.2 Cable drag chain

9.2.1 Test structure

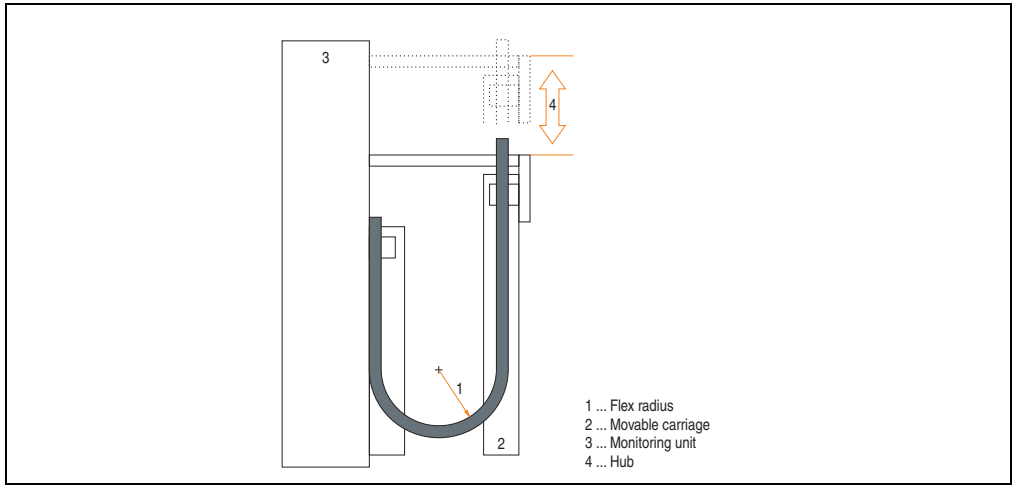


Figure 180: Test structure - Cable drag chain

9.2.2 Test conditions

- Flex radius: 180 mm (= 15 x cable diameter)
- Hub: 460 mm
- Velocity: 4800 cycles / hour
- Special feature: The cable was clamped down twice in the machine.

9.2.3 Individual tests:

- Visible pixel errors: At the beginning of the test, the minimum equalizer setting is determined. This is the value between 0-15 at which no more pixel errors are visible. If the equalizer setting is changed due to the mechanical load, this is noted.
- Touch screen for function (with a 21.3" Automation Panel - 5AP920.2138-01)
- USB mouse function
- Hot plug function tested by unplugging the USB plug
- After a test duration of 30,000 cycles, the test was ended with a result of "OK".

10. International certifications

B&R products and services comply with applicable standards. They are international standards from organizations such as ISO, IEC and CENELEC, as well as national standards from organizations such as UL, CSA, FCC, VDE, ÖVE, etc. We give special consideration to the reliability of our products in an industrial environment.

Certifications	
USA and Canada	All important B&R products are tested and listed by Underwriters Laboratories and checked quarterly by a UL inspector. This mark is valid for the USA and Canada and simplifies certification of your machines and systems in these areas.
Europe	All harmonized EN standards for the applicable guidelines are met.

Table 276: International certifications

Chapter 6 • Accessories

1. Overview

Model number	Short description	Note
0AC201.91	**Lithium batteries, 4 pcs**. Lithium batteries, 4 pcs., 3 V / 950 mAh, button cell	
0TB103.9	**Plug 24V 5.08 3-pin screw clamps** 24 VDC 3-pin connector, female. Screw clamps, 3.31 mm², protected against vibration by the screw flange	
0TB103.91	**Plug 24V 5.08 3-pin cage clamps** 24 VDC 3-pin connector, female. Cage clamps, 3.31 mm², protected against vibration by the screw flange	
0TB704.9	**Terminal block, 4-pin,** Screw clamp, 1.5 mm²	
0TB704.91	**Terminal block, 4-pin,** Cage clamps, 2.5 mm²	
4A0006.00-000	**Lithium battery (1x)** Lithium battery, 1 pc., 3 V / 950 mAh, button cell	
5A5003.03	**Front cover** Front cover for the USB 2.0 Media Drive 5MD900.USB2-00.	
5AC600.ICOV-00	**Interface covers** Interface covers for APC620 and PPC700 devices; 5 pieces	
5AC600.UPSI-00	**Add-on UPS module** UPS module for APC620 / APC810 system units 5PC600.SX01-00 (Rev. H0 and up), 5PC600.SX02-00 (Rev. G0 and up), 5PC600.SX02-01 (Rev. H0 and up), 5PC600.SX05-00 (Rev. F0 and up), 5PC600.SX05-01 (Rev. F0), 5PC600.SF03-00 (Rev. A0 and up), 5PC600.SE00-00 (Rev. A0), 5PC600.SE00-01 (Rev. A0 and up), 5PC600.SE00-02 (Rev. A0 and up), 5PC810.SX*. Order cable (5CAUPS.0005-00 or 5CAUPS.0030-00) and battery unit (5AC600.UPSB-00) separately.	
5AC600.UPSB-00	**Battery unit 5 Ah** Battery unit	
5ACPCI.ETH1-01	**PCI Ethernet card 10/100** half size PCI Ethernet card, 1 Ethernet connection	
5ACPCI.ETH3-01	**PCI Ethernet card 10/100 3port** half size PCI Ethernet card, 3 Ethernet connections	
5AC900.1000-00	**Adapter DVI-A/m to CRT DB15HD/f** Adapter DVI (plug) to CRT (socket), for connecting a standard monitor to a DVI-I interface.	
5AC600.SRAM-00	**APC620/PPC700 SRAM module 512kB** SRAM module for APC620 and PPC700 512 KB.	

Table 277: Model numbers - Accessories

Model number	Short description	Note
5CADVI.0018-00	**DVI-D cable 1.8 m** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 1.8 m	
5CADVI.0050-00	**DVI-D cable 5 m** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 5 m	
5CADVI.0100-00	**DVI-D cable 10 m** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 10 m	
5CAMSC.0001-00	**APC620 internal supply cable**	
5CASDL.0018-00	**SDL cable 1.8 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 1.8 m	
5CASDL.0018-01	**SDL cable 1.8 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 1.8 m	
5CASDL.0018-03	**SDL flex cable 1.8 m** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 1.8 m	
5CASDL.0050-00	**SDL cable 5 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 5 m	
5CASDL.0050-01	**SDL cable 5 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 5 m	
5CASDL.0050-03	**5 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 5 m	
5CASDL.0100-00	**SDL cable 10 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 10 m	
5CASDL.0100-01	**SDL cable 10 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 10 m	
5CASDL.0100-03	**10 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 10 m	
5CASDL.0150-00	**SDL cable 15 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 15 m	
5CASDL.0150-01	**SDL cable 15 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 15 m	
5CASDL.0150-03	**15 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 15 m	
5CASDL.0200-00	**SDL cable 20 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 20 m	
5CASDL.0200-03	**20 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 20 m	
5CASDL.0250-00	**SDL cable 25 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 25 m	
5CASDL.0250-03	**25 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 25 m	
5CASDL.0300-00	**SDL cable 30 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 30 m	
5CASDL.0300-03	**30 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 30 m	
5CASDL.0300-13	**30 m SDL flex cable with extender** SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 30 m	

Table 277: Model numbers - Accessories (cont.)

Model number	Short description	Note
5CASDL.0400-13	**40 m SDL flex cable with extender** SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 40 m	
5CAUPS.0005-00	**APC620 UPS cable 0.5 m** Connection cable between add-on UPS module and UPS battery unit, length 0.5 meters	
5CAUPS.0030-00	**APC620 UPS cable 3 m** Connection cable between add-on UPS module and UPS battery unit, length 3 meters	
5CAUSB.0018-00	**USB 2.0 cable, A/m:B/m 1.8 m** USB 2.0 connection cable; plug type A - type B; length 1.8 m	
5CAUSB.0050-00	**USB 2.0 cable, A/m:B/m 5 m** USB 2.0 connection cable; plug type A - type B; length 5 m	
5CFCRD.0512-04	**CompactFlash 512 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 512 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.1024-04	**CompactFlash 1024 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 1024 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.2048-04	**CompactFlash 2048 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 2048 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.4096-04	**CompactFlash 4096 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 4096 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.8192-04	**CompactFlash 8192 MB B&R** CompactFlash card with 8192 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.016G-04	**CompactFlash 16 GB B&R** CompactFlash card with 16 GB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.0064-03	**CompactFlash 64 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 64 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.0128-03	**CompactFlash 128 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 128 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.0256-03	**CompactFlash 256 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 256 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.0512-03	**CompactFlash 512 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 512 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.1024-03	**CompactFlash 1024 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 1024 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.2048-03	**CompactFlash 2048 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 2048 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.4096-03	**CompactFlash 4096 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 4096 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5CFCRD.8192-03	**CompactFlash 8192 MB SSI** CompactFlash card with 8192 MB SLC NAND flash and IDE/ATA interface	
5MD900.USB2-01	**USB 2.0 drive DVD-RW/CD-RW FDD CF USB** USB 2.0 drive combination, consists of DVD-R/RW/DVD+R/RW/CD-RW, FDD, CompactFlash slot (type II), USB connection (type A front, type B back); 24 V DC.	
5MMUSB.2048-00	**USB flash drive 2 GB SanDisk** USB 2.0 flash drive 2 GB	
5SWHMI.0000-00	**HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD**	
9A0014.02	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 1.8 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 1.8 m.	

Table 277: Model numbers - Accessories (cont.)

Model number	Short description	Note
9A0014.05	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 5 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 5 m.	
9A0014.10	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 10 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 10 m.	
5AC600.FA01-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system unit with 1 PCI Slot (5PC600.SX01-00).	
5AC600.FA02-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system unit with 2 PCI slot (5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX02-01).	
5AC600.FA03-00	**APC620f replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system unit with 3 PCI Slots (5PC600.SF03-00).	
5AC600.FA05-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** APC620 replacement fan filter for system units with 5 PCI slot (5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX02-01).	
0PS102.0	**Power supply, 1-phase, 2.1 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 2.1 A, input 100-240 VAC, wide range, DIN rail installation	
0PS104.0	**Power supply, 1-phase, 4.2 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 4.2 A, input 115/230 VAC, auto select, DIN rail mounting	
0PS105.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 5 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 5 A, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	
0PS105.2	**Power supply, 1-phase, 5 A, redundant** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 5 A, redundant through parallel operation, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	
0PS110.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 10 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 10 A, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	
0PS110.2	**Power supply, 1-phase, 10 A, redundant** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 10 A, redundant through parallel operation, input 115/230 VAC, manual select, DIN rail mounting	
0PS120.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 20 A** 24 VDC power supply, 1 phase, 20 A, input 115/230 VAC, auto select, DIN rail mounting	
0PS305.1	**Power supply, 3-phase, 5 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3-phase, 5 A, input 400..500 VAC (3 phases), wide range, DIN rail mounting	
0PS310.1	**Power supply, 3-phase, 10 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3-phase, 10 A, input 400..500 VAC (3 phases), wide range, DIN rail mounting	
0PS320.1	**Power supply, 3-phase, 20 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3-phase, 20 A, input 400..500 VAC (3 phases), wide range, DIN rail mounting	
0PS340.1	**Power supply, 1-phase, 40 A** 24 VDC power supply, 3 phase, 40 A, input 115/230 VAC, auto select, DIN rail mounting	

Table 277: Model numbers - Accessories (cont.)

2. Supply voltage connector (TB103 3-pin)

2.1 General information

This single row 3-pin terminal block is mainly used to connect the supply voltage.

2.2 Order data

Model number	Description	Figure
0TB103.9	Plug for the 24 V supply voltage (screw clamps)	0TB103.9
0TB103.91	Plug for the 24 V supply voltage (cage clamps)	0TB103.91

Table 278: Order data - TB103

2.3 Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features and limit values only apply to this accessory and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device where this accessory is installed, refer to the data provided specifically for the entire device.

Name	0TB103.9	0TB103.91
Number of pins	3	
Type of terminal	Screw clamps	Cage clamps

Table 279: Technical data - TB103 supply plug

Name	0TB103.9	0TB103.91
Distance between contacts	5.08 mm	
Resistance between contacts	≤ 5 mΩ	
Nominal voltage according to VDE / UL,CSA	250 V / 300 V	
Current load according to VDE / UL,CSA	14.5 A / 10 A per contact	
Terminal size	0.08 mm² - 3.31 mm²	
Cable type	Copper wires only (no aluminum wires!)	

Table 279: Technical data - TB103 supply plug (cont.)

3. X2X and CAN plugs (4-pin)

3.1 General information

This 4-pin plug is needed for connecting to the X2X and CAN interface.

3.2 Order data

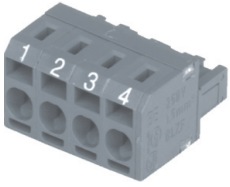
Model number	Description	Figure
0TB704.9	4-pin screw clamp	0TB704.9
0TB704.91	4-pin cage clamps	 0TB704.91

Table 280: Order data - 0TB704.9 and 0TB704.91

3.3 Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features and limit values only apply to this accessory and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device where this accessory is installed, refer to the data provided specifically for the entire device.

Name	0TB704.9	0TB704.91
Number of pins	4	
Type of terminal	Screw clamps	Cage clamps

Table 281: Technical data - TB103 supply plug

4. Replacement CMOS batteries

The lithium battery is needed for buffering the BIOS CMOS data, the real-time clock, and SRAM data. The battery is subject to wear and should be replaced regularly (at least following the specified buffer duration).

4.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Figure
0AC201.91	Lithium batteries, 4 pcs., 3 V / 950 mAh button cell	
4A0006.00-000	Lithium battery, 1 piece, 3 V / 950 mAh button cell	

Table 282: Order data - Lithium batteries

4.2 Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features and limit values only apply to this accessory and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device where this accessory is installed, refer to the data provided specifically for the entire device.

Features	0AC201.91	4A0006.00-000
Capacity	950 mAh	
Voltage	3 V	
Self discharge at 23°C	< 1% per year	
Storage time	Max. 3 years at 30°C	
Environmental characteristics		
Storage temperature	-20 to +60°C	
Relative humidity	0 to 95%, non-condensing	

Table 283: Technical data - Lithium batteries

5. Interface covers 5AC600.ICOV-00

The interface covers protect interfaces from dirt and dust when not in use.

5.1 Order data

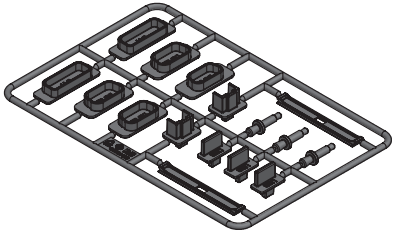
Model number	Description	Figure
5AC600.ICOV-00	**Interface covers** Interface covers for APC620 and PPC700 devices; 5 pieces	

Table 284: Order data - APC620 interface cover

5.2 Contents of delivery

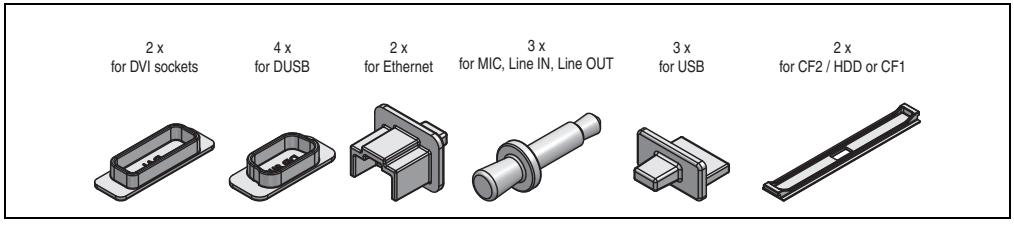


Figure 181: Contents of delivery - interface cover

6. DVI - monitor adapter 5AC900.1000-00

This adapter enables a standard monitor to be connected to the DVI-I interface.

6.1 Order data

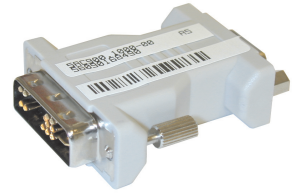
Model number	Description	Figure
5AC900.1000-00	**Adapter DVI-A/m to CRT DB15HD/f** Adapter DVI (plug) to CRT (socket), for connecting a standard monitor to a DVI-I interface.	

Table 285: Order data - DVI - CRT adapter

7. CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04

7.1 General information

Information:

B&R CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04 and CompactFlash cards from a different manufacturer cannot be used in the same system at the same time. Due to differences in technology (older vs. newer technologies), problems can occur during system startup that are caused by the different boot times.

See chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 7 "Known problems / issues" on page 261.

Information:

The 5CFCRD.xxxx-04 CompactFlash cards are supported on B&R devices with WinCE Version ≥ 6.0 or higher.

7.2 Order data

Model number	Description	Figure
5CFCRD.0512-04	512 MB B&R CompactFlash card	CompactFlash card
5CFCRD.1024-04	1024 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.2048-04	2048 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.4096-04	4096 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.8192-04	8192 MB B&R CompactFlash card	
5CFCRD.016G-04	16 GB B&R CompactFlash card	

Table 286: Order data - CompactFlash cards

7.3 Technical data

Caution!

A sudden loss of power can cause data to be lost! In very rare cases, the mass memory may also become damaged.

To prevent damage and loss of data, it is recommended to use a UPS device.

Information:

The following characteristics, features and limit values only apply to this accessory and can deviate those specified for the entire device. For the entire device where this accessory is installed, refer to the data provided specifically for the entire device.

Features	5CFCRD.0512-04	5CFCRD.1024-04	5CFCRD.2048-04	5CFCRD.4096-04	5CFCRD.8192-04	5CFCRD.016G-04
MTBF (at 25°C)	> 3,000,000 hours					
Maintenance	None					
Data reliability	< 1 unrecoverable error in 10^{14} bit read accesses					
Data retention	10 years					
Lifetime monitoring	Yes					
Supported operating modes	PIO Mode 0-6, Multiword DMA Mode 0-4, Ultra DMA Mode 0-4					
Continuous reading	Typically 35 MB/s(240X)[1)2)] Max. 37 MB/s (260X)[1) 2)]	Typically 35 MB/s (240X)[1) 2)] Max. 37 MB/s (260X)[1) 2)]	Typically 35 MB/s (240X)[1) 2)] Max. 37 MB/s (260X)[1) 2)]	Typically 33 MB/s (220X)[1) 2)] Max. 34 MB/s (226X)[1) 2)]	Typically 27 MB/s (180X)[1) 2)] Max. 28 MB/s (186X)[1) 2)]	Typically 36 MB/s (240X)[1) 2)] Max. 37 MB/s (247X)[1) 2)]
Continuous writing	Typically 17 MB/s (110X) Max. 20 MB/s (133X)	Typically 17 MB/s (110X) Max. 20 MB/s (133X)	Typically 17 MB/s (110X) Max. 20 MB/s (133X)	Typically 16 MB/s (106X) Max. 18 MB/s (120X)	Typically 15 MB/s (100X) Max. 17 MB/s (110X)	Typically 18 MB/s (120X) Max. 19 MB/s (126X)
Endurance						
Guaranteed data volume [3)] Results for 5 years [3)]	50 TB 27.40 GB/day	100 TB 54.79 GB/day	200 TB 109.59 GB/day	400 TB 219.18 GB/day	800 TB 438.36 GB/day	1600 TB 876.72 GB/day
Clear/write cycles Guaranteed Typical[4)]	100,000 2,000,000					
SLC flash	Yes					
Wear leveling	Static					

Table 287: Technical data - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04

Endurance	5CFCRD.0512-04	5CFCRD.1024-04	5CFCRD.2048-04	5CFCRD.4096-04	5CFCRD.8192-04	5CFCRD.016G-04
Error Correction Coding (ECC)	Yes					
Support						
Hardware	PP300/400, PPC300, PPC700, PPC800, APC620, APC810, APC820					
Windows XP Professional	-	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows XP Embedded	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows CE 6.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes [5]
Windows CE 5.0	-	-	-	-	-	-
PVI Transfer Tool	≥ V3.2.3.8 (part of PVI Development Setup ≥ V2.06.00.3011)					-
B&R Embedded OS Installer	≥ V3.10					-
Mechanical characteristics						
Dimensions Length Width Thickness	36.4 ±0.15 mm 42.8 ±0.10 mm 3.3 ±0.10 mm					
Weight	10 g					
Environmental characteristics						
Ambient temperature Operation Bearings Transport	0 to +70°C -65 to +150°C -65 to +150°C					
Relative humidity Operation / Storage / Transport	Max. 85% at 85°C					
Vibration Operation / Storage / Transport	20 G peak, 20- 2000 Hz, 4 in each direction (JEDEC JESD22, method B103) 5.35 G RMS, 15 min per level (IEC 68-2-6)					
Shock Operation / Storage / Transport	1.5k G peak, 0.5 ms 5 times (JEDEC JESD22, method B110) 30 G, 11 ms 1 time (IEC 68-2-27)					
Altitude	Max. 15000 feet (4572 m)					

Table 287: Technical data - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04 (cont.)

1) Speed specs with 1X = 150 KB/s. All specs refer to Samsung flash chips, CompactFlash cards in UDMA Mode 4, cycle time 30 ns in True-IDE Mode with sequential read/write test.

2) The file is written/read sequentially in True IDE mode with the DOS program Thruput.exe.

3) Endurance of B&R CF cards (linear written block size with ≥ 128 KB)

4) Depending on the average file size.

5) Not supported by B&R Embedded OS installer.

7.3.1 Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

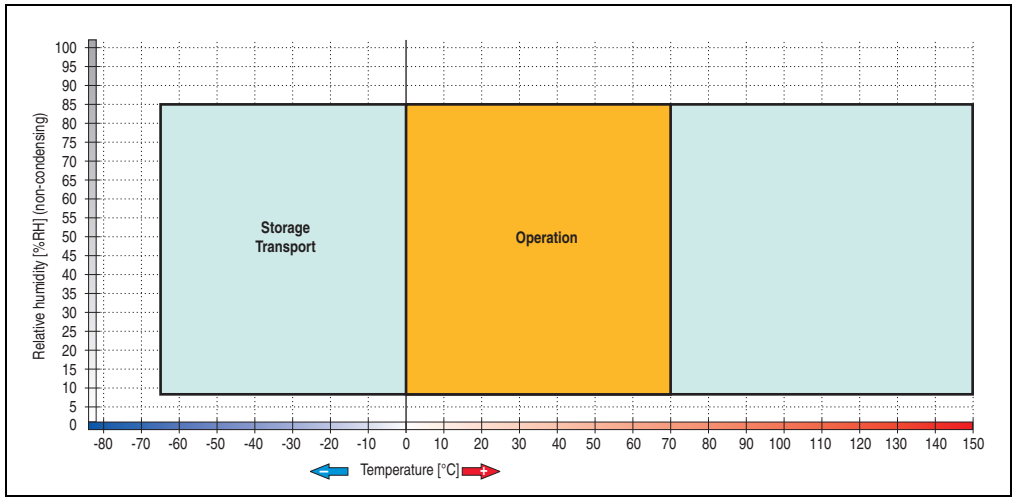


Figure 182: Temperature humidity diagram - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04

7.4 Dimensions

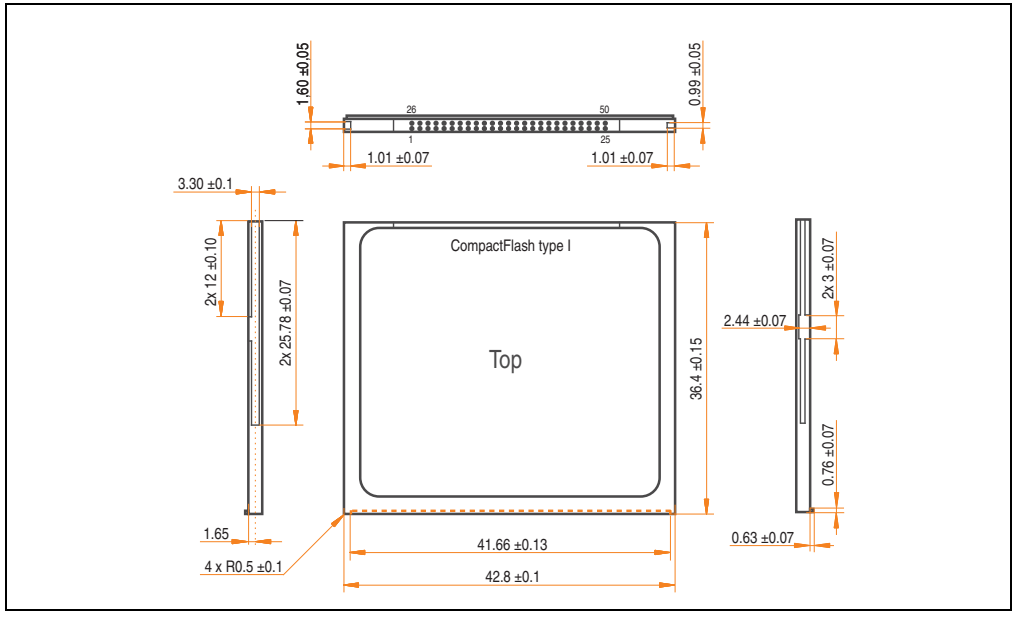


Figure 183: Dimensions - CompactFlash card Type I

7.5 Benchmark

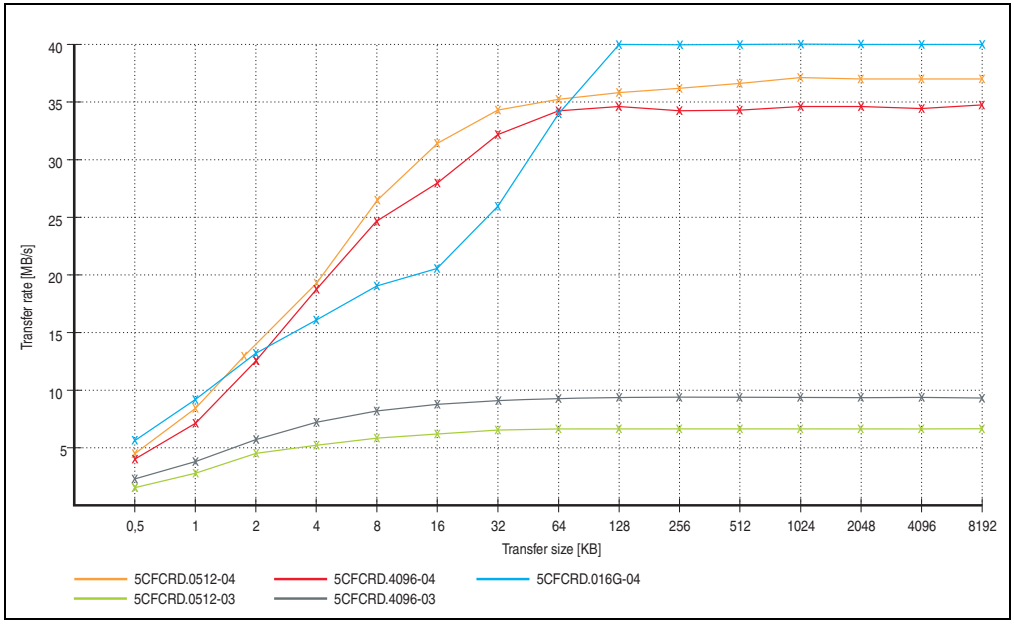


Figure 184: ATTO disk benchmark v2.34 comparison (reading)

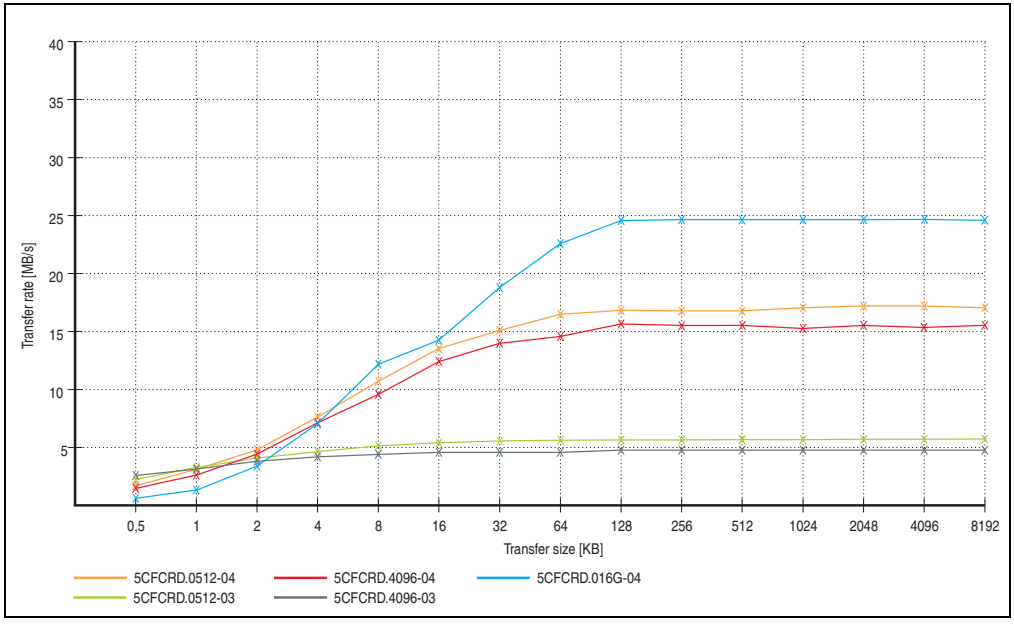


Figure 185: ATTO disk benchmark v2.34 comparison (writing)

8. CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03

8.1 General information

Information:

Silicon Systems CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03 and CompactFlash cards from a different manufacturer cannot be used in the same system at the same time. Due to differences in technology (older vs. newer technologies), problems can occur during system startup that are caused by the different boot times.

See chapter 3 "Commissioning", section 7 "Known problems / issues" on page 261.

Information:

On Windows CE 5.0 devices, 5CFCRD.xxxx-03 CompactFlash cards up to 1GB are supported.

8.2 Order data

Model number	Description	Figure
5CFCRD.0064-03	CompactFlash 64 MB SSI	CompactFlash card
5CFCRD.0128-03	CompactFlash 128 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0256-03	CompactFlash 256 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.0512-03	CompactFlash 512 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.1024-03	CompactFlash 1024 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.2048-03	CompactFlash 2048 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.4096-03	CompactFlash 4096 MB SSI	
5CFCRD.8192-03	CompactFlash 8192 MB SSI	

Table 288: Order data - CompactFlash cards

8.3 Technical data

Caution!

A sudden loss of power can cause data to be lost! In very rare cases, the mass memory may also become damaged.

To prevent damage and loss of data, B&R recommends that you use a UPS device.

Information:

The following characteristics, features and limit values only apply to this accessory and can deviate those specified for the entire device. For the entire device where this accessory is installed, refer to the data provided specifically for the entire device.

Features	5CFCRD. 0064-03	5CFCRD. 0128-03	5CFCRD. 0256-03	5CFCRD. 0512-03	5CFCRD. 1024-03	5CFCRD. 2048-03	5CFCRD. 4096-03	5CFCRD. 8192-03
MTBF (at 25°C)	> 4,000,000 hours							
Maintenance	None							
Data reliability	< 1 unrecoverable error in 10^{14} bit read accesses							
Data retention	10 years							
Lifetime monitoring	Yes							
Supported operating modes	PIO Mode 0-4, Multiword DMA Mode 0-2							
Continuous reading	Typically 8 MB/s							
Continuous writing	Typically 6 MB/s							
Endurance								
Clear/write cycles Typical	> 2.000.000							
SLC flash	Yes							
Wear leveling	Static							
Error Correction Coding (ECC)	Yes							
Support								
Hardware	MP100/200, PP100/200, PP300/400, PPC700, PPC300, Provit 2000, Provit 5000, APC620, APC680, APC810, APC820							
Windows XP Professional	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	Yes
Windows XP Embedded	-	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows CE 6.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Windows CE 5.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-	-

Table 289: Technical data - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03

Support	5CFCRD.0064-03	5CFCRD.0128-03	5CFCRD.0256-03	5CFCRD.0512-03	5CFCRD.1024-03	5CFCRD.2048-03	5CFCRD.4096-03	5CFCRD.8192-03
PVI Transfer Tool	≥ V2.57 (part of PVI Development Setup ≥ V2.5.3.3005)							
B&R Embedded OS Installer	≥ V2.21							
Mechanical characteristics								
Dimensions Length Width Thickness	36.4 ±0.15 mm 42.8 ±0.10 mm 3.3 ±0.10 mm							
Weight	11.4 g							
Environmental characteristics								
Ambient temperature Operation Bearings Transport	0 to +70°C -50 to +100°C -50 to +100°C							
Relative humidity Operation / Storage / Transport	8 to 95%, non-condensing							
Vibration Operation Storage / Transport	Max. 16.3 g (159 m/s^2 0-peak) Max. 30 g (294 m/s^2 0-peak)							
Shock Operation Storage / Transport	Max. 1000 g (9810 m/s^2 0-peak) Max. 3000 g (29430 m/s^2 0-peak)							
Altitude	Maximum 80,000 feet (24,383 meters)							

Table 289: Technical data - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03 (cont.)

8.3.1 Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

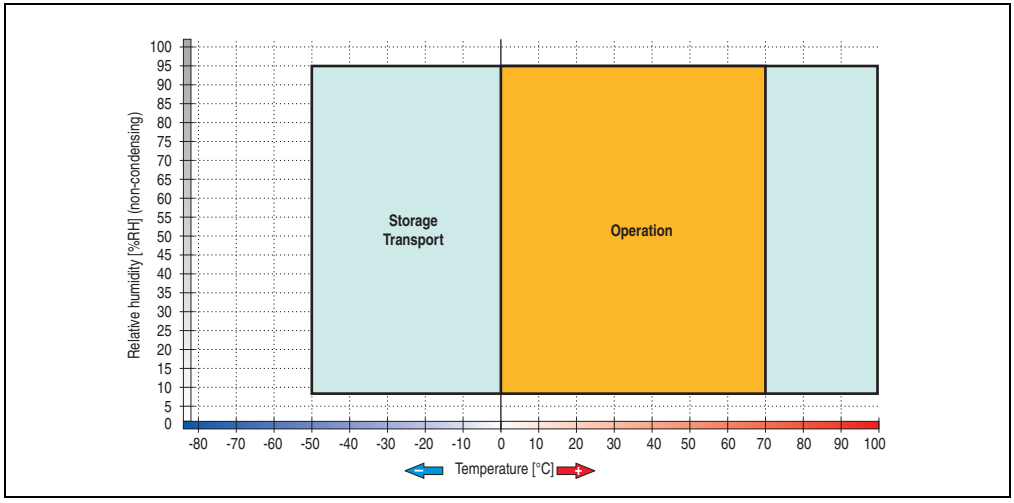


Figure 186: Temperature humidity diagram - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03

8.4 Dimensions

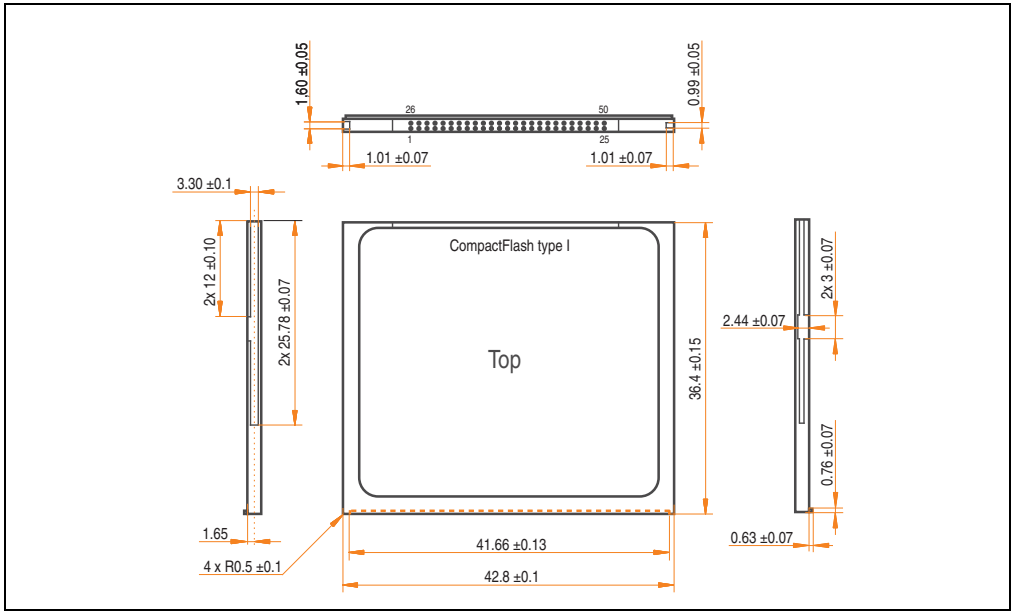


Figure 187: Dimensions - CompactFlash card Type I

9. USB Media Drive - 5MD900.USB2-01

Data carriers not included in delivery

Figure 188: USB Media Drive - 5MD900.USB2-01

9.1 Features

- Desk-top or rack-mount operation (mounting rail brackets)
- Integrated USB diskette drive
- Integrated DVD-RW/CD-RW drive
- Integrated CompactFlash slot IDE/ATAPI (Hot Plug capable)
- Integrated USB 2.0 connection (up to 480 MBit high speed)
- +24 VDC supply (back side)
- USB/B 2.0 connection (back side)
- Optional front cover (model number 5A5003.03 see also section 9.8 "Front cover 5A5003.03 for the USB Media Drive" on page 427)

9.2 Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features and limit values only apply to this accessory and can deviate from those specified for the entire device. For the entire device where this accessory is installed, refer to the data provided specifically for the entire device.

Features - entire device	5MD900.USB2-01
Transfer rate	Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), full speed (12 MBit/s), to high speed (480 Mbit/s)
Maximum cable length	5 m (not including hub)
Power supply Rated voltage	 24 VDC ± 25%
Features - diskette drive	
Data capacity	720 KB / 1.25 MB / 1.44 MB (formatted)
Data transfer rate	250 kbits (720 KB) or 500 kbits (1.25 MB and 1.44 MB)
Rotation speed	Up to 360 rpm
Diskette media	High density (2HD) or normal density (2DD) 3.5" diskettes
MTBF	30,000 POH (Power-On Hours)
Features - DVD-RW/CD-RW drive	
Write speed CD-R CD-RW DVD-R DVD-RW DVD-RAM[1)] DVD+R DVD+R (double layer) DVD+RW	 24x, 16x, 10x and 4x 10x and 4x 8x, 4x and 2x 4x and 2x 3x and 2x 8x, 4x and 2x 2x,4x 4x and 2x
Reading rate CD DVD	 24x 8x
Data transfer rate	Max. 33.3 MByte/s
Access time (average) CD DVD	 130 ms (24x) 130 ms (8x)
Revolution speed	Max. 5090 rpm ±1%
Starting time (0 rpm to read access) CD DVD	 14 seconds (maximum) 15 seconds (maximum)
Host interface	IDE (ATAPI)
Laser class	Class 1 laser
Features - DVD-ROM/CD-RW drive	**5MD900.USB2-01**

Table 290: Technical data - USB Media Drive 5MD900.USB2-01

Readable media CD DVD	 CD/CD-ROM (12 cm, 8 cm), CD-R, CD-RW DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD-RW. DVD-RAM, DVD+R, DVD+R (double layer), DVD+RW
Non-write protected media CD DVD	 CD-R, CD-RW DVD-R/RW, DVD-RAM (4.7 GB), DVD+R/RW, DVD+R (double layer)
Compatible formats	CD-DA, CD-ROM mode 1/mode 2 CD-ROM XA mode 2 (form 1, form 2) Photo CD (single/multi-session), Enhanced CD, CD text DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD-RW, DVD-Video DVD-RAM (4.7 GB, 2.6 GB) DVD+R, DVD+R (double layer), DVD+RW
Write-methods CD DVD	 Disk at once, session at once, packet write, track at once Disk at once, incremental, over-write, sequential, multi-session
Data buffer capacity	8 MB
Noise level (complete read access)	Approx. 48 dBA at 50 cm
Lifespan Opening/closing the drawer	60,000 POH (Power-On Hours) > 10,000 times
CompactFlash slot layout	
CompactFlash Type Amount Connection	 Type I 1 slot IDE / ATAPI
CompactFlash LED	Signals read or write access to an inserted CompactFlash card
Hot Plug capable	Yes
Features - USB connections	
USB A on the front side Power supply Type Transfer rate	Connection of further peripheral devices Max. 500 mA 2.0 Low speed (1.5 MBit/s), full speed (12 MBit/s), to high speed (480 Mbit/s)
USB B back side	Connection to the system
Mechanical characteristics	
Outer dimensions (without slide-in) Width Length Height	 70 mm 100 mm 9.5 mm
Weight	Approx. 1.1 kg (without front cover)
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature Operation Bearings Transport	 +5 to +45°C -20 to +60°C -40 to +60°C

Table 290: Technical data - USB Media Drive 5MD900.USB2-01 (cont.)

Environmental characteristics	5MD900.USB2-01
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 20 to 80%, non-condensing 5 to 90%, non-condensing 5 to 95%, non-condensing
Vibration Operation Bearings Transport	 At max. 5 - 500 Hz and 0.3 g At max. 10 - 100 Hz and 2 g At max. 10 - 100 Hz and 2 g
Shock (pulse with a sine half-wave) Operation Storage (packaged) Transport (packaged)	 At max. 5 g for 11 ms At max. 60 g for 11 ms At max. 60 g for 11 ms
Altitude	Max. 3000 meters

Table 290: Technical data - USB Media Drive 5MD900.USB2-01 (cont.)

1) RAM drivers are not provided by the manufacturer. Support of RAM function by the burning software "Nero" (model number 5SWUTI.0000-00) or other burning software packages and drivers from third party providers.

9.3 Dimensions

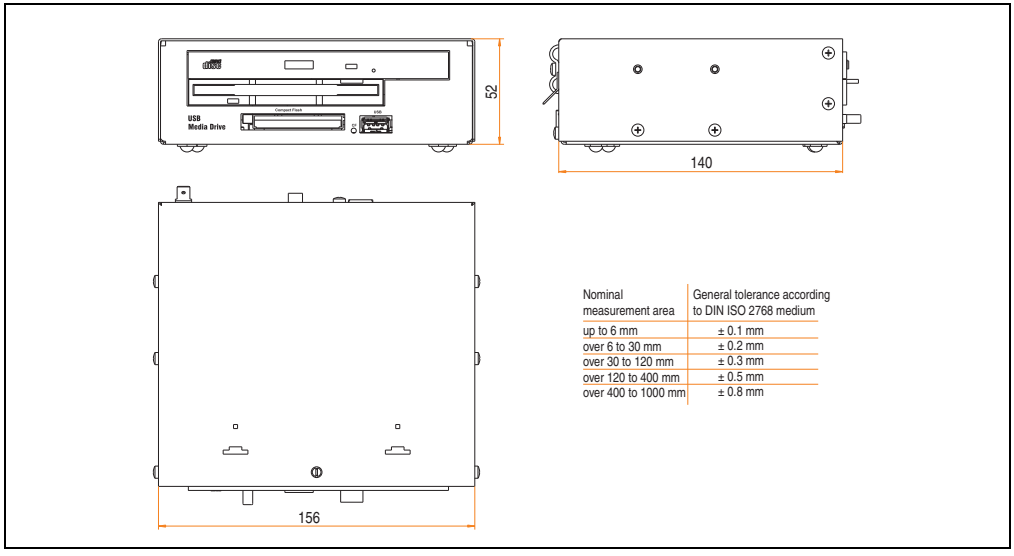


Figure 189: Dimensions - 5MD900.USB2-01

9.4 Dimensions with front cover

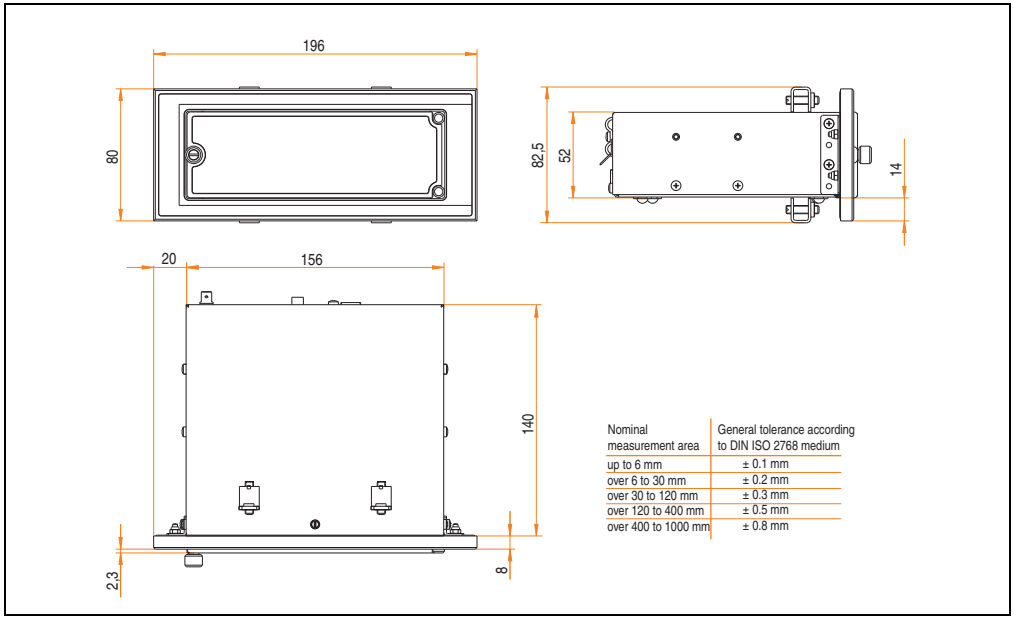


Figure 190: Dimensions - USB Media Drive with front cover

9.5 Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	USB Media Drive complete unit
2	Mounting rail brackets

Table 291: Contents of delivery - USB Media Drive - 5MD900.USB2-01

9.6 Interfaces

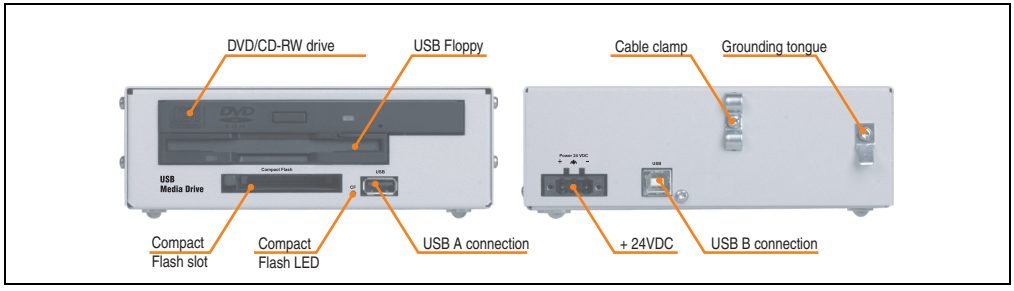


Figure 191: Interfaces - 5MD900.USB2-01

9.7 Installation

The USB Media Drive can be operated as a desk-top device (rubber feet) or as a rack-mount device (2 mounting rail brackets included).

9.7.1 Mounting orientation

Because of limits to the mounting orientation with the components used (floppy, DVD-CDRW drive), the USB media drive is only permitted to be mounted and operated as shown in the following figure.

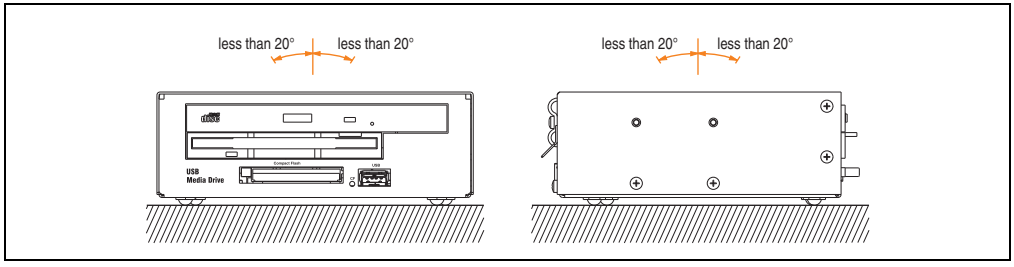


Figure 192: Mounting orientation - 5MD900.USB2-01

9.8 Front cover 5A5003.03 for the USB Media Drive

This front cover can also be mounted on the front of the USB media drive (model number 5MD900.USB2-00 or 5MD900.USB2-01) to protect the interface.

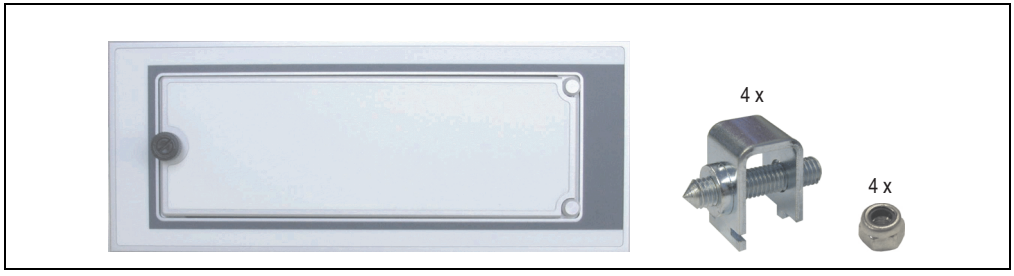


Figure 193: Front cover 5A5003.03

9.8.1 Technical data

Features	5A5003.03
Front cover design / colors Dark gray border around the cover Light gray background	 Similar to Pantone432CV Similar to Pantone 427CV

Table 292: Technical data - 5A5003.03

9.8.2 Dimensions

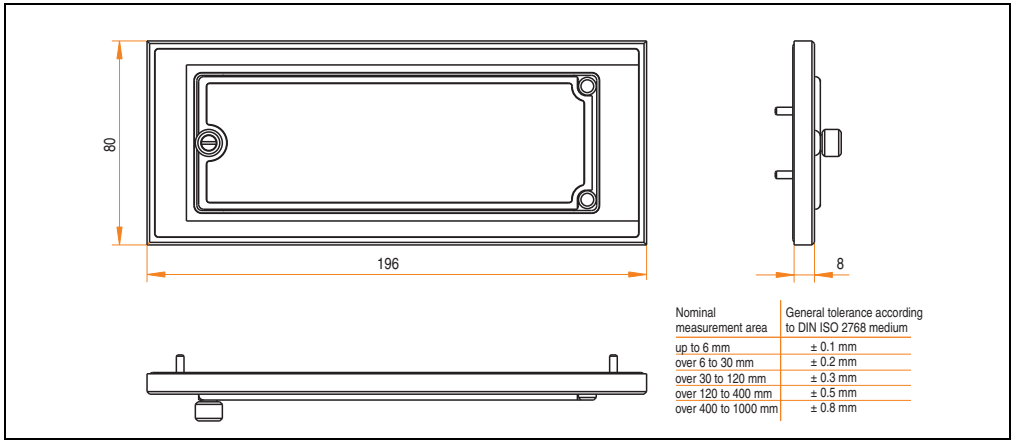


Figure 194: Dimensions - 5A5003.03

9.8.3 Installation

The front cover is attached with 2 mounting rail brackets (included with USB Media Drive) and 4 locknuts. The USB media drive and front cover can be mounted as a whole in (for example) a switching cabinet door.

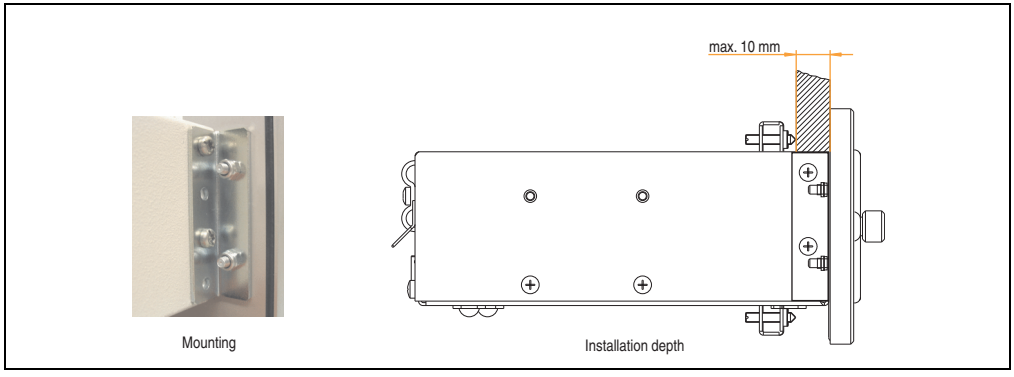


Figure 195: Front cover mounting and installation depth

10. USB Flash Drive 5MMUSB.2048-00

Information:

We reserve the right to supply alternative products due to the vast quantity of flash drives available on the market and their corresponding short product lifecycle. As a result, the following measures may be necessary (e.g. using the SanDisk Cruzer Micro flash drive with 512 MB) to take the following measures in order to boot from these flash drives:

- **The flash drive must be reformatted or in some cases even re-partitioned (set active partition).**
- **The flash drive must be at the top of the BIOS boot order, or alternatively the IDE controllers can also be deactivated in the BIOS. This can be avoided in most cases if a "`fdisk /mbr`" command is also executed on the USB flash drive.**

10.1 General information

USB flash drives are easy-to-exchange storage media. Because of the fast data transfer provided by USB 2.0, USB flash drives are ideal for use as a portable memory medium. Without requiring additional drivers ("Hot Plug & Play" - except with Windows 98SE), the USB flash drive can be converted immediately into an additional drive where data can be read or written. Only USB flash drives from the memory specialists SanDisk are used.

10.2 Order data

Model number	Description	Figure
5MMUSB.2048-00	USB flash drive 2 GB SanDisk Cruzer Micro	

Table 293: Order data - USB flash drives

10.3 Technical data

Information:

The following characteristics, features and limit values only apply to this accessory and can deviate those specified for the entire device. For the entire device where this accessory is installed, refer to the data provided specifically for the entire device.

Features	5MMUSB.2048-00
LED	1 LED (green), signals data transfer (send and receive)
Power supply Current requirements	Via the USB port 650 µA sleep mode, 150 mA read/write
Interface Type Transfer rate Sequential reading Sequential writing Connection	USB specification 2.0 high speed device, mass storage class, USB-IF and WHQL certified USB 1.1 and 2.0 compatible Up to 480 MBit (high speed) Max. 8.7 MB/second Max. 1.7 MB/second To each USB type A interface
MTBF (at 25°C)	100,000 hours
Data retention	10 years
Maintenance	None
Operating system support	Windows CE 4.2, CE 5.0, ME, 2000, XP and Mac OS 9.1.x+, OS X v10.1.2+
Mechanical characteristics	
Dimensions Length Width Thickness	 62 mm / 52.2 mm 19 mm / 19 mm 11 mm / 7.9 mm
Environmental characteristics	
Ambient temperature Operation Bearings Transport	 0 to +45°C -20 to +60°C -20 to +60°C
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 10 to 90%, non-condensing 5 to 90%, non-condensing 5 to 90%, non-condensing
Vibration Cruzer Mini / Cruzer Micro Operation Bearings Transport	 At 10 - 500 Hz: 2 g (19.6 m/s^2 0 peak), oscillation rate 1/minute At 10 - 500 Hz: 4 g (39.2 m/s^2 0 peak), oscillation rate 1/minute At 10 - 500 Hz: 4 g (39.2 m/s^2 0 peak), oscillation rate 1/minute
Shock Cruzer Mini / Cruzer Micro Operation Bearings Transport	 Max. 40 g (392 m/s^2 0-peak) and 11 ms length Max. 80 g (784 m/s^2 0-peak) and 11 ms length Max. 80 g (784 m/s^2 0-peak) and 11 ms length
Altitude Operation Bearings Transport	 3048 meters 12,192 meters 12,192 meters

Table 294: Technical data - USB flash drive 5MMUSB.2048-00

10.3.1 Temperature humidity diagram - Operation and storage

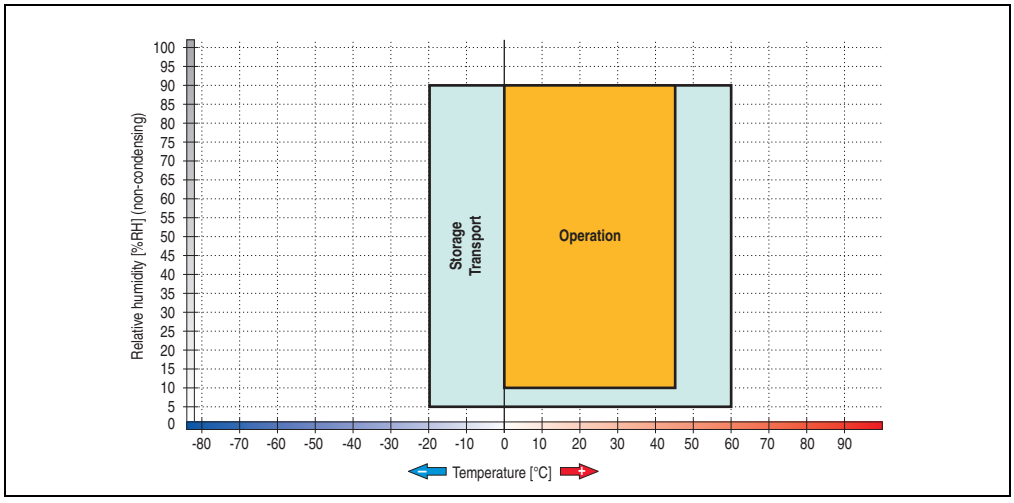


Figure 196: Temperature humidity diagram - USB flash drive - 5MMUSB.2048-00

Temperature data is for operation at 500 meters. Derating the max. ambient temperature - typically 1°C per 1000 meters (from 500 meters above sea level).

10.4 Creating a bootable USB flash drive

When used in connection with a B&R industrial PC, it is possible to boot the system from one of the flash drives available from B&R. The flash drive must be specially prepared for this.

10.4.1 5.4.1 Requirements

The following peripherals are required for creating a bootable USB flash drive:

- • B&R USB flash drive
- • B&R Industrial PC
- • USB floppy drive (external)
- • USB keyboard
- • A start disk created using MS-DOS 6.22 or Windows 98 - 1.44MB HDD (Windows Millennium, NT4.0, 2000, XP start disks cannot be used). The tools "format.com" and "fdisk.exe" must be located on the diskette!

10.4.2 Procedure

- Plug in the flash drive and boot from the start disk.
- Set active partition on the flash drive using "`fdisk`" and follow the further instructions.
- Reboot the system from the start disk.
- Format and simultaneously transfer the system files to the flash drive with the command "`format c: /s`".

11. HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD 5SWHMI.0000-00

Figure 197: HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD 5SWHMI.0000-00

Model number	Short description	Note
5SWHMI.0000-00	**HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD**	

Table 295: Model number - HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD

This DVD contains drivers, utilities, software upgrades and user's manuals for B&R Panel system products (see B&R homepage – Industrial PCs, Visualization and Operation).
Information in detail:

BIOS upgrades for the products

- Automation PC 620
- Panel PC 700
- Automation PC 680
- Provit 2000 product family - IPC2000/2001/2002
- Provit 5000 product family - IPC5000/5600/5000C/5600C
- Power Panel 100 BIOS devices
- Mobile Panel 100 BIOS devices
- Power Panel 100 / Mobile Panel 100 user boot logo
- Power Panel 100 / Mobile Panel 100 REMHOST utility

Drivers for the devices

- Automation Device Interface (ADI)
- Audio
- Chipset
- CD-ROM
- LS120
- Graphics
- Network
- PCI RAID controller
- Touch screen
- Touchpad
- Interface board

Updates

- Firmware upgrades (e.g. MTCX, SMXC)

Utilities/Tools

- Automation Device Interface (ADI)
- Miscellaneous
- MTC utilities
- Key editor
- MTC & Mkey utilities
- Mkey utilities
- UPS configuration software
- ICU ISA configuration
- Intel PCI NIC boot ROM
- Diagnostics
- CompactFlash lifespan calculation for Silicon Systems CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03

Windows and embedded operating systems

- Thin client
- Windows CE
- Windows NT Embedded
- Windows XP Embedded

MCAD templates for

- Industrial PCs
- Visualization and operating devices
- Legend strip templates

Documentation for

- B&R Windows CE
- Automation PC 620
- Automation PC 680
- Automation Panel 900
- Panel PC 700
- Power Panel 15/21/35/41
- Power Panel 100/200
- Provit 2000
- Provit 3030
- Provit 4000
- Provit 5000
- Provit Benchmark
- Provit Mkey
- Windows NT Embedded application guide
- Windows XP Embedded application guide
- Uninterruptible power supply

Service tools

- Acrobat Reader 5.0.5 (freeware in German, English, and French)
- Power Archiver 6.0 (freeware in German, English, and French)
- Internet Explorer 5.0 (German and English)
- Internet Explorer 6.0 (German and English)

12. Cables

12.1 APC620 internal supply cable 5CAMSC.0001-00

This supply cable is used internally e.g. to supply special PCI cards. It is connected to the APC620 main board. For requirements and procedures, see appendix A, section "Connection of an external device to the main board" on page 536.

Figure 198: APC620 internal supply cable 5CAMSC.0001-00

12.1.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
5CAMSC.0001-00	**APC620 internal supply cable**	

Table 296: Model number - APC620 internal supply cable

12.1.2 Technical data

Features	5CAMSC.0001-00
Length	100 mm ± 5 mm
Connector type	1x 4-pin male disk drive power plug, 1x 4-pin female plug housing
Wire cross section	AWG 22
Flexibility	Flexible

Table 297: Technical data - 5CAMSC.0001-00

12.2 DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00

The DVI cables 5CADVI.0xxx-00 are designed for fixed layout.

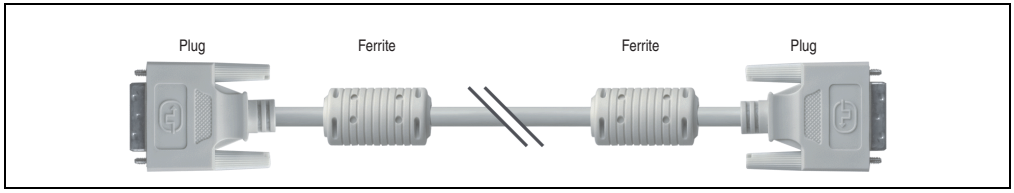


Figure 199: DVI extension cable - 5CADVI.0xxx-00 (similar)

Caution!

DVI cables can only be plugged in and unplugged when the device is turned off.

12.2.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
5CADVI.0018-00	**DVI-D cable 1.8 m / single** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 1.8 m	
5CADVI.0050-00	**DVI-D cable 5 m / single** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 5 m	
5CADVI.0100-00	**DVI-D cable 10 m / single** Single cable, DVI-D/m:DVI-D/m; length: 10 m	

Table 298: Model numbers - DVI cables

12.2.2 Technical data

Features	5CADVI.0018-00	5CADVI.0050-00	5CADVI.0100-00
Length Tolerance	1.8 m ±50 mm	5 m ±80 mm	10 m ±100 mm
Cable diameter Maximum	8.5 mm		
Shielding	Individual cable pairs and entire cable		
Connector type Connection cycles	2x DVI-D (18+1), male 100		
Wire cross section	AWG 28		
Line resistance	Max. 237Ω/km		
Insulation resistance	Min. 100 MΩ/km		
Flexibility	Limited flexibility; valid for ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet (tested 100 cycles with 5x cable diameter, 20 cycles / minute)		
Flex radius Fixed layout	See figure "Flex radius specification" on page 438 ≥ 5 x cable diameter (plug - ferrite magnet and ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet)		
Weight	Approx. 260 g	Approx. 460 g	Approx. 790 g

Table 299: Technical data - DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00

Flex radius specification

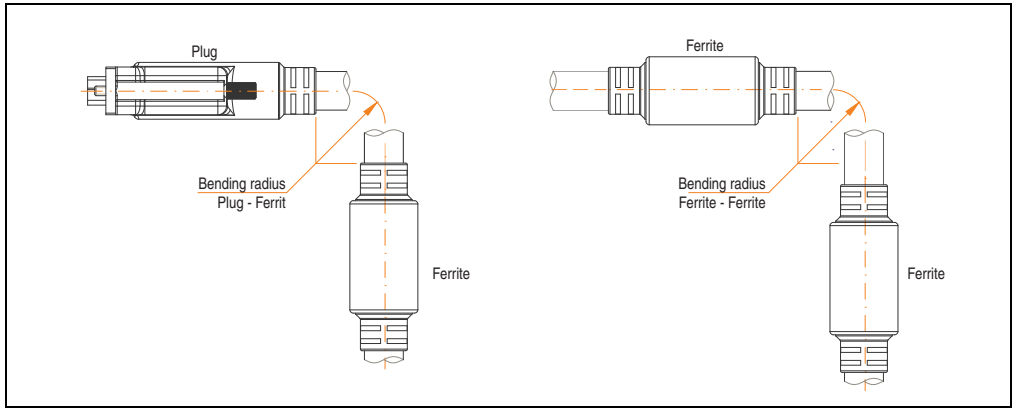


Figure 200: Flex radius specification

Dimensions

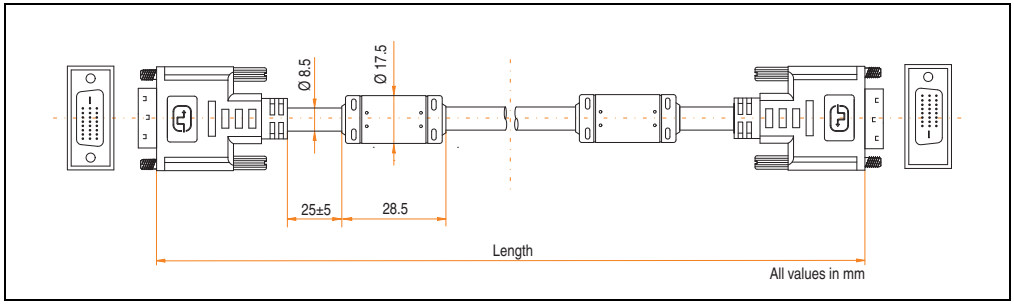


Figure 201: Dimensions - DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	DVI cable in desired length, plug covers are attached at the cable ends.

Table 300: Contents of delivery - DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00

12.2.3 Cable specifications

The following figure shows the pin assignments for the DVI cable available at B&R. If you want to build a suitable cable yourself, it should be wired according to these specifications.

Warning!

If a self-built cable is used, B&R cannot guarantee that it will function properly.

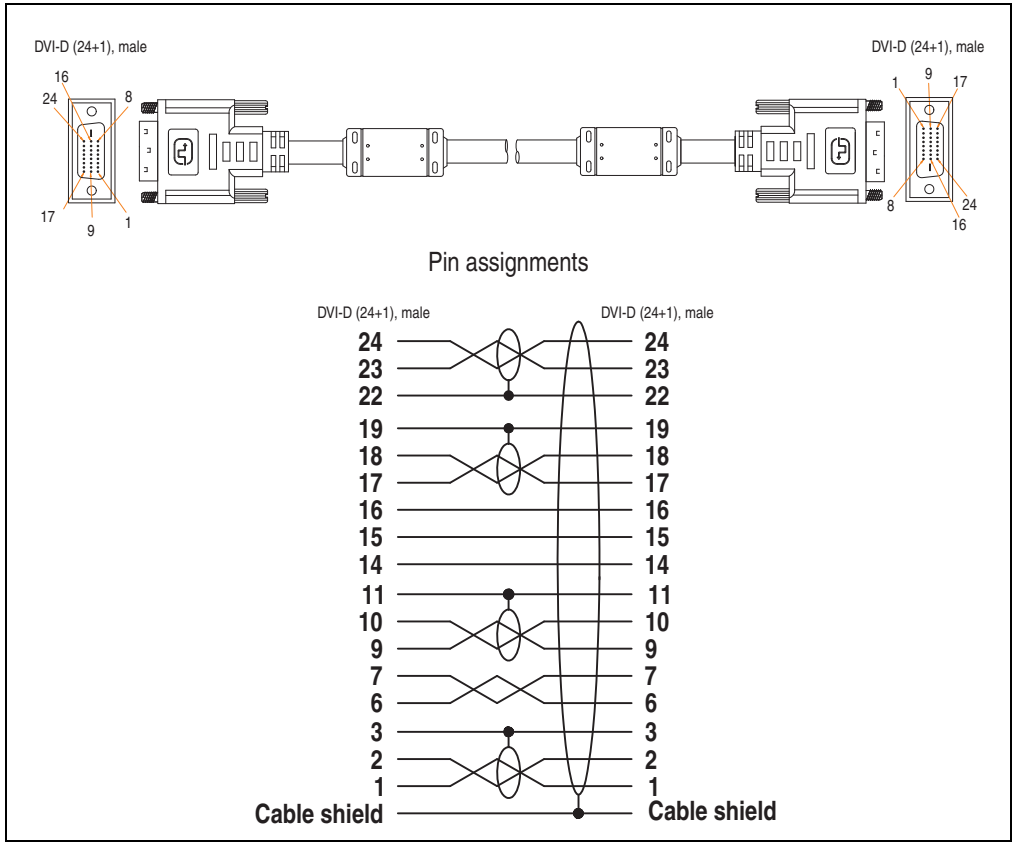


Figure 202: Pin assignments - DVI cable

12.3 SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00

The SDL cables 5CASDL.0xxx-00 are designed for fixed layout. Use of the SDL flex cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 is required for a flexible installation (e.g. in swing arm systems).

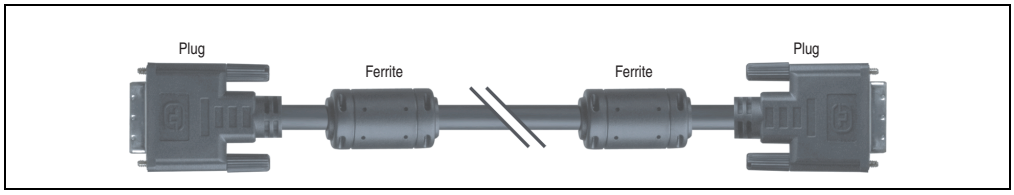


Figure 203: SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00 (similar)

Caution!

SDL cables can only be plugged in and unplugged when the device is turned off.

12.3.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
5CASDL.0018-00	**SDL cable 1.8 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 1.8 m	
5CASDL.0050-00	**SDL cable 5 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 5 m	
5CASDL.0100-00	**SDL cable 10 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 10 m	
5CASDL.0150-00	**SDL cable 15 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 15 m	
5CASDL.0200-00	**SDL cable 20 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 20 m	
5CASDL.0250-00	**SDL cable 25 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 25 m	
5CASDL.0300-00	**SDL cable 30 m** SDL cable for a fixed type of layout; length: 30 m	

Table 301: Model numbers - SDL cables

12.3.2 Technical data

Features	5CASDL.0018-00	5CASDL.0050-00	5CASDL.0100-00	5CASDL.0150-00	5CASDL.0200-00	5CASDL.0250-00	5CASDL.0300-00
Length Tolerance	1.8 m ±30 mm	5 m ±30 mm	10 m ±50 mm	15 m ±100 mm	20 m ±100 mm	25 m ±100 mm	30 m ±100 mm
Cable diameter Typical Maximum	8.6 ±0.2 mm 9 mm		11 ±0.2 mm 11.5 mm				
Shielding	Individual cable pairs and entire cable						
Connector type Connection cycles	2x DVI-D (24+1), male 100						
Wire cross section	AWG 28		AWG 24				
Line resistance	Max. 237Ω/km		Max. 93Ω/km				
Insulation resistance	Min. 10 MΩ/km						
Flexibility	Limited flexibility; valid for ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet (tested 100 cycles with 5x cable diameter, 20 cycles / minute)						
Flex radius Fixed layout	See figure "Flex radius specification" on page 442 ≥ 5 x cable diameter (plug - ferrite magnet and ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet)						
Weight	Approx. 300 g	Approx. 580 g	Approx. 1500 g	Approx. 2250 g	Approx. 2880 g	Approx. 4800 g	Approx. 5520 g

Table 302: Technical data - SDL cables 5CASDL.0xxx-00

Flex radius specification

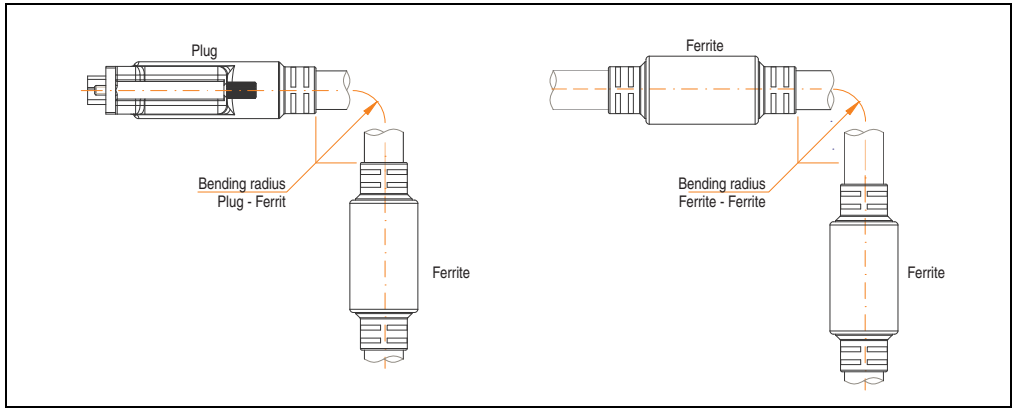


Figure 204: Flex radius specification

Dimensions

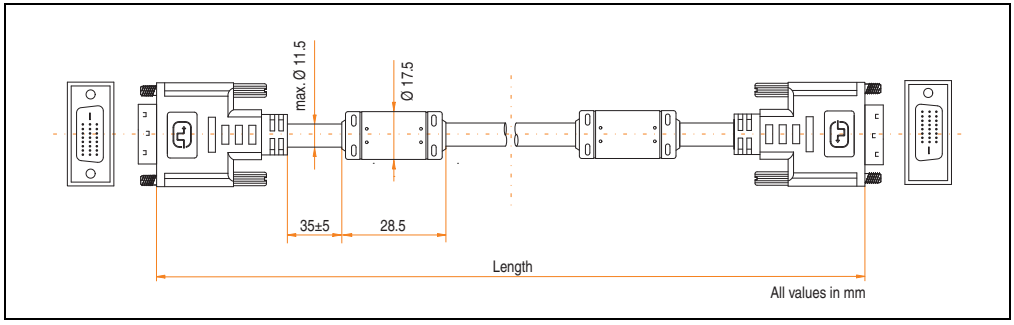


Figure 205: Dimensions - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	SDL cable in desired length, plug covers are attached at the cable ends.

Table 303: Contents of delivery - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00

12.3.3 Cable specifications

The following figure shows the pin assignments for the SDL cable available at B&R. If you want to build a suitable cable yourself, it should be wired according to these specifications.

Warning!

If a self-built cable is used, B&R cannot guarantee that it will function properly.

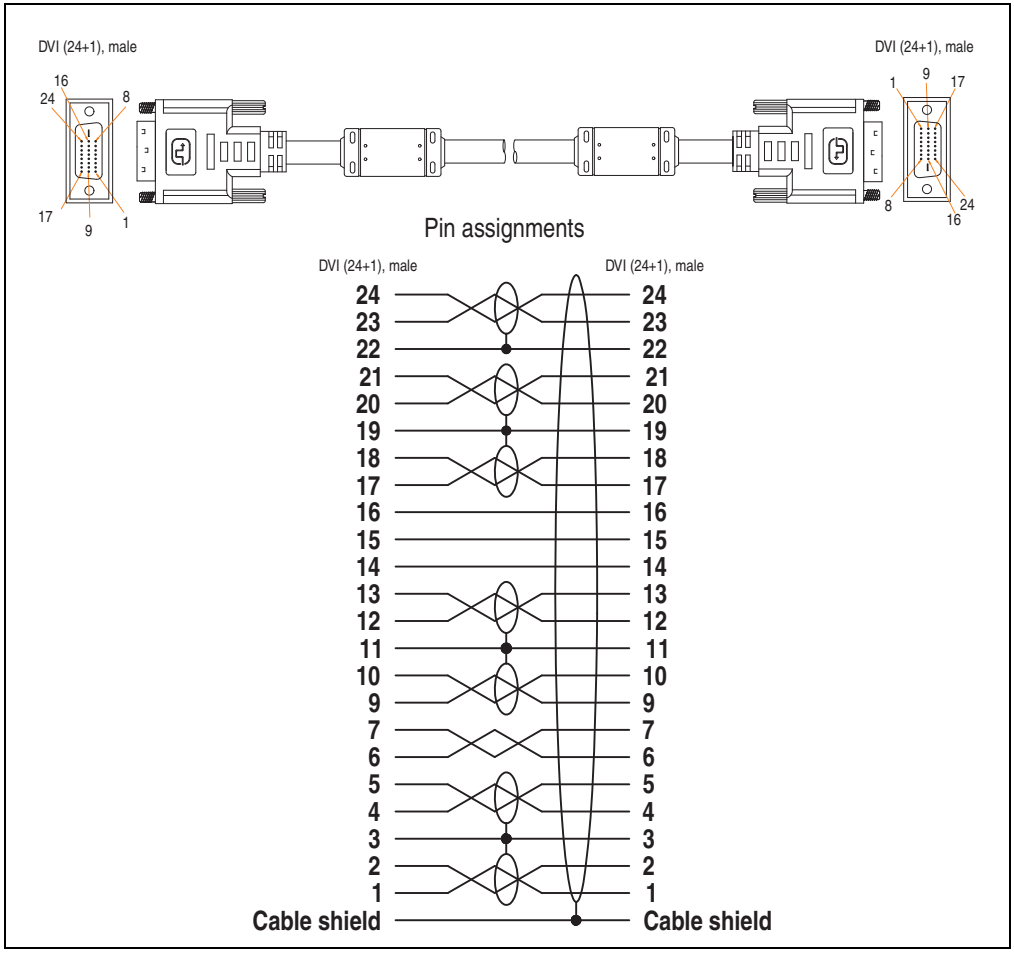


Figure 206: Pin assignments - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00

12.4 SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01

The SDL cables 5CASDL.0xxx-01 are designed for fixed layout.

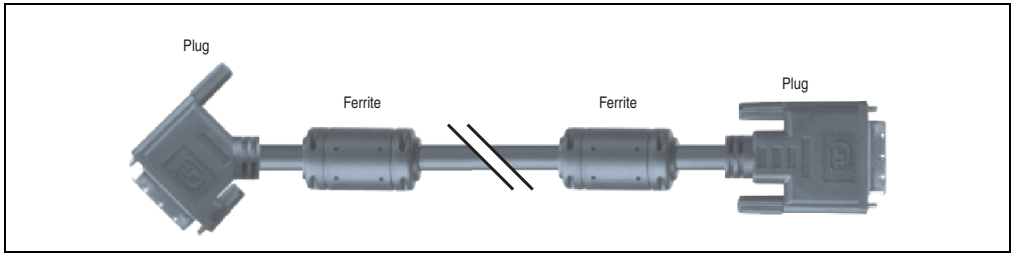


Figure 207: SDL cable with 45° plug (similar)

Caution!

SDL cables can only be plugged in and unplugged when the device is turned off.

12.4.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
5CASDL.0018-01	**SDL cable 1.8 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 1.8 m	
5CASDL.0050-01	**SDL cable 5 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 5 m	
5CASDL.0100-01	**SDL cable 10 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 10 m	
5CASDL.0150-01	**SDL cable 15 m 45°** SDL cable for fixed type of layout with one-sided 45° plug; length: 15 m	

Table 304: Model numbers - SDL cables with 45° plug

12.4.2 Technical data

Features	5CASDL.0018-01	5CASDL.0050-01	5CASDL.0100-01	5CASDL.0150-01
Length Tolerance	1.8 m ±30 mm	5 m ±50 mm	10 m ±100 mm	15 m ±100 mm
Cable diameter Maximum	9 mm		11.5 mm	
Shielding	Individual cable pairs and entire cable			
Connector type Connection cycles	2x DVI-D (24+1), male 100			
Wire cross section	AWG 28		AWG 24	
Line resistance	Max. 237Ω/km		Max. 93Ω/km	
Insulation resistance	Min. 10 MΩ/km			
Flexibility	Limited flexibility; valid for ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet (tested 100 cycles with 5x cable diameter, 20 cycles / minute)			
Flex radius Fixed layout	See figure "Flex radius specification" on page 446 ≥ 5 x cable diameter (plug - ferrite magnet and ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet)			
Weight	Approx. 300 g	Approx. 590 g	Approx. 2800 g	Approx. 2860 g

Table 305: Technical data - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01

Flex radius specification

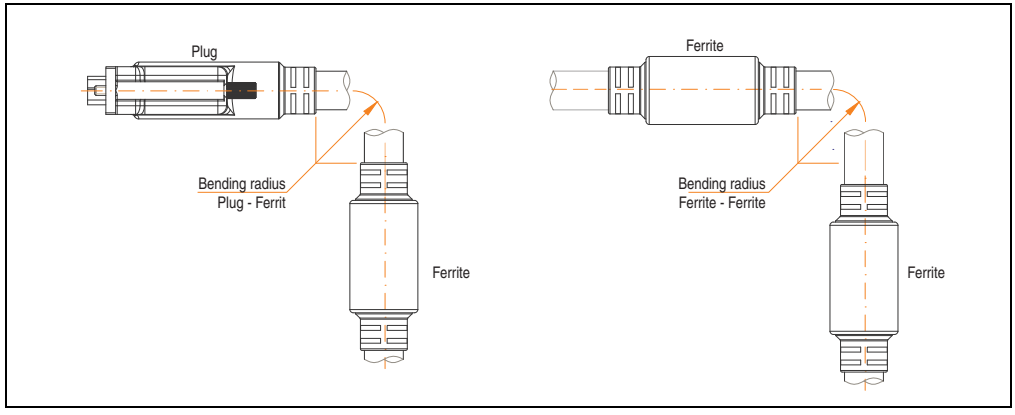


Figure 208: Flex radius specification

Dimensions

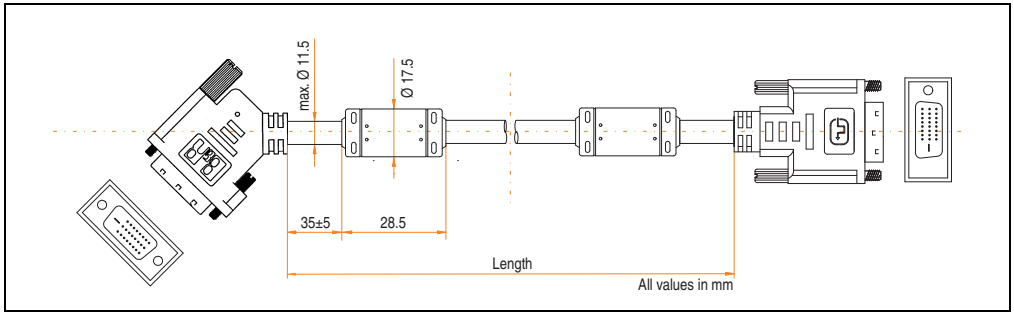


Figure 209: Dimensions - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	SDL cable with 45° plug in desired length, plug covers are attached at the cable ends.

Table 306: Contents of delivery - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01

12.4.3 Cable specifications

The following figure shows the pin assignments for the SDL cable available at B&R. If you want to build a suitable cable yourself, it should be wired according to these specifications.

Warning!

If a self-built cable is used, B&R cannot guarantee that it will function properly.

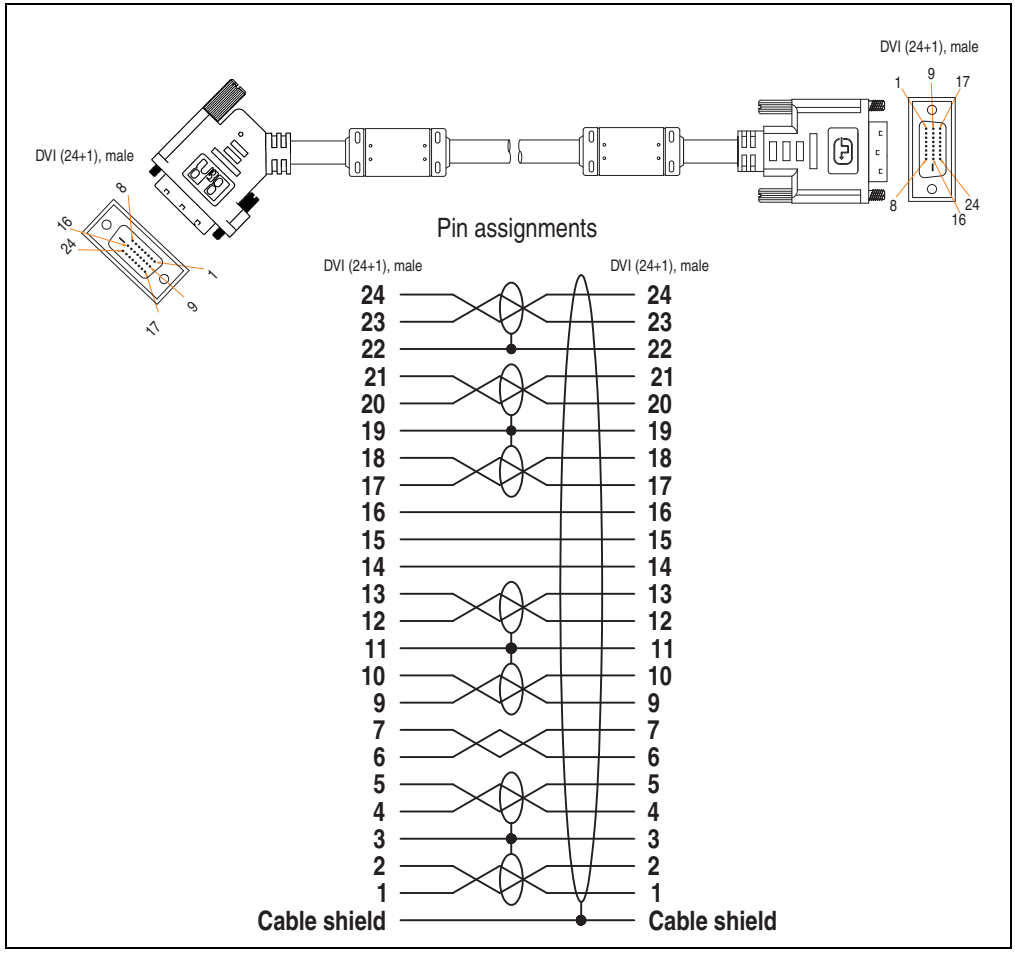


Figure 210: Pin assignments - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01

12.5 SDL flex cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03

The SDL flex cables 5CASDL.0xxx-03 are designed for both fixed and flexible installations (e.g. in swing arm systems).

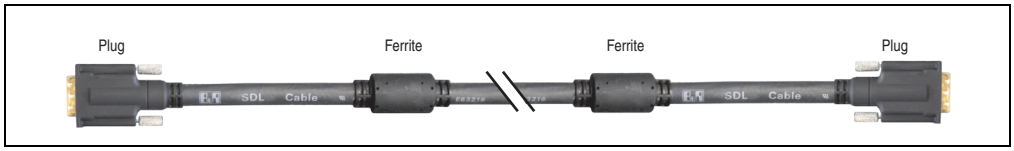


Figure 211: SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 (similar)

Caution!

SDL cables can only be plugged in and unplugged when the device is turned off.

12.5.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
5CASDL.0018-03	**1.8 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 1.8 m	
5CASDL.0050-03	**5 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 5 m	
5CASDL.0100-03	**10 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 10 m	
5CASDL.0150-03	**15 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 15 m	
5CASDL.0200-03	**20 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 20 m	
5CASDL.0250-03	**25 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 25 m	
5CASDL.0300-03	**30 m flex SDL cable** SDL cable for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 30 m	

Table 307: Model numbers - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03

12.5.2 Technical data

Mechanical characteristics	5CASDL.0018-03	5CASDL.0050-03	5CASDL.0100-03	5CASDL.0150-03	5CASDL.0200-03	5CASDL.0250-03	5CASDL.0300-03
Length Tolerance	1.8 m ±20 mm	5 m ±45 mm	10 m ±90 mm	15 m ±135 mm	20 m ±180 mm	25 m ±225 mm	30 m ±270 mm
Cable diameter Maximum	12 mm						
Shielding	Individual cable pairs and entire cable						
Connector type Connection cycles Contacts Mechanical protection	2x DVI-D (24+1), male Min. 200 Gold plated Metal cover with crimped stress relief						
Max. tension During installation During operation	≤ 400 N ≤ 50 N						
Materials Cable shielding Color	RoHS compliant Aluminum foil clad + tinned copper mesh Black (similar to RAL 9005)						
Flexibility	Flexible; valid for ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet (tested 300,000 cycles with 15x cable diameter, 4800 cycles / hour)						
Flex radius Fixed layout flexible installation	See figure "Flex radius specification" on page 451 ≥ 6 x cable diameter (from plug - ferrite magnet) ≥ 10 x cable diameter (from ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet) ≥ 15 x cable diameter (of ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet)						
Weight	Approx. 460 g	Approx. 1020 g	Approx. 1940 g	Approx. 2840 g	Approx. 3740 g	Approx. 4560 g	Approx. 5590 g
Electrical properties (at +20°C)							
Wire cross section	24 AWG (control wires) 26 AWG (DVI, USB, data)						
Line resistance 24 AWG 26 AWG	≤ 95 Ω/km ≤ 145 Ω/km						
Insulation resistance	> 200 MΩ/km						
Wave impedance	100 ± 10 Ω						
Test voltage Wire/wire Wire/shield	1 kV_{eff} 0.5 kV_{eff}						
Operating voltage	≤ 30 V						
Environmental characteristics							
Temperature resistance Fixed installation Moving Bearings	-20 to +80°C -5 to +60°C -20 to +80°C						
Standards and certifications							
Torsion load	100,000 cycles (tested angle of rotation: ± 85°; speed: 50 cycles / minute)						

Table 308: Technical data - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03

Cable drag chain	300,000 cycles Tested flex radius: 180 mm;15x cable diameter; hub: 460 mm; speed: 4800 cycles / hour						
Standards and certifications	**5CASDL.0018-03**	**5CASDL.0050-03**	**5CASDL.0100-03**	**5CASDL.0150-03**	**5CASDL.0200-03**	**5CASDL.0250-03**	**5CASDL.0300-03**
Approbation	UL AWM 20236 80°C 30 V						
Oil and hydrolysis resistance	According to VDE 0282-10						

Table 308: Technical data - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 (cont.)

Flex radius specification

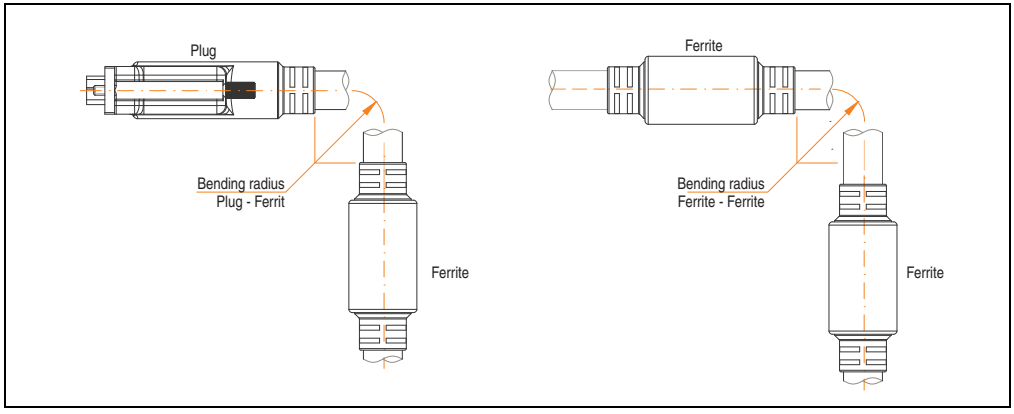


Figure 212: Flex radius specification

Dimensions

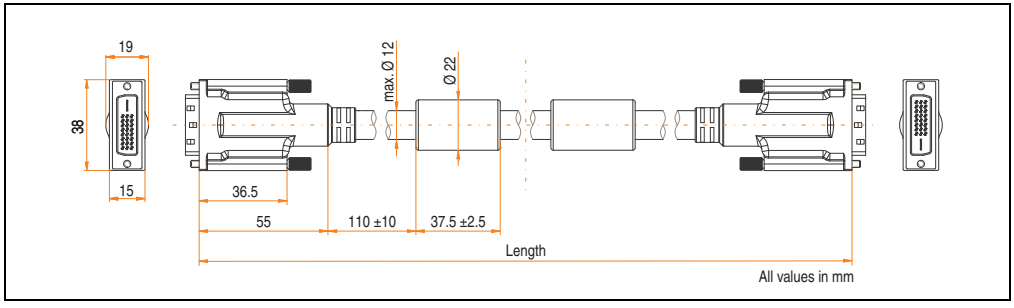


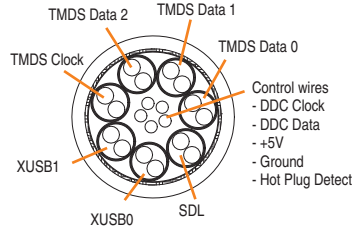
Figure 213: Dimensions - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	SDL flex cable in desired length, plug covers are attached at the cable ends.

Table 309: Contents of delivery - SDL flex cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03

Structure

Element	Assignment	Cross section	
DVI	TMDS data 0	26 AWG	
	TMDS data 1	26 AWG	
	TMDS data 2	26 AWG	
	TMDS cycle	26 AWG	
USB	XUSB0	26 AWG	
	XUSB1	26 AWG	
Data	SDL	26 AWG	
Control wires	DDC cycle	24 AWG	
	DDC data	24 AWG	
	+5 V	24 AWG	
	mass	24 AWG	
	Hot Plug detect	24 AWG	

Schematic display

Table 310: Structure - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03

12.5.3 Cable specifications

The following figure shows the pin assignments for the SDL cable available at B&R. If you want to build a suitable cable yourself, it should be wired according to these specifications.

Warning!

If a self-built cable is used, B&R cannot guarantee that it will function properly.

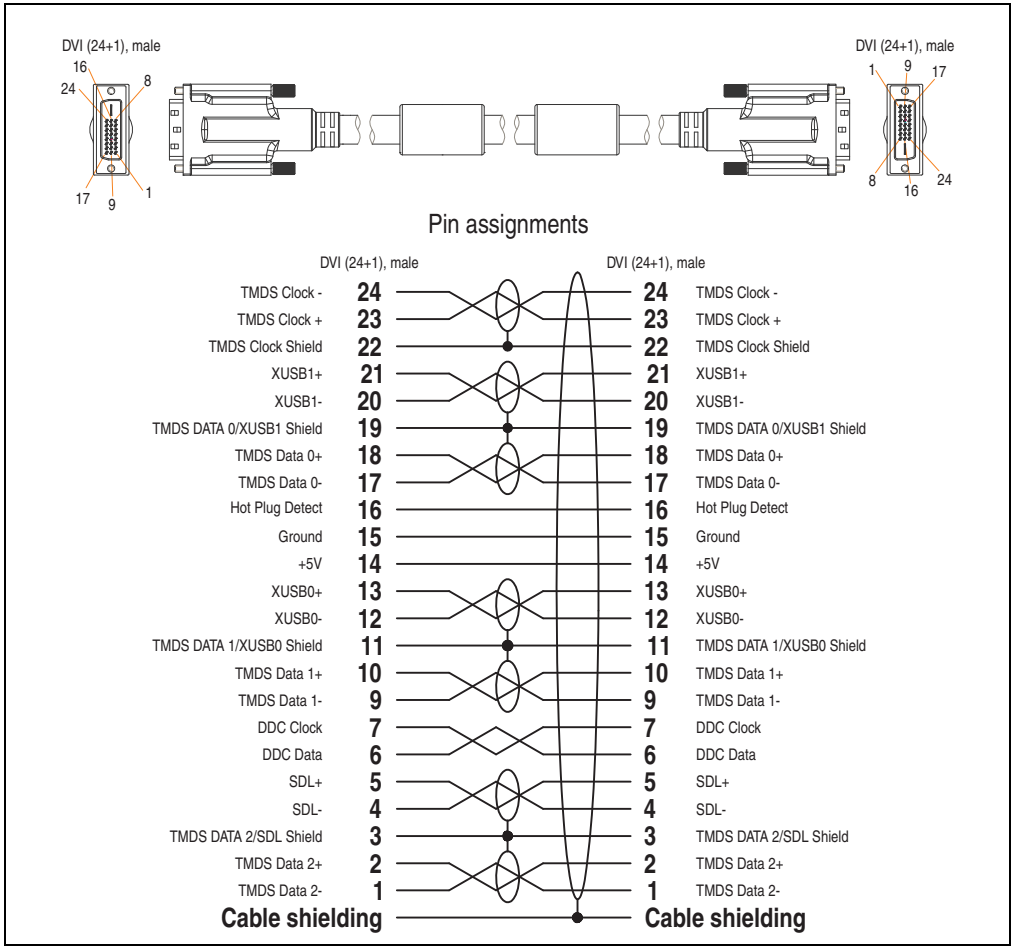


Figure 214: Pin assignments - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03

12.6 SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13

The SDL flex cables (with extender) 5CASDL.0xx0-13 are designed for both fixed and flexible installations (e.g. in swing arm systems).

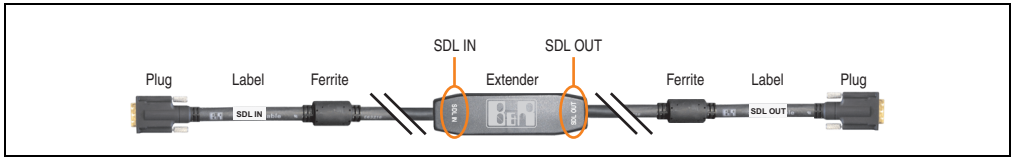


Figure 215: SDL flex cable with extender - 5CASDL.0xx0-13 (similar)

Caution!

SDL cables with extender can only be plugged in and unplugged when the device is turned off. The correct direction of connection (SDL IN, SDL OUT) for the wiring is illustrated on the middle of the extender and between the ferrite magnet and plug (with a sticker).

12.6.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
5CASDL.0300-13	**30 m SDL flex cable with extender** SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 30 m	
5CASDL.0400-13	**40 m SDL flex cable with extender** SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 40 m	
5CASDL.0430-13	**43 m SDL flex cable with extender** SDL cable with extender for fixed and flexible type of layout; length: 43 m	

Table 311: Model numbers - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13

12.6.2 Technical data

Features	5CASDL.0300-13	5CASDL.0400-13	5CASDL.0430-13
Length Tolerance	30 m ±280 mm	40 m ±380 mm	43 m ±410 mm
Dimensions - Extender box Height Width Length	18.5 mm 35 mm 125 mm		
Cable diameter Maximum	12 mm		
Shielding	Individual cable pairs and entire cable		
Connector type Connection cycles Contacts Mechanical protection	2x DVI-D (24+1), male Min. 200 Gold plated Metal cover with crimped stress relief		
Max. tension During installation During operation	≤ 400 N ≤ 50 N		
Materials Cable shielding Color	RoHS compliant Aluminum foil clad + tinned copper mesh Black (similar to RAL 9005)		
Flexibility	Flexible; valid for ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet (tested 300,000 cycles with 15x cable diameter, 4800 cycles / hour)		
Flex radius Fixed layout flexible installation	See figure "Flex radius specification" on page 456 ≥ 6 x cable diameter (from plug - ferrite magnet) ≥ 10 x cable diameter (from ferrite magnet - extender) ≥ 15 x cable diameter (of ferrite magnet - ferrite magnet)		
Weight	Approx. 5430 g	Approx. 7200 g	Approx. 7790 g
Electrical properties (at +20°C)			
Wire cross section	24 AWG (control wires) 26 AWG (DVI, USB, data)		
Line resistance 24 AWG 26 AWG	≤ 95 Ω/km ≤ 145 Ω/km		
Insulation resistance	> 200 MΩ/km		
Wave impedance	100 ± 10 Ω		
Test voltage Wire/wire Wire/shield	1 kV_{eff} 0.5 kV_{eff}		
Operating voltage	≤ 30 V		
Environmental characteristics			
Ambient temperatures Fixed installation Moving Bearings	-20 to +60°C -5 to +60°C -20 to +60°C		

Table 312: Technical data - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13

Standards and certifications	
Torsion load	100,000 cycles (tested angle of rotation: ± 85°; speed: 50 cycles / minute)
Cable drag chain	300,000 cycles Tested flex radius: 180 mm;15x cable diameter; hub: 460 mm; speed: 4800 cycles / hour
Approbation	UL AWM 20236 +80°C 30 V
Oil and hydrolysis resistance	According to VDE 0282-10

Table 312: Technical data - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13 (cont.)

Flex radius specification

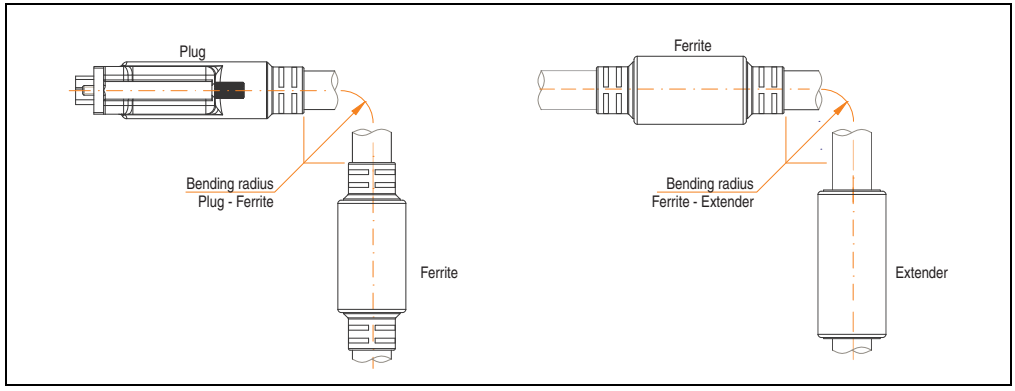


Figure 216: Flex radius specification

Dimensions

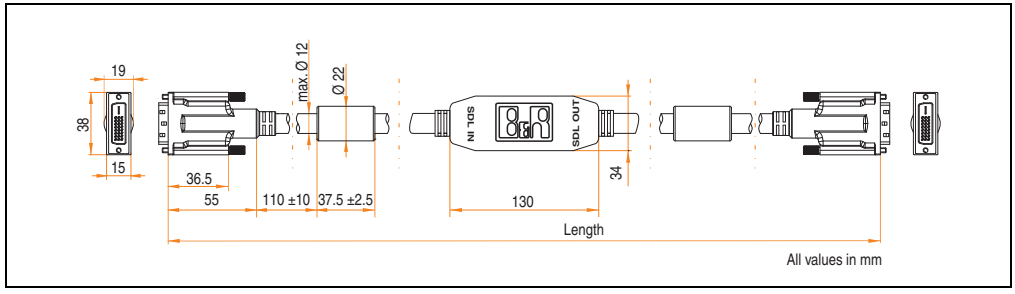


Figure 217: Dimensions - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	SDL flex cable with extender in desired length, plug covers are attached at the cable ends.

Table 313: Contents of delivery - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13

12.6.3 Cable connection

The SDL flex cable with extender must be connected between the Industrial PC and Automation Panel 900 display unit in the correct direction. The signal direction is indicated on the extender unit for this purpose:

- Connect the end labeled "SDL IN" with the video output of the APC 620 / APC 810 or Panel PC 700 (monitor/panel output) or Panel OUT of an AP900 AP Link card.
- The "SDL OUT" end should be connected to the display unit (e.g. Automation Panel 900) via the Automation Panel Link insert card (Panel IN).

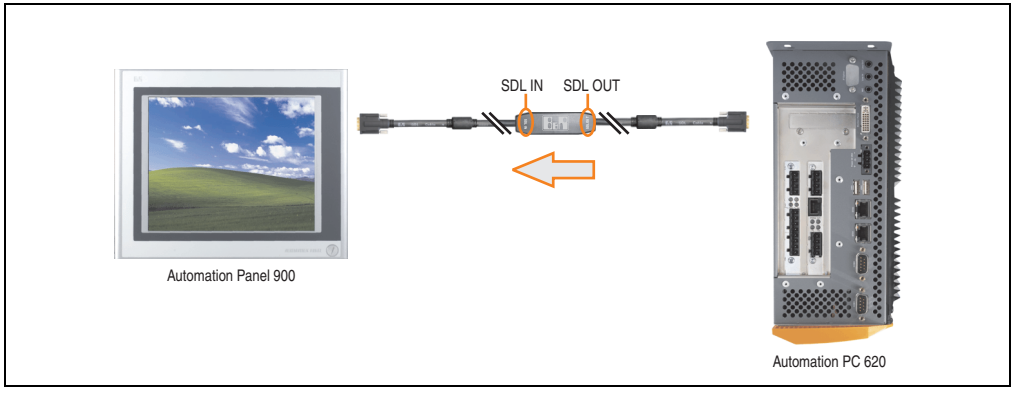


Figure 218: Example of the signal direction for the SDL flex cable with extender - APC620

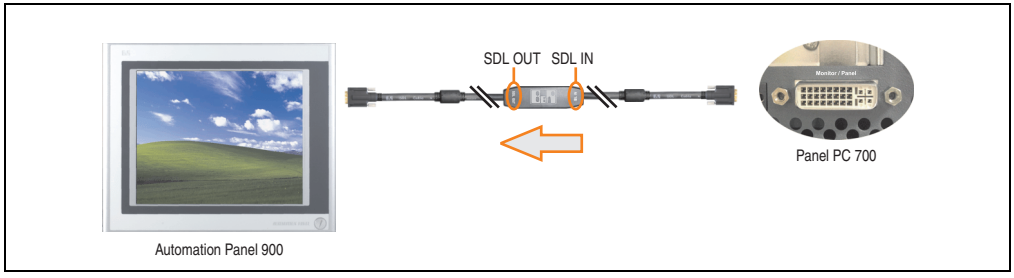


Figure 219: Example of signal direction for the SDL flex cable with extender - PPC700

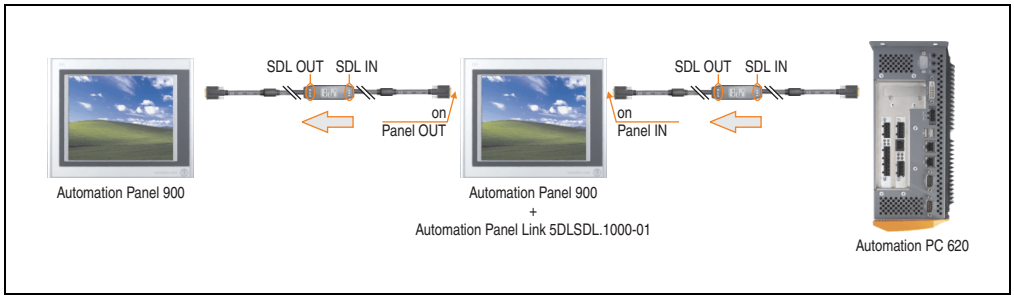


Figure 220: Example of signal direction display - SDL flex cable with extender

12.6.4 Cable specifications

The following figure shows the pin assignments for the SDL flex cable with extender available at B&R.

Information:

Only B&R SDL flex cables with extender can be used.

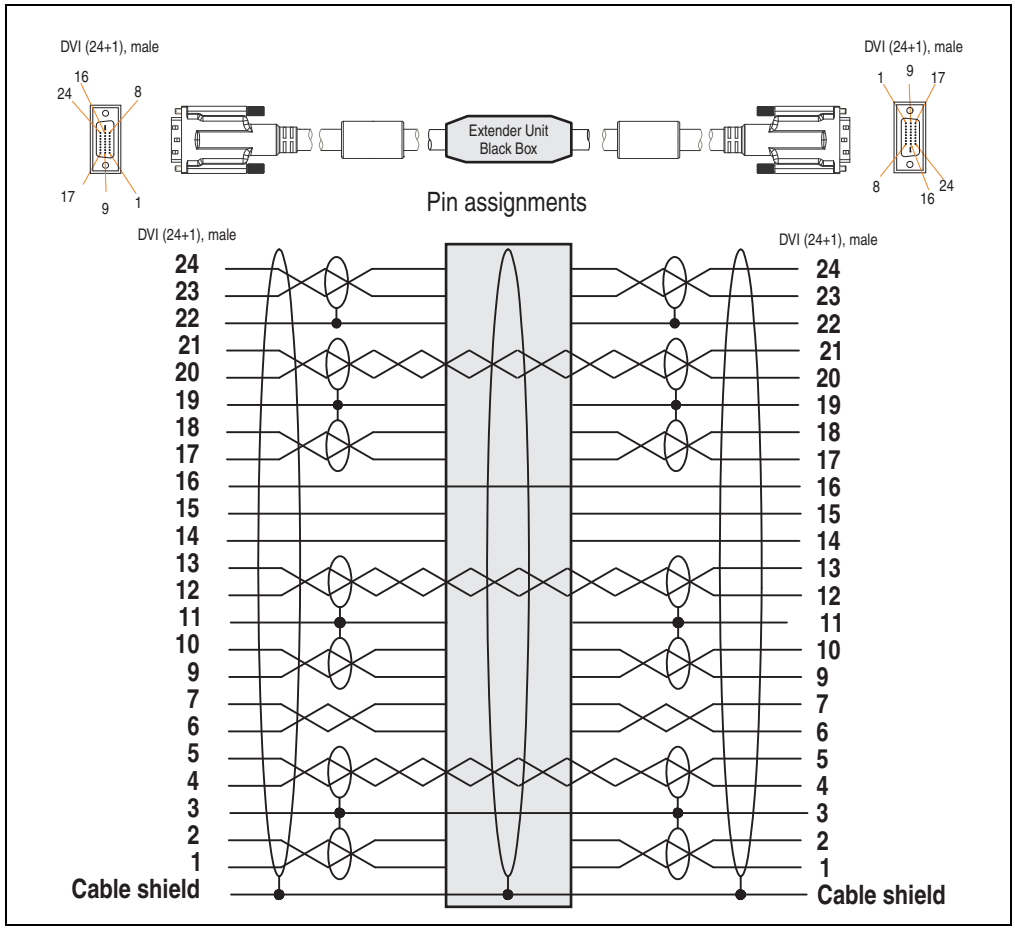


Figure 221: Pin assignments - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13

12.7 RS232 cable 9A0014.xx

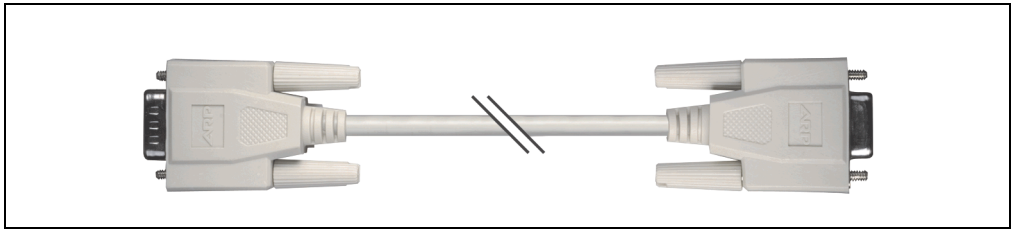


Figure 222: RS232 extension cable (similar)

12.7.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
9A0014.02	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 1.8 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 1.8 m.	
9A0014.05	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 5 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 5 m.	
9A0014.10	**RS232 cable DB9/f:DB9/m 10 m** RS232 extension cable for remote operation of a display unit with touch screen, length 10 m.	

Table 314: Model numbers - RS232 cables

12.7.2 Technical data

Features	9A0014.02	9A0014.05	9A0014.10
Length	1.8 m ± 50 mm	5 m ± 80 mm	10 m ± 100 mm
Outer diameter	Max. 5 mm		
Shielding	Entire cable		
Connector type	DSUB (9-pin), male / female		
Wire cross section	AWG 26		
Flexibility	Flexible		
Flex radius	Min. 70 mm		

Table 315: Technical data - RS232 cables

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	RS232 cable in desired length

Table 316: Contents of delivery - RS232 cables 9A0014.xx

12.7.3 Cable specifications

The following figure shows the pin assignments for the RS232 cable available at B&R. If you want to build a suitable cable yourself, it should be wired according to these specifications.

Warning!

If a self-built cable is used, B&R cannot guarantee that it will function properly.

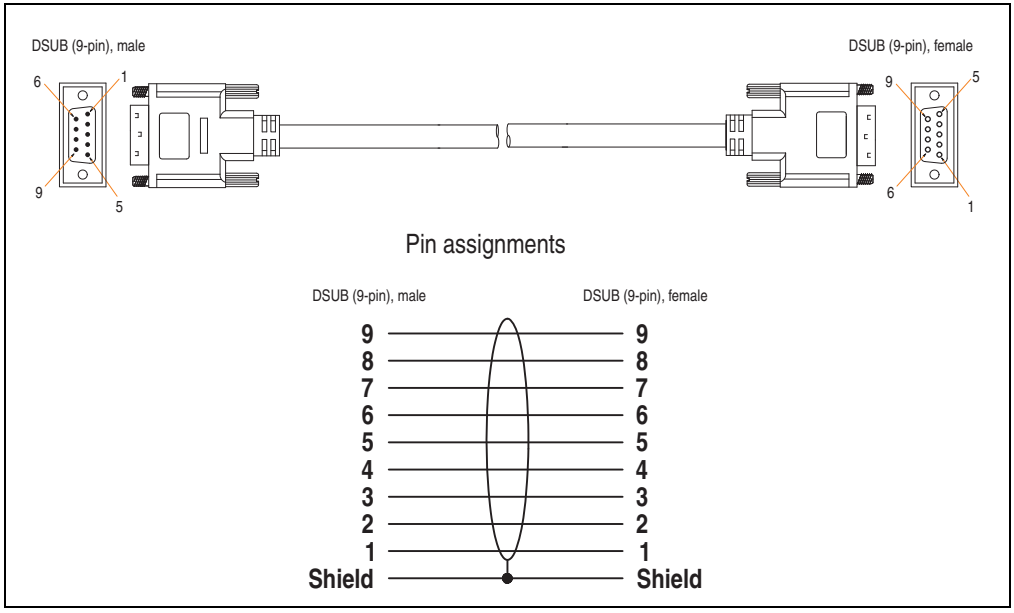


Figure 223: Pin assignments - RS232 cable

12.8 USB cable 5CAUSB.00xx-00

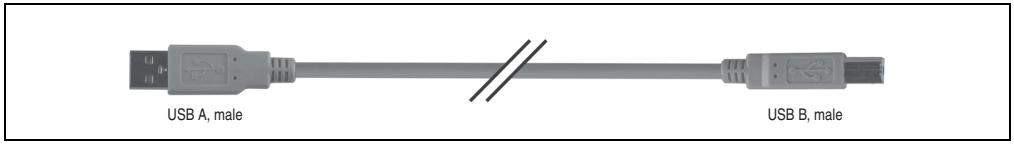


Figure 224: USB extension cable (similar)

12.8.1 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
5CAUSB.0018-00	**USB 2.0 cable, A/m:B/m 1.8 m** USB 2.0 connection cable; plug type A - type B; length 1.8 m	
5CAUSB.0050-00	**USB 2.0 cable, A/m:B/m 5 m** USB 2.0 connection cable; plug type A - type B; length 5 m	

Table 317: Model numbers - USB cables

12.8.2 Technical data

Features	5CAUSB.0018-00	5CAUSB.0050-00
Length	1.8 m ± 30 mm	5 m ± 50 mm
Outer diameter	Max. 5 mm	
Shielding	Entire cable	
Connector type	USB type A male and USB type B male	
Wire cross section	AWG 24, 28	
Flexibility	Flexible	
Flex radius	Min. 100 mm	

Table 318: Technical data - USB cables

Contents of delivery

Amount	Component
1	USB cable in desired length

Table 319: Contents of delivery - USB cable

12.8.3 Cable specifications

The following figure shows the pin assignments for the USB cable available at B&R. If you want to build a suitable cable yourself, it should be wired according to these specifications.

Warning!

If a self-built cable is used, B&R cannot guarantee that it will function properly.

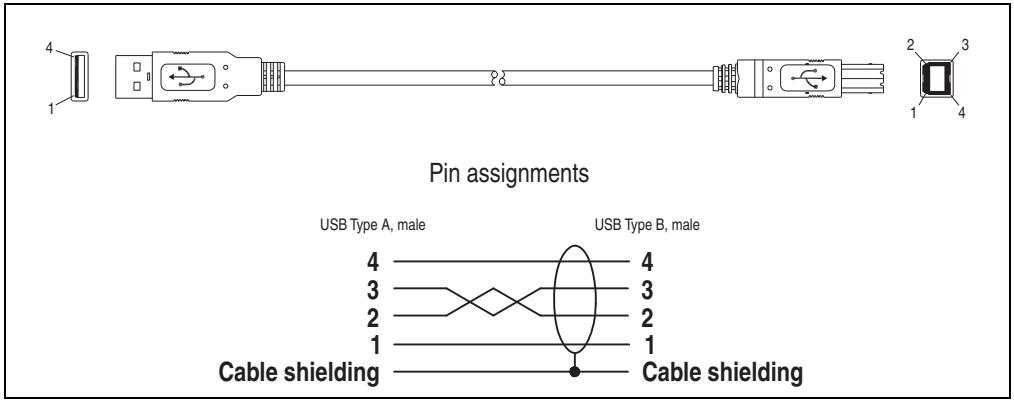


Figure 225: Pin assignments - USB cable

13. Uninterruptible power supply

With the optionally integrated UPS, the Automation PC 620 makes sure that the PC system completes write operations even after a power failure occurs. When the UPS detects a power failure, it switches to battery operation immediately without interruption. This means that all running programs will be ended properly by the UPS software. This prevents the possibility of inconsistent data (only functions if the UPC is already configured and the driver is activated).

Information:

More detailed information about uninterruptible power supplies can be found in the UPS manual. This can be downloaded from the B&R homepage.

Information:

The monitor is not buffered by the UPS and will shut off when the power fails.

By integrating the charging circuit in the Automation PC 620 housing, the installation has been reduced to merely attaching the connection cable to the battery unit mounted next to the PC.

Special emphasis was placed on ease of maintenance when the battery unit was designed. The batteries are easily accessible from the front and can be switched in just a few moments when servicing.

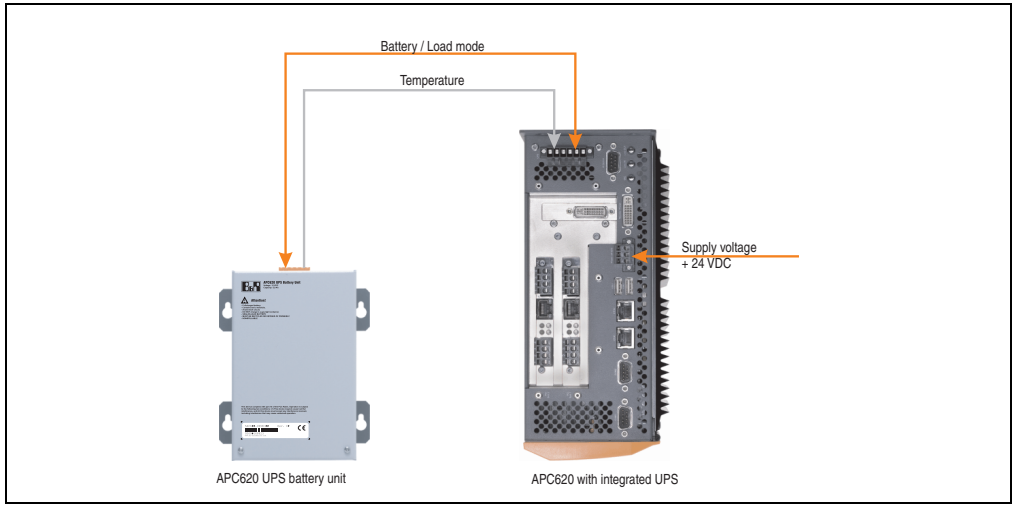


Figure 226: UPS principle

13.1 Features

- Long-lasting, maintenance-free rechargeable batteries
- Communication via integrated interfaces
- Temperature sensor
- Driver software
- Deep discharge protection

13.2 Requirements

1) An appropriate system unit.
The add-on UPS module (5AC600.UPSI-00) can only be installed with the following APC620 system unit revisions:

System unit	Revision
5PC600.SX01-00	Starting with revision H0
5PC600.SX02-00	Starting with revision G0
5PC600.SX02-01	Starting with revision H0
5PC600.SX05-00	Starting with revision F0
5PC600.SX05-01	Starting with revision F0
5PC600.SF03-00	Starting with revision A0
5PC600.SE00-00	Starting with revision A0
5PC600.SE00-01	Starting with revision A0
5PC600.SE00-02	Starting with revision A0
5PC810.SX*.	Starting with revision A0

Table 320: System unit revisions - Add-on UPS module

2) Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00
For more on installing the add-on modules, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 4 "Installation of the UPS module" on page 508.

3) Battery unit 5AC600.UPSB-00

4) UPS connection cable 0.5 m (5CAUPS.0005-00) or 3 m (5CAUPS.0030-00)

5) APC620 firmware versions:
To read the status or make changes to the settings of the APC620 add-on UPS (5AC600.UPSI-00) and the APC620 battery unit (5AC600.UPSB-00), the following software components are necessary:

Software name	Type	Version
MTCX PX32[1)]	Firmware	1.61 or higher

Table 321: Firmware and software required for the UPS

Software name	Type	Version
MTCX FPGA[1)]	Firmware	1.18 or higher
ADI Control Center[1)]	Driver / Control Center	1.60 or higher

Table 321: Firmware and software required for the UPS

1) The software can be downloaded from the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

For info regarding upgrading the firmware, see chapter 4 "Software", section 2.2 "Upgrading the firmware" on page 333.

The APC620 firmware version can be read in BIOS under the main menu item "Advanced", submenu item "Baseboard/Panel Features", or in the B&R Control Center.

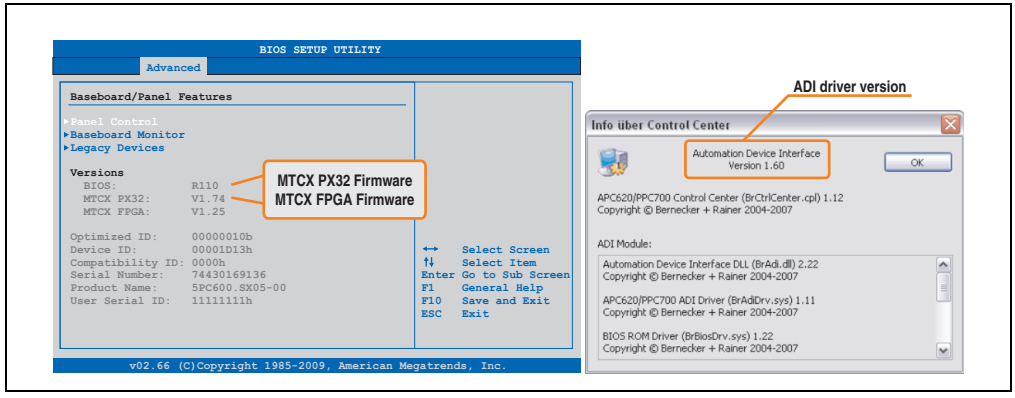


Figure 227: Firmware and software required for the UPS

The required firmware versions can be found in the APC620 / Panel PC firmware upgrade (MTCX, SDLR, SDLT) V1.16[1)] .

6) To configure: Automation Device Interface driver version 1.60 or higher (for the ADI Control Center)

   For info regarding configuration of the B&R UPS using the ADI Control Center, see chapter 4 "Software", section 9.3 "UPS configuration" on page 370.

1) The software can be downloaded from the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

13.3 Individual components

13.3.1 Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00

The add-on UPS module can easily be installed in an appropriate APC620 system unit (List of required revisions: see section "Requirements" on page 465).

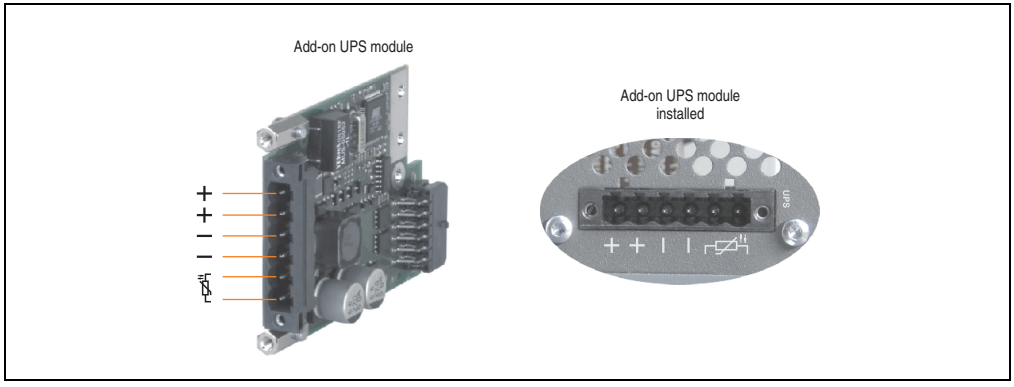


Figure 228: Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00

Technical data

Features	5AC600.UPSI-00
Switching threshold mains / battery operation	15 / 13 V
Mains failure bridging	Max. 20 min at 150 W load
Charging current	Max. 0.5 A
Deep discharge protection	Yes, at 10 V on the battery unit
Short circuit protection	No
Power requirements	Max. 7.5 W
Status indicators	Via the ADI Control Center (see section "UPS configuration" on page 370)
Configuration	Via the ADI Control Center (see section "UPS configuration" on page 370)

Table 322: Technical data - 5AC600.UPSI-00

Installation

The module is installed using the materials included in the delivery. For installation instructions, see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 4 "Installation of the UPS module" on page 508.

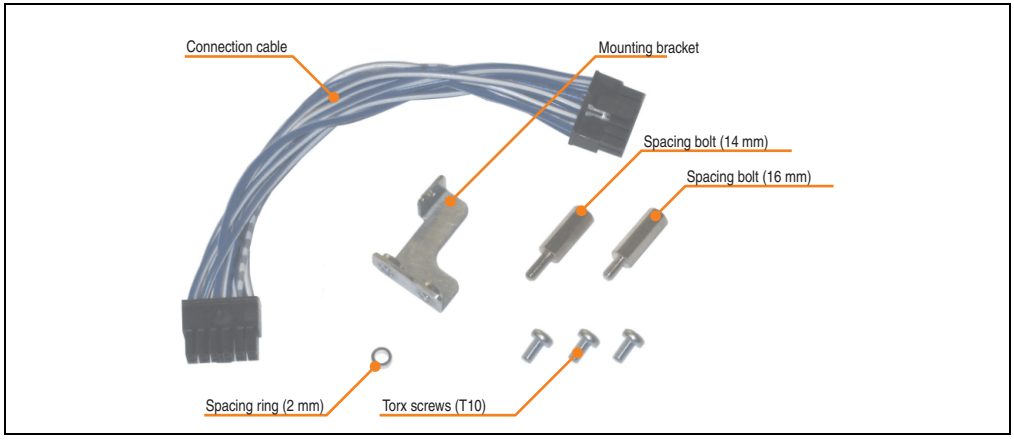


Figure 229: Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00 - Installation materials

13.3.2 Battery unit 5AC600.UPSB-00

The battery unit is subject to wear and should be replaced regularly (at least following the specified lifespan).

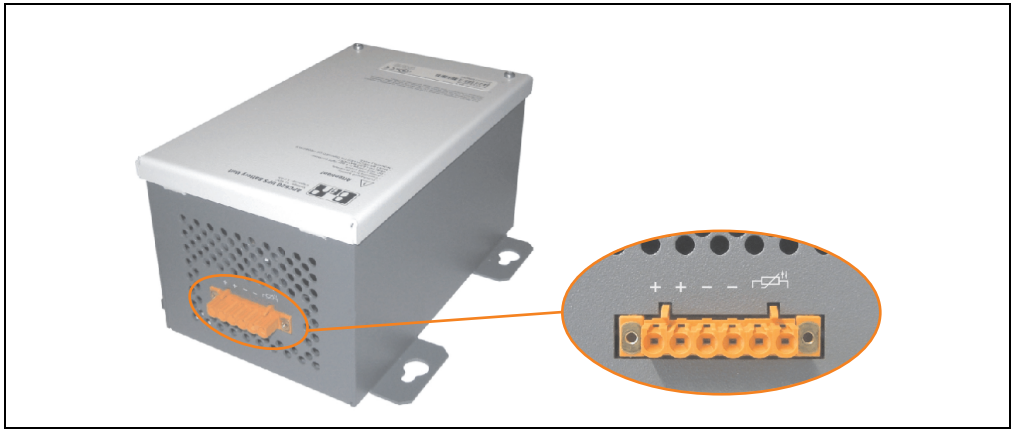


Figure 230: Battery unit 5AC600.UPSB-00

Technical data

Features	5AC600.UPSB-00
Battery Type Method	 Enersys Cyclon 2 V 5 Ah; (6 connected in series) Single cell (X cell)
Operating current	Max. 8 A
Deep discharge voltage	10 V
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Figure 233 "Dimensions - 5AC600.UPSB-00" on page 471
Temperature sensor	NTC resistance
Weight	Approx. 3.2 kg
Ambient temperature Operation Bearings Transport	 -40 to +80°C -65 to +80°C -65 to +80°C
Relative humidity Operation Bearings Transport	 5 to 95%, non-condensing 5 to 95%, non-condensing 5 to 95%, non-condensing
Altitude	Max. 3000 meters
Mounting instructions	See the section "Mounting instructions" on page 472.
Lifespan	10 years at 25°C (up to 80% battery capacity)
Maintenance interval during storage	Load once every 6 months

Table 323: Technical data - 5AC600.UPSB-00

Temperature life span diagram up to 20% battery capacity.

Temperature	Lifespan (days)
25	14600
30	9467
35	6139
40	3980
45	2581
50	1674
55	1085
60	704
65	456
70	296
75	192
80	124

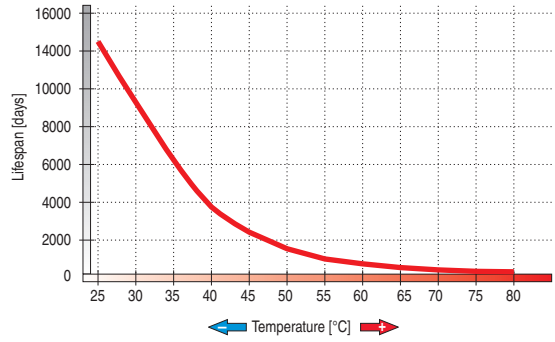


Figure 231: Temperature life span diagram

Deep discharge cycles

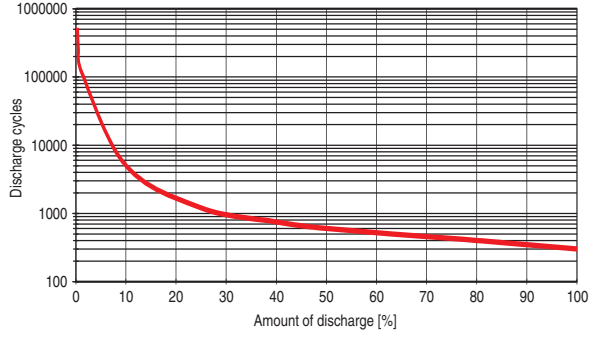


Figure 232: Deep discharge cycles

Dimensions

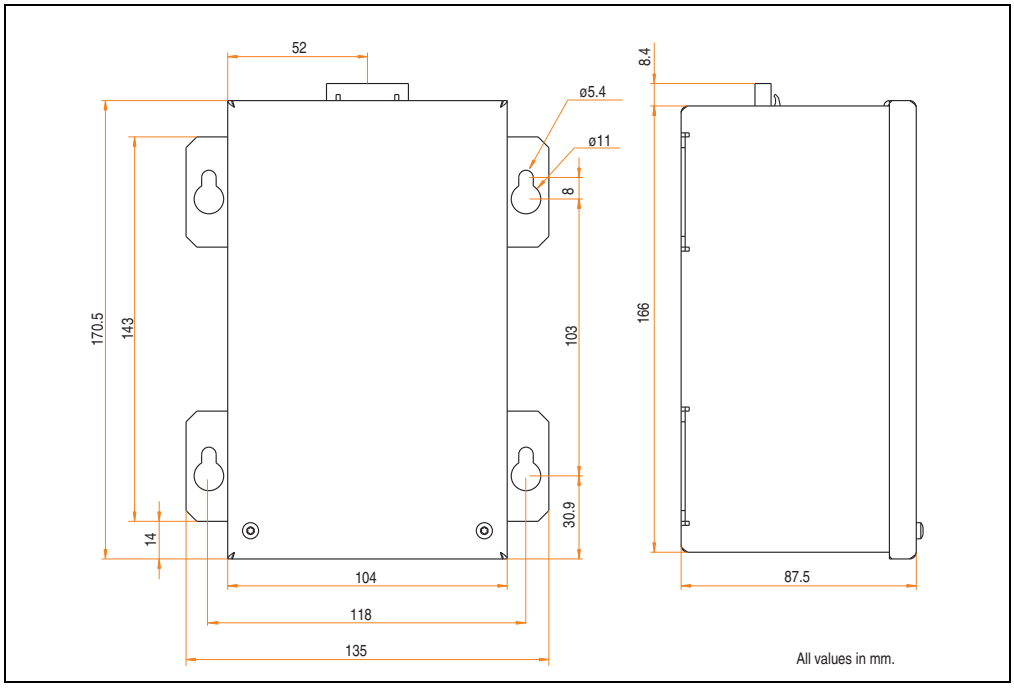


Figure 233: Dimensions - 5AC600.UPSB-00

Drilling template

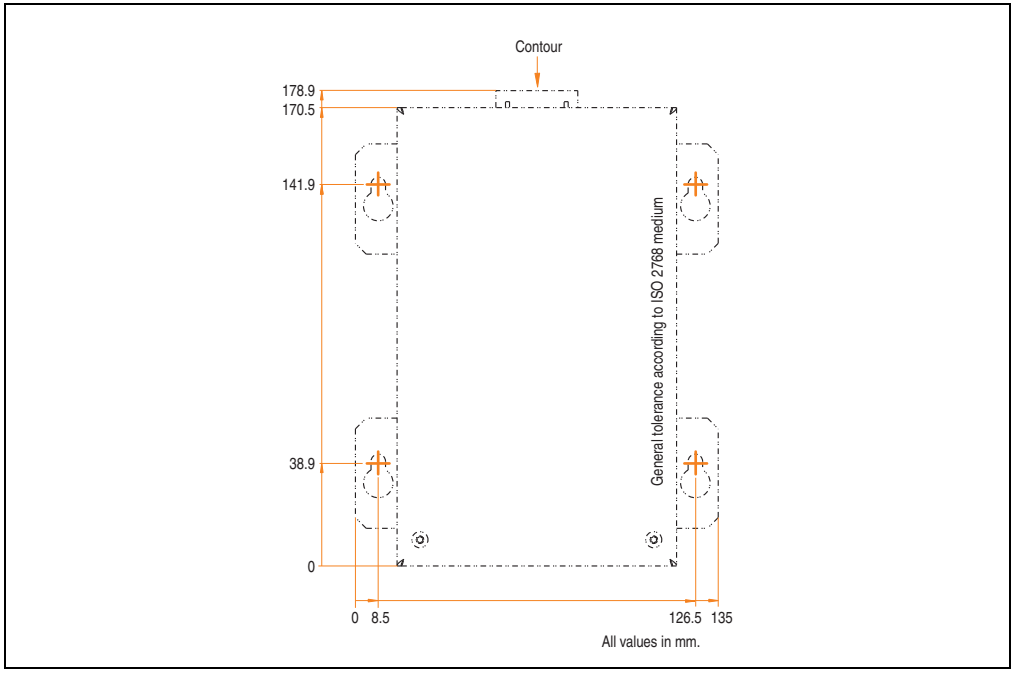


Figure 234: Drilling template for the battery unit

Mounting instructions

Due to the unique construction of these batteries, they can be stored and operated in any position.

13.3.3 UPS connection cable

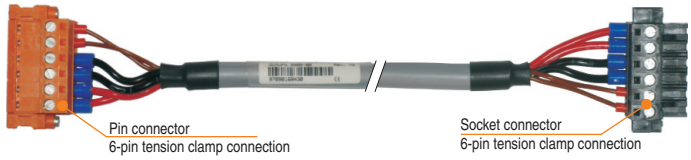


Figure 235: UPS connection cable

Technical data

Features	5CAUPS.0005-00	5CAUPS.0030-00
Length	0.5 m	3 m
Outer diameter	8.5 mm ±0.2 mm	
Connector type	6-pin plug connectors, tension clamp connection / 6-pin socket connectors, tension clamp connection	
Wire cross section Temperature sensor wire Voltage wire	 2 x 0.5 mm^2 (AWG 20) 4 x 2.5 mm^2 (AWG 13)	
Line resistance 0.5 mm^2 2.5 mm^2	 Max. 39 Ω/km Max. 7.98 Ω/km	
Flex radius Fixed installation Free-moving	 5 x wire cross-section 10 x wire cross-section	
Temperature range Moving Non-moving	 -5 to +80°C -30 to +80°C	
Weight	Approx. 143 kg/km	
Materials Cable shielding Color	 Thermoplastic PVC-based material Window gray (similar to RAL 7040)	
Peak operating voltage	12 V DC	
Testing AC voltage Wire/wire	 1500 V	
Operating voltage	Max. 300 V	
Current load	10 A at +20°C	

Table 324: Technical data - UPS connection cable

14. External UPS

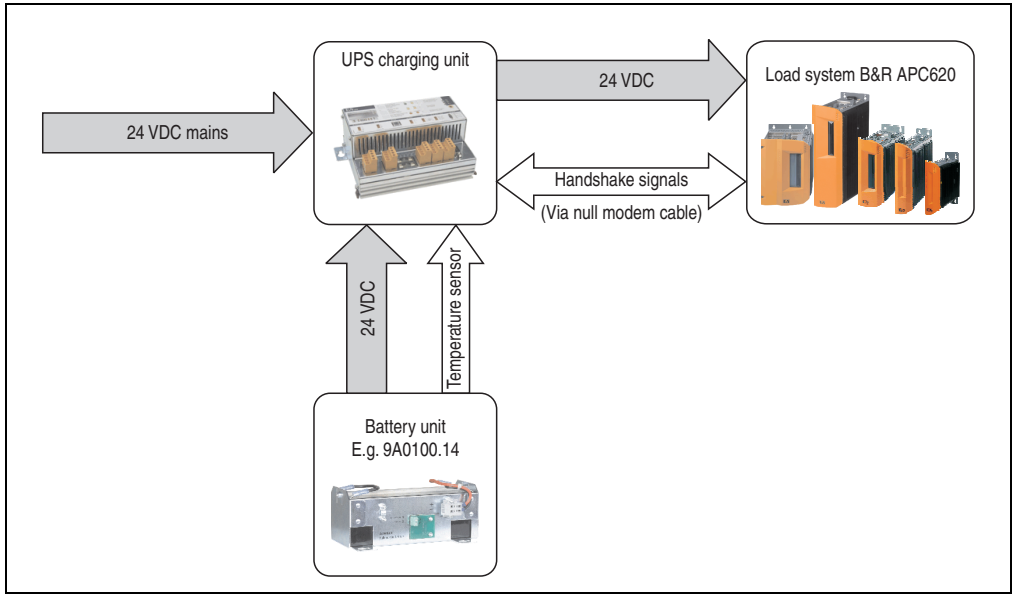


Figure 236: Block diagram of the UPS

14.1 General information

For supply with an external UPS, a UPS charging unit, a battery unit and a null modem cable are required.

In normal operation, the 24 VDC supply voltage is put straight through to the load system. If the supply voltage fails, the rechargeable UPS batteries power the PC to allow controlled shutdown without loss of data.

Data and commands are exchanged between the UPS and the load system via the handshake signals for an RS232 interface.

More information concerning an external UPS is available in the "UPS manual", which can be downloaded from the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

14.2 Order data

Model number	Description	Note
9A0100.11	**UPS 24 VDC** 24 VDC input, 24 VDC output, serial interface	
9A0100.14	**UPS battery unit type B** 24 V; 2.2 Ah; including battery cage	
9A0100.15	**UPS battery unit type B (replacement part)** 2 x 12 V; 2.2 Ah; for battery unit 9A0100.14	
9A0017.01	**RS232 Null Modem Cable, 0.6 m** To connect UPS and load system (9-pin DSUB socket - 9-pin DSUB socket)	
9A0017.02	**RS232 Null Modem Cable, 1.8 m** To connect UPS and load system (9-pin DSUB socket - 9-pin DSUB socket)	

Table 325: UPS - Order data

15. PCI Ethernet cards

15.1 PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH1-01

The universal (3.3 V and 5 V) half-size PCI Ethernet card has a 10/100 MBit/s network connection and can be inserted in a 16-bit PCI slot and operated as an additional network interface.

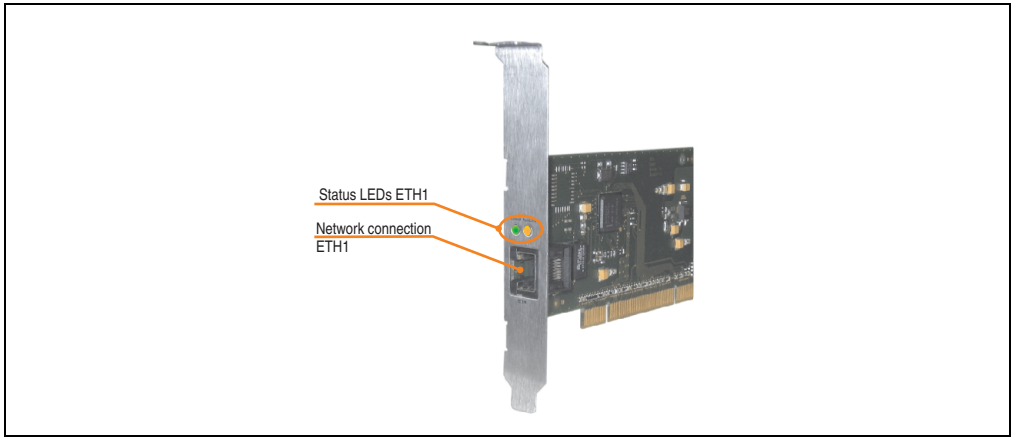


Figure 237: PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH1-01

15.1.1 Technical data

Ethernet connection			
Controller	Intel 82551ER		RJ45 twisted pair (10BaseT/100BaseT), female
Power supply	Universal card (2 notches) for 3.3 V or 5 V		
Cabling	S/STP (Cat5e)		
Transfer rate	10/100 MBit/s [1]		
Cable length	Max. 100 m (min. Cat5e)		
LED	**On**	**Off**	
Green	100 MBit/s	10 MBit/s	
Orange	Link (Ethernet network connection available)	Activity (blinking) (Data transfer in progress)	

Table 326: Ethernet connection ETH

1) Both operating modes possible. Change-over takes place automatically.

15.1.2 Driver support

A special driver is necessary for operating the Intel Ethernet controller 82551ER. Drivers for Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Embedded, and DOS are available for download on the B&R Homepage in the download area (**www.br-automation.com**).

Information:

Required drivers can only be downloaded from the B&R homepage, not from manufacturers' pages.

15.1.3 Dimensions

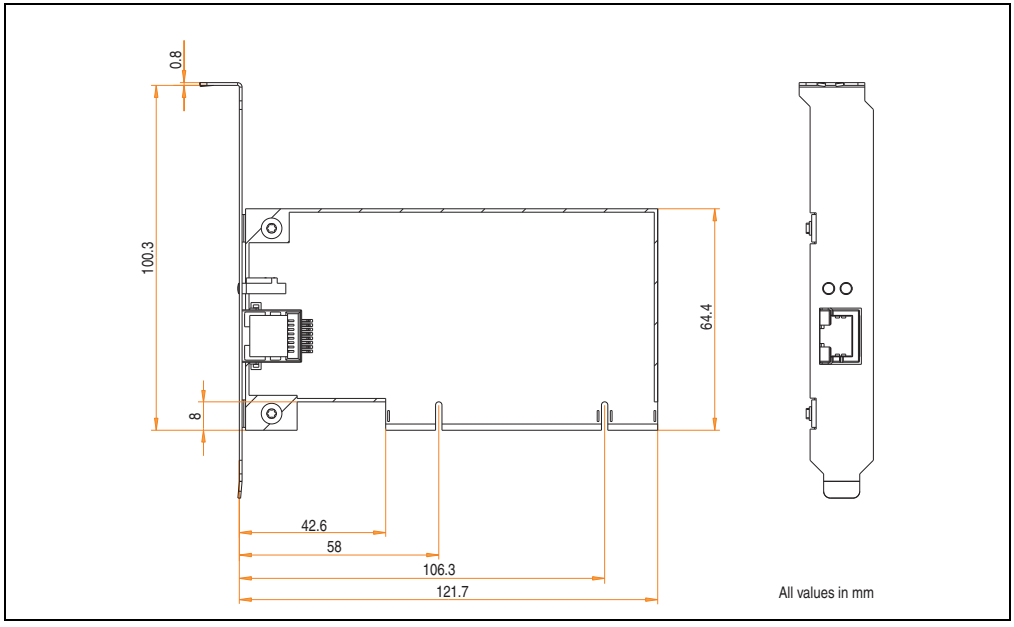


Figure 238: Dimensions - 5ACPCI.ETH1-01

15.2 PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH3-01

The universal (3.3 V and 5 V) half-size PCI Ethernet card has three 10/100 MBit/s network connections and can be inserted in a 16-bit PCI slot and operated as an additional network interface.

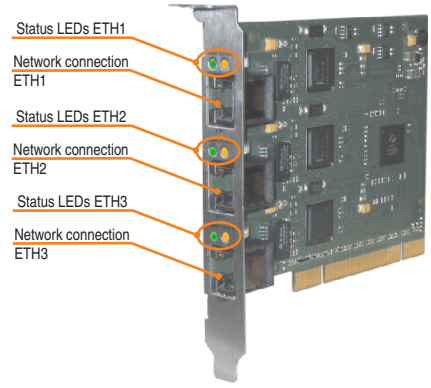


Figure 239: PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH3-01

15.2.1 Technical data

Ethernet connections		
Controller	Each with Intel 82551ER	3 x RJ45 twisted pair (10BaseT/100BaseT), female
Power supply	Universal card (2 notches) for 3.3 V or 5 V	
Cabling	Each S/STP (Cat5e)	
Transfer rate	Each 10/100 MBit/s [1]	
Cable length	Each max. 100 m (min. Cat5e)	
LED	**On**	**Off**
Green	100 MBit/s	10 MBit/s
Orange	Link (Ethernet network connection available)	Activity (blinking) (Data transfer in progress)

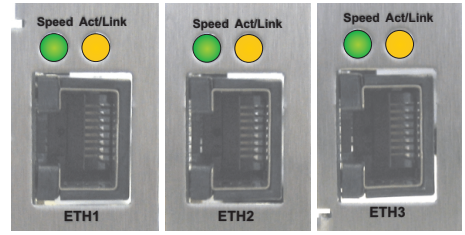


Table 327: Ethernet connections ETH1, ETH2, ETH3

1) Both operating modes possible. Change-over takes place automatically.

15.2.2 Driver support

A special driver is necessary for operating the Intel Ethernet controller 82551ER. Drivers for Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Embedded, and DOS are available for download on the B&R Homepage in the download area (**www.br-automation.com**).

Information:

Required drivers can only be downloaded from the B&R homepage, not from manufacturers' pages.

15.2.3 Dimensions

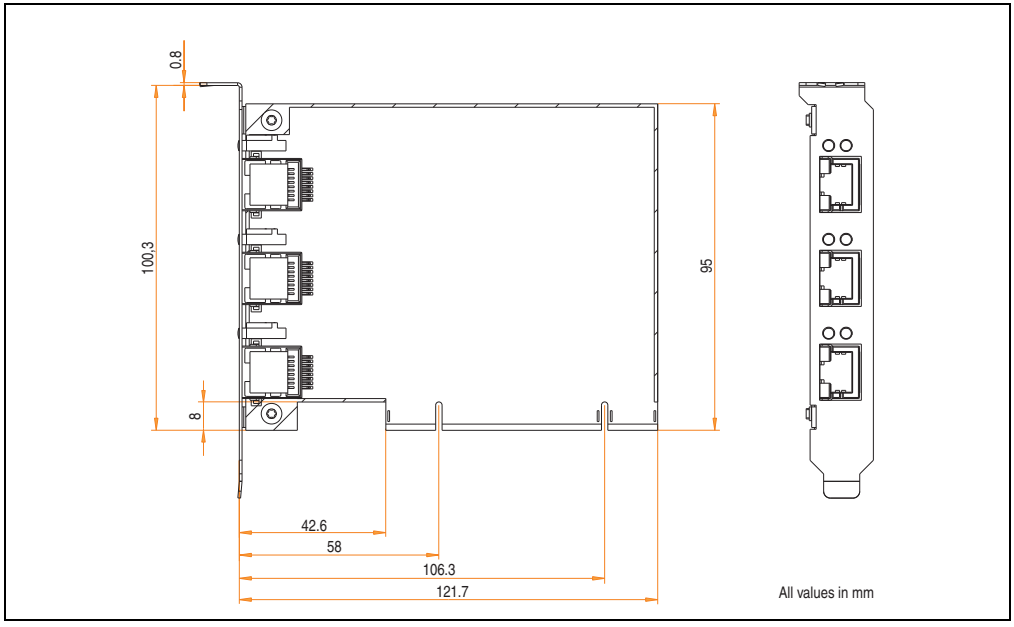


Figure 240: Dimensions - 5ACPCI.ETH3-01

16. Replacement fan filter

Information:

The fan filters are subject to wear , and should be checked with appropriate frequency to determine whether the air flow provides sufficient cooling. An exchange or cleaning of the filter kit is appropriate at that time.

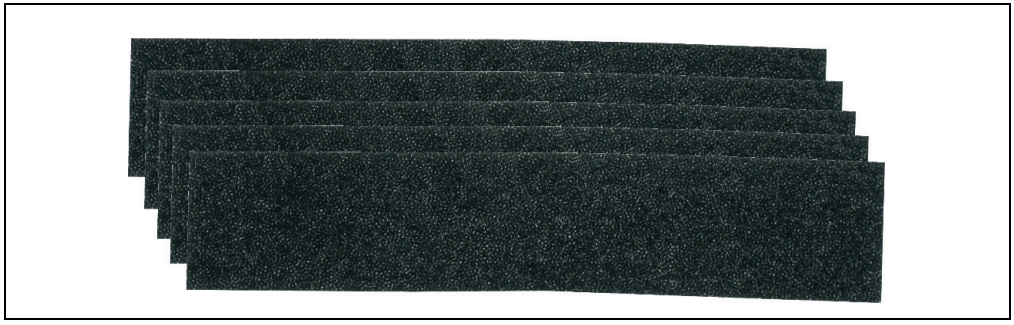


Figure 241: Replacement fan

Model number	Short description	Note
5AC600.FA01-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** This fan filter is an optional addition for system units with 1 PCL slot (5PC600.SX01-00).	
5AC600.FA02-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** This fan filter is an optional addition for system units with 2 PCL slots (5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX02-01).	
5AC600.FA03-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 3PCI 5 piece** This fan filter is an optional addition for system units with 3 PCL slots (5PC600.SF03-00).	
5AC600.FA05-00	**APC620 replacement fan filter 1PCI 5 piece** This fan filter is an optional addition for system units with 5 PCL slots (5PC600.SX05-00, 5PC600.SX05-01).	

Table 328: Model numbers - Replacement fan filters

17. SRAM module - 5AC600.SRAM-00

The 512 KB SRAM module increases APC620 application possibilities. It is inserted internally on the baseboard (depending on revision) and doesn't require a PCI slot. Nonvolatile data can be stored on it. The module is backed up by the APC620 battery.

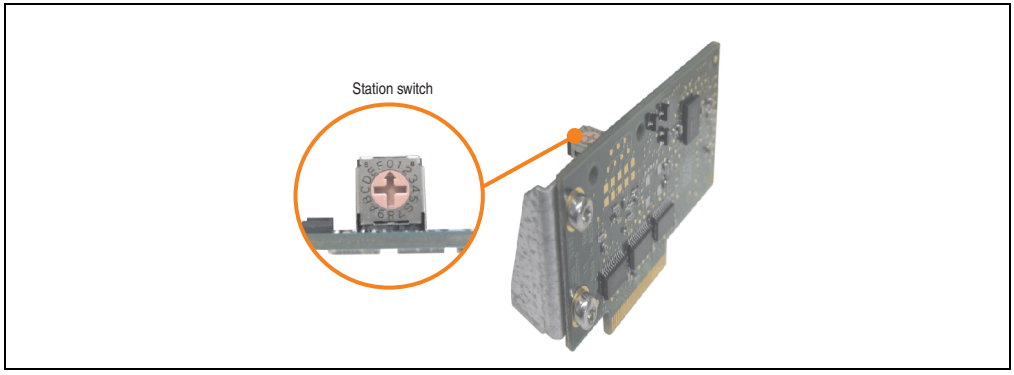


Figure 242: 5AC600.SRAM-00

The following system unit hardware revisions are required before mounting the SRAM module:

- 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision I0
- 5PC600.SX01-00 starting with revision H0
- 5PC600.SX02-01 starting with revision K0
- 5PC600.SF03-00 all revisions
- 5PC600.SX05-00 starting with revision H0
- 5PC600.SX05-01 starting with revision H0

17.1 Technical data

Features	5AC600.SRAM-00
Connection to system	via the PCI bus (PCI PnP)
Memory Quantity Battery-buffered	SRAM 512 KB Yes
Station switch	16 digits (0-F)
Data rate	Up to 31 MB/s for write access Up to 25 MB/s for read access

Table 329: Technical data - 5AC600.SRAM-00

Features	5AC600.SRAM-00	
PCI configuration space	**Value**	**Meaning**
Vendor ID	1677h	B & R
Device ID	A085h	5AC600.SRAM-00
Status	0200h	DEVSEL timing medium
HeaderType	00h	Single function device
The card is registered in the PCI Configuration Space as Single Function Device	**Value**	**Meaning**
Device 0		
Base class	05h	Memory controller
Sub class	00h	RAM
Command	0000h	Bus master (not used)
IRQ	-	Not used
BAR0	512	kByte memory area
BAR1	4	Byte I/O area

Table 329: Technical data - 5AC600.SRAM-00

17.2 Driver support

The module is presently only supported in an Automation Runtime environment. Driver for other operating systems (e.g. Windows XP) are available upon request.

17.3 Installation

Installation is described in the example with system unit 5PC600.SF03-00 with inserted AP Link cards and APC620 UPS module.

- Remove side cover from APC620 (see chapter 7 "Maintenance / Servicing", section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525).
- Screw on the M3x5 Torx included in the delivery to the baseboard of the module.

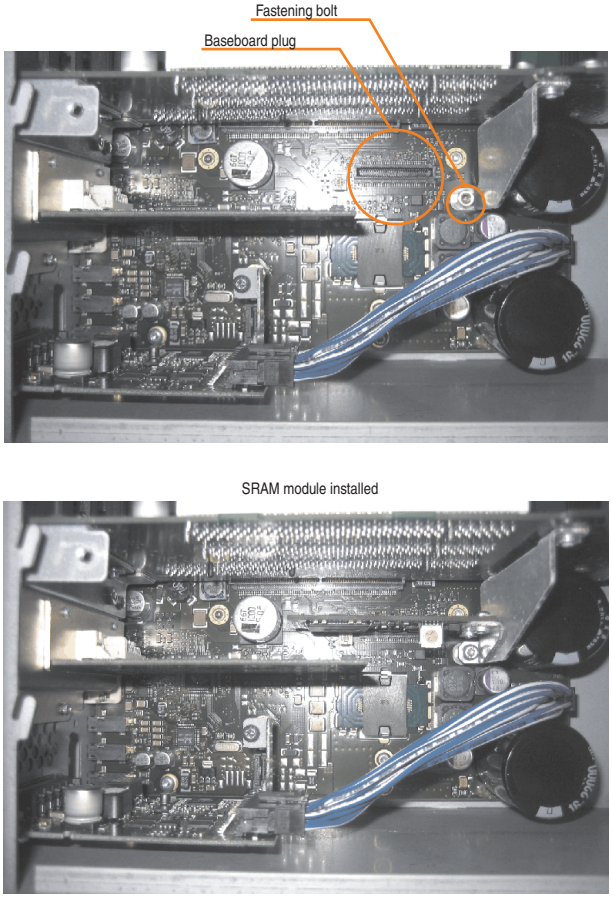


Figure 243: SRAM module installation

18. Power Supplies

In order to meet demands for complete, comprehensive system solutions, power supplies are available in the B&R product line for mounting rail installation. This extensive spectrum ranges from single-phase power supplies that supply 2.1 A up to three-phase power supplies that supply 40 A. All switching power supplies can manage a wide range of AC and DC input voltages. This input ranges from 100 to 240 VAC or 400 to 500 VAC and from 85 to 375 VDC. Devices are protected against short circuit, overload, and open circuit, which allows them to be operated without functional limitations or derating even when overloads between 15% and 25% occur.

Figure 244: B&R power supplies (examples)

Two mini power supplies (PS102 and PS104) in robust plastic housing are available in the lower performance range. A well designed cooling concept allows several different mounting orientations. The functional DIN rail allows fast mounting and removal. Wiring is essentially performed in seconds thanks to the the cage clamp terminals used. The compact design, easy mounting and several different mounting orientations make the two smallest power supplies in this product line components that can be used practically anywhere.

18.1 Model numbers and brief technical overview

The technical data listed in the following tables should act as a brief selection guide. For more detailed technical data, data sheets are available for download from production description section of the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

18.1.1 Single-phase power supplies

Features	0PS102.0	0PS104.0	0PS105.1	0PS105.2	0PS110.1	0PS110.2	0PS120.1
Output power	50 W	100 W	120 W	120 W	240 W	240 W	480 W
AC input voltage	85-264 V	85-132 V 184-264 V	85-132 V 176-264 V	85-132 V 176-264 V	85-132 V 176-264 V	85-132 V 176-264 V	85-132 V 176-264 V
DC input voltage	85-375 V	220-375 V	210-375 V	210-375 V	210-375 V	210-375 V	-
Output voltage	24-28 V	24-28 V	24 V	24 V	24-28 V	24-28 V	24-28 V
Output current at 24 V	2.1 A	4.2 A	5 A	5 A	10 A	10 A	20 A
Parallel operation	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Current balancing	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes

Table 330: Single-phase power supplies

18.1.2 Three-phase power supplies

Features	0PS305.1	0PS310.1	0PS320.1	0PS340.1
Output power	120 W	240 W	490 W	960 W
AC input voltage	340-576 V	340-576 V	340-576 V	340-576 V
DC input voltage	450-820 V	450-820 V	450-820 V	450-820 V
Output voltage	24-28 V	24-28 V	24 V	24 V
Output current at 24 V	5 A	10 A	20 A	40 A
Parallel operation	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Current balancing	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Table 331: Three-phase power supplies

Chapter 7 • Maintenance / Servicing

The following chapter describes service/maintenance work which can be carried out by a trained, qualified user.

1. Changing the battery

The lithium battery buffers the internal real-time clock (RTC) and the CMOS data. The buffer duration of the battery is at least 4 years (2 1/2 years with the SRAM module model number 5AC600.SRAM-00 and at 50°C, 8.5 mA current requirements of the supplied components and a self discharge of 40%).

Information:

- **The product design allows the battery to be changed with the APC620 switched either on or off. In some countries, safety regulations do not allow batteries to be changed while the module is switched on.**
- **Any BIOS settings that have been made will remain when the battery is changed with the power turned off (stored in non-volatile EEPROM). The date and time must be reset later because this data is lost when the battery is changed.**
- **The battery should only be changed by qualified personnel.**

The following replacement lithium batteries are available: 4A0006.00-000 (single) and 0AC201.91 (4 pcs.).

1.1 Battery status evaluation

The battery status is evaluated immediately following start-up of the device and is subsequently checked by the system every 24 hours. The battery is subjected to a brief load (1 second) during the measurement and then evaluated. The evaluated battery status is displayed in the BIOS Setup pages (under Advanced - Baseboard monitor) and in the B&R Control Center (ADI driver), but can also be read in a customer application via the ADI Library.

Battery status	Meaning
N/A	Hardware, i.e. firmware used is too old and does not support read.
GOOD	Data buffering is guaranteed
BAD	Data buffering is guaranteed for approx. another 500 hours from the point in time that the battery capacity is determined to be BAD (insufficient).

Table 332: Meaning of battery status

From the point when battery capacity is recognized as insufficient, data buffering is guaranteed for approximately another 500 hours. When changing the battery, data is buffered for approximately another 10 minutes by a gold leaf capacitor.

1.2 Procedure

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620 (also see information on page 487).
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Remove the black plastic cover from the battery compartment and carefully pull out the battery using the removal strips.

Figure 245: Battery removal

- Insert the new battery with correct polarity. The battery should not be held by its edges. Insulated tweezers may also be used for inserting the battery.

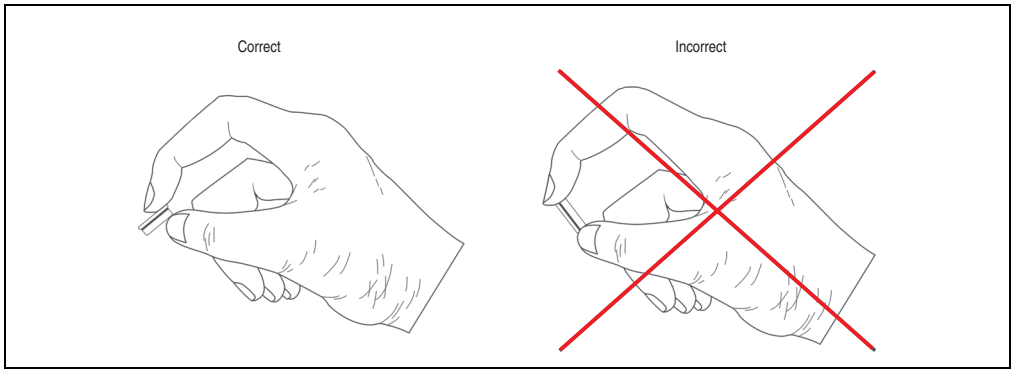


Figure 246: Battery handling

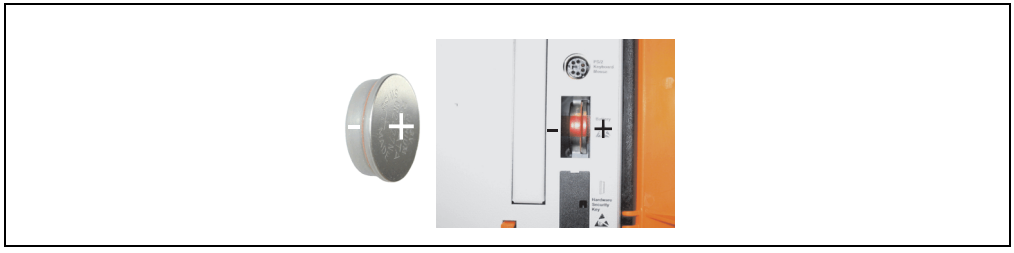


Figure 247: Battery polarity

- To make the next battery change easier, be sure the removal strip is in place when inserting battery.
- Reconnect the power supply to the PC 620 by plugging the power cable back in and pressing the power button (also see information on page 487).
- Reset the data and time in BIOS (see information on page 487).

Warning!

Lithium batteries are considered hazardous waste. Used batteries should be disposed of according to local requirements.

2. Fan kit installation and replacement

2.1 Procedure for APC620 with 1 PCI slots

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 4 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

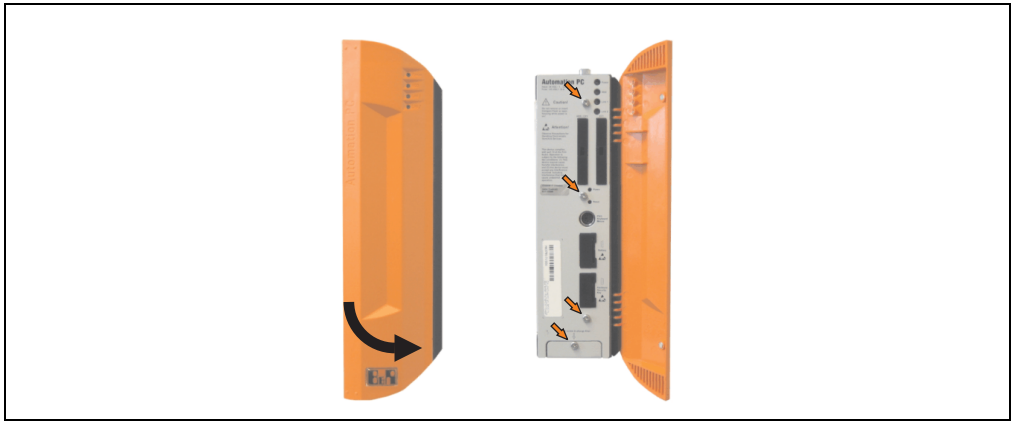


Figure 248: APC620 1PCI slot - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover and the fan kit cover can be removed toward the front.

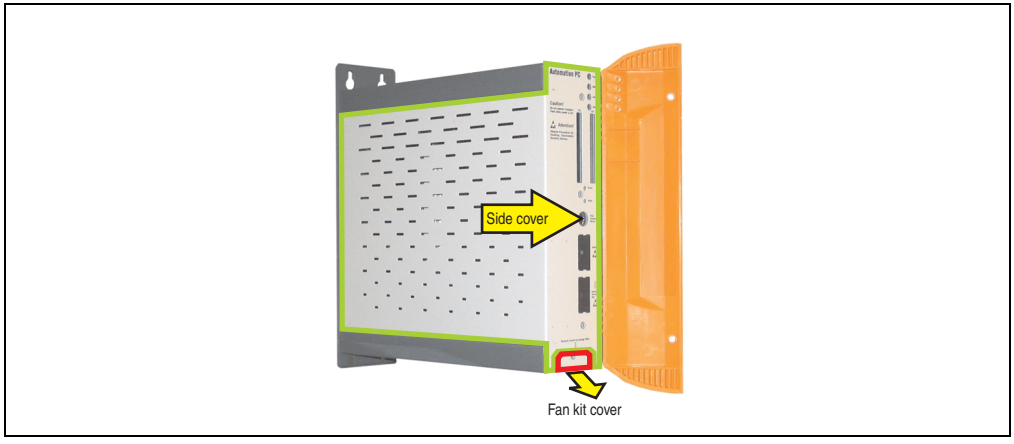


Figure 249: APC620 1PCI slot - Remove side cover and fan kit cover

- If a PCI card is in place, it must be removed before moving on to the next step.

- There are two arrows on the fans that indicate the direction of air flow and the direction of fan rotation.

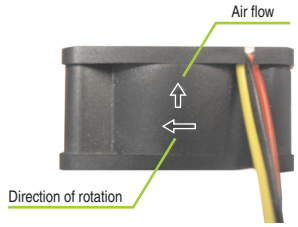


Figure 250: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation

Warning!

The fans must be inserted so that the air flows toward the inside of the housing.

- Align fans over the fastening bolts (see arrows). Feed cables through the openings in the housing (see circles) into the main board of the APC620.

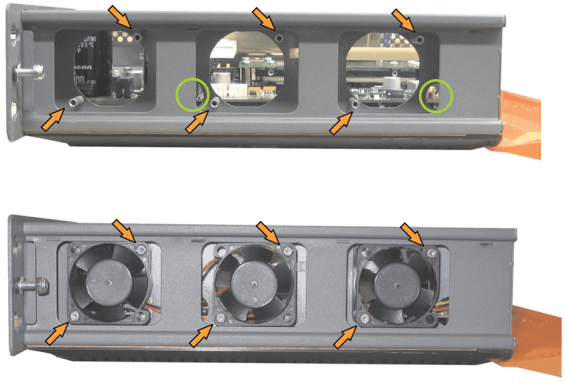


Figure 251: APC620 1PCI slot - Fan installation

- Secure fans with the 6 included Torx (T10) screws.

- The fan connection cable must be connected to the main circuit board at the right position (fan 1 at position 1, fan 2 at position 2, fan 3 at position 3).

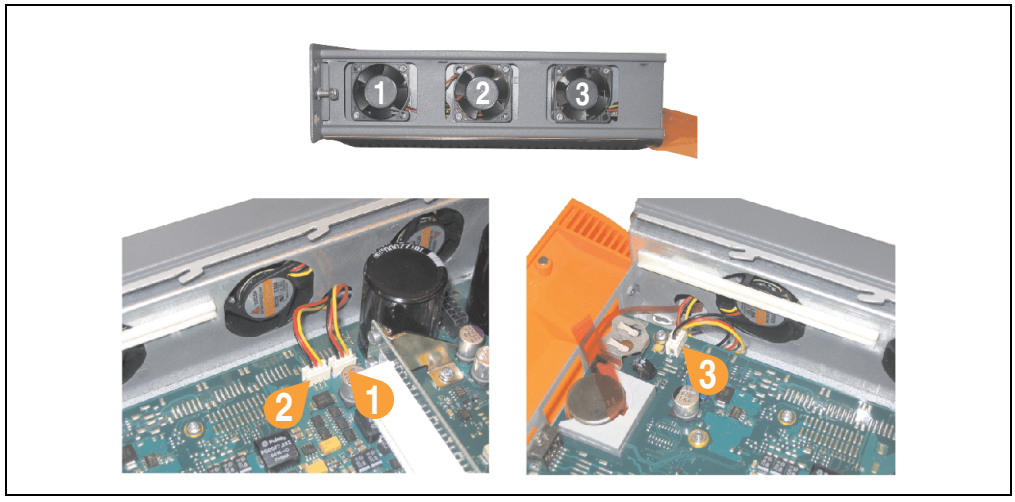


Figure 252: APC620 1PCI slot - Fan cable connection to the main board

- If a PCI card was previously in place, it can now be re-inserted.
- Place dust filter in the fan kit cover and replace removed components (filter kit cover, side cover) in reverse order.

2.2 Procedure for APC620 with 2 PCI slots

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 4 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

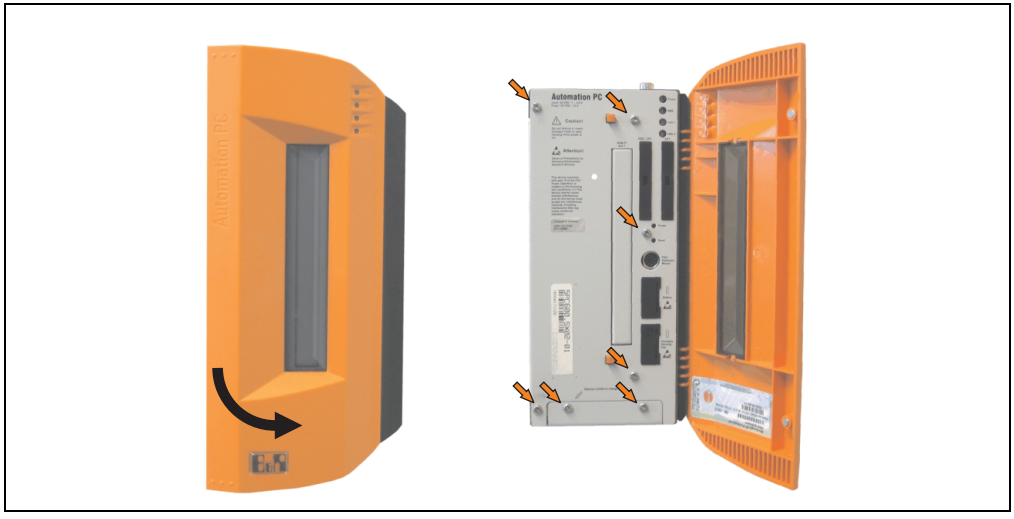


Figure 253: APC620 2PCI slots - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover and the fan kit cover can be removed toward the front.

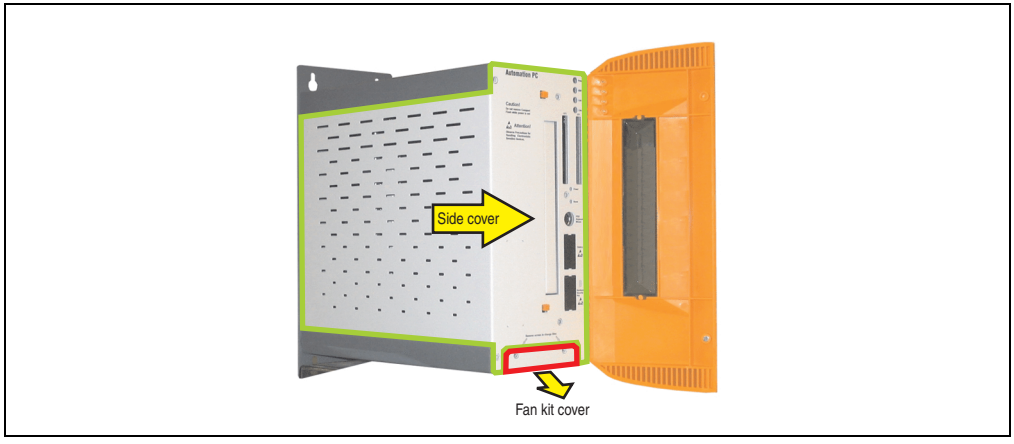


Figure 254: APC620 2PCI slots - Remove side cover and fan kit cover

- If one or more PCI cards are in place, they must be removed before moving on to the next step.
- If a slide-in drive is in place, it also must be removed before moving on to the next step.
- There are two arrows on the fans that indicate the direction of air flow and the direction of fan rotation.

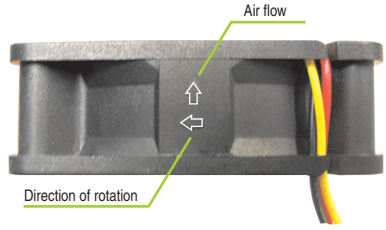


Figure 255: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation

Warning!

The fans must be inserted so that the air flows toward the inside of the housing.

- Align fans over the fastening bolts (see arrows). Feed cables through the openings in the housing (see circles) into the main board of the APC620.

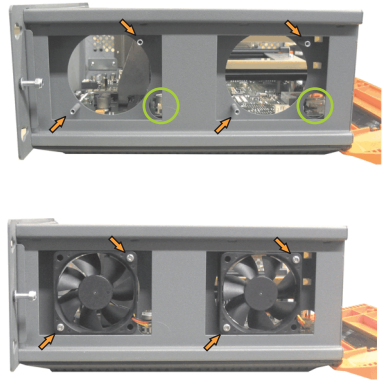


Figure 256: APC620 2PCI slots - Fan installation

- Secure fans with the 4 included Torx (T10) screws.

- The fan connection cable must be connected to the main circuit board at the right position (fan 1 at position 1, fan 2 at position 2).

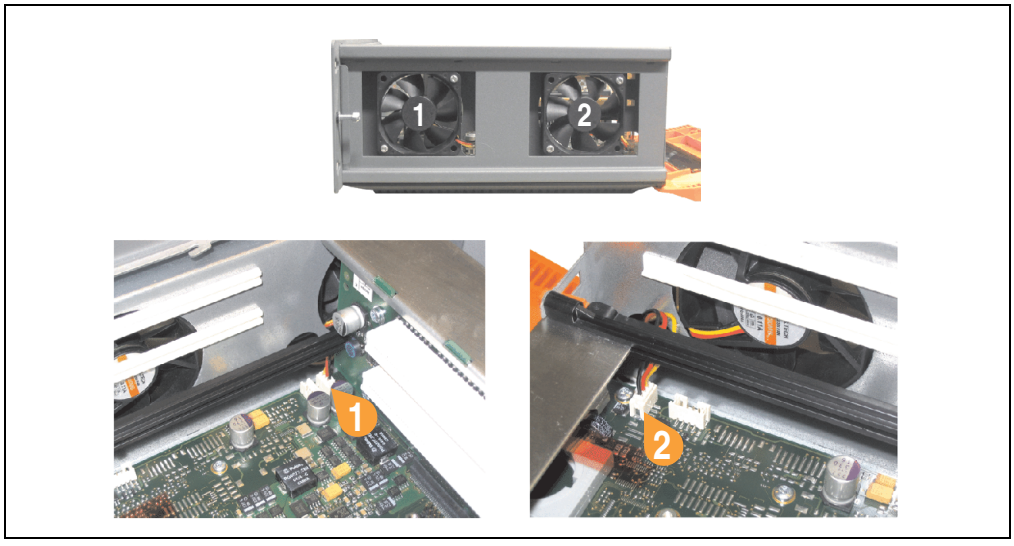


Figure 257: APC620 2PCI slots - Fan cable connection to the main board

- If one or more PCI cards were previously in place, they can now be re-inserted.
- If a slide-in drive was previously in place, it too can now be re-inserted.
- Place the dust filter in the fan kit cover and secure with the filter clasp.

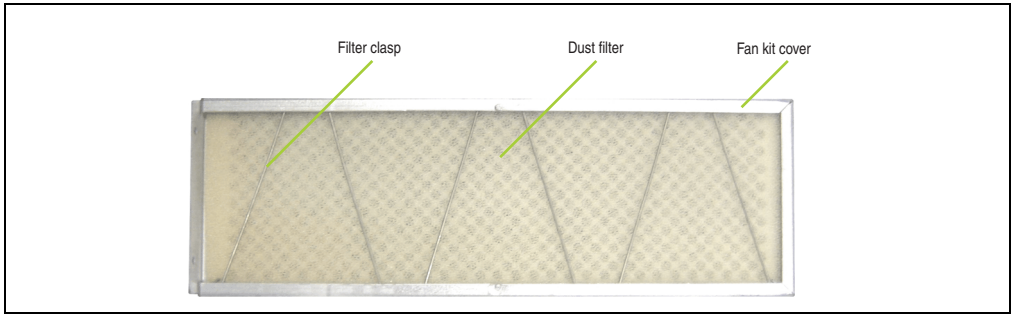


Figure 258: Dust filter in the fan kit cover and filter clasp

- Replace any removed components (filter kit cover, side cover) in the reverse order.

2.3 Procedure for APC620 with 3 PCI slots

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 4 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

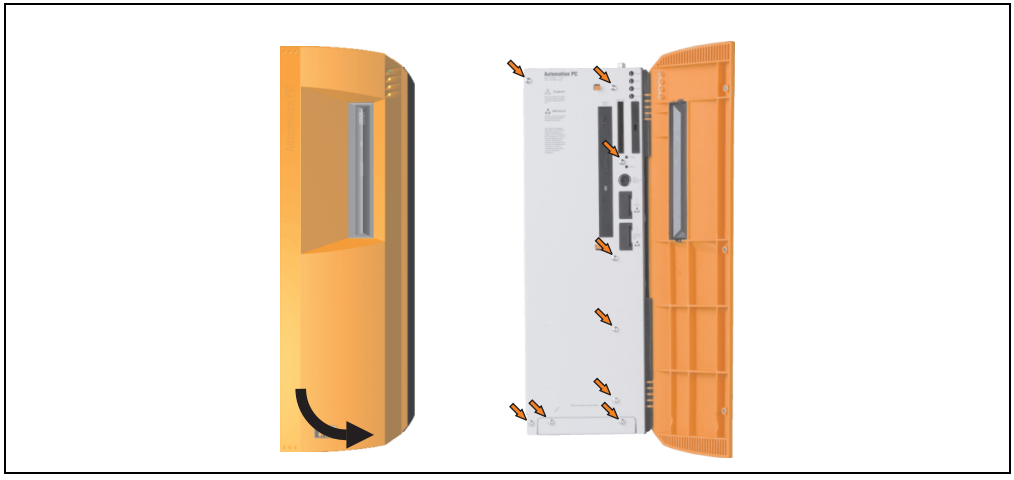


Figure 259: APC620 3PCI slot - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover and the fan kit cover can be removed toward the front.

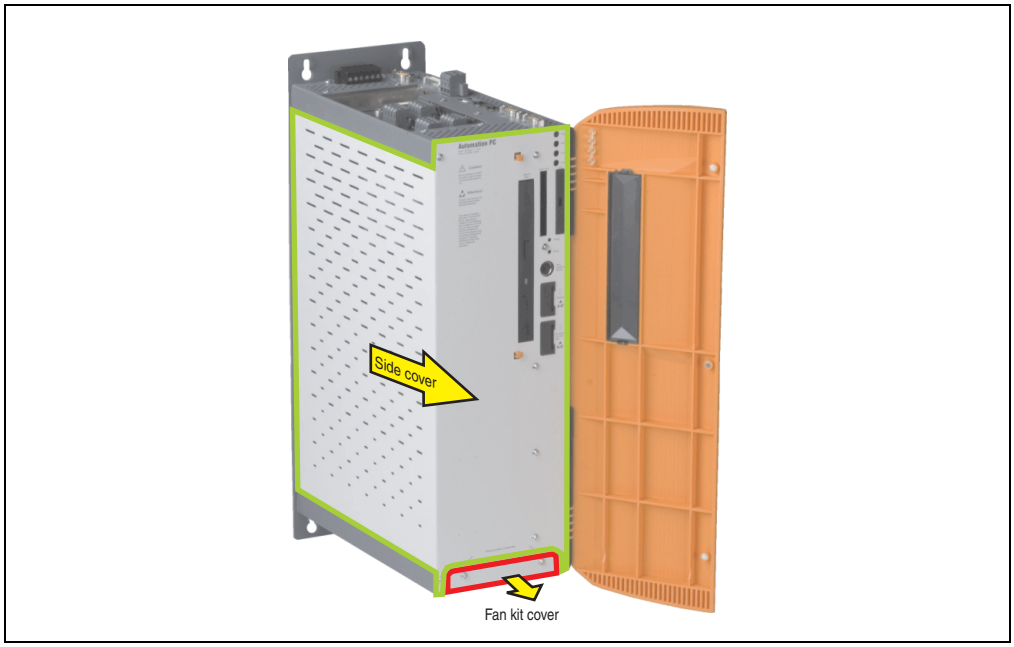


Figure 260: APC620 3PCI slots - Remove side cover and fan kit cover

- There are two arrows on the fans that indicate the direction of air flow and the direction of fan rotation.

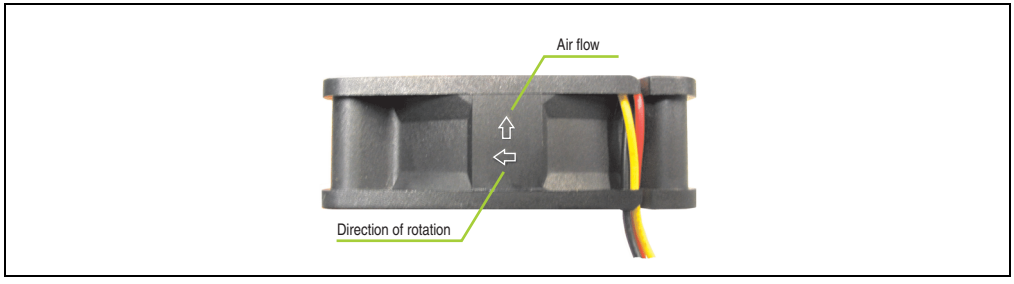


Figure 261: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation

Warning!

The fans must be inserted so that the air flows toward the inside of the housing.

- Align fans over the fastening bolts (see arrows). Feed cables through the openings in the housing (see circles) into the main board of the APC620.

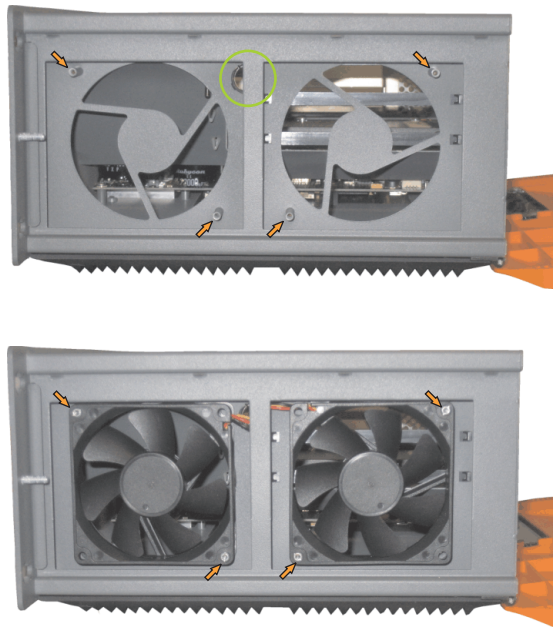


Figure 262: APC620 3PCI slot - Fan installation

- Secure fans with the 4 included Torx (T10) screws.

- The fan connection cable must be connected to the main circuit board at the right position (fan 1 at position 1, fan 2 at position 2).

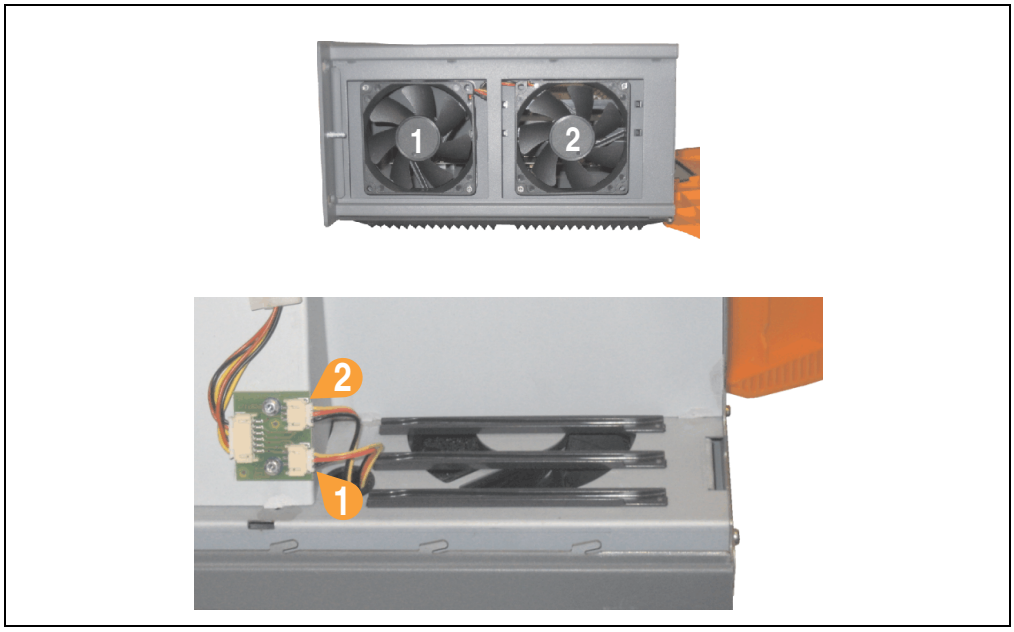


Figure 263: APC620 3PCI slot - Fan cable connection to the main board

- Place the dust filter in the fan kit cover and secure with the filter clasp.

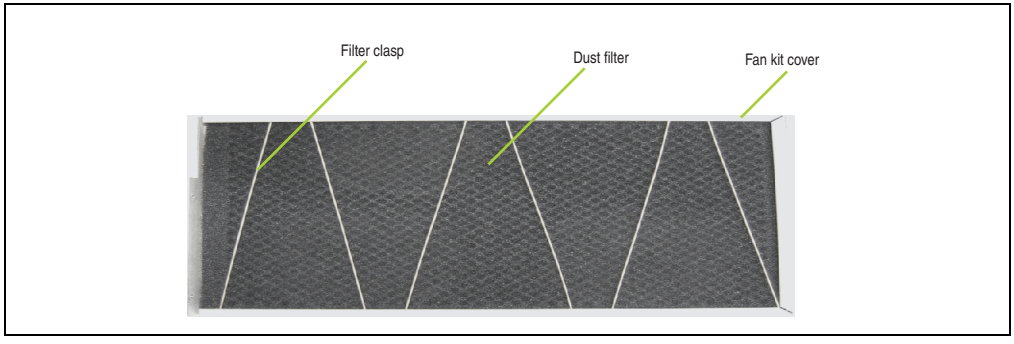


Figure 264: Dust filter in the fan kit cover and filter clasp

- Replace any removed components (filter kit cover, side cover) in the reverse order.

2.4 Procedure for APC620 with 5 PCI slots

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 4 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

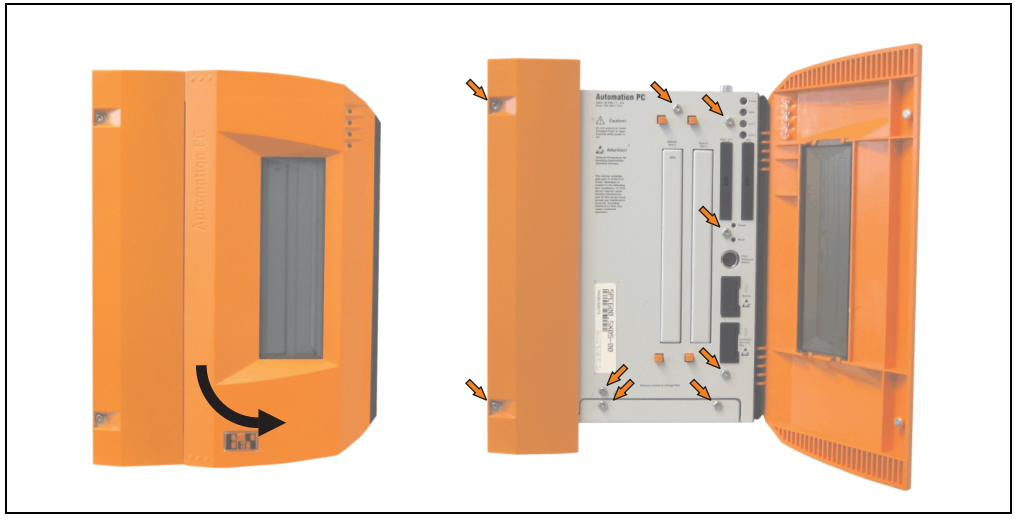


Figure 265: APC620 5PCI slot - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover and the fan kit cover can be removed toward the front.

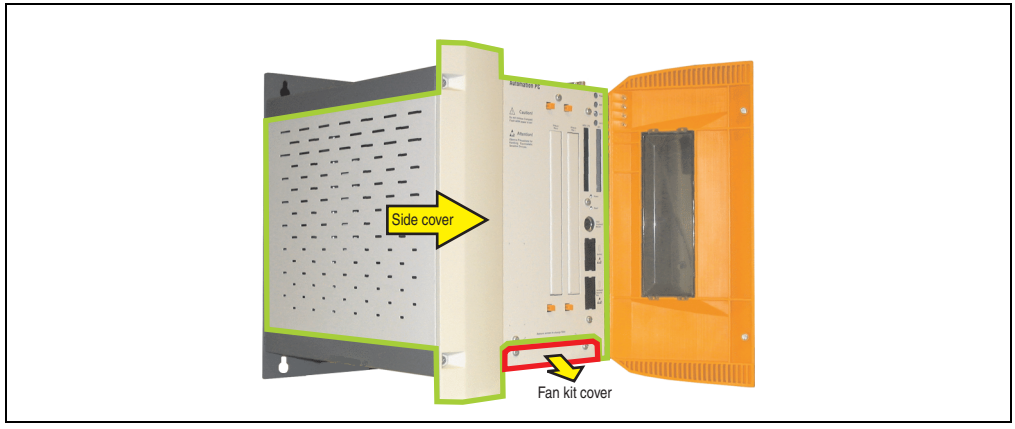


Figure 266: APC620 5PCI slot - Remove side cover and fan kit cover

- If one or more PCI cards are in place, they must be removed before moving on to the next

step.

- If a slide-in drive is in place, it also must be removed before moving on to the next step.
- Attach the two included cable fasteners in the appropriate holes.

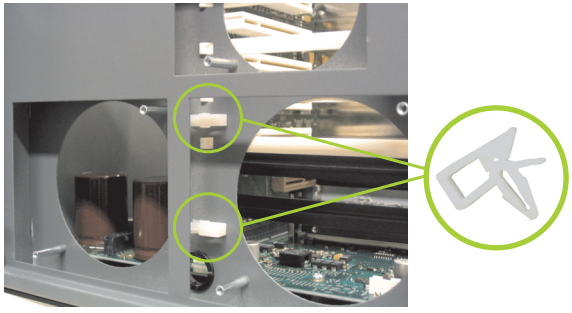


Figure 267: APC620 5PCI attach cable fasteners

- There are two arrows on the fans that indicate the direction of air flow and the direction of fan rotation.

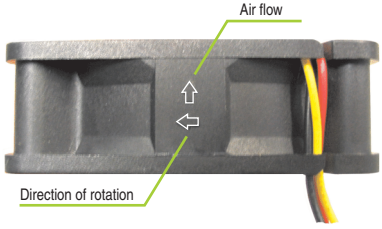


Figure 268: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation

Warning!

The fans must be inserted so that the air flows toward the inside of the housing.

- Align fans over the fastening bolts (see arrows). Feed cables through the openings in the housing (see circles) into the main board of the APC620.
  The fan connector cable for the 40 mm fan should be placed in the cable fastener.

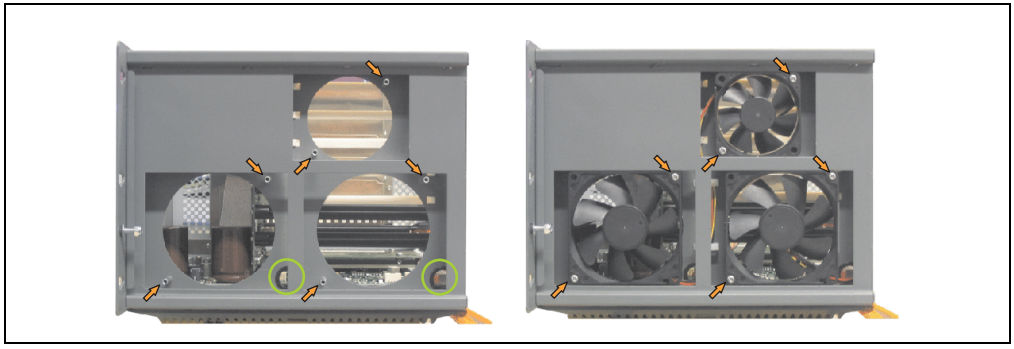


Figure 269: APC620 5PCI slot - Fan installation

- Secure fans with the 6 included Torx (T10) screws.

- The fan connection cable must be connected to the main circuit board at the right position (fan 1 at position 1, fan 2 at position 2, fan 3 at position 3).

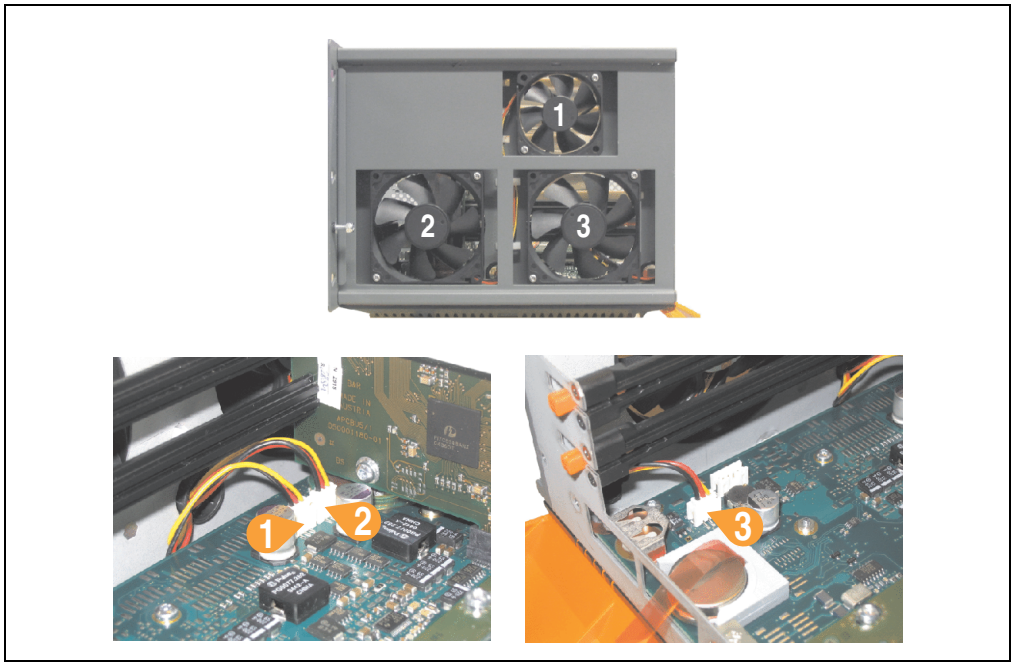


Figure 270: APC620 5PCI slot - Fan cable connection to the main board

- If one or more PCI cards were previously in place, they can now be re-inserted.
- If a slide-in drive was previously in place, it too can now be re-inserted.
- Place the dust filter in the fan kit cover and secure with the filter clasp.

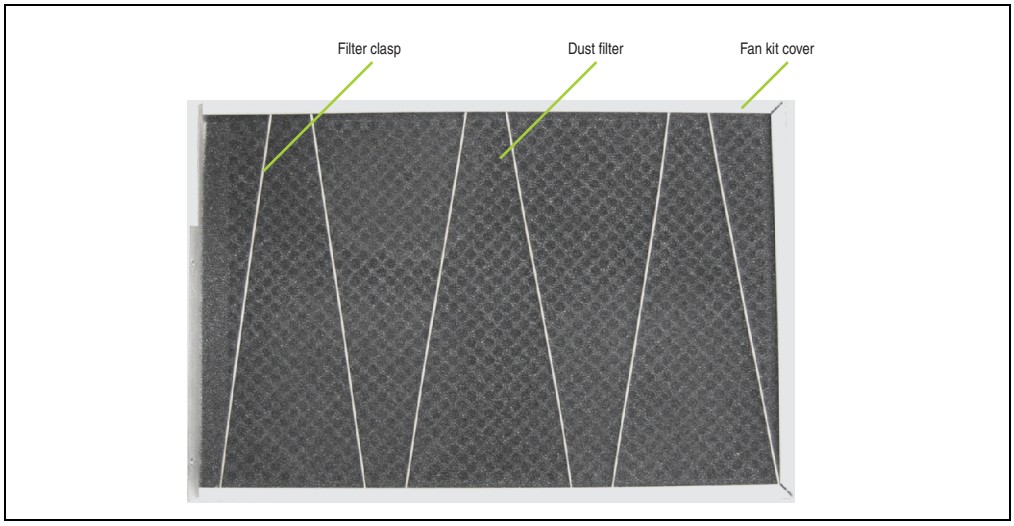


Figure 271: Dust filter in the fan kit cover and filter clasp

- Replace any removed components (filter kit cover, side cover) in the reverse order.

3. Slide-in drive - installation and exchange

Slide-in drives can be installed and exchanged in system units with 2 or 5 PCI slots.

3.1 Installation procedure

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Remove the side cover, see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525.
- Remove the slide-in dummy module.

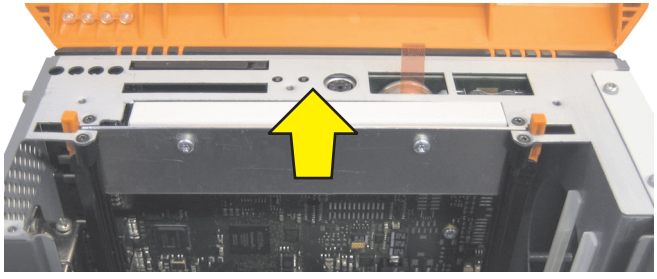


Figure 272: Removing the slide-in dummy module

- Insert the slide-in drive.

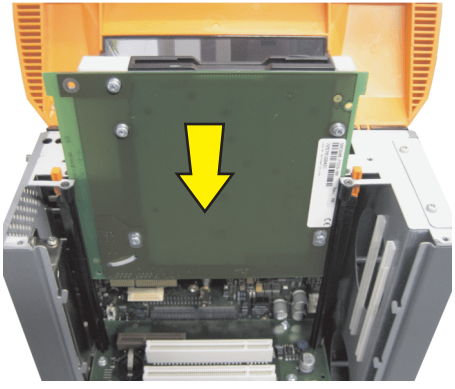


Figure 273: Installing the slide-in drive

- Attach the side cover.

3.2 Exchange procedure

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Remove the side cover, see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525.
- Simultaneously remove both slide-in slot releasing mechanisms outwards The slide-in drive is pushed a few mm upwards for easy removal.

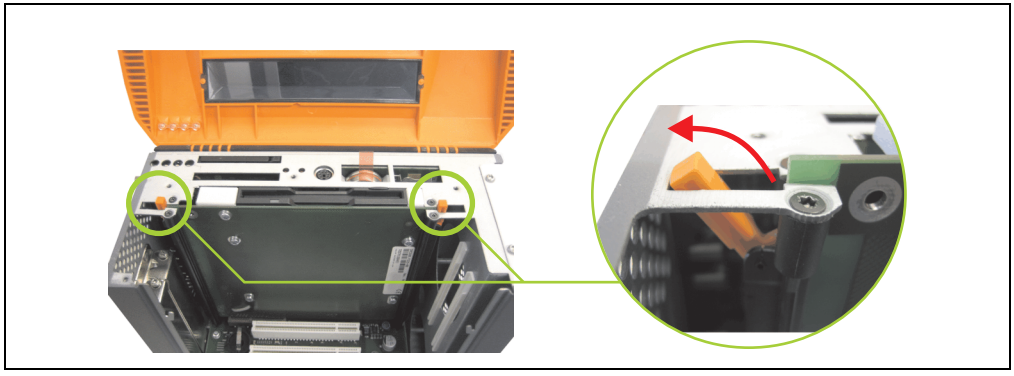


Figure 274: Release the slide-in slot releasing mechanisms

- Removing the slide-in drive.

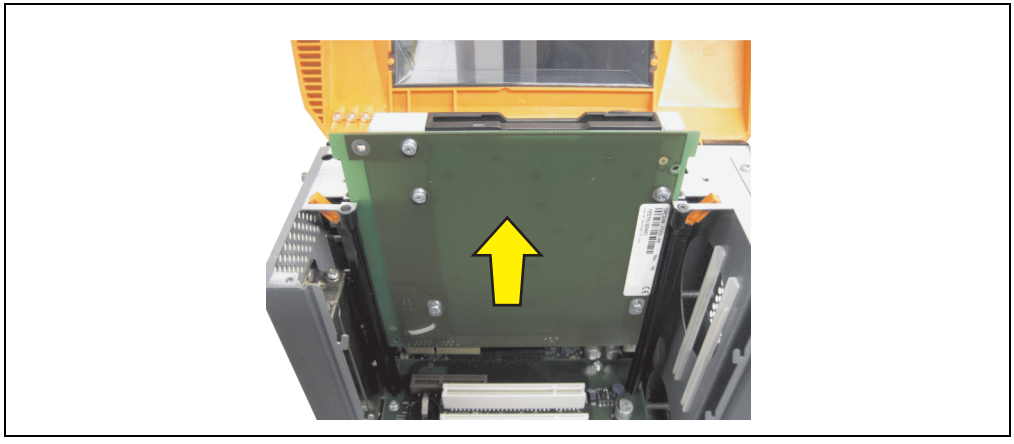


Figure 275: Removing the slide-in drive

- Move the slide-in slot releasing mechanisms to the start position.

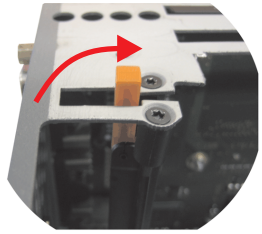


Figure 276: Slide-in slot releasing mechanism start position

- Insert the new slide-in drive or re-attach the side cover.

4. Installation of the UPS module

The module is installed using the materials included in the delivery. Different parts are used depending on the system unit and **installed** (description starting on page 517) or **not installed** (description follows) add-on interface module.

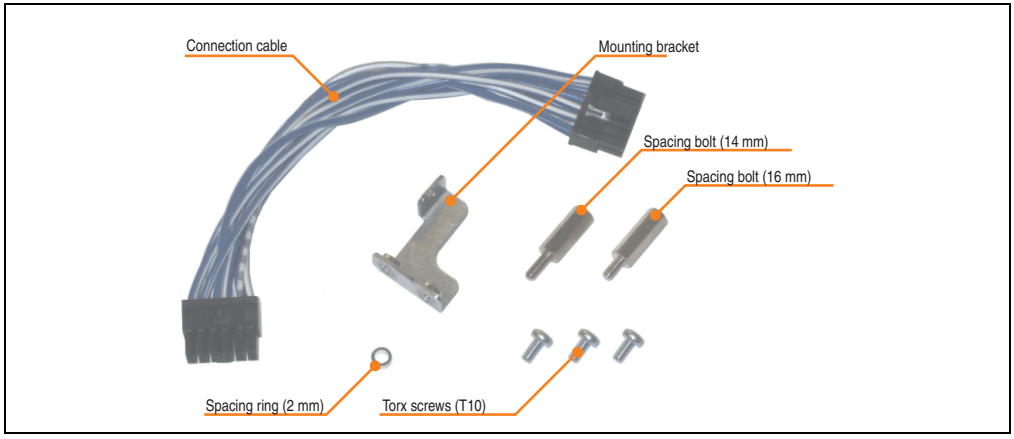


Figure 277: Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00 - Installation materials

4.1 Automation PC 620 without add-on interface module

4.1.1 APC620, 1 PCI slot

- Remove side cover (see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525).
- Remove UPS module cover by removing the 2 marked Torx screws (T10).

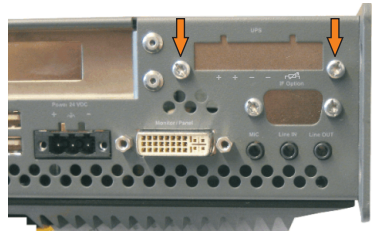


Figure 278: Remove UPS module cover

- Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring (using M5 hex socket screwdriver).

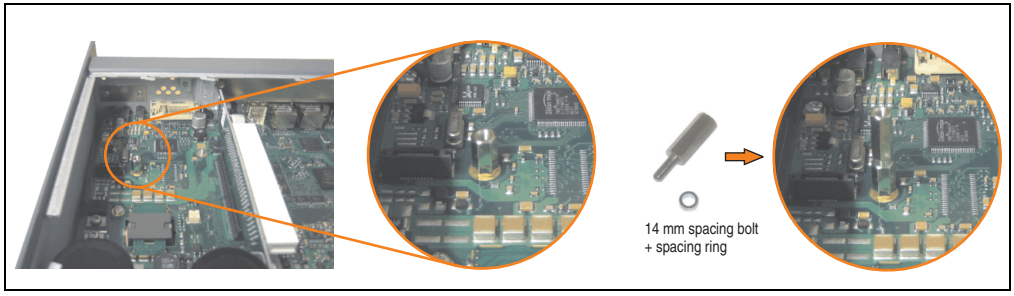


Figure 279: Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring

- Install UPS module with 2 Torx screws (T10) and 1 Torx screw (T10). Use the previously removed Torx screws and one Torx screw from the mounting materials.

Figure 280: Install UPS module

- Plug in connection cable (see marked socket).

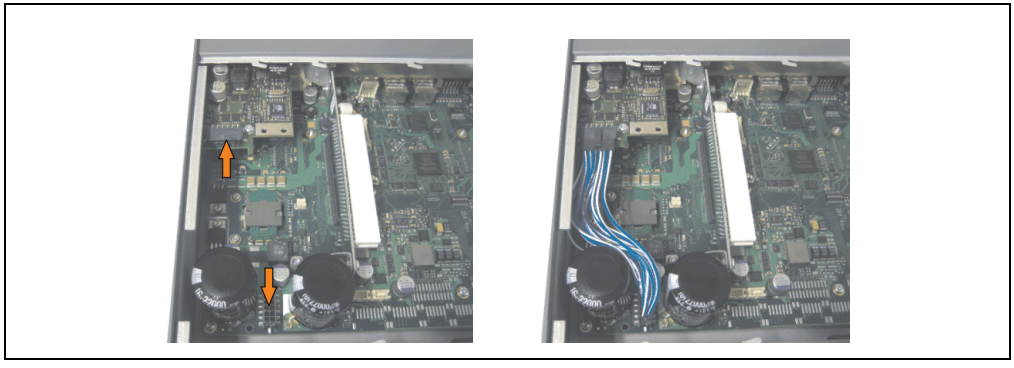


Figure 281: Plug in connection cable

Information:

When connecting the cable, make sure that the connector locking mechanism is engaged.

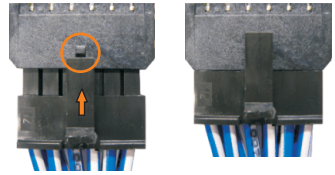


Figure 282: Connector locking mechanism

- Attach the side cover.

4.1.2 APC620, 2 PCI slot

- Remove side cover (see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525).
- Remove UPS module cover by removing the 2 marked Torx screws (T10).

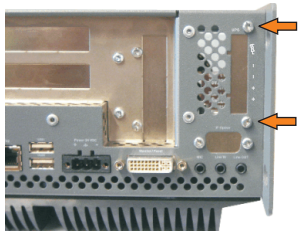


Figure 283: Remove UPS module cover

- Remove cover plate by removing the marked Torx screw (T10).

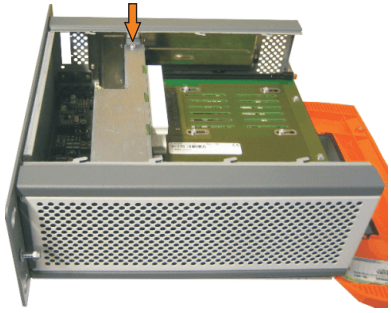


Figure 284: Remove cover plate

- Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring (using M5 hex socket screwdriver).

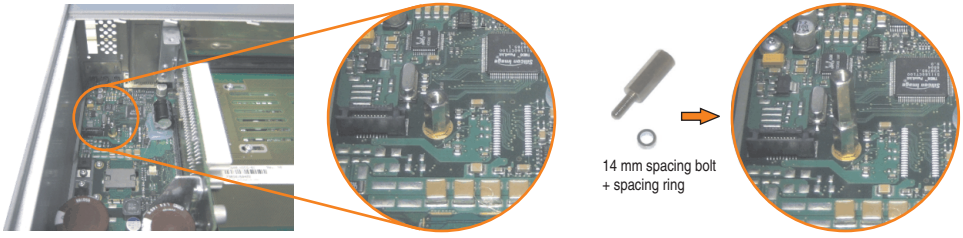


Figure 285: Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring

- Install mounting bracket on UPS module using 2 Torx screws (T10).

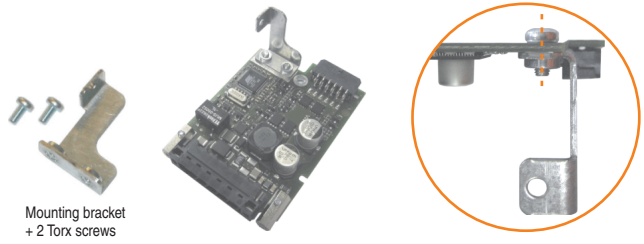


Figure 286: Install mounting bracket

- Install UPS module with 2 Torx screws (T10) and 1 Torx screw (T10). Use the previously removed Torx screws and one Torx screw from the mounting materials.

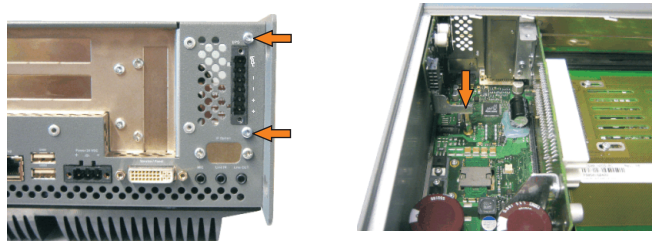


Figure 287: Install UPS module

- Plug in connection cable (see marked socket).

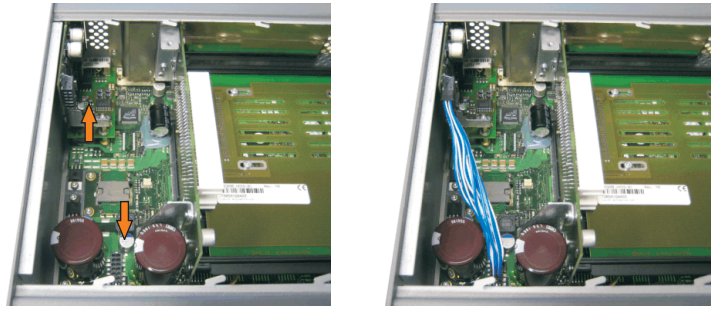


Figure 288: Plug in connection cable

Information:

When connecting the cable, make sure that the connector locking mechanism is engaged.

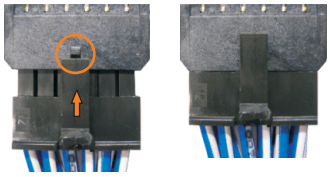


Figure 289: Connector locking mechanism

- Attach cover plate and side cover.

4.1.3 APC620, 5 PCI slot

- Remove side cover (see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525).
- Remove UPS module cover by removing the 2 marked Torx screws (T10).

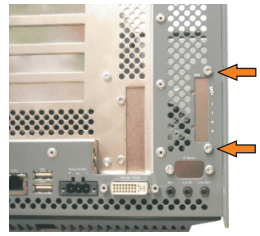


Figure 290: Remove UPS module cover

- Remove cover plate by removing the marked Torx screw (T10).

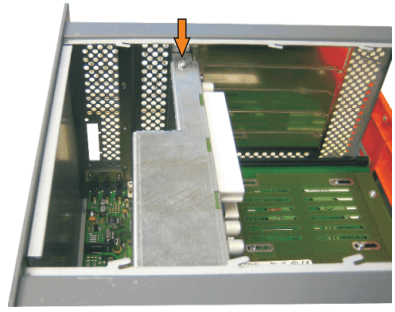


Figure 291: Remove cover plate

- Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring (using M5 hex socket screwdriver).

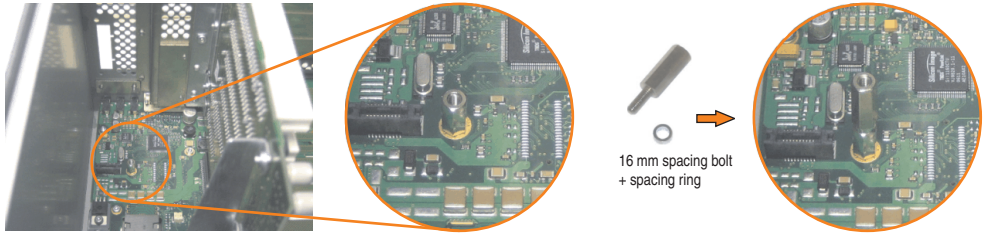


Figure 292: Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring

- Install mounting bracket on UPS module using 2 Torx screws (T10).

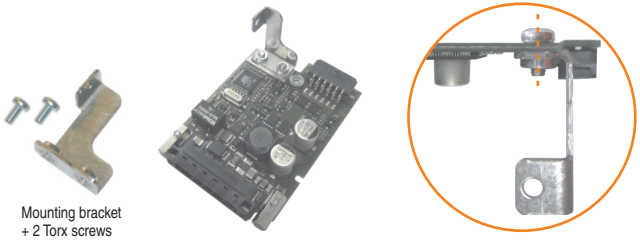


Figure 293: Install mounting bracket

- Install UPS module with 2 Torx screws (T10) and 1 Torx screw (T10). Use the previously removed Torx screws and one Torx screw from the mounting materials.

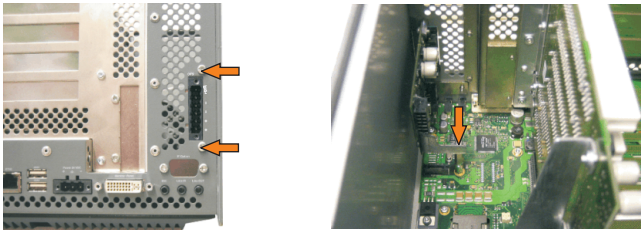


Figure 294: Install UPS module

- Attach connection cable (see marked socket).

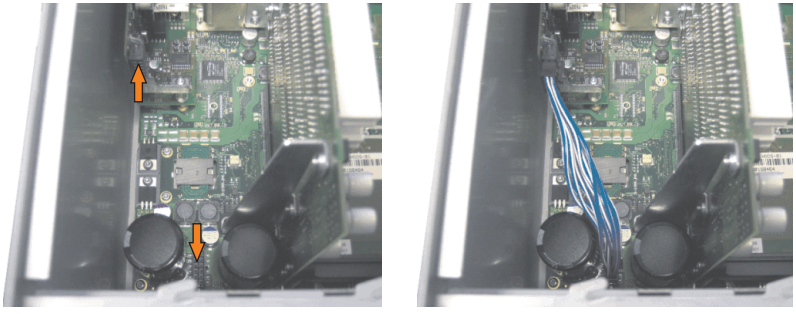


Figure 295: Plug in connection cable

Information:

When connecting the cable, make sure that the connector locking mechanism is engaged.

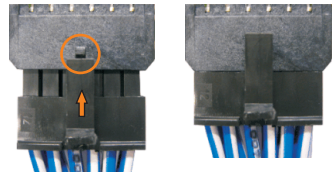


Figure 296: Connector locking mechanism

- Attach cover plate and side cover.

4.2 Automation PC 620 with add-on interface module

4.2.1 APC620, 1 PCI slot

- Remove side cover (see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525).
- Remove UPS module cover by removing the 2 marked Torx screws (T10).

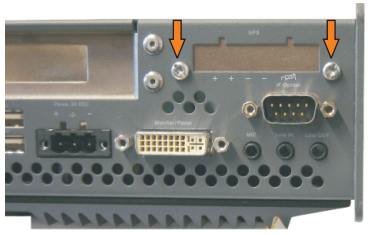


Figure 297: Remove UPS module cover

- Screw in spacing bolt (using M5 hex socket screwdriver).

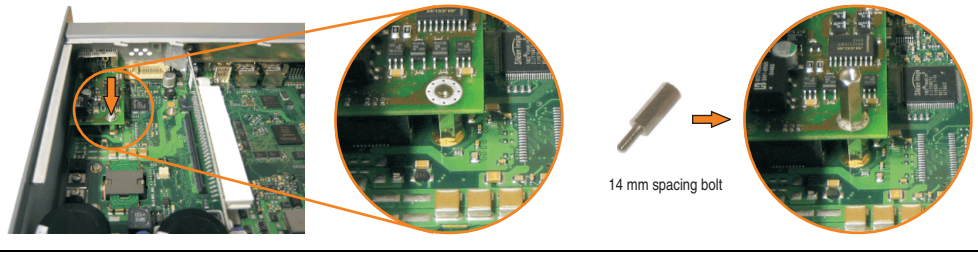


Figure 298: Screw in spacing bolt

- Install UPS module with 2 Torx screws (T10) and 1 Torx screw (T10). Use the previously removed Torx screws and one Torx screw from the mounting materials.

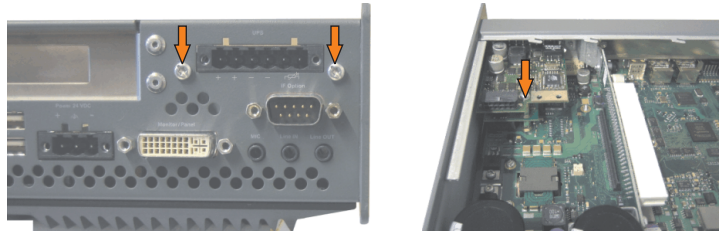


Figure 299: Install UPS module

- Plug in connection cable (see marked socket).

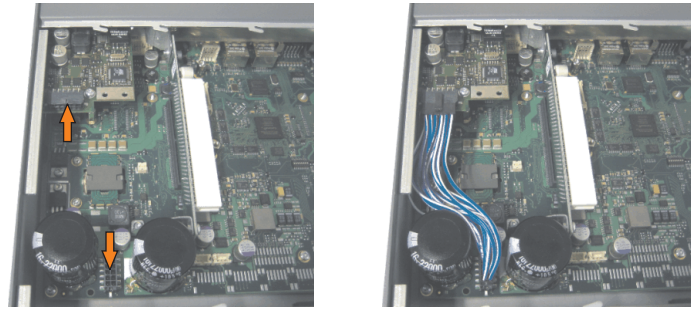


Figure 300: Plug in connection cable

Information:

When connecting the cable, make sure that the connector locking mechanism is engaged.

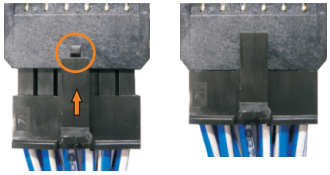


Figure 301: Connector locking mechanism

- Attach the side cover.

4.2.2 APC620, 2 PCI slot

- Remove side cover (see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525).
- Remove UPS module cover by removing the 2 marked Torx screws (T10).

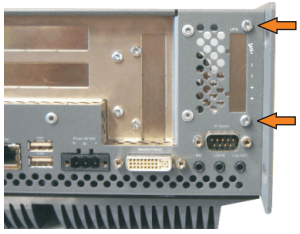


Figure 302: Remove UPS module cover

- Remove cover plate by removing the marked Torx screw (T10).

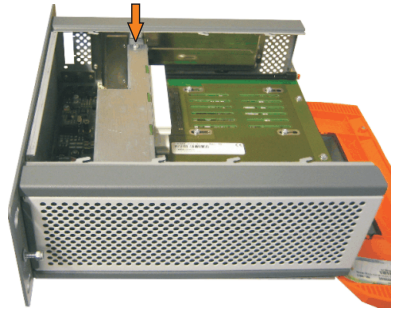


Figure 303: Remove cover plate

- Screw in spacing bolt (using M5 hex socket screwdriver).

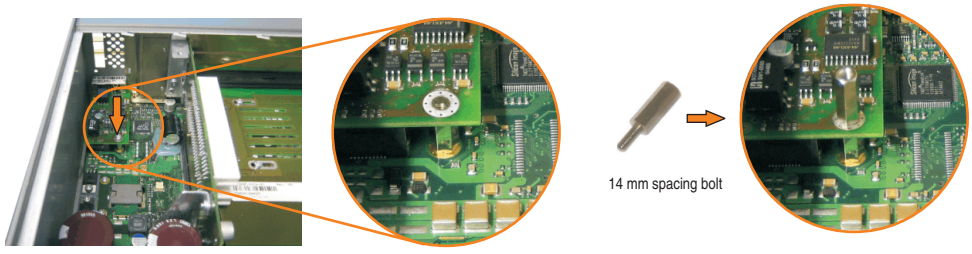


Figure 304: Screw in spacing bolt

- Install mounting bracket on UPS module using 2 Torx screws (T10).

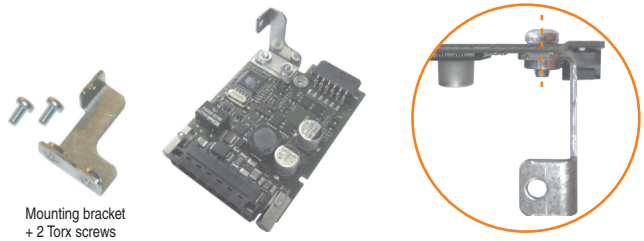


Figure 305: Install mounting bracket

- Install UPS module with 2 Torx screws (T10) and 1 Torx screw (T10). Use the previously removed Torx screws and one Torx screw from the mounting materials.

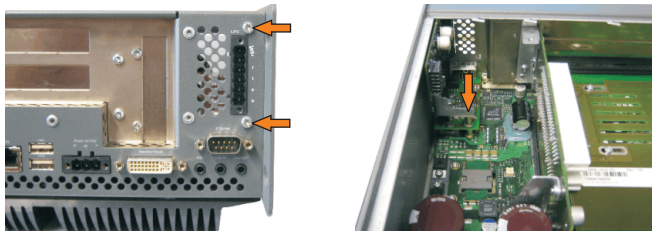


Figure 306: Install UPS module

- Plug in connection cable (see marked socket).

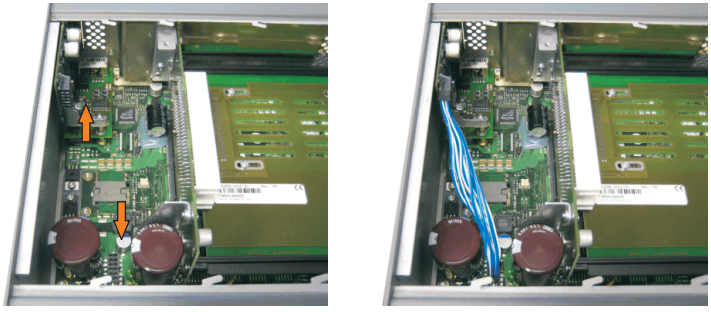


Figure 307: Plug in connection cable

Information:

When connecting the cable, make sure that the connector locking mechanism is engaged.

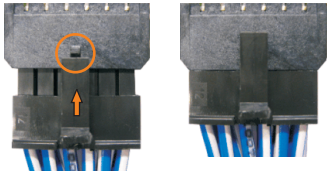


Figure 308: Connector locking mechanism

- Attach cover plate and side cover.

4.2.3 APC620, 5 PCI slot

- Remove side cover (see section 5 "Mounting the side cover" on page 525).
- Remove UPS module cover by removing the 2 marked Torx screws (using T10 screwdriver).

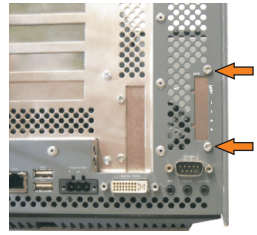


Figure 309: Remove UPS module cover

- Remove cover plate by removing the marked Torx screw (T10).

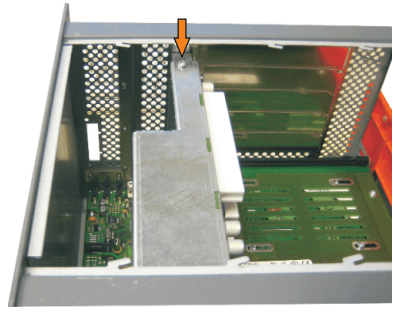


Figure 310: Remove cover plate

- Screw in spacing bolt (using M5 hex socket screwdriver).

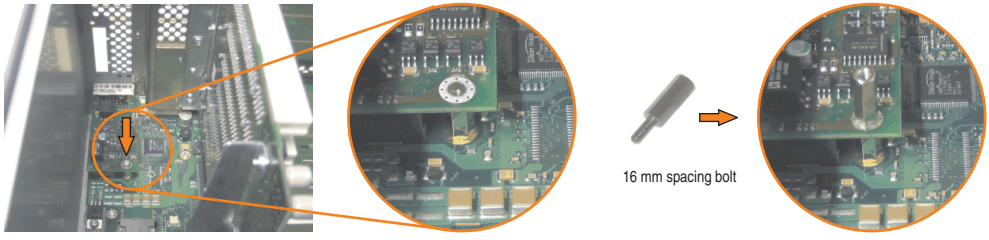


Figure 311: Screw in spacing bolt

- Install mounting bracket on UPS module using 2 Torx screws (T10).

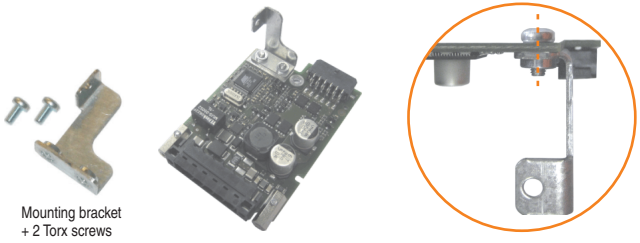


Figure 312: Install mounting bracket

- Install UPS module with 2 Torx screws (T10) and 1 Torx screw (T10). Use the previously removed Torx screws and one Torx screw from the mounting materials.

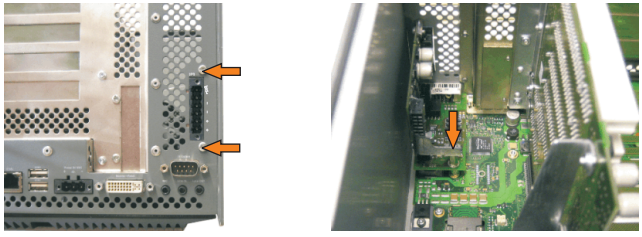


Figure 313: Install UPS module

- Plug in connection cable (see marked socket).

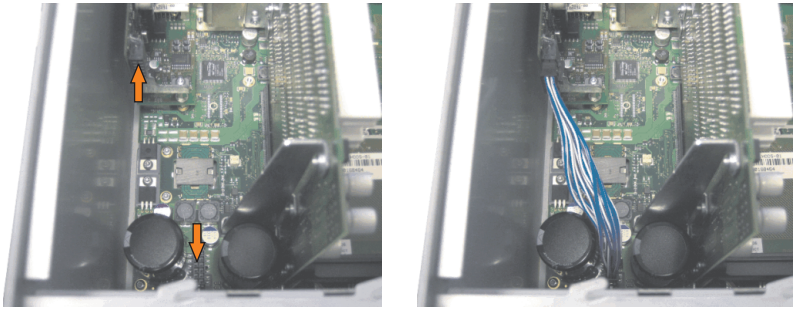


Figure 314: Plug in connection cable

Information:

When connecting the cable, make sure that the connector locking mechanism is engaged.

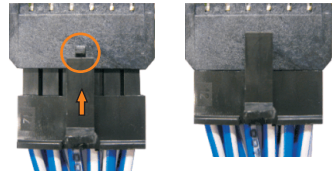


Figure 315: Connector locking mechanism

- Attach cover plate and side cover.

5. Mounting the side cover

The number of Torx (T10) screws varies depending on the system (1, 2, 3 or 5 PCI slots).

5.1 APC620 with 1 PCI slot

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 3 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

Figure 316: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 1 PCI slot

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover can be removed by sliding it toward the front.

5.2 APC620 with 2 PCI slot

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 5 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

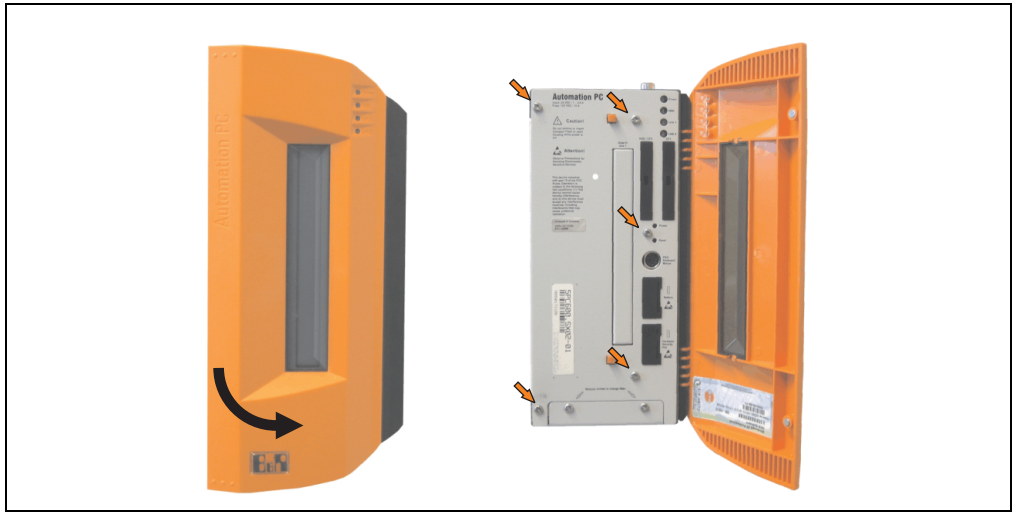


Figure 317: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 2 PCI slot

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover can be removed by sliding it toward the front.

5.3 APC620 with 3 PCI slot

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 7 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

Figure 318: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 3 PCI slot

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover can be removed by sliding it toward the front.

5.4 APC620 with 5 PCI slot

- Disconnect the power supply to the Automation PC 620.
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Open the orange front cover. Behind the cover there are 7 Torx screws (T10) that must be removed.

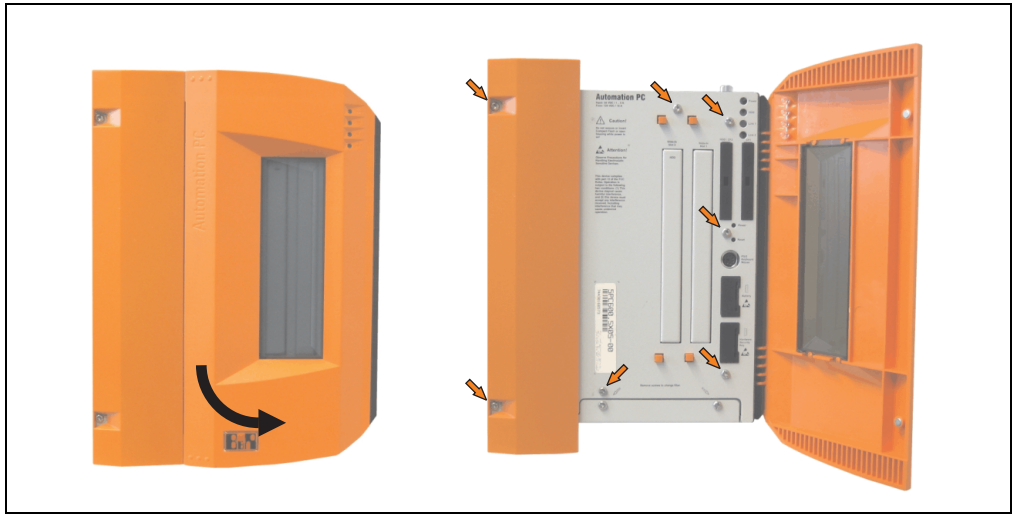


Figure 319: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 5 PCI slot

- After the screws have been removed, the side cover can be removed by sliding it toward the front.

6. Exchanging a PCI SATA RAID hard disk

In the example, the assumption is made that the secondary hard disk (HDD1) is defective. In such a case, the defective hard disk can be replaced by the replacement drive SATA hard disk.

A size 10 Torx screwdriver is needed for exchanging the hard disk.

Exchange procedure

- Remove the power supply to the device (Automation PC 620 / Panel PC 700).
- Touch the housing or ground connection (not the power supply!) in order to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body.
- Remove the side cover.
- Remove the SATA RAID insert.
- Loosen the 4 appropriate mounting screws (M3x5) - see Figure 320 "Screw assignment on the back side of the SATA RAID controller" on page 529.

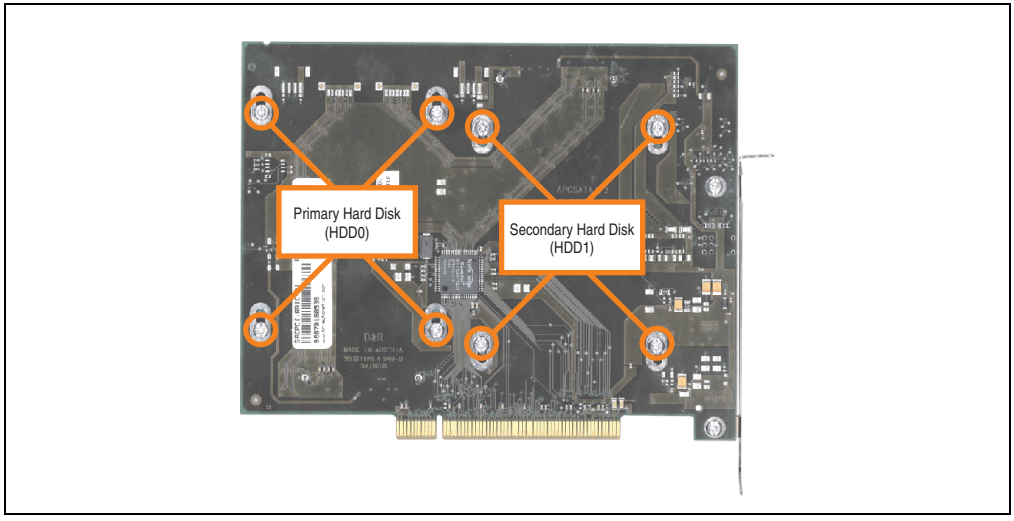


Figure 320: Screw assignment on the back side of the SATA RAID controller

- On the front side, slide the hard disk down and away (image 1).
- Carefully plug the new hard disk into the connector (image 2).

Information:

When doing this, make sure that the hard disk is only touched on the front side, and not on the top side.

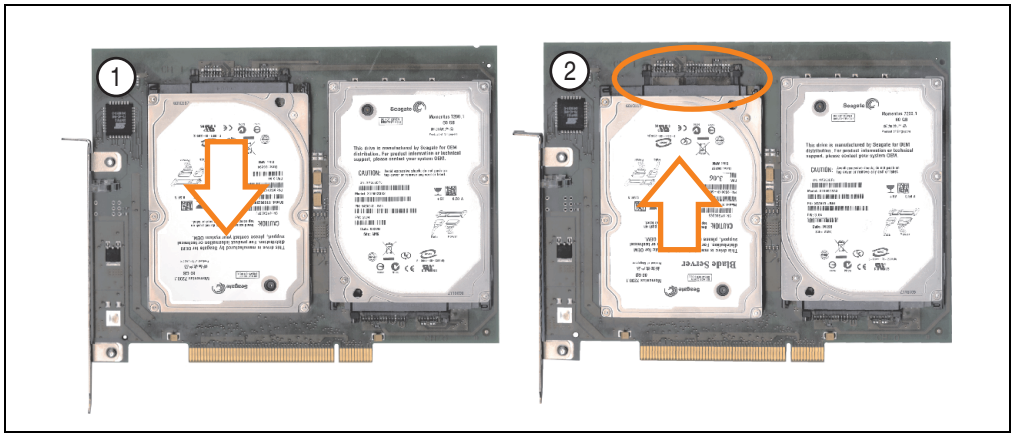


Figure 321: Hard disk exchange

- Re-secure the hard disk using the 4 fastening screws (M3x5) used earlier.
- Reassemble device in the reverse order.
- An error message is output by the RAID BIOS after starting the system "`RAID1 set is in Critical status - press any key to enter Configuration Utility`".

A rebuild must be executed in the SATA RAID BIOS - for more information on this, see the section "Rebuild Mirrored Set" on page 255.

7. Replacing the front cover

Depending on how the front cover is attached, the following points must be taken into consideration when replacing.

7.1 Variation A - Front cover screwed-in

- On the side of the APC620 there are Torx screws (T12) that must be removed (3, 4 or 6 screws, depending on the APC620 design).
  Pull the cover in the direction of the arrows, thereby pulling the hinge bar under the heat sink.

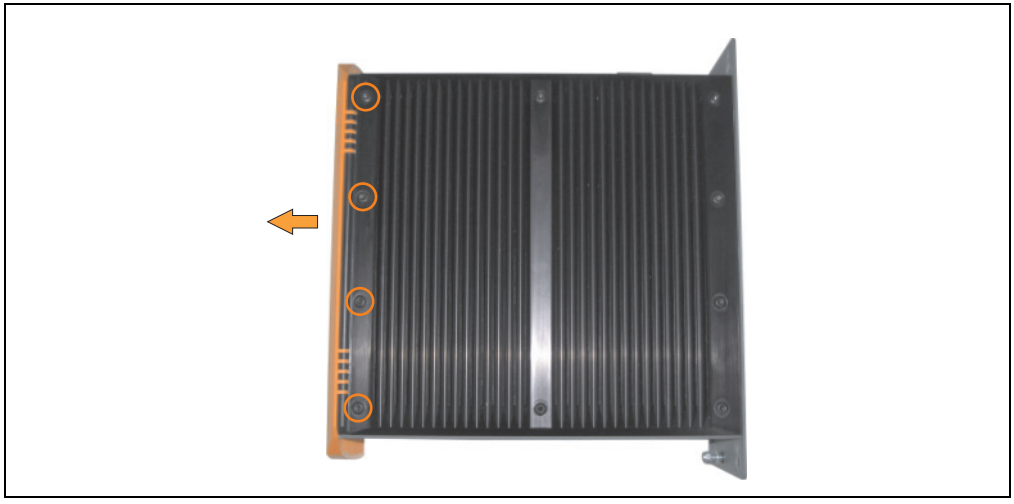


Figure 322: Removing the APC620 front cover

- Slide the new hinge bar under the heat sink and screw it back on using the screws removed earlier.

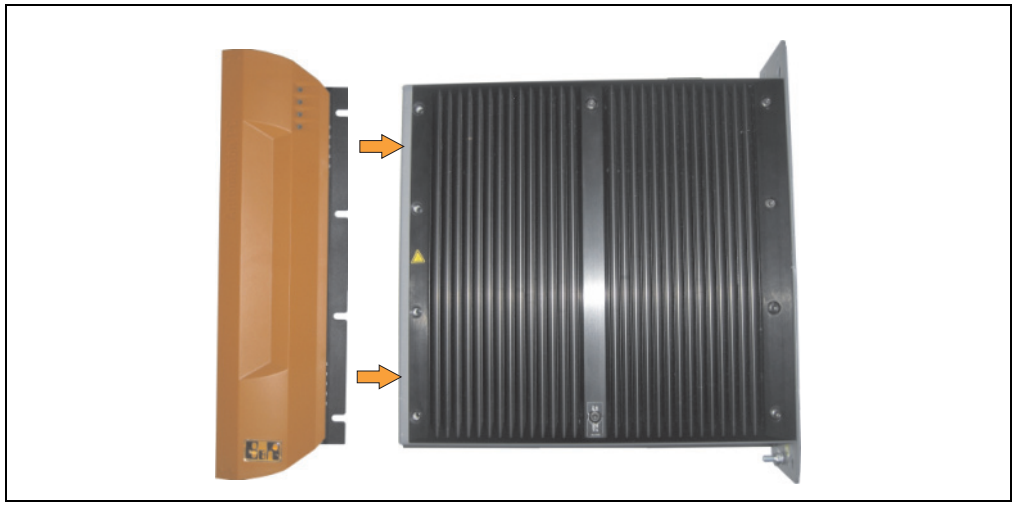


Figure 323: Mounting the APC620 front cover

7.2 Variation B - Front cover attached without screws

- A label on the side of the hinge bar "PULL TO REMOVE" indicates that the front cover is attached without screws.

Figure 324: APC620 front cover label

- Open the front cover approximately 1-2 cm. Now remove the cover by pulling it in the direction of the red arrow.

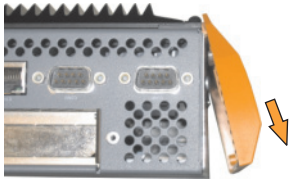


Figure 325: Removing the APC620 front cover

- Attach the new cover to the hinge bar from the side.

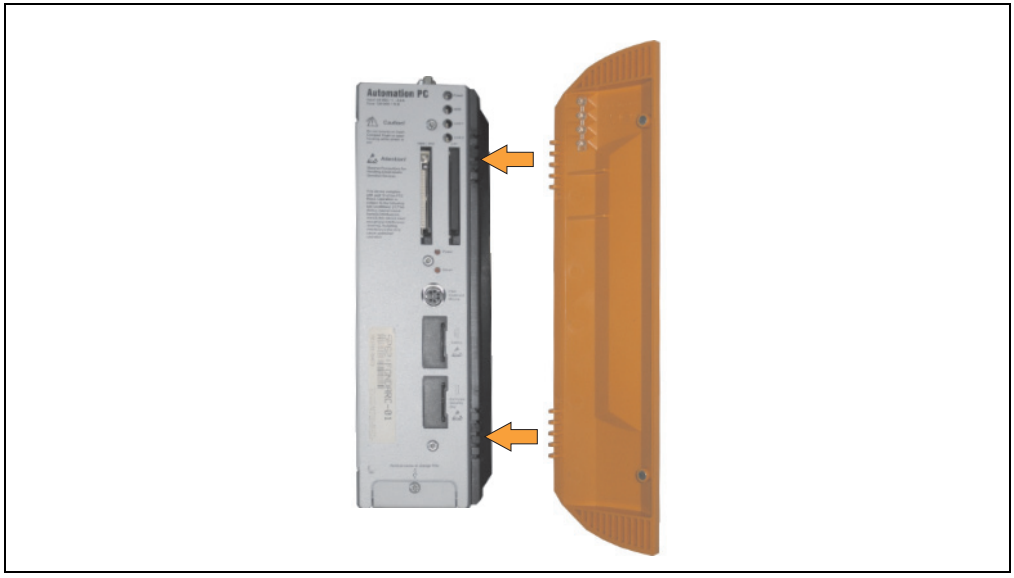


Figure 326: Attaching the front cover

Appendix A

1. Temperature sensor locations

The APC620 has temperature sensors in various places (CPU internal, CPU board, power supply, slide-in drive 1, slide-in drive 2, I/O). The temperatures[1)] can be read in BIOS (menu item "advanced" - baseboard/panel features - baseboard monitor) or in Microsoft Windows XP/Embedded, using B&R Control Center[2)] .

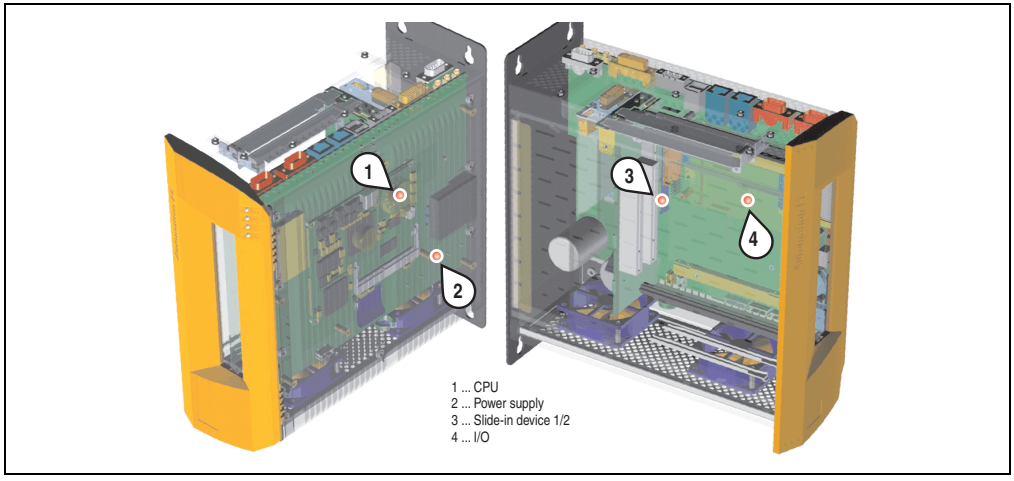


Figure 327: Temperature sensor locations

Position	Measurement point for	Measurement	Max. specified
1	CPU internal	Processor temperature (sensor integrated on the processor).	90°C
2	CPU board	CPU board temperature (sensor integrated on the CPU board).	95°C
3	Power supply	Power supply temperature (sensor on the power supply).	95°C
4	Slide-in drive 1/2	Temperature of a slide-in drive (the sensor is integrated on the slide-in drive).	Drive dependent
5	I/O	Temperature under an add-on drive (sensor on the baseboard).	Max. 80°C Drive dependent

Table 333: Temperature sensor locations

1) The measured temperature is a guideline for the immediate ambient temperature, but can be influenced by neighboring components.

2) The B&R Control Center - ADI driver - can be downloaded for free from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

2. Connection of an external device to the main board

A plug on the main board enables branching of +5 VDC and +12 VDC for the internal supply of e.g. special PCI cards.

The connector is only provided starting with the following system unit revisions:

Model number	Short description	Starting with revision
5PC600.SX01-00	System 1 PCI	B7
5PC600.SX02-00	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot, 1 AP Link slot	B0
5PC600.SX02-01	System 2 PCI, 1 disk drive slot	B9
5PC600.SX05-00	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots, 1 AP Link slot	A0
5PC600.SX05-01	System 5 PCI, 2 disk drive slots	A0

Table 334: Revision information for connecting an external device

The voltage can be accessed using the "APC620 internal supply cable 5CAMSC.0001-00" on page 436. Depending on the system unit revision, the connector is located close to the fan connector. The APC620 side cover and possibly also the slide-in drive and PCI cards must be removed to reach the connector.

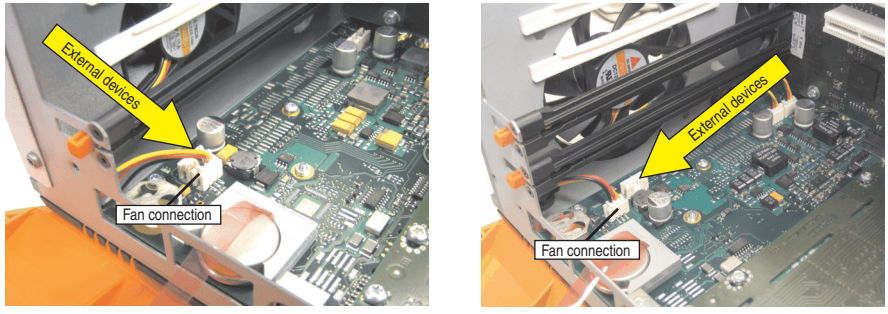


Figure 328: Connector location for external devices

Connector for the external devices			
Pin	**Assignment**	**Power**	4-pin connector, male
1	+12 VDC	Max. 10 W	
2	GND		
3	GND	Max. 5 W	
4	+5 VDC		

Table 335: Pin assignments - Connector on main board

Connections are protected by a 1 A multi-fuse.

3. Maintenance Controller Extended (MTCX)

The MTCX controller (FPGA processor) is located on the main board (part of every system unit) of the APC620 device.

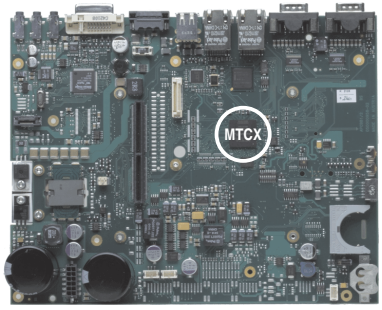


Figure 329: MTCX controller location

The MTCX is responsible for the following monitoring and control functions:

- Power on (power OK sequencing) and power fail logic
- Watchdog handling (NMI and reset handling)
- Temperature monitoring (I/O area, power supply, slide-in drive 1/2)
- Fan control (3 housing fans)
- Key handling / coordination (matrix keyboard on Automation Panel 900 devices configurable using B&R Key Editor, PS/2 keyboard)
- LED handling (matrix keyboard with LEDs on Automation Panel 900 devices configurable using B&R Key Editor)
- Advanced desktop operation (keys, USB forwarding)
- Daisy chain display operation (touch screen, USB forwarding)
- Panel locking mechanism (configurable using B&R Control Center - ADI driver)
- Backlight control for a connected B&R display
- Statistical data recording (power cycles - each power on, power on and fan hours are recorded - every full hour is counted e.g. 50 minutes no increase)
- SDL data transfer (display, matrix keyboard, touch screen, service data, USB)
- Status LEDs (HDD, panel lock, Link 1, Link 2)

The functions of the MTCX can be expanded via Firmware upgrade[1)] . The version can be read in BIOS (menu item "advanced" - baseboard/panel features) or in Microsoft Windows XP/embedded, using B&R Control Center.

1) Can be downloaded from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

3.1 SDL timing

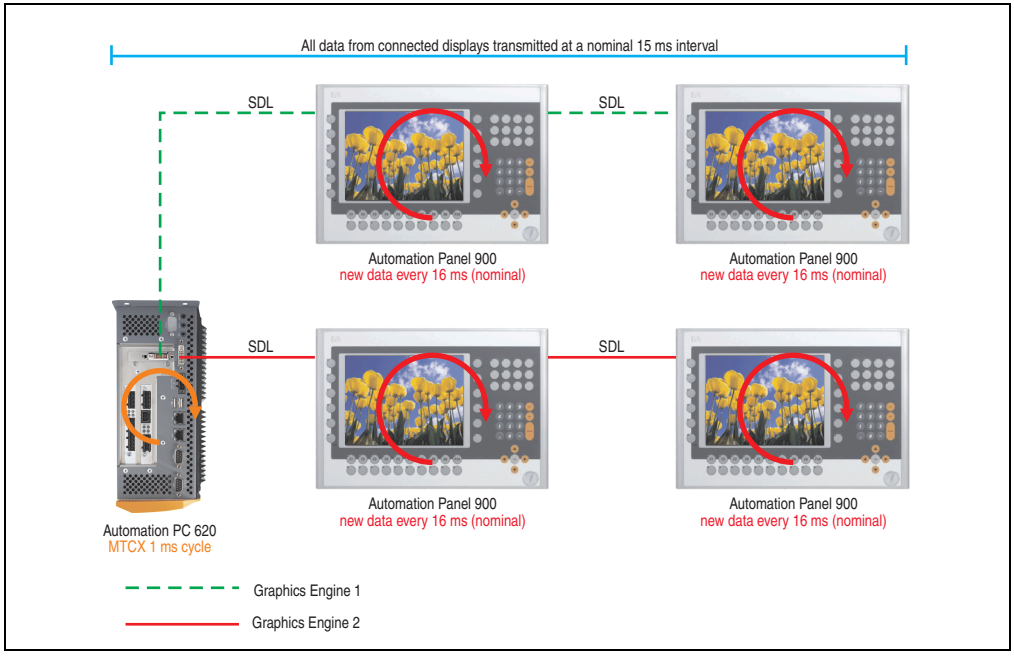


Figure 330: Sample configuration for SDL timing

Basic procedure:

1) On every Automation Panel 900 display unit, the data (button and LED, touch screen, service data) is nominally determined asynchronously every 16 ms, saved and made available.

2) The MTCX in the APC620 samples one display unit after another asynchronously in 1 ms increments. The status is requested within the 15 ms nominal cycle (maximum 15 display units x 1 ms), regardless of the total number of display units connected in the system (Graphics Engine 1 + Graphics Engine 2), and the information is saved in the MTCX's Dual-Ported RAM.

3) An application can access the MTXC data using the programming interface (API) ADI (Automation Device Interface). Reading or writing data does not affect the asynchronous acquisition of data from the connected display units.
Further information about this can be found in the "ADI Development Kit" and the "Automation PC 620 / Panel PC 700 Implementation Guide" (both available on the B&R Homepage).

Caution!

Due to safety requirements regulated by international standards, implementing an E-stop element via SDL (using Matrix) is NOT allowed. Instead, such an element must be wired according to the safety requirements.

Information:

Display data will not be updated and cannot be read by the MTCX while a display unit is in upgrade mode (e.g. SDL firmware upgrade).

The nominal time specifications are not guaranteed maximum lengths of time, but may be increased due to e.g. transfer disturbances and external influences.

Schematic diagram

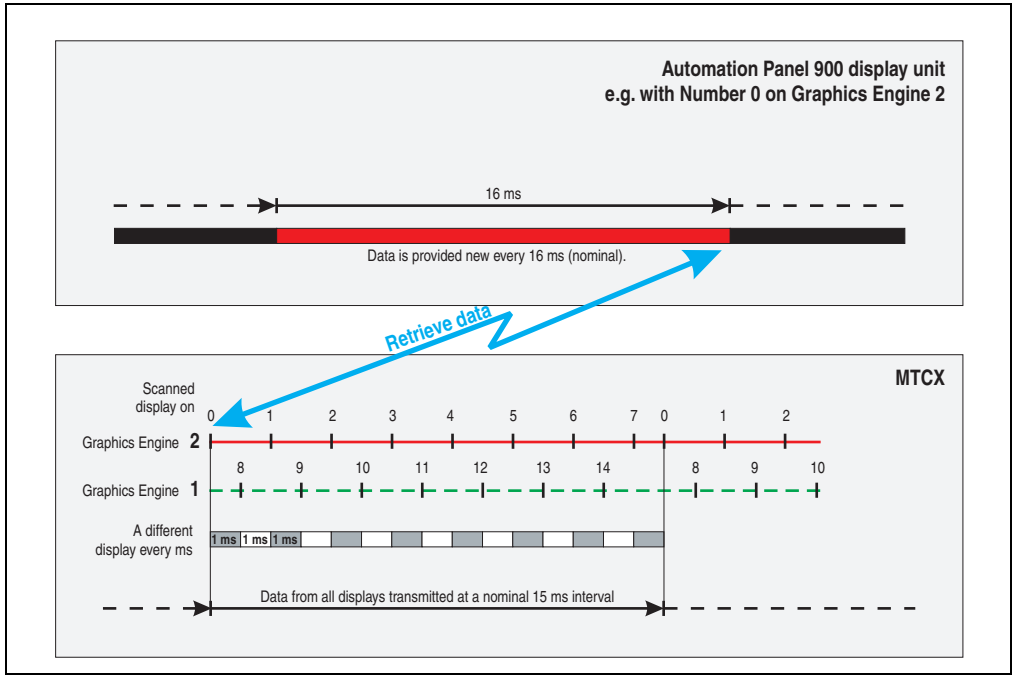


Figure 331: SDL timing - Example for Automation Panel 900 with the number 0

3.2 Temperature monitoring - Fan control

The MTCX constantly monitors the temperature using temperature sensors (see section 1 "Temperature sensor locations" on page 535), which directly determine how the fan is controlled. The RPM depends on the temperature measured. The limit values depend on the MTCX firmware version being used.

Sensor range	Start-up temperature	Max fan speed at:
CPU	+39°C	+55°C
Power supply	+39°C	+55°C
Slide-in drive 1/2	+39°C	+55°C
I/O	+39°C	+55°C

Table 336: Temperature limits for fan control

The fans stop again when the temperature drops below +37°C.

4. B&R Key Editor information

On display units, it is often necessary to adjust the function keys and LEDs for the application software being used. With the B&R Key Editor, it is possible to quickly and easily set up the application individually.

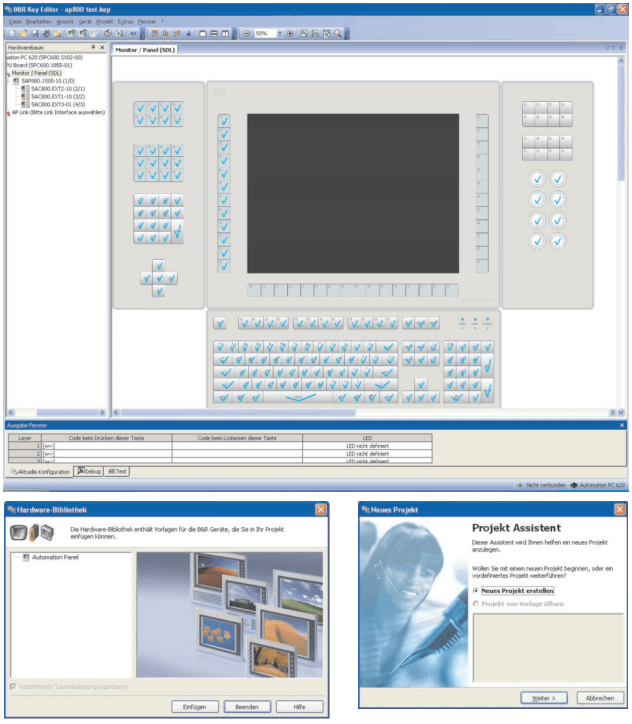


Figure 332: B&R Key Editor screenshots (Version 2.70)

Features:

- Configuration of normal keys like on a keyboard (A, B, C, etc.)
- Keyboard shortcuts (CTRL+C, SHIFT+DEL, etc.) on one key
- Special key functions (change brightness, etc.)
- Assign functions to LEDs (HDD access, power, etc.)
- 4 assignments per key possible (using layer function)
- Configuration of panel locking time when multiple Automation Panel 900 devices are connected to Automation PC 620, Automation PC 810 and Panel PC 700 devices.

Supports following systems (Version 2.70):

- Automation PC 800
- Automation PC 620 (ETX, XTX, Embedded)
- Panel PC 300
- Panel PC 700 (ETX, XTX)
- Power Panel 100, 200
- Power Panel 300/400
- Mobile Panel 40/50
- Mobile Panel 100, 200
- Provit 2000
- Provit 5000

A detailed guide for configuring keys and LEDs can be found in the B&R Key Editor's online help.

The B&R Key Editor can be downloaded for free from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**). Additionally, it can also be found on the B&R HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD (model number 5SWHMI.0000-00).

5. B&R Automation Device Interface (ADI) development kit

The ADI development kit is used to access the functions of the ADI driver. The programming languages C (with import libraries for Microsoft Visual C++ 6.0 and Microsoft eMbedded Visual C++ 4.0) and Visual Basic (for Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0) are supported.

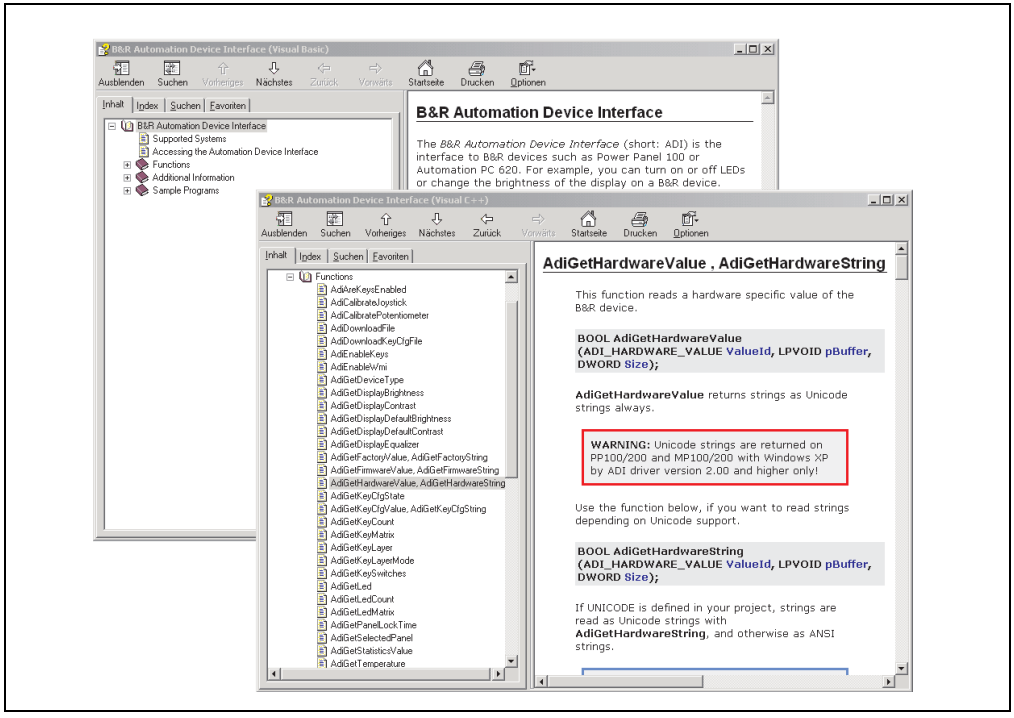


Figure 333: ADI development kit screenshots (Version 2.20)

Features:

- One Microsoft Visual Basic module with declarations for the ADI functions.
- Header files and import libraries for Microsoft Visual C++ 6.0 and Microsoft eMbedded Visual C++ 4.0.
- Help files for Visual Basic and Visual C++.
- Sample projects for Visual Basic and Visual C++.
- ADI DLL (for testing the applications, if no ADI drive is installed).

Supports following systems (Version 2.20 and higher):

- Automation PC 620
- Automation PC 800
- Mobile Panel 40/50
- Mobile Panel 100/200
- Panel PC 300
- Panel PC 700
- Panel PC 800
- Power Panel 100/200
- Power Panel 300/400

The ADI driver suitable for the device must be installed to the stated product series (for Windows XP, Windows XP+SP2). The ADI driver is already included in the Windows XP Embedded and Windows CE operating systems offered by B&R and does not have to be additionally installed.

The programming languages C (with import libraries for Microsoft Visual C++ 6.0 and Microsoft eMbedded Visual C++ 4.0) and Visual Basic (for Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0) are supported. A detailed description of using the ADI functions can be found in the integrated online help.

The B&R Automation Device Interface (ADI) development kit can be downloaded for free from the download area on the B&R homepage (**www.br-automation.com**).

6. Glossary

A

ACPI

Abbreviation for "**A**dvanced **C**onfiguration and **P**ower **I**nterface". Configuration interface that enables the operating system to control the power supply for each device connected to the PC. With ACPI, the computer's BIOS is only responsible for the details of communication with the hardware.

APC

Abbreviation for "**A**utomation **PC**".

API

Abbreviation for "**A**pplication **P**rogram **I**nterface" The interface, which allows applications to communicate with other applications or with the operating system.

Automation Runtime

A uniform runtime system for all B&R automation components.

B

Baud rate

Measurement unit for data transfer speed. It indicates the number of states for a transferred signal per second and is measured using the baud unit of measurement. 1 baud = 1 bit/sec or 1 bps.

BIOS

An abbreviation for "**B**asic **I**nput/**O**utput **S**ystem". Core software for computer systems with essential routines for controlling input and output processes on hardware components, for performing tests after system start, and for loading the operating system. Although BIOS is used to configure a system's performance, the user does not usually come into contact with it.

Bit

Binary digit > binary position, binary character, smallest discrete unit of information. A bit can have the value 0 or 1.

Bit rate

The number of bits that can be transferred within a specified time unit. 1 bit/sec = 1 baud.

Bootstrap loader

A program that automatically runs when the computer is switched on or restarted. After some basic hardware tests have been carried out, the bootstrap loader starts a larger loader and hands over control to it, which in turn boots the operating system. The bootstrap loader is typically found in ROM on the computer.

Byte

Data format [1 byte = 8 bits] and a unit for characterizing information amounts and memory capacity. The following units are the commonly used units of progression: KB, MB, GB.

B&R Automation Runtime

Windows-based program for creating installation disks to install B&R Automation Runtime™ on the target system.

C

Cache

Background memory, also known as non-addressable memory or fast buffer memory. It is used to relieve the fast main memory of a computer. For example, data that should be output to slower components by the working memory (e.g. disk storage, printers) is stored temporarily in cache memory and output from there at an appropriate speed for the target devices.

CAN

An abbreviation for "**C**ontroller **A**rea **N**etwork" (serial bus system). Structure according to ISO 11898. Bus medium: twisted pair. Good transfer properties in short distances less than 40 m with a 1 MBit/sec data transfer rate. Maximum number of stations: unlimited in theory, up to 64 with real-time capability in practice, i.e. defined maximum delay times for messages with high priority. High reliability using error detection, error handling, troubleshooting. Hamming distance.

CD-ROM

Abbreviation for "**C**ompact **D**isc **R**ead-**O**nly **M**emory". A removable data medium with a capacity of ~700 MB. CD-ROMs are optically scanned.

CE mark

A CE mark for a product. It consists of the letters "CE" and indicates conformity to all EU guidelines for the labeled product. It indicates that the individual or corporate body who has performed or attached the label assures that the product conforms to all EU guidelines for complete harmonization. It also indicates that all mandatory conformity evaluation procedures have taken place.

CMOS

"CMOS" is a battery powered memory area where fundamental parameters of an IBM (or compatible) personal computer are stored. Information such as the type of hard drive, size of the working memory and the current date and time are required when booting the computer. As the name suggests, the memory is based on CMOS technology standards.

COM

A device name used to access serial ports in MS-DOS. The first serial port can be accessed under COM1, the second under COM2, etc. A modem, mouse, or serial printer is typically connected to a serial port.

COM1

Device name for the first serial port in a PC system. The input/output area for COM1 is usually found at address 03F8H. Generally, the COM1 port is assigned to IRQ 4. In many systems, an RS232 serial mouse is connected to COM1.

COM2

Device name for the second serial port in a PC system. The input/output area for COM2 is usually found at address 02F8H. Generally, the COM2 port is assigned to IRQ 3. In many systems, a modem is connected to COM2.

COM3

Device name for a serial port in a PC system. The input/output area for COM3 is usually found at address 03E8H. Generally, the COM3 port is assigned to IRQ 4. In many systems, COM3 is used as an alternative for COM1 or COM2 if peripheral devices are already connected to COM1 and COM2.

CompactFlash®

CompactFlash memory cards [CF cards] are exchangeable nonvolatile mass memory systems with very small dimensions [43 x 36 x 3.3 mm, approximately half the size of a credit card]. In addition to the flash memory chips, the controller is also present on the cards. CF cards provide complete PC card / ATA functionality and compatibility. A 50-pin CF card can be simply inserted in a passive 68-pin type II adapter card. It conforms to all electrical and mechanical PC card interface specifications. CF cards were launched by SanDisk back in 1994. Currently, memory capacities reach up to 8 GB per unit. Since 1995, CompactFlash Association [CFA] has been looking after standardization and the worldwide distribution of CF technology

CPU

An abbreviation for "**C**entral **P**rocessing **U**nit". Interprets and executes commands. It is also known as a "microprocessor" or "processor" for short. A processor is able to receive, decode and execute commands, as well as transfer information to and from other resources via the computer bus.

CTS

An abbreviation for "**C**lear **T**o **S**end". A signal used when transferring serial data from modem to computer, indicating its readiness to send the data. CTS is a hardware signal which is transferred via line number 5 in compliance with the RS-232-C standard.

D

DCD

An abbreviation for " **D**ata **C**arrier **D**etected". A signal used in serial communication that is sent by the modem to the computer it is connected to, indicating that it is ready for transfer.

Dial-up

Data is transferred over the telephone network using a modem or an ISDN adapter.

DIMM

"Double In-line Memory Module" consisting of one or more RAM chips on a small circuit board that is connected with the motherboard of a computer.

DMA

Direct **M**emory **A**ccess >. Accelerated direct access to a computer's RAM by bypassing the CPU.

DRAM

An abbreviation for "**D**ynamic **R**andom **A**ccess **M**emory". Dynamic RAM consists of an integrated semiconductor circuit that stores information based on the capacitor principle. Capacitors lose their charge in a relatively short time. Therefore, dynamic RAM circuit boards must contain a logic that allows continual recharging of RAM chips. Since the processor cannot access dynamic RAM while it is being recharged, one or more waiting states can occur when reading or writing data. Although it is slower, dynamic RAM is used more often than static RAM since the simple design of the circuits means that it can store four times more data than static RAM.

DSR

An abbreviation for "**D**ata **S**et **R**eady". A signal used in serial data transfer that is sent by the modem to the computer it is connected to, indicating its readiness for processing. DSR is a hardware signal which is sent via line number 6 in compliance with the RS-232-C standard.

DTR

An abbreviation for "**D**ata **T**erminal **R**eady". A signal used in serial data transfer that is sent by the computer to the modem it is connected to, indicating the computer's readiness to accept incoming signals.

DVD

An abbreviation for "**D**igital **V**ersatile **D**isc". The next generation of optical data carrier technology. Using this technology it is possible to encode video, audio and computer data on CD. DVDs can store a higher volume of data than conventional CDs. Standard DVDs, which have a single layer, can hold 4.7 GB. Dual-layer DVDs can hold 8.5 GB. Double-sided DVDs can therefore hold up to 17 GB. A special drive is needed for DVDs. Conventional CDs can also be played on DVD drives.

DVI

Abbreviation for »**D**igital **V**isual **I**nterface« An interface for the digital transfer of video data.

DVI-A

Analog only

DVI-D

Digital only

DVI-I

Integrated, i.e. analog and digital

E

EDID data

Abbreviation for "**E**xtended **D**isplay **I**dentification **D**ata". EDID data contains the characteristics of monitors / TFT displays transferred as 128 KB data blocks to the graphics card via the Display Data Channel (DDC). This EDID data can be used to set the graphics card to the monitor properties.

EIDE

An abbreviation for "**E**nhanced **I**ntegrated **D**rive **E**lectronics". An expansion of the IDE standard. Enhanced IDE is considered the standard for hardware interfaces. This interface is designed for drives with an integrated drive controller.

EMC

"**E**lectro**m**agnetic **C**ompatibility". The ability of a device or a system to function satisfactorily in its electromagnetic environment without introducing intolerable electromagnetic disturbances to anything in that environment [IEV 161-01-07].

EPROM

Erasable **PROM** >(completely with ultraviolet light).

Ethernet

An IEEE 802.3 standard for networks. Ethernet uses bus or star topology and controls the traffic on communication lines using the access procedure CSMA/CD (Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection). Network nodes are connected using coaxial cables, fiber optic cables or twisted pair cabling. Data transfer on an Ethernet network takes place in frames of variable lengths that consist of supply and controller information as well as 1500 bytes of data. The Ethernet standard provides base band transfers at 10 megabit and 100 megabit per second.

ETX

Abbreviation for »**E**mbedded **T**echnology e**X**tended« This established standard offers complete PC functionality on a very compact form factor of just 114 mm x 100 mm (4.5" x 4"). The flexibility offered by ETX® in the development of system specific main boards allows easy requirement fulfillment in a number of different applications.

F

FDD

Abbreviation for "**F**loppy **D**isk **D**rive". Reading device for removable magnetic memory from the early days of PC technology. Due to their sensitivity and moving components, FDDs have been almost completely replaced by CompactFlash memory in modern automation solutions.

Fiber optics

Fiber optic cable

FIFO

An abbreviation for "**F**irst **I**n **F**irst **O**ut". A queuing organization method whereby elements are removed in the same order as they were inserted. The first element inserted is the first one removed. Such an organization method is typical for a list of documents that are waiting to be printed.

Firmware

Programs stored permanently in read-only memory. Firmware is software used to operate computer-controlled devices that generally stays in the device throughout its lifespan or over a long period of time. Such software includes operating systems for CPUs and application programs for industrial PCs as well as programmable logic controllers (e.g. the software in a washing machine controller). This software is written in read-only memory (ROM, PROM, EPROM) and cannot be easily replaced.

Floppy

Also known as a diskette. A round plastic disk with an iron oxide coating that can store a magnetic field. When the floppy disk is inserted in a disk drive, it rotates so that the different areas (or sectors) of the disk's surface are moved under the read/write head. This allows the magnetic orientation of the particle to be modified and recorded. Orientation in one direction represents binary 1, while the reverse orientation represents binary 0.

FPC

An abbreviation for "**F**lat **P**anel **C**ontroller".

FPD

An abbreviation for "**F**lat **P**anel **D**isplay".

FTP

"**F**ile **T**ransfer **P**rotocol". Rules for transferring data over a network from one computer to another computer. This protocol is based on TCP/IP, which has established itself as the standard for transferring data over Ethernet networks. FTP is one of the most used protocols on the Internet. It is defined in RFC 959 in the official regulations for Internet communication.

G

GB

Gigabyte (1 GB = 230 or 1,073,741,824 Bytes)

H

Handshake

Method of synchronization for data transfer when data is sent at irregular intervals. The sender signals that data can be sent, and the receiver signals when new data can be received.

HDD

An abbreviation for "**H**ard **D**isk **D**rive". Fixed magnetic mass memory with high capacities, e.g. 120 GB.

I

IDE

An abbreviation for "**I**ntegrated **D**rive **E**lectronics". A drive interface where the controller electronics are integrated in the drive.

ISA

An abbreviation for "**I**ndustry **S**tandard **A**rchitecture". A term given for the bus design which allows expansion of the system with plug-in cards that can be inserted in PC expansion slots.

ISO

International Organization for Standardization > Worldwide federation of national standardization institutions from over 130 countries. ISO is not an acronym for the name of the organization; it is derived from the Greek word "isos", meaning "equal" (**www.iso.ch**).

J

Jitter

Jitter is a term that describes time deviations of cyclic events. If, for example, an event should take place every 200µs and it actually occurs every 198 to 203µs, then the jitter is 5µs. Jitter has many causes. It originates in the components and transfer media of networks because of noise, crosstalk, electromagnetic interference and many other random occurrences. In automation technology, jitter is a measure of the quality of synchronization and timing.

Jumper

A small plug or wire link for adapting the hardware configuration used to connect the different points of an electronic circuit.

L

LCD

An abbreviation for "**L**iquid **C**rystal **D**isplay". A display type, based on liquid crystals that have a polarized molecular structure and are enclosed between two transparent electrodes as a thin layer. If an electrical field is applied to the electrodes, the molecules align themselves with the field and form crystalline arrangements that polarize the light passing through. A polarization filter, which is arranged using lamellar electrodes, blocks the polarized light. In this way, a cell (pixel) containing liquid crystals can be switched on using electrode gates, thus coloring this pixel black. Some LCD displays have an electroluminescent plate behind the LCD screen for lighting. Other types of LCD displays can use color.

LED

An abbreviation for "**L**ight **E**mitting **D**iode". A semiconductor diode which converts electrical energy into light. LEDs work on the principle of electroluminescence. They are highly efficient because they do not produce much heat in spite of the amount of light they emit. For example, "operational status indicators" on floppy disk drives are LEDs.

LPT

Logical device name for line printers. In MS-DOS, names are reserved for up to three parallel printer ports with the names LPT1, LPT2 and LPT3. The first parallel port (LPT1) is usually identical to the primary parallel output device PRN (in MS-DOS the logical device name for the printer). The abbreviation LPT stands for "Line Printer Terminal".

M

MB

Megabyte (1 MB = 220 or 1,048,576 bytes).

Microprocessor

Highly integrated circuit with the functionality of a CPU, normally housed on a single chip. It comprises a control unit, arithmetic and logic unit, several registers and a link system for connecting memory and peripheral components. The main performance features are the internal and external data bus and address bus widths, the command set and the clock frequency. Additionally, a choice can be made between CISC and RISC processors. The first commercially available worldwide microprocessor was the Intel 4004. It came on the market in 1971.

MIPS

Million instructions per second > Measurement for the computing speed of computers.

Motherboard

A circuit board that houses the main components of a computer such as the CPU switching circuit, co-processors, RAM, ROM for firmware, interface circuits, and expansion slots for hardware expansions.

MTBF

An abbreviation for "**M**ean **t**ime **b**etween **f**ailure". The average time which passes before a hardware component fails and repair is needed. This time is usually expressed in thousands or ten thousands of hours, sometimes known as power-on hours (POH).

MTCX

An abbreviation for »**M**ain**t**enance **C**ontroller E**X**tended«. The MTCX is an independent processor system that provides additional functions for a B&R industrial PC that are not available with a normal PC. The MTC communicates with the B&R industrial PC via the ISA bus (using a couple register).

Multitasking

Multitasking is an operating mode in an operating system that allows several computer tasks to be executed virtually simultaneously.

O

OEM

Original **E**quipment **M**anufacturer. A company that integrates third-party and in-house manufactured components into their own product range and then distributes these products under its own name.

OPC

OLE for Process Control > A communication standard for components in the area of automation. The goal of OPC development is to provide an open interface that builds on Windows-based technologies such as OLE, COM and DCOM. It allows problem-free standardized data transfer between controllers, operating and monitoring systems, field devices and office applications from different manufacturers. This development is promoted by the OPC Foundation, which is

made up of over 200 companies from around the world, including Microsoft and other leading companies. Nowadays, OPC is also interpreted as a synonym for Openness, Productivity and Connectivity, symbolizing the new possibilities that this standard opens up.

OPC server

The missing link between connection modules for the Interbus and the visualization application. It communicates serially with the connection modules via the ISA or PCI bus or Ethernet.

P

Panel

A common term for B&R display units (with or without keys).

PCI bus

Abbreviation for »**P**eripheral **C**omponent **I**nterconnect Bus«; Developed by INTEL as an intermediary/local bus for the latest PC generation. It is basically a synchronous bus. The main clock of the CPU is used for synchronization. The PCI bus is microprocessor-independent, 32-bit and 64-bit compatible, and supports both 3.3 V and 5 V cards and devices.

PCMCIA

An abbreviation for "**P**ersonal **C**omputer **M**emory **C**ard **I**nternational **A**ssociation". An association of manufacturers and dealers who are dedicated to the cultivation and further development of common standards for peripheral devices based on PC cards with a slot for such cards. PC cards are mainly used for laptops, palmtops (and other portable computers), and intelligent electronic devices. Version 1 of the PCMCIA standard was introduced in 1990.

PnP

An abbreviation for "**P**lug and **P**lay". Specifications developed by Intel. Using Plug and Play allows a PC to automatically configure itself so that it can communicate with peripheral devices (e.g. monitors, modems, and printers). Users can connect a peripheral device (plug) and it immediately runs (play) without having to manually configure the system. A Plug and Play PC requires a BIOS that supports Plug and Play and a respective expansion card.

POH

An abbreviation for "**P**ower **O**n **H**ours". See MTBF.

POST

An abbreviation for "**P**ower-**O**n **S**elf **T**est". A set of routines that are stored in ROM on the computer and that test different system components, e.g. RAM, disk drive and the keyboard in order to determine that the connection is operating correctly and ready for operation. POST routines notify the user of problems that occur. This is done using several signal tones or by displaying a message that frequently accompanies a diagnosis value on the standard output or standard error devices (generally the monitor). If the POST runs successfully, control is transferred over to the system's bootstrap loader.

POWERLINK

An enhancement of standard Ethernet. It enables data exchange under strict real-time conditions with cycle times down to 200 µs and jitter under 1 µs. This makes Ethernet power available on all communication levels of automation technology – from control levels to I/O. POWERLINK was initiated by the company B&R Industrie-Elektronik and is now managed by the open end user and vendor association, EPSG - Ethernet POWERLINK Standardization Group (**www.ethernet-powerlink.org**).

Q

QVGA

Abbreviation for **Q**uarter **V**ideo **G**raphics **A**rray. Usually a screen resolution of 320 × 240 pixels.

QUXGA

Abbreviation for **Q**uad **U**ltra E**x**tended **G**raphics **A**rray. Generally a screen resolution of 3200 × 2400 pixels (4:3). Quad implies the 4x greater pixel resolution compared to the UXGA.

QWUXGA

Abbreviation for **Q**uad **WUXGA**; Generally a screen resolution of 3840 × 2400 pixels (8:5, 16:10).

R

RAM

An abbreviation for "**R**andom **A**ccess **M**emory". Semiconductor memory which can be read or written to by the microprocessor or other hardware components. Memory locations can be accessed in any order. The various ROM memory types do allow random access, but they cannot be written to. The term RAM refers to a more temporary memory that can be written to as well as read.

Real time

A system is operating in real time or has real-time capability if the input sizes (e.g. signals, data) are received and processed in a defined time period, and the results are made available in real time for a partner system or the system environment. See also "real-time demands" and "real-time system".

ROM

An abbreviation for "**R**ead-**O**nly **M**emory". Semiconductor memory where programs or data were permanently stored during the production process.

RS232

Recommended **S**tandard **N**umber **232**. Oldest and most widespread interface standard, also called a V.24 interface. All signals are referenced to ground making this an unbalanced interface. High level: -3 to -30 V, low level: +3 to +30 V; cable lengths up to 15 m, transfer rates up to 20 kbit/s; for point-to-point connections between 2 stations.

RS422

Recommended **S**tandard **N**umber **422**. Interface standard, balanced operation, increased immunity to disturbances. High level: 2 to -6 V, low level: +2 to +6 V; 4-wire connection [inverted/not inverted], cable lengths up to 1200 m, transfer rates up to 10 Mbit/s, 1 sender can carry out simplex communication with up to 10 receivers.

RS485

Recommended **S**tandard **N**umber **485**. Interface standard upgraded from RS422. High level: 1.5 to -6 V, low level: +1.5 to +6 V; 2-wire connection [half duplex operation] or 4-wire connection [full duplex operation. Cable lengths up to 1200 m, transfer rates up to 10 Mbit/s. Up to 32 participants can be connected to an RS485 bus [sender/receiver].

RTS

An abbreviation for "**R**equest **T**o **S**end". A signal used in serial data transfer for requesting send permission. For example, it is sent from a computer to the modem connected to it. The RTS signal is assigned to pin 4 according to the hardware specifications of the RS-232-C standard.

RXD

An abbreviation for "Receive (**RX**) **D**ata". A line for transferring serial data received from one device to another, e.g. from a modem to a computer. For connections complying with the RS-232-C standard, the RXD is connected to pin 3 of the plug.

S

SDRAM

An abbreviation for "**S**ynchronous **D**ynamic **R**andom **A**ccess **M**emory". A construction of dynamic semiconductor components (DRAM) that can operate with higher clock rates than conventional DRAM switching circuits. This is made possible using block access. For each access, the DRAM determines the next memory addresses to be accessed.

SFC

Sequential function chart > Graphic input language for PLCs used to represent sequential control.

Slot PLC

PC insert card that has full PLC functionality. On the PC, it is coupled via a DPR with the process using a fieldbus connection. It is programmed externally or using the host PC.

SoftPLC

Synonym for SoftPLC.

PLC

Programmable Logic Controller; Computer-based control device that functions using an application program. The application program is relatively easy to create using standardized programming languages [IL, FBD, LAD, AS, ST]. Because of its serial functionality, reaction times are slower compared to connection-oriented control. Today, PLCs are available in device families with matched modular components for all levels of an automation hierarchy.

SRAM

An abbreviation for "**S**tatic **R**andom **A**ccess **M**emory". A semiconductor memory (RAM) made up of certain logic circuits (flip-flop) that only keeps stored information while powered. In computers, static RAM is generally only used for cache memory.

SUXGA

Abbreviation for **S**uper **U**ltra **E**xtended **G**raphics **A**rray; Generally a screen resolution of 2048 × 1536 pixels (4:3). An alternative name is QXGA (**Q**uad E**x**tended **G**raphics **A**rray), which is 4x the pixel resolution of XGA.

SVGA

Abbreviation for »**S**uper **V**ideo **G**raphics **A**rray«; Graphics standard with a resolution of at least 800×600 pixels and at least 256 colors.

Switch

Device similar to a hub that takes data packets received in a network and, unlike a hub, passes them only to the respective addressee, not to all network nodes. Unlike a hub, a switch provides targeted communication within a network that only takes place between sender and receiver. Other network nodes are not involved.

SXGA

Abbreviation for Super Extended Graphics Array. Graphics standard with a screen resolution of 1280 × 1024 pixels (aspect ratio 5:4).

SXGA+

Abbreviation for SXGA Plus; Generally 1400 × 1050 pixels.

System units

Provit system units consist of a mainboard (without processor), slots for RAM modules, VGA controller, serial and parallel interfaces, and connections for the FPD, monitor, PS/2 AT keyboard, PS/2 mouse, USB, Ethernet (for system units with Intel Celeron and Pentium III processors), Panelware keypad modules and external FDD.

T

Task

Program unit that is assigned a specific priority by the real-time operating system. It contains a complete process and can consist of several modules.

TCP/IP

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Suit of Protocols. Network protocol that has become the generally accepted standard for data exchange in heterogeneous networks. TCP/IP is used both in local networks for communication between various computer and also for LAN to WAN access.

TFT display

LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) technology where the display consists of a large grid of LCD cells. Each pixel is represented by a cell, whereby electrical fields produced in the cells are supported by thin film transistors (TFT) that result in an active matrix. In its simplest form, there is exactly one thin film transistor per cell. Displays with an active matrix are generally used in laptops and notebooks because they are thin, offer high-quality color displays and can be viewed from all angles.

Touch screen

Screen with touch sensors for activating an item with the finger.

TXD

An abbreviation for "Transmit (**TX**) **D**ata". A line for the transfer of serial data sent from one device to another, e.g. from a computer to a modem. For connections complying with the RS-232-C standard, the TXD is connected to pin 2 of the plug.

U

UART

An abbreviation for "**U**niversal **A**synchronous **R**eceiver-**T**ransmitter". A module generally consisting of a single integrated circuit that combines the circuits required for asynchronous serial communication for both sending and receiving. UART represents the most common type of circuit in modems for connecting to a personal computer.

UDMA

An abbreviation for "**U**ltra **D**irect **M**emory **A**ccess". A special IDE data transfer mode that allows high data transfer rates for drives. There have been many variations in recent times.
UDMA33 mode transfers 33 megabytes per second.
UDMA66 mode transfers 66 megabytes per second.
UDMA100 mode transfers 100 megabytes per second.
Both the mainboard and the hard drive must support the specification to implement modifications.

UPS

Abbreviation for "**U**ninterruptible **P**ower **S**upply". See "UPS".

USB

An abbreviation for "**U**niversal **S**erial **B**us". A serial bus with a bandwidth of up to 12 megabits per second (Mbit/s) for connecting a peripheral device to a microcomputer. Up to 127 devices can be connected to the system using a single multipurpose connection, the USB bus (e.g. external CD drives, printers, modems as well as the mouse and keyboard). This is done by connecting the devices in a row. USB allows devices to be changed when the power supply is switched on (hot plugging) and multi-layered data flow.

UPS

An abbreviation for "**U**ninterruptible **P**ower **S**upply". The UPS supplies power to systems that cannot be connected directly to the power mains for safety reasons because a power failure could lead to loss of data. The UPS allows the PC to be shut down securely without losing data if a power failure occurs.

UXGA

Abbreviation for »**U**ltra **E**xtended **G**raphics **A**rray« Generally a screen resolution of 1600 × 1200 pixels (aspect ratio 4:3, 12:9).

V

VGA

An abbreviation for "**V**ideo **G**raphics **A**dapter". A video adapter which can handle all EGA (Enhanced Graphics Adapter) video modes and adds several new modes.

W

Windows CE

Compact 32-bit operating system with multitasking and multithreading that Microsoft developed especially for the OEM market. It can be ported for various processor types and has a high degree of real-time capability. The development environment uses proven, well-established development tools. It is an open and scalable Windows operating system platform for many different devices. Examples of such devices are handheld PCs, digital wireless receivers, intelligent mobile phones, multimedia consoles, etc. In embedded systems, Windows CE is also an excellent choice for automation technology.

WSXGA

Wide SXGA, generally 1600 × 900 pixels (16:9).

WUXGA

Wide UXGA, generally 1920 × 1200 pixels (16:10).

WXGA

Wide XGA, generally 1280 × 768 pixels.

X

XGA

An abbreviation for "E**X**tended **G**raphics **A**rray". An expanded standard for graphics controllers and monitors that was introduced by IBM in 1990. This standard supports 640x480 resolution with 65,536 colors or 1024x768 resolution with 256 colors. This standard is generally used in workstation systems.

XTX

Abbreviation for »e**X**press **T**echnologoy for ET**X**« A further development consistent with the proven ETX® standard The newest I/O technology is implemented on a reliable form factor in XTX. The ETX® interface X2 is equipped with new serial buses like PCI Express™ und Serial ATA®, instead of the unpopular ISA bus. All other signals on the X1, X3 and X4 interfaces remain completely compatible with the ETX® Standard (Rev. 2.7). However, if ISA signals are needed, a PCI-ISA can be implemented on the base board. The use of an LPC bus already in XTX™ is considerably cheaper than a bridge solution.

Figure 1: APC620 embedded for central control and visualization ... 36
Figure 2: APC620 as visualization device ... 37
Figure 3: Automation PC 620 system overview ... 39
Figure 4: Selection guide - APC620 basic system with 1, 2, 3, and 5 PCI slots ... 42
Figure 5: Selection guide - APC620 optional components with 1, 2, 3, and 5 PCI slots 43
Figure 6: Selection guide - Basic system and optional components APC620 embedded .. 45
Figure 7: Interface overview - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant (top) ... 46
Figure 8: Interface overview - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant (front) ... 47
Figure 9: Dimensions - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant ... 50
Figure 10: Interface overview - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant (top) ... 51
Figure 11: Interface overview - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant (front) ... 52
Figure 12: Dimensions - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant ... 55
Figure 13: Interface overview - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant (top) ... 56
Figure 14: Interface overview - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant (front) ... 57
Figure 15: Dimensions - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant ... 60
Figure 16: Interface overview - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant (top) ... 61
Figure 17: Interface overview - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant (front) ... 62
Figure 18: Dimensions - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant ... 65
Figure 19: APC620 embedded variant interface overview - top side ... 66
Figure 20: APC620 embedded variant interface overview - front side ... 67
Figure 21: APC620 embedded variant - dimensions ... 71
Figure 22: Example of worst-case conditions for temperature measurement ... 72
Figure 23: Ambient temperatures for systems with an X945 CPU board ... 73
Figure 24: Ambient temperatures for embedded systems with an X945 CPU board ... 74
Figure 25: Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision >= I0 ... 76
Figure 26: Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SX01-00 revision < I0 ... 78
Figure 27: Supply voltage for the 2 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version) ... 80
Figure 28: Supply voltage for the 2 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version) ... 83
Figure 29: Supply voltage block diagram 3 PCI slots ... 86
Figure 30: Supply voltage for the 5 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version) ... 88
Figure 31: Supply voltage block diagram 5 PCI slots (dependent on system unit version) .. 92
Figure 32: Supply voltage for the 5PC600.SE00-00, 5PC600.SE00-01 and 5PC600.SE00-02 ... 97
Figure 33: General device interfaces example - APC620 with 5 PCI slots ... 99
Figure 34: General device interfaces example - APC620 embedded ... 100
Figure 35: Supply voltage connection ... 113
Figure 36: Ground connection ... 114
Figure 37: Monitor / Panel connection ... 116
Figure 38: Monitor / Panel connection with RGB video signal ... 120
Figure 39: Monitor / Panel connection with DVI video signal ... 120
Figure 40: Monitor / Panel connection with SDL video signal ... 121
Figure 41: Dimensions - Standard half-size PCI cards ... 125
Figure 42: Dimensions - Standard full-size PCI cards ... 126
Figure 43: PCI connector type: 5 volt ... 127
Figure 44: Front-side status LEDs ... 129

Figure 45: APC620 serial number sticker on front-side 141
Figure 46: APC620 serial number sticker on back-side 141
Figure 47: Example of serial number search: 70950170564 142
Figure 48: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX01-00 and X945 CPU board 143
Figure 49: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-00 and X945 CPU board 144
Figure 50: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX02-01 and X945 CPU board 145
Figure 51: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX03-00 and X945 CPU board 146
Figure 52: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-00 and X945 CPU board 147
Figure 53: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX05-01 and X945 CPU board 148
Figure 54: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX00-00 and X945 CPU board 149
Figure 55: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX00-01 and X945 CPU board 150
Figure 56: Block diagram of entire device with system unit 5PC600.SX00-02 and X945 CPU board 151
Figure 57: X945 CPU board 156
Figure 58: Heat sink 158
Figure 59: Main memory module 159
Figure 60: Add-on hard disk 40 GB - 5AC600.HDDI-05 160
Figure 61: Temperature humidity diagram - Add-on hard disk 5AC600.HDDI-05 162
Figure 62: Add-on hard disk 80 GB - 5AC600.HDDI-06 163
Figure 63: Temperature humidity diagram - Add-on hard disk 5AC600.HDDI-06 165
Figure 64: Add-on CompactFlash slot - 5AC600.CFSI-00 166
Figure 65: Slide-in USB FDD - 5AC600.FDDS-00 167
Figure 66: Temperature humidity diagram - Slide-in USB diskette drive 5AC600.FDDS-00 169
Figure 67: RAID 1 system schematic 170
Figure 68: PCI SATA RAID controller - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03 171
Figure 69: Temperature humidity diagram - SATA RAID hard disk 5ACPCI.RAIC-03 .. 173
Figure 70: PCI slot numbering on APC620 systems with 5 PCI slots 175
Figure 71: Replacement SATA HDD 160 GB - 5ACPCI.RAIC-04 176
Figure 72: Temperature humidity diagram - SATA RAID hard disk 5ACPCI.RAIC-04 .. 178
Figure 73: Add-on CAN interface - 5AC600.CANI-00 179
Figure 74: Terminating resistor - Add-on CAN interface 5AC600.CANI-00 182
Figure 75: Contents of the delivery / mounting material - 5AC600.CANI-00 182
Figure 76: Add-on RS232/422/485 interface - 5AC600.485I-00 183
Figure 77: Add-on RS232/422/485 interface - operated in RS485 mode 185
Figure 78: Contents of the delivery / mounting material - 5AC600.485I-00 186
Figure 79: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA01-00 187
Figure 80: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA02-00 188
Figure 81: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA03-00 190

Figure 82: Fan kit - 5PC600.FA05-00 ... 191
Figure 83: AP Link card ... 193
Figure 84: AP Link device connection with DVI video signal ... 196
Figure 85: AP Link device connection with SDL video signal ... 197
Figure 86: Mounting plates for the APC620 ... 199
Figure 87: Mounting orientation - Standard ... 203
Figure 88: Air circulation spacing - Standard ... 204
Figure 89: Mounting orientation - Optional ... 205
Figure 90: Optional circulation spacing ... 206
Figure 91: Mounting orientations for an APC620 with hard disk drive ... 207
Figure 92: Mounting orientations for an APC620 with a slide-in USB FDD drive ... 208
Figure 93: Flex radius - Cable connection ... 209
Figure 94: Grounding concept ... 210
Figure 95: Configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via DVI (onboard) ... 213
Figure 96: Configuration - An Automation Panel 900 via SDL (onboard) ... 216
Figure 97: Configuration - An Automation Panel 800 via SDL (onboard) ... 220
Figure 98: Configuration - An AP900 and an AP800 via SDL (onboard) ... 223
Figure 99: Configuration - Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (onboard) ... 226
Figure 100: Configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via SDL (AP Link) ... 231
Figure 101: Configuration - 4 Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) ... 235
Figure 102: Configuration - Four Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) and CRT (onboard) ... 240
Figure 103: Configuration - Three AP900 units and one AP800 via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard) ... 245
Figure 104: Examples - internal numbering of the extension units ... 249
Figure 105: Open the RAID Configuration Utility ... 250
Figure 106: RAID Configuration Utility - Menu ... 250
Figure 107: RAID Configuration Utility - Menu ... 251
Figure 108: RAID Configuration Utility - Create RAID set - striped ... 252
Figure 109: RAID Configuration Utility - Create RAID set - Mirrored ... 253
Figure 110: RAID Configuration Utility - Delete RAID set ... 254
Figure 111: RAID Configuration Utility - Rebuild Mirrored set ... 255
Figure 112: RAID Configuration Utility - Resolve Conflicts ... 256
Figure 113: RAID Configuration Utility - Low Level Format ... 257
Figure 114: Local connection of USB peripheral devices on the APC620 ... 258
Figure 115: Remote connection of USB peripheral devices to the APC900 via DVI ... 259
Figure 116: Remote connection of USB peripheral devices to the APC800/900 via SDL 260
Figure 117: X945 - BIOS diagnostics screen ... 264
Figure 118: X945 BIOS Main Menu ... 266
Figure 119: X945 Advanced Menu ... 267
Figure 120: X945 Advanced ACPI configuration ... 269
Figure 121: X945 Advanced PCI Configuration ... 271
Figure 122: X945 Advanced PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion ... 272
Figure 123: X945 Advanced PCI Interrupt Routing ... 273
Figure 124: X945 Advanced Graphics configuration ... 275
Figure 125: X945 Advanced CPU Configuration ... 277
Figure 126: X945 Advanced Chipset Configuration ... 279

Figure 127: X945 Advanced I/O Interface Configuration 280
Figure 128: X945 Advanced Clock Configuration 282
Figure 129: X945 Advanced IDE Configuration 283
Figure 130: X945 Primary IDE Master 285
Figure 131: X945 Primary IDE Slave 287
Figure 132: X945 Advanced USB Configuration 289
Figure 133: X945 Advanced Keyboard/Mouse Configuration 291
Figure 134: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration 292
Figure 135: X945 Advanced CPU Board Monitor 294
Figure 136: X945 Advanced Baseboard/Panel Features 295
Figure 137: X945 Panel Control 297
Figure 138: X945 Baseboard Monitor 298
Figure 139: X945 Legacy Devices 299
Figure 140: X945 Boot Menu 301
Figure 141: X945 Security Menu 303
Figure 142: X945 Hard Disk Security User Password 305
Figure 143: X945 Hard Disk Security Master Password 306
Figure 144: X945 Power Menu 307
Figure 145: X945 Exit Menu 309
Figure 146: CMOS Profile Hex Switch 310
Figure 147: PCI Routing with activated APIC CPU board X945 326
Figure 148: PCI Routing with activated APIC CPU board X945 on the APC620e 327
Figure 149: Software versions 329
Figure 150: Firmware version of Automation Panel Link SDL transceiver/receiver 330
Figure 151: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 1 337
Figure 152: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 2 337
Figure 153: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 3 337
Figure 154: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 4 338
Figure 155: Creating a bootable diskette in Windows XP - step 5 338
Figure 156: Creating a USB flash drive for B&R upgrade files 340
Figure 157: Creating a CompactFlash card for B&R upgrade files 342
Figure 158: Location of DIP switch 343
Figure 159: Automation PC 620 with MS-DOS 346
Figure 160: Windows XP Professional Logo 348
Figure 161: Accessing the graphics driver via Control Panel 351
Figure 162: Extended desktop settings - primary device and monitor 353
Figure 163: Dual display clone settings - primary and monitor 355
Figure 164: Touch screen driver - serial touch screen 356
Figure 165: Touch screen driver - auto-detect 357
Figure 166: Touch screen calibration 357
Figure 167: Touch screen driver - serial touch screen 358
Figure 168: Touch screen driver - auto-detect 358
Figure 169: Touch screen calibration 359
Figure 170: Windows XP Embedded Logo 362
Figure 171: ADI Control Center screenshots (Version 1.61) - example 367
Figure 172: ADI Control Center - SDL equalizer settings 369
Figure 173: ADI Control Center - UPS settings 370

Figure 174: ADI Control Center - UPS monitor 372
Figure 175: ADI Control Center - UPS battery settings 373
Figure 176: ADI Control Center - UPS settings 375
Figure 177: ADI control center warning 376
Figure 178: ADI Control Center - Advanced UPS settings 376
Figure 179: Test structure - torsion 399
Figure 180: Test structure - Cable drag chain 400
Figure 181: Contents of delivery - interface cover 411
Figure 182: Temperature humidity diagram - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04 ... 416
Figure 183: Dimensions - CompactFlash card Type I 416
Figure 184: ATTO disk benchmark v2.34 comparison (reading) 417
Figure 185: ATTO disk benchmark v2.34 comparison (writing) 417
Figure 186: Temperature humidity diagram - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03 ... 420
Figure 187: Dimensions - CompactFlash card Type I 421
Figure 188: USB Media Drive - 5MD900.USB2-01 422
Figure 189: Dimensions - 5MD900.USB2-01 425
Figure 190: Dimensions - USB Media Drive with front cover 426
Figure 191: Interfaces - 5MD900.USB2-01 426
Figure 192: Mounting orientation - 5MD900.USB2-01 427
Figure 193: Front cover 5A5003.03 427
Figure 194: Dimensions - 5A5003.03 428
Figure 195: Front cover mounting and installation depth 428
Figure 196: Temperature humidity diagram - USB flash drive - 5MMUSB.2048-00 431
Figure 197: HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD 5SWHMI.0000-00 433
Figure 198: APC620 internal supply cable 5CAMSC.0001-00 436
Figure 199: DVI extension cable - 5CADVI.0xxx-00 (similar) 437
Figure 200: Flex radius specification 438
Figure 201: Dimensions - DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00 439
Figure 202: Pin assignments - DVI cable 440
Figure 203: SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00 (similar) 441
Figure 204: Flex radius specification 442
Figure 205: Dimensions - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00 443
Figure 206: Pin assignments - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00 444
Figure 207: SDL cable with 45° plug (similar) 445
Figure 208: Flex radius specification 446
Figure 209: Dimensions - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01 447
Figure 210: Pin assignments - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01 448
Figure 211: SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 (similar) 449
Figure 212: Flex radius specification 451
Figure 213: Dimensions - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 451
Figure 214: Pin assignments - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 453
Figure 215: SDL flex cable with extender - 5CASDL.0xx0-13 (similar) 454
Figure 216: Flex radius specification 456
Figure 217: Dimensions - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13 456
Figure 218: Example of the signal direction for the SDL flex cable with extender - APC620 . 457
Figure 219: Example of signal direction for the SDL flex cable with extender - PPC700 457

Figure 220: Example of signal direction display - SDL flex cable with extender 458
Figure 221: Pin assignments - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13 459
Figure 222: RS232 extension cable (similar)..... 460
Figure 223: Pin assignments - RS232 cable 461
Figure 224: USB extension cable (similar) 462
Figure 225: Pin assignments - USB cable..... 463
Figure 226: UPS principle..... 464
Figure 227: Firmware and software required for the UPS 466
Figure 228: Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00..... 467
Figure 229: Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00 - Installation materials 468
Figure 230: Battery unit 5AC600.UPSB-00 469
Figure 231: Temperature life span diagram 470
Figure 232: Deep discharge cycles 470
Figure 233: Dimensions - 5AC600.UPSB-00 471
Figure 234: Drilling template for the battery unit..... 472
Figure 235: UPS connection cable..... 473
Figure 236: Block diagram of the UPS 474
Figure 237: PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH1-01 476
Figure 238: Dimensions - 5ACPCI.ETH1-01 477
Figure 239: PCI Ethernet card 10/100 - 5ACPCI.ETH3-01 478
Figure 240: Dimensions - 5ACPCI.ETH3-01 479
Figure 241: Replacement fan 480
Figure 242: 5AC600.SRAM-00..... 481
Figure 243: SRAM module installation 483
Figure 244: B&R power supplies (examples) 484
Figure 245: Battery removal 488
Figure 246: Battery handling 489
Figure 247: Battery polarity 489
Figure 248: APC620 1PCI slot - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit..... 490
Figure 249: APC620 1PCI slot - Remove side cover and fan kit cover..... 490
Figure 250: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation..... 491
Figure 251: APC620 1PCI slot - Fan installation..... 491
Figure 252: APC620 1PCI slot - Fan cable connection to the main board..... 492
Figure 253: APC620 2PCI slots - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit 493
Figure 254: APC620 2PCI slots - Remove side cover and fan kit cover 493
Figure 255: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation..... 494
Figure 256: APC620 2PCI slots - Fan installation 494
Figure 257: APC620 2PCI slots - Fan cable connection to the main board 495
Figure 258: Dust filter in the fan kit cover and filter clasp..... 495
Figure 259: APC620 3PCI slot - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit..... 496
Figure 260: APC620 3PCI slots - Remove side cover and fan kit cover 497
Figure 261: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation..... 497
Figure 262: APC620 3PCI slot - Fan installation..... 498
Figure 263: APC620 3PCI slot - Fan cable connection to the main board..... 499
Figure 264: Dust filter in the fan kit cover and filter clasp..... 499
Figure 265: APC620 5PCI slot - Remove screws to install/ remove filter kit..... 500
Figure 266: APC620 5PCI slot - Remove side cover and fan kit cover..... 500

Figure 267: APC620 5PCI attach cable fasteners ... 501
Figure 268: Markings for direction of airflow / fan rotation ... 501
Figure 269: APC620 5PCI slot - Fan installation ... 502
Figure 270: APC620 5PCI slot - Fan cable connection to the main board ... 503
Figure 271: Dust filter in the fan kit cover and filter clasp ... 504
Figure 272: Removing the slide-in dummy module ... 505
Figure 273: Installing the slide-in drive ... 505
Figure 274: Release the slide-in slot releasing mechanisms ... 506
Figure 275: Removing the slide-in drive ... 506
Figure 276: Slide-in slot releasing mechanism start position ... 507
Figure 277: Add-on UPS module 5AC600.UPSI-00 - Installation materials ... 508
Figure 278: Remove UPS module cover ... 508
Figure 279: Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring ... 509
Figure 280: Install UPS module ... 509
Figure 281: Plug in connection cable ... 509
Figure 282: Connector locking mechanism ... 510
Figure 283: Remove UPS module cover ... 511
Figure 284: Remove cover plate ... 511
Figure 285: Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring ... 511
Figure 286: Install mounting bracket ... 512
Figure 287: Install UPS module ... 512
Figure 288: Plug in connection cable ... 512
Figure 289: Connector locking mechanism ... 513
Figure 290: Remove UPS module cover ... 514
Figure 291: Remove cover plate ... 514
Figure 292: Screw in spacing bolt and spacing ring ... 514
Figure 293: Install mounting bracket ... 515
Figure 294: Install UPS module ... 515
Figure 295: Plug in connection cable ... 515
Figure 296: Connector locking mechanism ... 516
Figure 297: Remove UPS module cover ... 517
Figure 298: Screw in spacing bolt ... 518
Figure 299: Install UPS module ... 518
Figure 300: Plug in connection cable ... 518
Figure 301: Connector locking mechanism ... 519
Figure 302: Remove UPS module cover ... 519
Figure 303: Remove cover plate ... 520
Figure 304: Screw in spacing bolt ... 520
Figure 305: Install mounting bracket ... 520
Figure 306: Install UPS module ... 521
Figure 307: Plug in connection cable ... 521
Figure 308: Connector locking mechanism ... 521
Figure 309: Remove UPS module cover ... 522
Figure 310: Remove cover plate ... 522
Figure 311: Screw in spacing bolt ... 522
Figure 312: Install mounting bracket ... 523
Figure 313: Install UPS module ... 523

Figure 314: Plug in connection cable 523
Figure 315: Connector locking mechanism 524
Figure 316: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 1 PCI slot 525
Figure 317: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 2 PCI slot 526
Figure 318: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 3 PCI slot 527
Figure 319: Mounting the side cover - APC620, 5 PCI slot 528
Figure 320: Screw assignment on the back side of the SATA RAID controller 529
Figure 321: Hard disk exchange 530
Figure 322: Removing the APC620 front cover 531
Figure 323: Mounting the APC620 front cover 532
Figure 324: APC620 front cover label 533
Figure 325: Removing the APC620 front cover 533
Figure 326: Attaching the front cover 534
Figure 327: Temperature sensor locations 535
Figure 328: Connector location for external devices 536
Figure 329: MTCX controller location 537
Figure 330: Sample configuration for SDL timing 538
Figure 331: SDL timing - Example for Automation Panel 900 with the number 0 539
Figure 332: B&R Key Editor screenshots (Version 2.70) 541
Figure 333: ADI development kit screenshots (Version 2.20) 543

Table 1: Manual history ... 21
Table 2: Environmentally-friendly separation of materials ... 25
Table 3: Organization of safety notices ... 26
Table 4: Model numbers - System units ... 27
Table 5: Model numbers - X945 CPU boards ... 28
Table 6: Model numbers - Heat sinks ... 28
Table 7: Model numbers - Main memory ... 28
Table 8: Model numbers - Drives ... 28
Table 9: Model numbers - Interfaces ... 29
Table 10: Model numbers - Fan kits ... 29
Table 11: Model numbers - AP Link graphics adapter ... 30
Table 12: Model numbers - Supply voltage connectors ... 30
Table 13: Model numbers - X2X and CAN plug ... 30
Table 14: Model numbers - Batteries ... 30
Table 15: Model numbers - CompactFlash cards ... 30
Table 16: Model numbers - USB flash drives ... 31
Table 17: Model numbers - Cables ... 31
Table 18: Model numbers - UPS module + accessories ... 33
Table 19: Model numbers - PCI Ethernet cards ... 33
Table 20: Model numbers - Other items ... 33
Table 21: Model numbers - Software ... 35
Table 22: Technical data - APC620, 1 PCI slot variant ... 48
Table 23: Technical data - APC620, 2 PCI slot variant ... 53
Table 24: Technical data - APC620, 3 PCI slot variant ... 58
Table 25: Technical data - APC620, 5 PCI slot variant ... 63
Table 26: Technical data - APC620 embedded variant ... 68
Table 27: Overview of humidity specifications for individual components ... 98
Table 28: Pin assignments - COM1 ... 101
Table 29: COM1 - I/O address and IRQ ... 101
Table 30: Pin assignments - COM2 ... 102
Table 31: COM2 - I/O address and IRQ ... 102
Table 32: X2X pin assignments (only APC620 embedded) ... 103
Table 33: CAN pin assignments (only APC620 embedded) ... 103
Table 34: CAN node number switch (x1, x16) - only APC620 embedded ... 104
Table 35: CAN terminating switch / LED (only APC620 embedded) ... 104
Table 36: Status LEDs CAN / X2X (only APC620 embedded) ... 105
Table 37: POWERLINK (only APC620 embedded) ... 105
Table 38: Status / Error LED as error LED - POWERLINK V2 operating mode ... 105
Table 39: Status / Error LED as status LED - POWERLINK V2 operating mode ... 106
Table 40: POWERLINK station number (x1, x16) - only APC620 embedded ... 107
Table 41: Ethernet connection ETH (only APC620 embedded) ... 107
Table 42: Ethernet connection (ETH1) ... 108
Table 43: Ethernet cable lengths when using 5PC600.X945-00 CPU boards ... 109
Table 44: Ethernet connection (ETH2) ... 110
Table 45: USB port ... 111
Table 46: USB connections 4 x - only APC620 embedded ... 112
Table 47: Power supply depending on the system unit ... 113

Table 48: Starting currents in the voltage supply to the system units 114
Table 49: System unit revisions for at least 10 seconds turn-off time 115
Table 50: System unit revisions for any turn-off times 115
Table 51: Pin assignments - Monitor / panel connection 117
Table 52: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables 117
Table 53: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 118
Table 54: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 119
Table 55: Technical data - MIC, Line IN and Line OUT port 122
Table 56: Add-on interface slot 123
Table 57: Add-on UPS module slot 124
Table 58: Technical data - PCI bus 126
Table 59: Technical data - Status LEDs 128
Table 60: Status LEDs Power, CF, Link (only APC620 embedded) 129
Table 61: Technical data - CompactFlash slot (CF1) 130
Table 62: Technical data - Hard disk / CompactFlash slot (HDD/CF2) 131
Table 63: CompactFlash slots (CF1 / CF2) - APC620 embedded 133
Table 64: Technical data - Power button 134
Table 65: Technical data - Reset button 134
Table 66: Technical data - PS/2 keyboard/mouse (external PS/2) 135
Table 67: Technical data - battery 136
Table 68: Meaning of battery status 136
Table 69: Technical data - Hardware security key 138
Table 70: Hardware security key - I/O address and IRQ 138
Table 71: Technical data - Slide-in slot 1 139
Table 72: Technical data - Slide-in slot 2 140
Table 73: Technical data - 1, 2, 3 and 5 PCI slot types 152
Table 74: Technical data - APC620 embedded variations 154
Table 75: Technical data - CPU board X945 156
Table 76: Technical data - Heat sink 158
Table 77: Technical data - Main memory 159
Table 78: Technical data - Add-on hard disk 5AC600.HDDI-05 160
Table 79: Technical data - add-on hard disk - 5AC600.HDDI-06 163
Table 80: Technical data - Add-on CompactFlash slot 5AC600.CFSI-00 166
Table 81: Technical data - Slide-in USB diskette drive - 5AC600.FDDS-00 168
Table 82: Technical data - RAID hard disk - 5ACPCI.RAIC-03 172
Table 83: Technical data - RAID hard disk - 5ACPCI.RAIC-04 176
Table 84: Technical data - Add-on CAN interface - 5AC600.CANI-00 179
Table 85: Pin assignments - CAN 180
Table 86: Add-on CAN - I/O address and IRQ 180
Table 87: CAN address register 180
Table 88: Bus length and transfer rate - CAN 181
Table 89: CAN cable requirements 181
Table 90: Pin assignments - RS232/RS422 183
Table 91: Add-on RS232/422/485 - I/O address and IRQ 183
Table 92: RS232 - Bus length and transfer rate 184
Table 93: RS232 - Cable requirements 184

Table 94: RS422 - Bus length and transfer rate ... 184
Table 95: RS422 - Cable requirements ... 185
Table 96: RS485 - Bus length and transfer rate ... 186
Table 97: RS485 - Cable requirements ... 186
Table 98: Technical data - 5PC600.FA01-00 ... 187
Table 99: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA01-00 ... 188
Table 100: Technical data - 5PC600.FA02-00 ... 189
Table 101: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA02-00 ... 189
Table 102: Technical data - 5PC600.FA03-00 ... 190
Table 103: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA03-00 ... 190
Table 104: Technical data - 5PC600.FA05-00 ... 191
Table 105: Contents of delivery - 5PC600.FA05-00 ... 192
Table 106: Model numbers - AP Link graphics adapter ... 193
Table 107: AP Link slot (AP Link card inserted) ... 193
Table 108: Pin assignment for AP Link connection ... 194
Table 109: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables ... 195
Table 110: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 195
Table 111: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 196
Table 112: Drilling templates - 1 and 2 PCI slots ... 200
Table 113: Drilling templates - 3 and 5 PCI slots ... 201
Table 114: Drilling templates - APC620 embedded ... 202
Table 115: Selecting the display units ... 212
Table 116: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board ... 213
Table 117: Link module for the configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via DVI ... 214
Table 118: Cables for DVI configurations ... 214
Table 119: Possible Automation Panel units, resolutions und segment lengths ... 214
Table 120: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board ... 216
Table 121: Link module for the configuration - One Automation Panel 900 via DVI ... 216
Table 122: Cables for SDL configurations ... 217
Table 123: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables ... 218
Table 124: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 218
Table 125: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 219
Table 126: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board ... 220
Table 127: Cables for SDL configurations ... 221
Table 128: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables ... 221
Table 129: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 222
Table 130: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 222
Table 131: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board ... 223
Table 132: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables ... 224
Table 133: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 224
Table 134: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) ... 225
Table 135: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board ... 226
Table 136: Link modules for the configuration: 4 Automation Panel 900 via SDL on 1 line 227

Table 137: Cables for SDL configurations 227
Table 138: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables 228
Table 139: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 228
Table 140: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 229
Table 141: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board 231
Table 142: Link modules for the configuration: 1 Automation Panel 900 via SDL (optional) 232
Table 143: Cables for SDL configurations 232
Table 144: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables 233
Table 145: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 233
Table 146: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 234
Table 147: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board 235
Table 148: Link modules for configuration: 4 Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (optional) on 1 line 236
Table 149: Cables for SDL configurations 236
Table 150: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables 237
Table 151: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 238
Table 152: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 238
Table 153: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board 241
Table 154: Link modules for configuration: 4 Automation Panel 900 units via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard) 241
Table 155: Cables for SDL configurations 241
Table 156: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables 243
Table 157: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 243
Table 158: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 244
Table 159: Possible combinations of system unit and CPU board 246
Table 160: Link modules for configuration: 3 AP900 units and one AP800 via SDL (AP Link) and RGB (onboard) 246
Table 161: Segment lengths, resolutions and SDL cables 247
Table 162: Requirements for SDL cable with automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 247
Table 163: Requirements for SDL cable with extender and automatic cable adjustment (equalizer) 248
Table 164: BIOS-relevant keys in the RAID Configuration Utility 250
Table 165: X945 bios-relevant keys at POST 264
Table 166: X945 bios-relevant keys in the BIOS menu 265
Table 167: X945 - Overview of BIOS menu items 265
Table 168: X945 Main Menu setting options 266
Table 169: X945 Advanced Menu setting options 267
Table 170: X945 Advanced ACPI configuration setting options 269
Table 171: X945 Advanced PCI configuration setting options 271
Table 172: X945 Advanced PCI IRQ Resource Exclusion setting options 272
Table 173: X945 Advanced PCI Interrupt Routing setting options 273
Table 174: X945 Advanced Graphics configuration setting options 275

Table 175: X945 Advanced CPU Configuration setting options 277
Table 176: X945 Advanced Chipset setting options 279
Table 177: X945 Advanced I/O Interface Configuration setting options 281
Table 178: X945 Advanced Clock Configuration setting options 282
Table 179: X945 Advanced IDE Configuration setting options 283
Table 180: X945 Primary IDE Master setting options 285
Table 181: X945 Primary IDE Slave setting options 287
Table 182: X945 Advanced USB Configuration setting options 289
Table 183: X945 Advanced Keyboard/Mouse Configuration setting options 291
Table 184: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration setting options 292
Table 185: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration setting options 294
Table 186: X945 Advanced Baseboard/Panel Features setting options 295
Table 187: X945 Panel Control setting options 297
Table 188: X945 Baseboard Monitor setting options 298
Table 189: X945 Legacy Devices setting options 299
Table 190: X945 Boot Menu setting options 301
Table 191: X945 Security Menu setting options 303
Table 192: X945 Hard Disk Security User Password 305
Table 193: X945 Hard Disk Security Master Password 306
Table 194: X945 Power Menu setting options 307
Table 195: X945 Exit Menu setting options 309
Table 196: Profile overview 310
Table 197: X945 - Main profile setting overview 311
Table 198: X945 Advanced - ACPI Configuration Profile setting overview 311
Table 199: X945 Advanced - PCI Configuration Profile setting overview 312
Table 200: X945 Advanced - Graphics Configuration Profile setting overview 313
Table 201: X945 Advanced - CPU Configuration Profile setting overview 313
Table 202: X945 Advanced - Chipset Configuration Profile setting overview 314
Table 203: X945 Advanced - I/O Interface Configuration profile setting overview 314
Table 204: X945 Advanced - Clock Configuration Profile setting overview 314
Table 205: X945 Advanced - IDE Configuration Profile setting overview 314
Table 206: X945 Advanced - USB Configuration Profile setting overview 315
Table 207: X945 Advanced Keyboard/Mouse Configuration profile setting overview 316
Table 208: X945 Advanced Remote Access Configuration profile setting overview 316
Table 209: X945 Advanced CPU Board Monitor profile setting overview 316
Table 210: X945 Advanced - Baseboard/Panel Features profile setting overview 317
Table 211: X945 Boot profile setting overview 318
Table 212: X945 Security profile setting overview 319
Table 213: X945 Power profile setting overview 319
Table 214: BIOS post code messages BIOS X945 321
Table 215: RAM address assignment 322
Table 216: DMA channel assignment 322
Table 217: I/O address assignment 323
Table 218: IRQ interrupt assignments in PCI mode 324
Table 219: IRQ interrupt assignments in APIC mode 325
Table 220: Inter-IC (I²C) bus resources 327
Table 221: Inter-IC (I²C) bus resources 327

Table 222: System unit support for buffering with Automation Runtime 345
Table 223: Visual Components video output with different system units 345
Table 224: Model numbers - MS-DOS 346
Table 225: Tested resolutions and color depths for DVI and RGB signals 347
Table 226: Model numbers - Windows XP Professional 348
Table 227: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine for 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 und 5PC600.SF03-00 352
Table 228: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine for 5PC600.SX01-00, 5PC600.SX02-01, 5PC600.SX05-01, 5PC600.SE00-00 and 5PC600.SE00-02 352
Table 229: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine (DDC) for 5PC600.SX02-00, 5PC600.SX05-00 und 5PC600.SF03-00 354
Table 230: Relationship between driver settings and graphics engine (DDC) for 5PC600.SX01-00, 5PC600.SX02-01, 5PC600.SX05-01, 5PC600.SE00-00 and 5PC600.SE00-02 354
Table 231: Model numbers - Windows XP Embedded 362
Table 232: Device functions in Windows XP Embedded with FP2007 362
Table 233: Model numbers - Windows CE 365
Table 234: Windows CE 6.0 features 365
Table 235: System support - ADI driver 368
Table 236: Overview of standards 379
Table 237: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for emissions 381
Table 238: Test requirements - Network-related emissions for industrial areas 382
Table 239: : Test requirements - Electromagnetic emissions for industrial areas 383
Table 240: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for immunity 384
Table 241: Test requirements - Electrostatic discharge (ESD) 385
Table 242: Test requirements - High-frequency electromagnetic fields (HF field) 385
Table 243: Test requirements - High-speed transient electrical disturbances (burst) 386
Table 244: Test requirements - Surge voltages 386
Table 245: Test requirements - Conducted disturbances 386
Table 246: Test requirements - Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies 387
Table 247: Test requirements - Voltage dips, fluctuations, and short-term interruptions 388
Table 248: Test requirements - Damped vibration 388
Table 249: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for vibration 389
Table 250: Test requirements - Vibration during operation 389
Table 251: Test requirements - Vibration during transport (packaged) 390
Table 252: Test requirements - Shock during operation 390
Table 253: Test requirements - Shock during transport 390
Table 254: Test requirements - Toppling 390
Table 255: Test requirements - Toppling 391
Table 256: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for temperature and humidity 392
Table 257: Test requirements - Worst case during operation 392
Table 258: Test requirements - Dry heat 392
Table 259: Test requirements - Dry cold 392
Table 260: Test requirements - Large temperature fluctuations 393
Table 261: Test requirements - Temperature fluctuations in operation 393
Table 262: Test requirements - Humid heat, cyclic 393

Table 263: Test requirements - Humid heat, constant (storage) ... 393
Table 264: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for safety ... 394
Table 265: Test requirements - Ground resistance ... 395
Table 266: Test requirements - Insulation resistance ... 395
Table 267: Test requirements - High voltage ... 396
Table 268: Test requirements - Residual voltage ... 396
Table 269: Test requirements - Leakage current ... 396
Table 270: Test requirements - Overload ... 397
Table 271: Test requirements - Defective component ... 397
Table 272: Test requirements - Voltage range ... 397
Table 273: Overview of limits and testing guidelines for other tests ... 398
Table 274: Test requirements - Protection ... 398
Table 275: Test requirements - Degree of pollution ... 398
Table 276: International certifications ... 401
Table 277: Model numbers - Accessories ... 403
Table 278: Order data - TB103 ... 407
Table 279: Technical data - TB103 supply plug ... 407
Table 280: Order data - 0TB704.9 and 0TB704.91 ... 409
Table 281: Technical data - TB103 supply plug ... 409
Table 282: Order data - Lithium batteries ... 410
Table 283: Technical data - Lithium batteries ... 410
Table 284: Order data - APC620 interface cover ... 411
Table 285: Order data - DVI - CRT adapter ... 412
Table 286: Order data - CompactFlash cards ... 413
Table 287: Technical data - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-04 ... 414
Table 288: Order data - CompactFlash cards ... 418
Table 289: Technical data - CompactFlash cards 5CFCRD.xxxx-03 ... 419
Table 290: Technical data - USB Media Drive 5MD900.USB2-01 ... 423
Table 291: Contents of delivery - USB Media Drive - 5MD900.USB2-01 ... 426
Table 292: Technical data - 5A5003.03 ... 427
Table 293: Order data - USB flash drives ... 429
Table 294: Technical data - USB flash drive 5MMUSB.2048-00 ... 430
Table 295: Model number - HMI Drivers & Utilities DVD ... 433
Table 296: Model number - APC620 internal supply cable ... 436
Table 297: Technical data - 5CAMSC.0001-00 ... 436
Table 298: Model numbers - DVI cables ... 437
Table 299: Technical data - DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00 ... 438
Table 300: Contents of delivery - DVI cable 5CADVI.0xxx-00 ... 439
Table 301: Model numbers - SDL cables ... 441
Table 302: Technical data - SDL cables 5CASDL.0xxx-00 ... 442
Table 303: Contents of delivery - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-00 ... 443
Table 304: Model numbers - SDL cables with 45° plug ... 445
Table 305: Technical data - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01 ... 446
Table 306: Contents of delivery - SDL cable with 45° plug 5CASDL.0xxx-01 ... 447
Table 307: Model numbers - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 ... 449
Table 308: Technical data - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 ... 450
Table 309: Contents of delivery - SDL flex cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 ... 452

Table 310: Structure - SDL cable 5CASDL.0xxx-03 452
Table 311: Model numbers - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13 454
Table 312: Technical data - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13 455
Table 313: Contents of delivery - SDL flex cable with extender 5CASDL.0xx0-13 456
Table 314: Model numbers - RS232 cables 460
Table 315: Technical data - RS232 cables 460
Table 316: Contents of delivery - RS232 cables 9A0014.xx 460
Table 317: Model numbers - USB cables 462
Table 318: Technical data - USB cables 462
Table 319: Contents of delivery - USB cable 462
Table 320: System unit revisions - Add-on UPS module 465
Table 321: Firmware and software required for the UPS 465
Table 322: Technical data - 5AC600.UPSI-00 467
Table 323: Technical data - 5AC600.UPSB-00 469
Table 324: Technical data - UPS connection cable 473
Table 325: UPS - Order data 475
Table 326: Ethernet connection ETH 476
Table 327: Ethernet connections ETH1, ETH2, ETH3 478
Table 328: Model numbers - Replacement fan filters 480
Table 329: Technical data - 5AC600.SRAM-00 481
Table 330: Single-phase power supplies 485
Table 331: Three-phase power supplies 485
Table 332: Meaning of battery status 488
Table 333: Temperature sensor locations 535
Table 334: Revision information for connecting an external device 536
Table 335: Pin assignments - Connector on main board 536
Table 336: Temperature limits for fan control 540

0

0AC201.91 ..... 30, 136, 410
0PS102.0 ..... 34, 485
0PS104.0 ..... 34, 485
0PS105.1 ..... 34, 485
0PS105.2 ..... 34, 485
0PS110.1 ..... 34, 485
0PS110.2 ..... 34, 485
0PS120.1 ..... 34, 485
0PS305.1 ..... 34, 485
0PS310.1 ..... 34, 485
0PS320.1 ..... 34, 485
0PS340.1 ..... 34, 485
0TB103.9 ..... 30, 407
0TB103.91 ..... 30, 407
0TB704.9 409
0TB704.91 409

4

4A0006.00-000 ..... 30, 136, 410

5

5A5003.03 ..... 33, 427
5AC600.485I-00 29
5AC600.CANI-00 29
5AC600.CFSI-00 ..... 28, 166
5AC600.FA01-00 ..... 34, 480
5AC600.FA02-00 ..... 34, 480
5AC600.FA03-00 ..... 34, 480
5AC600.FA05-00 ..... 34, 480
5AC600.FDDS-00 ..... 28, 168
5AC600.HDDI-05 ..... 28, 160
5AC600.HDDI-06 ..... 28, 163
5AC600.HS01-03 28
5AC600.HS02-03 28
5AC600.HS03-02 28
5AC600.ICOV-00 ..... 33, 411
5AC600.SDL0-00 ..... 30, 193
5AC600.SRAM-00 ..... 33, 481
5AC600.UPSB-00 ..... 33, 465, 469
5AC600.UPSI-00 ..... 33, 465, 467
5AC900.1000-00 ..... 33, 412
5ACPCI.ETH1-01 ..... 33, 476
5ACPCI.ETH3-01 ..... 33, 478
5ACPCI.RAIC-03 ..... 28, 171, 172
5ACPCI.RAIC-04 ..... 29, 176, 177
5CADVI.0018-00 ..... 31, 437
5CADVI.0050-00 ..... 31, 437
5CADVI.0100-00 ..... 31, 437
5CAMSC.0001-00 ..... 31, 436
5CASDL.0018-00 ..... 32, 441
5CASDL.0018-01 ..... 32, 445
5CASDL.0018-03 ..... 32, 449
5CASDL.0050-00 ..... 32, 441
5CASDL.0050-01 ..... 32, 445
5CASDL.0050-03 ..... 32, 449
5CASDL.0100-00 ..... 32, 441
5CASDL.0100-01 ..... 32, 445
5CASDL.0100-03 ..... 32, 449
5CASDL.0150-00 ..... 32, 441
5CASDL.0150-01 ..... 32, 445
5CASDL.0150-03 ..... 32, 449
5CASDL.0200-00 ..... 32, 441
5CASDL.0200-03 ..... 32, 449
5CASDL.0250-00 ..... 32, 441
5CASDL.0250-03 ..... 32, 449
5CASDL.0300-00 ..... 32, 441
5CASDL.0300-03 ..... 32, 449
5CASDL.0300-13 ..... 32, 454
5CASDL.0400-13 ..... 32, 454
5CASDL.0430-13 454
5CAUPS.0005-00 ..... 33, 473
5CAUPS.0030-00 ..... 33, 473
5CAUSB.0018-00 ..... 32, 462
5CAUSB.0050-00 ..... 32, 462
5CFCRD.0064-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.0128-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.016G-04 413
5CFCRD.0256-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.0512-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.0512-04 ..... 30, 130, 131, 133, 413
5CFCRD.1024-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.1024-04 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 413
5CFCRD.2048-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.2048-04 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 413
5CFCRD.4096-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.4096-04 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 413
5CFCRD.8192-03 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 418
5CFCRD.8192-04 ..... 31, 130, 131, 133, 413
5MD900.USB2-01 ..... 34, 422
5MMDDR.0512-01 ..... 28, 159

5MMDDR.1024-01 ..... 28, 159
5MMDDR.2048-01 ..... 28, 159
5MMUSB.2048-00 ..... 31, 429
5PC600.FA01-00 ..... 29, 187
5PC600.FA02-00 ..... 29, 188
5PC600.FA03-00 ..... 29, 190
5PC600.FA05-00 ..... 29, 191
5PC600.SE00-00 27
5PC600.SE00-01 27
5PC600.SE00-02 27
5PC600.SF03-00 ..... 27, 152
5PC600.SX01-00 ..... 27, 152
5PC600.SX02-00 ..... 27, 152
5PC600.SX02-01 ..... 27, 152
5PC600.SX05-00 ..... 27, 152
5PC600.SX05-01 ..... 27, 152
5PC600.X945-00 ..... 28, 156
5SWHMI.0000-00 ..... 35, 433
5SWWCE.0830-ENG 35, 365
5SWWXP.0430-ENG 35, 362
5SWWXP.0500-ENG 35, 348
5SWWXP.0500-GER 35, 348
5SWWXP.0500-MUL 35, 348
5SWWXP.0600-ENG 35, 348
5SWWXP.0600-GER 35, 348
5SWWXP.0600-MUL 35, 348

9

9A0014.02 ..... 32, 460
9A0014.05 ..... 33, 460
9A0014.10 ..... 33, 460
9A0017.01 475
9A0017.02 475
9A0100.11 475
9A0100.14 475
9A0100.15 475
9S0000.01-010 ..... 35, 346
9S0000.01-020 ..... 35, 346

A

AC97 sound 40, 122, 152, 154, 346
ACPI 324, 325, 346, 545
Add-on 44, 48, 74, 123
Add-on CAN interface 179
Add-on CompactFlash slot 166
Add-on RS232/422/485 interface 183
Add-on UPS 40, 124
Add-on UPS module 465, 467
Address register 180
ADI 367, 537, 538
  Development kit 543
  Drivers 367
Administrative Tools 377
Air circulation 203
Ambient temperature
  X945 CPU board 72
AP Link 44, 125, 193
AP Link cards 193
AP Link Slot 125
APC 545
APC620 as visualization device 37
APC620 embedded 66, 99
APC620 UPS 464
APC620, 1 PCI slot variant 46
APC620, 2 PCI slot variant 51
APC620, 3 PCI slot variant 56
APC620, 5 PCI slot variant 61
API 545
ATX power supply 134
Audio driver 360
  Installation 360
Automation Device Interface 367
Automation Runtime 344, 482, 545

B

B&R Automation Device Interface 367
B&R Automation Runtime 546
B&R Control Center 367
B&R Embedded OS Installer 366
B&R Key Editor 541
Backup battery 136, 410
Barcodes 140
Battery 136, 410
  Change 487
Battery operation 370
Battery settings 372, 373
Battery status 136, 488
Battery unit 403, 469
  Lifespan 469
  Maintenance interval 469
Baud rate 545
Beep codes 321
Beeping code 321
BIOS 545
BIOS default settings 310
BIOS Error signals 321
BIOS Error Signals X945 321
BIOS Extension ROM 175
BIOS upgrade 328
BIOS X945
  ACPI Configuration 269
  Advanced 267
  Baseboard monitor 298
  Baseboard/panel features 295
  BIOS setup keys 264
  Boot 301
  Chipset configuration 279
  Clock configuration 282
  CPU board monitor 294
  CPU configuration 277
  Exit 309
  Graphics configuration 275
  Hard disk security master password 306
  Hard disk security user password 305
  I/O interface configuration 280
  IDE Configuration 283
  Keyboard/mouse configuration 291
  Legacy devices 299
  Main 266
  Panel control 297
  PCI Configuration 271
  Power 307
  Remote access configuration 292
  Security 303
  USB configuration 289
Bit 545
Bit rate 545
Block diagram 143
  System unit 5PC600.SE00-00 149
  System unit 5PC600.SE00-01 150
  System unit 5PC600.SE00-02 151

System unit 5PC600.SF03-00 146
System unit 5PC600.SX01-00 143
System unit 5PC600.SX02-00 144
System unit 5PC600.SX02-01 145
System unit 5PC600.SX05-00 147
System unit 5PC600.SX05-01 148
Boot diskette 337
Creating with Windows XP 337
Bootstrap loader 546
Buffer duration 136
Burst 386
Bus length 181
Bus structure 182
Button cell 410
Byte 546

C

Cable drag chain 400
Cable type 181, 184, 186
Cables 436
Cache 156, 546
Cage clamps 113, 407, 409
CAN 40, 103, 123, 546
Bus length 181
Cable type 181
Terminating resistor 182
CAN address register 180
CAN controller 179
CAN Node Number 104
CAN terminating switch 104
CD-ROM 546
CE mark 546
Centralized control and visualization devices 36
Certifications 401
Climate conditions 392
CMOS 547
CMOS battery 410
COM 547
COM1 ..... 101, 547
COM2 ..... 102, 547
COM3 547
CompactFlash 547
Dimensions 416, 421
General information 413, 418
Order data 413, 418
Technical data 414, 419
CompactFlash slot 130, 131, 133
Conducted disturbances 386
Configuration of UPS operation 371
Configure 466
Connection cycles 116, 193
Connection examples 211
Control Center 367, 371, 535
CPU 547
CTS 548

D

Damped vibration 388
Data loss 47, 52, 57, 62, 67, 134, 559
Data register 180
DCD 548
Deep discharge cycles 470
Deep discharge protection 465
Deep discharge voltage 469
Defective component 397
Degree of pollution 398
Derating 74
Development kit 543
Device ID 482
Device interfaces 99
Dial-up 548
Dimension standards 26
Dimensions 50
1 PCI slot variant 50
2 PCI slot variant 55
3 PCI slot variant 60
5 PCI slot variant 65
620 embedded variant 71
DIMM 548
DIP switch 343
Direction of air flow 491, 494, 497, 501
Display Clone 211
Disposal 25
Distribution of resources 322
DMA channel assignment 322
I/O address assignment 323
Interrupt assignments 324, 325
RAM address assignment 322
DMA 548
Dongle 138
DOS boot diskette 337

Double layer 423
DRAM 548
Drilling templates 200
Drives 160
Dry cold 392
Dry heat 392
DS1425 138
DSR 548
DTR 548
Dual display clone ... 219, 234, 244, 248, 350, 354, ... 356, 358
DVD 549
DVI 40, 120, 193, 196, 549
DVI - CRT adapter 412
DVI - Monitor adapter 412
DVI cable 437
DVI-A 549
DVI-D 549
DVI-I 549

E

EDID 549
EIDE 549
Electromagnetic emissions 383
Electrostatic discharge 385
Embedded OS Installer 366
EMC 549
Emissions 381, 383
Energy options 377
Entire device 46
EPROM 549
Equalizer 369
Error signals 321
ESD 22, 385
  Electrical components with housing 22
  Electrical components without housing .. 22
  Individual components 23
  Packaging 22
  Proper handling 22
ETH1 ..... 108, 361
ETH2 ..... 110, 361
Ethernet 40, 550
Ethernet cable lengths 109
ETX 550
European guidelines 379
Extended desktop ..... 44, 211, 219, 234, 240, 244, ... 245, 248, 352, 356, 537

F

Fan connection cable 492
Fan kit cover 500
Fan kit installation 490
Fan kit replacement 490
Fan kits 187
  1 PCI variant 187
  2 PCI variant 188
  5 PCI variant 191
Fastening bolts 491
FDD 550
Features 40
Fiber optic cable 128
Fiber optics 550
FIFO 550
Filter clasp 29, 495, 499
Firmware 333, 465, 550
Flex radius 209, 400, 460, 462, 473
Floating Point Unit 156
Floppy 550
FPC 551
FPD 551
Free fall 391
Front cover 427
FTP 551
Full speed 111, 112
Functional ground 114

G

GB 551
Graphics 157
Graphics driver installation 351
Graphics driver settings .. 215, 219, 222, 225, 229, ... 234, 238, 244, 248
Graphics drivers 350
Graphics engine 1 ..... 352, 354
Ground resistance 395
Grounding concept 210
Guidelines 26

H

Half-size 40
Handshake 551
Hard disk 131, 153
Hardware security key 138
HDD 128, 551
Heat sink 158
  Exchanging 158
HF field 385
Hibernate 128, 129
High speed 111, 112
High voltage 396
High-frequency electromagnetic fields 385
High-speed transient elect. disturbance value 386
Hot Plug 135
Hot surface 51, 56
Humid heat, constant 393
Humid heat, cyclic 393

I

I/O address assignment 323
IDE 551
Identification 140
Immunity 384
Individual components 152
  AP Link cards 193
  Drives 160
  Fan kits 187
  Heat sink 158
  Interface options 179
  Main memory 159
  RAID System 170
  System unit 152
  X945 CPU board 156
Installation 203
Insulation resistance 395
Interface cover 411
Interface options 179
Interrupt assignments 324, 325
ISA 551
ISO 551

J

Jitter 552
Jumper 552

K

KCF 353, 355
Key configuration file 353, 355
Key editor 541
Keyboard 135

L

L1 cache 156
L2 cache 156
LCD 552
Leakage current 396
LED 128, 552
Line IN 122
Line OUT 122
Lithium battery 136
Locking time 353, 355
Low battery shutdown 378
Low speed 111, 112
LPT 552

M

Magnetic fields with electrical frequencies 387
Main memory 40, 159
Maintenance Controller Extended 153, 155, 537
Maintenance free rechargeable batteries 465
Maintenance interval 469
Manual history 21
MAXIM 138
Maximum memory capacity 159
MB 552
Mechanical conditions 389
Memory capacity 159
Messages 321, 377
MIC 122
Microprocessor 552
MIPS 553

Mkey 553
Model numbers 27
Monitor / Panel 116
Motherboard 553
Mounting orientation 199, 203
  Optional mounting 205
  Standard mounting 203
Mounting plates 199
Mounting rail brackets 422
Mounting screws 51, 56
Mounting the side cover 525
  APC620 with 1 PCI slot 525
  APC620 with 2 PCI slot 526
  APC620 with 3 PCI slot 527
  APC620 with 5 PCI slot 528
Mouse 135
MS-DOS 346
MTBF 553
MTCX 134, 153, 155, 537, 553
Multitasking 553

N

Network driver 361
  Installation 361
Network-related emissions 382
NMI 179

O

OEM 553
OPC 553
OPC server 554
Optional mounting orientations 205
Over-current shutdown 378
Overload 113, 397

P

Panel 542, 554
Panel locking time 353, 355, 356, 358
Parallel port 138
Part subject to wear 136, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, ... 410, 469, 480
PCI 554
PCI configuration space 482
PCI Ethernet card 476, 478
PCI half-size standard 125
PCI slot 125
PCMCIA 554
Permanent magnet 47, 52, 57, 62, 67
PLC 557
PnP 554
POH 554
POST 554
Post codes 321
Power 76, 80, 128, 129
  APC620 systems, 1 PCI slot 76
  APC620 systems, 2 PCI slots 80
  APC620 systems, 3 PCI slots 86
  APC620 systems, 5 PCI slots 88
Power button .. 76, 78, 80, 83, 86, 88, 92, 97, 134, ... 153, 155
Power management 76, 80
Power supplies 484
Power supply 484
POWERLINK 39, 40, 105, 555
  Station number 107
  Status / Error LED 105
Procedure following power failure 378
Programs 25
Protection type 398
Provit 542
PS/2 135
  Keyboard 135
  Mouse 135
  Y-cable 135

Q

QUXGA 555
QVGA 555
QWUXGA 555
QXGA 557

R

RAID 171
RAM 555
Real time 555
Real-time clock 40, 136, 153, 155, 156
Removal strips 488, 489

Replacement fan 480
Replacing the main memory 159
Requirements for emissions 381
Requirements for immunity to disturbances .. 384
Reset button 134, 153, 155
Residual voltage 396
Reverse polarity protection 113
RGB 40, 116, 120, 193, 347
ROM 555
RS232 ..... 184, 555
  Bus length 184
  Cable type 184
RS232 cable 460
RS232/422/485 123
RS422 ..... 184, 556
  Bus length 184
  Cable type 184
RS485 ..... 185, 556
  Bus length 186
  Cable type 186
RTC 40, 136, 153, 155, 156
RTS 556
RXD 556

S

Safety 394
Safety notices 22
  Dust, humidity, aggressive gases 24
  Environmentally-friendly disposal 25
  Installation 24
  Intended use 22
  Operation 24
  Organization 26
  Policy and procedures 23
  Protection against electrostatic discharges 22
  Transport and storage 23
SATA 170, 171
Screw clamps 113, 407, 409
SDL 121, 197
SDL cable with 45° plug 445
SDL cables 440, 449
SDL equalizer 369
SDL flex cable with extender 454
SDRAM 556
Security Key 138
Selection guide 42
Self discharging 136, 487
Sequential Function Chart 556
Serial number 140
Services 377
SFC 556
Shock during operation 390
Shock during transport 390
Short circuit protection 467
Short-term interruptions 388
Shutting down 377
Side cover 500
Single-phase power supplies 485
Slide-in slot 1 139
Slide-in slot 2 140
Slide-in USB FDD 167
Slot PLC 556
Smart Display Link 40, 116, 121, 197
Soft-off 128, 129
SoftPLC 556
SRAM 33, 403, 557
SRAM module 481
  Driver support 482
  Installation 483
  Technical data 481
Standard keypad module 557
Standard mounting 203
Standard shutdown 378
Standards 379
  Overview 379
Standards and certifications 379
Starting current 114, 153, 155
Station number 107
Status LED 128
  CF 129
  HDD 128
  Link 129
  Link 1 ..... 128, 129
  Link 2 128
  Power 128, 129
Status LEDs 129
Status LEDs CAN / X2X 105
Structure 41
Supply voltage 40, 113
Supply voltage connectors 407
Surface temperature 46, 51, 56, 61, 66

Surge 386
Surge voltages 386
Suspend-to-disk 128, 129
SUXGA 557
SVGA 557
Switch 557
Switching power supply 484
SXGA 557
SXGA+ 557
System units 557

T

Task 558
TCP/IP 558
Temperature 535
Temperature fluctuations 393
  Operation 393
Temperature monitoring 75
Temperature sensor 465, 535
Temperature sensor locations 535
Terminating LED 104
Terminating resistor 104, 182
Terminating switch 104
TFT display 558
Three-phase power supplies 485
Toppling 390
Torsion 399
Touch driver settings 215, 219, 222, 225, 230, ...234, 239, 244, 248
Touch screen 558
Touch screen driver
  Dual display clone 358
  Extended desktop 356
Touch screen driver installation 356
Turn-off time 377
TXD 558

U

UART 558
UDMA 559
Uninterruptible power supply 464
UPS ....33, 40, 76, 78, 80, 83, 86, 89, 93, 97, 124, ...128, 333, 508, 559
UPS configuration 370
UPS connection cable 465, 473
UPS driver 371
UPS installation 468, 508
  APC620, 1 PCI slot 508, 517
  APC620, 2 PCI slot 511, 519
  APC620, 5 PCI slot 514, 522
UPS monitor 371
UPS status 377
UPS status values 371
UPS system settings 375
USB 559
USB 2.0 .....111, 112
USB cable 462
USB flash drive 429, 432
  General information 429
  Order data 429
  Technical data 429
USB Media Drive 422
  Dimensions 425
  Dimensions with front cover 426
  Installation 427
  Interfaces 426
  Mounting orientation 427
  Technical data 423
USB peripheral devices 258
USB port 111, 112
User serial ID 367
UXGA 559

V

Vendor ID 482
Ventilation holes 199
VGA 559
Vibration during transport 390
Vibration operation 389
Video signals 116
Viruses 25
Visualization 37
Voltage dips 388
Voltage fluctuations 388
Voltage range 397

W

Windows CE 365, 560

Embedded OS Installer 366
General information 365
Installation 366
Windows XP Embedded 362
Audio driver 364
FAQ 364
General information 362
Graphics drivers 363
Installation 363
Network driver 364
Touch screen driver 363
Windows XP Professional 348
Audio driver 360
FAQ 349
Graphics drivers 350
Installation 348
Network driver 361
Touch screen driver 356
Worst case 392
WSXGA 560
WUXGA 560
WXGA 560

X

X2X 39, 40, 103
X945 CPU board 156
XGA 560
XTX 561